Abhidharmakosabhasyam

Volume I
Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam

of Vasubandhu

Volume I

Translated into French by Louis de La Vallée Poussin

English Version by Leo M. Pruden

ASIAN HUMANITIES PRESS
[An imprint of Jain Publishing Company]
Web Site – www.jainpub.com
Asian Humanities Press offers to the specialist and the general reader alike the best in new translations of major works and significant original contributions to enhance our understanding of Asian religions, cultures and thought.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Vasubandhu.
[Abhidharmakośabhāṣya. English]
4 v.; 23 cm.
Translation of: Abhidharmakośabhāṣya.
Includes bibliographies.
BQ2682.E5P78 1988
294.3'824—dc19 87-71231
AACR 2  MARC

Copyright © 1991 by Asian Humanities Press. All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the written permission of Asian Humanities Press except for brief passages quoted in a review.
CONTENTS

A Brief Biography of Louis de La Vallée Poussin xv
Translator's Preface xxi

The Abhidharma:
The Origins, Growth and Development
of a Literary Tradition
by Leo M. Pruden

1. Origin and Growth of Abhidharma xxx
2. Abhidhamma as "higher dhamma" xxxi
3. Abhidhamma alone xxxiii
4. Abhidhamma-kathā xxxv
5. Traditional Explanations of Abhidhamma xxxvi
6. Abhidharma in the Mahāvibhāṣā xxxvi
7. The Abhidhamma Piṭaka xxxvii
8. The Mātikā xxxviii
9. Mātikā and Abhidharma xxxix
10. Abhidharma in the Āgamas: the Religion of the Āgamas xl
11. The Āgamas and the Nikāyas xli
12. Abhidharmaic Tendencies in Extant Āgamas:
   Numerical Categories, Samyuktas, and Vibhaṅgas xlii
13. Sarvāstivādin Āgamas xliii
14. Śamathadeva’s Commentary xliv
15. Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma Literature xlvi
16. Origin of the Abhidharma xlvi
17. The Second Period of Early Sarvāstivādin Literature xlix
18. The Jñānaprasthāna li
19. The Vibhāṣās lli
20. Development of the Literature After the Vibhāṣās liii
21. The Abhidharma-hṛdaya liii
22. The Abhidharmakośabhāṣya liv
23. Sanskrit Remains of the Abhidharma lv
Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam of Vasubandhu

by Louis de La Vallée Poussin

Introduction

I. Bibliography of the Kośa
   A. Additions to the Bibliography, by Hurbert Durt

II. The Date of Vasubandhu. The Former Vasubandhu

III. The Seven Canonical Treatises of the Abhidharma
   A. The Jñānapraśthāna
   B. The Prakaraṇa of Vasumitra
   C. The Vijñākāya
   D. The Dharmaskandha
   E. The Prajñāptīśāstra
   F. The Dhātukāya
   G. The Saṁgītīparyāya

IV. Some Masters of the Vibhāṣa
   A. Vasumitra
   B. Ghoṣaka and the Abhidharmāṁṛtaśāstra
   C. Buddhadeva
   D. Dharmatītā
   E. The Bhadanta Dharmatītā

V. Some Schools of the Vibhāṣa
   A. Dāśāṇītikas and Sautrāntikas
   B. Vibhajyavadins
   C. Yogācārins

VI. The Sariputraabhidharma

VIII. The Abhidharmasāra

Footnotes
Chapter One: The Dhātus

General Introduction 55
A. Homage to the Buddha 55
1. The Three Qualities of a Buddha 55
B. Definition of Abhidharma 56
1. Absolute Sense of the Word 56
2. Conventional Sense of the Word 56
C. Definition of Abhidarmakośa 57
D. Purpose of the Abhidharma 57
E. Authors of the Abhidharma 58

I. The Division of the Dharmas 58
A. The Defiled Dharmas 59
B. The Undefiled Dharmas 59
C. The Unconditioned Dharmas 59
1. Discussion of the Two Types of Disjunction 59
2. Is Disjunction Single or Multiple? 59
D. Conditioned Dharmas 61
1. Synonyms of “Conditioned” 61
2. Synonyms of “Defiled” 62

II. The Five Skandhas, the Twelve Āyatanas, and the Eighteen Dhātus 63
A. Rūpa Skandha 63
1. Visible Matter 64
2. Sound 65
3. Taste 66
4. Odor 66
5. Tangible Things 66
B. The Relationship between the Five Consciousnesses and the Five Viññāyas 66
C. Avijñaptirūpa 67
D. The Four Primary Elements 68
E. The Definition of “Rūpa” 70
F. The Ten Āyatanas and the Ten Dhātus 72
G. The Vedanā, Saṃjñā, and Saṃskāra Skandhas 72
# Table of Contents

### III. The Threefold Classification of the Dharmas

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>The Threefold Classification of the Dharmas</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.</td>
<td>The Nature of the Eighteen Dhātus</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C.</td>
<td>The Definition of “Skandha,” “Āyatana,” and “Dhātu”</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>Their Provisional Existence</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E.</td>
<td>The Reason for the Threefold Classification</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F.</td>
<td>Distinctions between Vedanā and Samjñā</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>The Five Skandhas and the Unconditioned Dharmas</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.</td>
<td>The Order of the Five Skandhas</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>The Order of the Āyatanas and Dhātus, with Reference to the Six Indriyas</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### IV. Some Problems Raised by the Threefold Classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>The Rūpa Āyatana and the Dharma Āyatana</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.</td>
<td>Inclusion in Other Skandhas, Āyatanas, and Dhātus</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C.</td>
<td>The Eighty-four Thousand Dharmaskandhas</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>The Dimension of a Dharmaskandha</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E.</td>
<td>The Characteristics of the Skandhas and the Threefold Classification</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F.</td>
<td>Vijnānadātā and Akāsadhātā</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### V. Classification of the Dharmas in the Eighteen Dhātus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>Visible and Invisible Dharmas</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.</td>
<td>Resistant and Non-Resistant Dharmas</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C.</td>
<td>Good, Bad, and Morally Neutral Dharmas</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>The Eighteen Dhātus and the Three Realms</td>
<td>??</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E.</td>
<td>Pure and Impure Dhātus</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F.</td>
<td>Vitarka and Vicāra</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>Vitarka, Vicāra, and the Five Sense Consciousnesses</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.</td>
<td>Discussions</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. How many Dhātus Serve as an Object?  | 98 |
2. How many are Non-Appropriated to Living Beings? | 98 |
I. Primary and Derived Elements

J. Discussion
1. Can the Atoms be Accumulated?
2. How many of the Dhātu Cut or are Cut? Burn or are Burned? Weight or are Weight?
3. How many of the Dhātu are vipāka? Accumulations? Outflowings?
4. How many of the Dhātu are Real Substances?
5. How many of the Dhātu are Momentary?

K. Possession of a Dhātu versus a Vijñānahātu

L. Internal and External Elements

M. Sābhāga and Tatsabhāga

N. How are the Dhātu Abandoned?

O. How many of the Dhātu are “View?”

VI. Subsidiary Discussions
A. Are Visible Things Seen by One or Two Eyes?
B. Do the Indriyas and the Viśayas Touch?
C. The Dimension of the Organs and their Viśayas
D. Atoms within the Organs
E. Are Atoms Sābhāga or Tatsabhāga?
F. Time and the Support of the Consciousnesses
G. Why are the Organs, and not the Object, the Support of the Consciousness?
H. How are the Different Consciousnesses Named?
I. The Body, the Organ of Sight, Visible Things, and the Consciousness, and their Relationship to the Different Bhūmis
J. Which Dhātu is Discerned by Which Consciousness?
K. How many of the Dhātu are Eternal?
L. How many of the Dhātu are Indriyas?

Footnotes
Chapter Two: The *Indriyas*

I. The *Indriyas*  
   A. Definition  
   1. Objection  
   B. General Explanation  

II. The Twenty-two *Indriyas*  
   A. A Different Definition  
   B. The Organs of Sensation  
   1. The Saint  
   C. Pure and Impure *Indriyas*  
   D. *Vipāka* and Non-*Vipāka* *Indriyas*  
      Discussion: Prolonging and Shortening Life  
      Discussion: *Jīvita* and *Āyus*  
   E. How Many *Indriyas* have Retribution  
   F. Their Moral Nature  
   G. The *Indriyas* in the Three Dhātus  
   H. Abandoning the *Indriyas*  
      I. How Many *Indriyas* are initially possessed in each Dhātu?  
      J. How Many *Indriyas* perish at Death  
   K. *Indriyas* and the Stages of the Religious Life  
      1. The Quality of Arhat  
   L. Possessing the *Indriyas*  
   M. The Smallest Number of *Indriyas*  
   N. The Largest Number of *Indriyas*  
      Discussion: The Atom  

III. The Mental States  
   A. Definition  
   B. The *Mahābhūmikas*  
   C. The *Kusalamahābhūmikadharma*  
      Discussion: *Praśrabdhi*  
      Discussion: Equanimity  
   D. The *Klesamahābhūmikadharma*  
      1. A Different List
2. Is a Mahābhūmika also Kleśamahābhūmika? 194
E. The Akusalamahābhūmikadharmas 195
F. The Parītaklesikadharmas 196
G. The Number of Mental States that can Arise Together 196
H. Differences between Mental States 200
1. Disrespect versus Absence of Fear 200
2. Affection versus Respect 201
3. Vitarka versus Vicāra 202
4. Pride versus Pride-Intoxication 204
I. Synonyms 205

IV. Dharmas not Associated with the Mind 206
A. Definition 206
B. Prāpti and Aprāpti 206
C. The Time Periods 212
D. How is Prāpti Abandoned? 213
E. Types of Aprāpti 215
F. How does Aprāpti Perish? 217
   Discussion: Prāpti and Anuprāpti 217
G. Genre (Sabhāgatā) 219
H. The Dharma of Non-Consciousness 221
   1. The Absorption of Non-Consciousness 223
I. The Absorption of Extinction 225
J. The Differences between the Two Absorptions 229
   Discussion: How is a Mind produced after Absorption? 230
   Discussion: Do the Two Absorptions exist as Real Substantial Entities? 232
K. The Vital Organ 233
   Discussion: Warmth, Consciousness, and Life 233
   Discussion: How does Death take place? 235
   Discussion: Premature Death 235
L. Characteristics of Conditioned Dharmas 238
   1. Primary and Secondary Characteristics 239
   2. Arising 247
M. Words, Phrases, and and Phonemes 250
   1. Voice 251
N. Other Dharmas not Associated with the Mind 254

V. The Six Causes 254
   A. General Comments 255
   B. Reason for Existence 255
   C. Coexistent Cause 257
       Discussion: The Sautrantikas Criticize the Doctrine of Coexistent Causes 260
   D. Similar Causes 262
       1. Definition 262
       2. Objections 264
       3. Similar Causes and the Path 267
   E. Causes through Association 272
   F. Universal Causes 273
   G. Retributive Causes 274
       1. Definition 275
       2. Skandhas as Results 275
       3. Ayatanas as Results 276
   H. The Time Periods 277
   I. Causes and their Results 278
       Discussion: Disconnection 280
       Discussion: Are Unconditional Things Real Entities? 280
       Discussion: Is Extinction or Nirvāṇa Real? 281
   J. The Five Results 286
       1. Their Characteristics 288
       2. The Time Periods 291
   K. A Different List of Results 295
   L. How Many Causes produce the Different Dharmas? 295

VI. The Four Conditions 296
   A. General Comments 296
   B. Equal and Immediately Antecedent Conditions 297
   C. Objects as Conditions 302
   D. Predominating Conditions 303
   E. The Time Periods 304
   F. How Many Conditions Cause the Different Dharmas? 305
A Brief Biography of Louis de La Vallée Poussin

Louis de La Vallée Poussin, born in Liége on the 1st of January, 1869, was of French origin through his father's side of the family. His grandfather, Étienne-Pierre-Rémy de La Vallée Poussin, took part in the last Napoleonic campaigns and in 1832 was one of a group of French officers charged, under the direction of Marshall Girard, with the organization of the Belgian army at the request of King Leopold I. He married Marie-Thérèse de Cauwer in Namur, with whom he had four sons. The second, Gustave, was born in La Rochelle in 1829 and died in Paris in 1910; he married Pauline de Monge de Franeau, who was born in Liége in 1845. The eldest of the four children born of this marriage was Louis de La Vallée Poussin.

Orphaned from his mother at the age of 7, Louis, as well as his two brothers and his sister, were raised in Liége by his maternal grandparents. He was an outstanding student at the College Saint-Servain, in Liége, and in 1884 he entered the University of Liége where, four years later, he received the docteur en philosophie et lettres. His reading of Charles Lyall's Asiatic Studies awakened in him a desire to pursue Oriental studies, and it was at Louvain, under the direction of Charles de Harlez and Philippe Colinet, that he learned the elements of Sanskrit, Pali, and Avestan. He then went to Paris where he enrolled, from 1890 to 1893, at the Sorbonne and in the courses of Sylvain Lévi at the École pratique des Hautes-Études.

In 1892 he published a timid essay, a translation of Buddhist tales, in collaboration with Godefroy de Blonay. But as early as this same year there appeared in Muséon an academic study, Le Bodhicaryāvatāra de Čāntideva, a first indication of his tendency to research "the Saint and Sanctity in Buddhism" which marks all of his work; a first stage in this enormous task of investigating this theme pursued throughout the various Buddhist schools and the canons of scriptures.

In 1893–1894, he studied Buddhist Sanskrit and Sanskrit poetical meter "at the feet" of the great Orientalist H. Kern.

At the beginning of his activities as a Sanskrit, Louis de La Vallée Poussin was attracted by the curious and still unexplored doctrines of Tantrism. His Note sur le Pañcakrama (1894) as well as his edition of this text (1896), "an authoritative summary of the nihilistic doctrines of Nāgārjuna" and Une pratique des Tantras (1897) prepared the way for his first great work which is already the work of a master: Bouddhisme, Études et Matériaux, published by the Royal Academy of
Belgium (1898). This is a capital work which studies, with the method of an accomplished scholar, the relationship between Indian asceticism and the left-handed rituals. In spite of the tact and finesse with which he treated this topic, the subject let loose the righteous indignation of the great Rapson who, in a long review article, protested with severity against this exposure of "the Tantric infection". This English scholar, imbued with the theories current in his period—theories which have not yet completely disappeared—would consider that Buddhism is only a pure philosophic system, whose only true literature are the words of the Buddha, and he openly manifested his dislike for such a subject of study as Tantrism. His criticism must have been cruelly felt by the young scholar since he did not hesitate to justify himself publically. He showed in fact, in his Tantras, that for Rapson Buddhism is only the doctrine preached by Śākyamuni, whereas for him Buddhism is the general state of beliefs which have condensed around the name of the Buddha. The Tantras are the inheritors of all the forms of Indian religions and their study is necessary to that which de La Vallée Poussin called Buddhism.

One would have thought that after this lively reaction against formalism, his works on the manifestations of popular Buddhism would have continued to occupy a large place in the activity of the young master, but he did nothing more with respect to Tantrism, with the exception of a study published in 1901, The Four Classes of Buddhist Tantras, the documents of this type, a new and living sphere of study, no longer formed the object of his publications. Following upon this excursion into the Indian jungle if badly viewed by traditionalist scholars, Louis de La Vallée Poussin returned to monastic Buddhism, never to leave it.

It was then, in full possession of Tibetan, he did not hesitate—at more than forty years of age—to also learn Chinese. He continued the editing of enormous scholastic texts: Prajñākāramati, Śāntideva's commentary on the Bodhicaryāvatāra (1901–1905, 605 pages) of which he published the annotated translation; an edition of the Tibetan translation of the Mādhyamakāvatāra of Candrakīrti (1907–1912, 427 pages); and the Mūlamādhyamakakārikā of Nāgārjuna with the commentary of Candrakīrti (1903–1913, 658 pages). Taking refuge in Cambridge during the war of 1914, he edited the Mahānīdesa (in collaboration with E. J. Thomas) and the third chapter of the Abhidharmakosā of Vasubandhu (1914–1918, 368 pages).

In mentioning these voluminous editions which come to a total of hundreds of pages, we do not pretend to evaluate his work in terms of its weight. But these figures are eloquent for anyone who has edited with the same scruples as has Louis de La Vallée Poussin, if not with the same mastery, only several pages of
Sanskrit text for which one must always have recourse to the Tibetan and Chinese versions. These enormous works would suffice to fill several lives and yet how much research has sprung out of his work, and how much has been enriched by it! Such are the over fifty articles in Hastings' *Dictionary of Religion and Ethics*, his studies on the doctrine of Karman (*La négation de l'âme et la doctrine de l'Acte*, 1902), on the concatenation of the Twelve Causes (*La théorie des Douze Causes*, 1913), on the Three Bodies (*The three bodies of a Buddha*, 1906; *Note sur les Corps du Buddha*, 1913); and his constructions of the theory of Nirvâna. All of the presentations of dogma that he developed, and by the approval that they received as well as by the reactions that they generated, have brought about the progress of Buddhist exegetical and philosophical studies up to the point where we find it today, that is, based on texts scrupulously established and patiently collated.

In the course of his long career filled with immense labor, the curiosity of Louis de La Vallée Pousin was brought to bear on all of the forms of Buddhism and on the principal aspects of Indian civilization, but the subject to which he returned most spontaneously in conversation and in his writings was Buddhist philosophy, or more precisely Buddhist scholasticism. Whereas Western philosophy is always more or less systematic, Indian scholasticism strives less to combine and to construct, than to set up an evaluation of the mind and of the universe by defining, enumerating, and classifying concepts. Louis de La Vallée Pousin found in this a field of study conforming to his spontaneous and to his well considered aspirations, for never was there a mind less systematic. This characteristic manifested itself not only in his choice of subjects but in his research and in the manner in which he presented the results of this research. One of his most important works, *Bouddhisme*, has the subtitle *Opinions sur l'histoire de la dogmatique* ("Opinions on the History of Dogma"). He recalls in the Introduction (p. xii) that, according to the Buddha, the ignorant "recognize only a part of things and imprudently judge the whole". He always applied all of his efforts in seeing the different aspects of doctrines. For him, Buddhist ethics is not a collection of principles which direct the conduct of humans, but adapts them to the social milieu and evolve in parallel fashion to this milieu. He presents it rather as a jurisprudence, as a selection of prohibitions.

One of the most useful books that he wrote, *L'Inde au temps des Mauryas*, is above all a presentation of contradictory thesis in which modern erudition appears to be swallowed up: he however always maintains an equilibrium, a lucidity, an admirable patience, and facts which in another author would appear fastidious, taking under his pen taking on color, relief, and the intensity of life. "A book to be
written" one has said of this work. In fact, no literary anxiety if not that of clarity appeared in this work; precise facts, indisputable documents and their interpretation are also extricated from any artificial bonds that the author judged detrimental to the pure instruments of his work.

The desire to see the opposite aspects of problems never left him. One day he said to one of us who complimented him on one of his books, "There are some footnotes at the bottom of the pages which contradict the text . . ." He had us understand by this willfully paradoxical remark that he had chosen to place in this work opposing points of view, one after the other. From this we can see that he had a sometimes surprising method of expressing his ideas: he would advance in zigzags. He proceeded often through juxtaposed remarks. His style never brought about a change in the cohesion or in the unity of his thought. He did not seek to create any illusion either for the reader or for himself. Probity and sincerity were his masterful qualities, and he had a small bit of affectation to his sincerity.

But no one was less dogmatic than this specialist in dogmas. Very frequently at our pleasure, he would avoid anything that in a conversation, be it broached and directed by the speaker in a scientific direction, would appear to be tinged with pedantry, anything that would lead one to believe that he took himself seriously. The same worry is found in the numerous letters addressed to one of us where the serious answer solicited is bracketed with sudden changes having an irresistible comic effect. This attitude on several occasions led one to suppose that his religious convictions led him to mistake the various thesis that he presented. Was it not rather, himself whom he judged unworthy of attention? Better than elsewhere his character appeared in the numerous and valuable review articles which marked his work on Buddhism that appeared during almost a half century. Reviews, criticisms, controversies, are proposed and maintained in a fine, perceptive, and infinitely courteous manner. The well-chosen word takes the place of a long phrase; it is often unforeseen if not unforeseeable, but always precise.

One might ask if his aversion with respect to a systematic spirit did not come from that which, being ultimately impassioned, he mistrusted himself more than any other of the bonds of this passion. In politics and in religion, as in his relationship with his friends and those close to him, he was also so distant that one could say that he was the very soul of indifference and of lukewarmness. His sensibility explains the role that the criticism of his peers played in his academic career. And those that were acquainted with him know that the clash of ideas which followed the war of 1914 echoed sadly in his conscious and doubtlessly contributed to the ruin of his health by causing him to lose any peace he may have enjoyed.
After many years we saw him decline physically at a slow but unchanging pace; he became more and more thin and frail. And yet up to his last moments he maintained a fine and lucid mind and his scientific activity. He concluded the publication of two monumental works of scholarship: the *Siddhi* of Hsiian-tsang, and the *Abhidharmakośa* of Vasubandhu; he supervised the editing of the *Mélanges chinois et bouddhiques* to which he abundantly contributed; our *Bibliographie bouddhique* which he supported and sustained from its beginnings was always the object of his attentions. In the summer of 1936, he explained to one of us, in order to gain us over to his project, his last academic project the enormity of which did not alarm him: to establish an index of Buddhism which would be at one and the same time both literary and archaeological. One year later, in Switzerland, he pointed out with serenity to this same visitor that he had no more than a few weeks to live. Six months later, he would have reached the age of 69.

At the present, our duty is to contribute to the better knowledge and to the utilization of his work. As soon as circumstances permit, we shall publish in the *Bibliographie bouddhique* his analytic bibliography which is now finally ready. Our Master himself had the aid of one of us in completing it, but on the condition that he not see it published.

Marcelle Lalou
Jean Przyluski
The Sanskrit word "Abhidharma" means the systematic philosophy of Buddhism. From the time of the Buddha onward, the Buddha's disciples, and many later generations of his followers studied, analyzed, and re-classified the teachings of the Buddha, and in the process created a unique field of study which has come to be known as the Abhidharma. The development of Buddhist philosophy,—the Abhidharma—has continued to be developed up to the present day, especially within the field of Tibetan Buddhism.

The early part of this Abhidharma literature,—dating from the death of the Buddha to approximately the 5th century A.D.—is today preserved in Chinese translations, translations carried out largely by Hsuan-tsang in the mid-7th century; and the bulk of the later Abhidharma literature—dating from the 5th to the 12th century—is largely preserved in Tibetan translation. Only a small but important portion of this literature has been preserved in its original Sanskrit: Vasubandhu's *Abhidharmakosabhāsya*, and its commentary, Yasomitra's *Vyākhyā*. The student of the Abhidharma is therefore obliged to develop a reading ability in Buddhist Chinese, Tibetan, and of course, Sanskrit and Pali.

A significant Abhidhamma literature exists in the Pali language, a very close dialect of Sanskrit (the word "Abhidharma" is Sanskrit, the word "Abhidhamma" is Pali). In this Pali tradition of Theravada Buddhism (the predominant form of Buddhism in Ceylon, Burma, Thailand, Laos, and Cambodia), the Abhidhamma forms one of the Baskets (Pali: Pitaka) of canonical Buddhist scriptures, and so assumes the role of canonical authority. Even though the Pali Canon, the *Tipitaka*, was closed at the Third Council of the Theravadins held in approximately 237 B.C., Abhidhamma works continued to be composed after this date, although with less frequency. Theravadin scholar-monks continued to study the Abhidhamma, and this tradition gave rise to a subcommentarial literature composed in both Pali and the regional languages of South and Southeast Asia (Singhalese, Burmese, Thai, etc.). Much of this later, post-canonical Pali Abhidhamma literature remains unpublished, and almost all of it remains untranslated into any Western language.

So too only a small portion of the Sanskrit language Abhidharma literature exists in English translation, although at the present time slightly more exists in French.

Although English language materials for the study of the Abhidharma literature are quite limited,—especially when viewed in comparison with the bulk of the extant literature of this tradition,—there are some excellent books which may be read with profit by the beginning student of Buddhist philosophy.
The student would do well to read the excellent essay by Chogyam Trungpa Rimpoche, *Glimpses of the Abhidharma* (Boulder, Prajna Press, 1978) which distills the essential message of Buddhist scholasticism and demonstrates the importance of the Abhidharma to the sādhaka of the still vital Tibetan Buddhist tradition.

Another excellent work of great benefit to the student of Abhidharma is Prof. Herbert V. Guenther's *Psychology and Philosophy in the Abhidharma* (New Delhi, Motilal Banarsidass, 1st edition, 1970, and many subsequent editions) which gives the author's presentation and analysis of the content of both the Northern or Sanskrit Abhidharma tradition with that of its Southern or Pali cousin.

***

It may not be out of place here to say a few words, by way of a nīdāna, concerning my involvement with the *Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam*.

In the years 1964 to 1966 I was enrolled in Tokyo University, in the Department of Indian and Buddhist Studies, where I studied the text of Gyonen's *Risshū-kōyō* under the direction of Prof. Akira Hirakawa. After I had finished my studies on this text, I asked Prof. Hirakawa what he would recommend I study next. He asked me if I wanted to continue with *Vinaya* studies,—Prof. Hirakawa's specialty,—but I replied that I should like to study another field of Buddhism. Prof. Hirakawa then, recommended that I begin the study of Buddhist philosophy in the traditional manner, that is, with the study of Vasubandhu's *Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam* (in Japanese, the *Kusharon*). I replied that this would be a fine idea, and so in token of my new direction in study, Prof. Hirakawa gave me a set of books dealing with the philosophy of the *Kusharon*, the ten volume set, *Kusharon-kōgi* ("Lectures on the Kusharon"), a work which is the compilation of a series of 238 lectures given on the *Kusharon* by one Rev. Hōrei Sakurai (1861–1923). Rev. Sakurai was a cleric of the Higashi Honganji Tradition of Jōdo Shin Buddhism, and was the incumbent (jūshoku) of the Hakutoji temple, Fukuoka Prefecture, Kyushu. Rev. Sakurai gave these lectures in Kyushu in the last decade of the 19th century, and they were published in 1898 (Meiji 31) by the Shisōkan, Kyoto: the set of Sakurai's lectures that Prof. Hirakawa gave me had in turn been given to him by his teacher, Prof. Shōson Miyamoto (1893–1984) and so contained the annotation of both of these scholars.

Sakurai's book is a very useful scholarly tool, since his lectures were based on the text of the *Kusharon* (in Hsuan-tsang's Chinese translation) and the Chinese commentaries on this work by Fa-pao and P'u-kuang, two masters who had worked
directly with Hsüan-tsang. I began reading Sakurai's work in June of 1966 and completed it several months later. My reading of Sakurai's work taught me two things: 1) the commentaries of Fa-pao and P'u-kuang are both valuable sources of information about the contents of the Kusharon as seen through the eyes of two eminent Chinese scholar-monks, since they record the oral teaching of Hsüan-tsang concerning many of the philosophical positions presented in the Kusharon; but 2) for a thorough understanding of the Kusharon, it would be desirable, and in many places necessary to read the text of this work in its original language, Sanskrit.

At approximately this same time (the middle of 1966) a xerox copy of the Romanized Sanskrit text of the First Chapter (the Dhätunirdeśa) of the Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam began to circulate privately among the students in the Department of Indian and Buddhist Studies at Tokyo University. I was told that this copy was typed out from photographs secretly taken of a manuscript copy of the Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam discovered by Rahula Sarṅkṛtyāyana at the Śa-lu Monastery in Tibet in May of 1934. The photographs were taken of the manuscript which was then kept at the K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, Patna; the desire of the Japanese to see the original text of the Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam was so great, and the publication of this text had been delayed so long, that "drastic means" were called for, and, I was later told, a Japanese nun had secretly taken pictures of the manuscript and brought them back to Japan. In any case, I now had the First Chapter of the Sanskrit text of the Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam in my hands, and, upon my return to the United States, I began to study the text in earnest.

To aid my study and my subsequent teaching, I translated portions of Louis de La Vallée Poussin's French translation of the Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam (Brussels, Institute Belge des Hautes Études Chinoises, 1923 - 1931; reprint edition, 1971) into English. I began with the Ninth Chapter (the Pudgala-pratīṣṭedha) and not with the First Chapter, holding to the Asian superstition that one will never finish a work if one begins on its first page; I also Romanized the Sanskrit text of the Ninth Chapter, by now available in Prof. P. Prabhān's first edition (Patna, K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, 1967), and for two years I taught this Chapter as part of a Seminar in Reading Buddhist Texts at Brown University (Providence, Rhode Island). Reading and teaching this Chapter reinforced my earlier thought, namely that the Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam can best be understood from its Sanskrit original.

I then translated the First Chapter from the French of de La Vallée Poussin, and compared it with the original Sanskrit of Pradhān, and so began my work on a full translation from the French of de La Vallée Poussin, collated with the Sanskrit original of the text.
De La Vallée Poussin's annotation is based on three major sources. First, the
greater part of his commentary, both in his footnotes and frequently in the body
of the text itself, is based on the commentaries of Fa-pao and P'u-kuang: these
Chinese masters are responsible for determining the filiation of many of the
philosophical positions, objections, and replies (“The Vaibhāṣikas maintain”, “The
Sautrāntikas object”, etc) in the text. Likewise Fa-pao and P'u-kuang were
responsible for supplying most of the references to passages quoted from the
Āgamas, the Jñānapratibhāna (and its related pādasāstras, the Prakaraṇapāda, the
Vijñānakāya, etc.), the Vibhāṣā, and the works of Samghabhadra. In their
commentaries, Fa-pao and P'u-kuang also traced the development of many of the
Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam's ideas into later Chinese Mahāyāna thought.

In 1869 (Meiji 2), the eminent Japanese scholar-monk, Kyokuga Saeki
(1828–1891) published his edition of the Kusharōn, the so-called Kandō edition
of the Kusharōn, or simply, the Kandō-bon Kusharōn. Saeki's edition is rich with
annotation placed at the top (or “crown”, kan-) of the page of text. In his
Kandō-bon edition of the Kusharōn, Saeki gives all of the various references first
found by Fa-pao and P'u-kuang: he gives the name of the source, its volume and
page number, and in the marginal notes to the text, Saeki also gives the filiation of
thought (“The Vaibhāṣikas maintain”, etc., as above) first traced out by Fa-pao and
P'u-kuang.

Louis de La Vallée Poussin translated the Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam from the
Sanskrit as preserved by Yaśomitra, and from the Chinese of the Kandō-bon
edition of the Kusharōn. In fact, almost all of de La Vallée Poussin's references to
the Vibhāṣā and his marking of the filiation of the thought in the body of the text,
are taken directly from the work of Saeki. In those instances where the attribution
of a philosophical position is not in the body of the Sanskrit text, but is based on
de La Vallée Poussin's reading of Saeki, I have kept the attribution, but have
enclosed it in [square brackets] in the body of the translation. And when in his
footnotes de La Vallée Poussin refers to "the Japanese editor", he is referring to
Kyokuga Saeki.

In all instances, I have kept de La Vallée Poussin's footnotes, since they are a
valuable guide to the philosophy of the Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam, and to its roots
in earlier literature; my only addition to his work is that I have searched out the
Taishō Canon references to these works, since de La Vallée Poussin did not have
the Taishō Canon at his disposal when he was working on the Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam. (He did however have the Taishō Canon at his disposal when he
was working on the Vijñapti-mātratā-siddhi of Hsuan-tsang, cf. his Le Siddhi de
Hsuan-tsang). In the few instances where I was unable to find the Taishō Canon
references, I have kept the annotation as given by de La Vallée Poussin.

Also in many places in the text de La Vallée Poussin added a great deal of explanatory material: this I have also kept, since without it many important passages in the *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam* would remain unintelligible. Also, since de La Vallée Poussin did not have a Sanskrit copy of the *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam* as an integral text, but only as it was quoted in the body of Yasōmitra’s *Vyākhyā*, he grouped many of the *padas* of the Kārikās into single Kārikās (as did Hsüan-tsang). The Sanskrit manuscript of the *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam* however divides various Kārikās into five or six different *padas*: I have divided these Kārikās into their various *padas* to match the structure of the Sanskrit original.

In fact, it was my original intention to publish this work with the English translation on the right facing page, and the Romanized Sanskrit on the left facing page, and much work by me and my assistant, the Bangladeshi Bhikkhu, Ven. Lokananda, went into preparing the text in this manner. Unfortunately due to the high cost of publishing this work, this format had to be abandoned, but I hope that some day the *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam* may be reissued in this format.

A second concern of de La Vallée Poussin was to give the original Sanskrit of the Kārikās and to reconstruct those passages in the *Bhāṣyam* which were of special importance or difficulty: since the Sanskrit of the *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam* is now widely available, I have omitted all of these footnotes with the mention that in almost all cases, de La Vallée Poussin was correct in his reconstructions!

A third source for de La Vallee Poussin’s references was this great Belgian scholar’s encyclopediac knowledge of Indian Buddhist literature: these footnotes have of course also been kept, and it is they that stand as perhaps our greatest legacy from Louis de La Vallée Poussin.

***

Back in the United States, one day I happened to meet an old friend, the Rev. Hōryū Itō (1911–1985), who was at that time and for many years previous the Rimban of the Higashi Honganji Betsuin in Los Angeles. He asked me what I was studying, and I told him of my work on the *Kusharon*. He asked me what commentaries I was using, and I told him about the work of Hōrei Sakurai. Rimban Itō asked me how this work was regarded in Japan, and I told him of the praise that it had received from both Prof. Miyamoto and Prof. Hirakawa, and that a copy of this work was used by them as a symbol of the traditional study of
the *Kusharon*. Rimban Itō’s eyes clouded over, and he said softly, "Hōrei Sakurai was my father." From that time on Rimban Itō maintained a close interest in my work on the *Kusharon*, and it is sad that he did not live to see the completion of this work, a work which owes its very inception to the work of Hōrei Sakurai.

At this point I should like to thank a number of persons who contributed much to the completion of this work: first, Mrs Sara Webb, who has helped me much in translating the finer points of de La Vallée Poussin’s French; her aid has been and remains invaluable. I should also like to thank Mr Jean-Louis d’Heilly, who typed much of the translation of the *Abhidharmakosabhaśyam* into the computer of the University of Oriental Studies, who rendered me great assistance in making sure that the text was understandable, and who successfully urged me to translate into English the vast bulk of the technical Sanskrit terms kept by de La Vallée Poussin in the body of his text.

I should also like to express my gratitude to my parents, Olivia Maude (Arwedson) and Dr. L. Leo Pruden for their continued support of my studies both in America and in Japan: it is a source of regret that neither of them lived to see the completion of this work.

This work must be dedicated however to the small but eminent band of Japanese scholars whose work on the *Abhidharmakosabhaśyam* has kept alive the flame of traditional Buddhist scholarship in the 20th century, scholars such as Prof. Akira Hirakawa and Prof. Ken Sakurabe. May the merit of this publication accrue to their health and long life.

Los Angeles

June 1986

Leo M. Pruden
1. For example, Prof. Kōgen Mizuno lists some four major and sixteen minor Pali language commentaries to the *Abhidhammatthasangaha*, a work composed in tenth century Ceylon by the Elder Anuruddha; eighteen of these commentaries were composed in Burma. See Kōgen Mizuno, general editor, and U. Vepunla and Tadashi Toda, translators, *Abidammattasangaha: Nampō-bukkyō tetsugaku kyōgi gaisetsu*, p. 16, published by the Abidammattasangahakankōkai, 1980, privately printed. See also Mrs. Mabel Bode (=Mabel Haynes Bode), *The Pali Literature of Burma*, London, Royal Asiatic Society, 1909.


3. According to an account preserved in the 1321 work, the *Genkō-shakusho* (compiled by Kōkan Shiren, 1298-1346), the Far Eastern student of Buddhist philosophy is traditionally supposed to study the *Kusharon* (=the *Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam*) for eight years, and then follow this with a three years' study of the *Jō-Yuishikiiron* (=the *Vijnapti-matratā-siddhi*). In the words of the adage, *yuishiki sannen, kusha hachinen*; (the sequence is reversed for reasons of syllable count).

4. Much information concerning the life and career of Rev. Hōrei Sakurai was given to me by Mrs. Kazuko Itō, the widow of Rimban Hōryū Itō, and their son, the Rev. Noriaki Itō. I wish to express my appreciation for their aid.

5. Fa-pao, whose dates are unknown, worked with Hsuan-tsang on the translation of the *Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam* in 654; he also worked with Hsuan-tsang on his translation of the *Vibbhaśā* in 659, and in this latter instance he is reported to have objected to Hsuan-tsang's addition of sixteen additional characters to the text for purposes of elucidating an obscure point. Fa-pao is counted, together with P'u-kuang, as one of Hsuan-tsang's major disciples. After Hsuan-tsang's death in 664, Fa-pao is recorded to have worked with I-ching from 700 to 703; under I-ching, Fa-pao served as the proof-reader (ch'eng-i) for some twenty works. See Mochizuki, *Bukkyō-daijiten*, V.4661.

P'u-kuang, also an early disciple of Hsuan-tsang, worked on the translation of the *Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam*, and in addition is reported to have worked with Hsuan-tsang on his translation of the *Mahā-Prajñāparamitā Sūtra* in the period 656 to 663. His dates are also unknown. See Mochizuki, *op. cit.*, V.4408.

6. I began my teaching of the Abhidharma—more specifically readings from the text of the *Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam*—in the academic year 1970 - 1971 at Brown University, and I have continued this teaching at both the Nyingma Institute (Berkeley, California), and at the University of Oriental Studies (Los Angeles). When I first taught at the Nyingma Institute in the summer of 1971, I prepared a draft translation of my *Introduction* ("The Abhidharma: The Origins, Growth and Development of a Literary Tradition") for the benefit of the students, to serve as an introduction to the historical process that led to the growth of the Sanskrit tradition of Abhidharma literature. The first part of the essay is a free translation of the introductory section (pages 13 to 61) of Prof. Ken Sakurabe's outstanding Japanese translation of the first two chapters of the *Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam*, his *Kusharon no kenkyū* ("A Study of the *Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam*"), Kyoto, Hōzōkan, 1969 (first edition). The second part of this *Introduction* is a translation of pages 110 to 114 of Prof. Ryūjō Yamada's *Bongo Butten no shobunken* ("The Manuscript Sources of Sanskrit Buddhism", Kyoto, Heirakuji-shoten, 1959 [first edition]) which deals with the Sanskrit fragments of the Abhidharma literature. This part of the *Introduction* has also been augmented by the bibliographical material given in volume one of Prof. Akira Hirakawa's *Kusharon-sakuin* ("Index to the *Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam*", Tokyo, Daizō-shuppan kabushiki-kaisha, 1973).
7. Kyokuga Saeki appears to have been the first to term his works the "kandō" editions. His first Kandō-bon was his edition of the Kusharon, the Kandō Abidatsuma Kusharon, published by the Hozōkan, Kyoto, in 1869. He followed this by Kandō editions of the Sankoku-buppō-denzū-engi (1888), and the Yuishiki-sanruikyō-sen'yō and the Jō-Yuishikiron (both in 1890). Kandō editions were continued after his death (cf. the Immyō-sanjūsanka-bōsa-bōsange in 1895) by his disciples and students, Shundō Sugihara and Eto Senabe.

For the life of Kyokuga Saeki, see Mochizuki, op. cit., I.624.
The Abhidharma: The Origins, Growth and Development of a Literary Tradition

Leo M. Pruden

Today the word *abhidharma* signifies the third of the Three Pitakas (Skt: *Tripiṭaka*) or collections of scriptures that go to make up the full Buddhist Canon. These three Piṭakas, or collections, are: 1) the *Sūtras* or *Āgamas*, the words of the Buddha, directed to both laymen and clerics, dealing with a host of different topics: ethics, philosophical questions, legends and tales, etc.; 2) the *Vinaya*, directed to the monks and nuns of the Buddhist Sangha, spelling out the prohibitions to be followed by the clerics and injunctions on the carrying out of various seasonal events, adjudicating disputes, the distribution of property, etc.; and 3) the *Abhidharma Piṭaka*, a number of texts later in compilation than either the *Sūtra Piṭaka* or the *Vinaya Piṭaka*.

If the word *abhidharma* does not signify the Third Piṭaka in its totality, then the word signifies the contents of this Third Piṭaka, its style of thinking and writing, and thus a certain type of commentarial literature, the *Śastras* or commentaries on the *Sūtras* of the Buddha.

Since the *Sūtras* and *Vinaya*, it is believed, took their essential form before the Third Piṭaka was given its final form, the word *abhidharma* as used in the *Sūtras* and in the *Vinaya*, was a word that did not signify the Third Piṭaka. What then did the word *abhidharma* signify when it was first used in the *Sūtras* and *Vinaya*, in the reputed words of the Buddha?

There are two meanings to the word *abhidharma*: 1) referring to the Dharma; and 2) the higher, or superior Dharma.

The first person interested in the etymology of the term *abhi-dharma* was N.W. Geiger, in his work, *Pali Dhamma* (1921), where he states, "abhidhamma originally mean the highest Dhamma; such is the interpretation of later commentators, that is, abhidhamma as uttaradhamma." The earliest meaning of the word *abhidhamma*, he held, is "concerning the dhamma, or referring to the dhamma." In the *Sūtras*, indeed, this word always appears in the locative case, as *abhidhamme* ("with respect to Dhamma") and in this manner parallels the form *abhivinaye* ("concerning the Vinaya").

This definition ("concerning the dhamma") was adopted by the *Critical Pali Dictionary* (1935, lst edition) where this form was termed (p. 350) a prepositional compound, and the word itself defined as: "as regards the dhamma."
2. *Abhidhamma* as "higher dhamma".

The Pali Text Society's *Pali-English Dictionary* (1st edition 1921–1925, p. 65) gives the meaning of the word *abhidhamma* as: "the special Dhamma, i.e., 1) the theory of the doctrine, the doctrine classified, the doctrine pure and simple (without any admixture of literary grace or of personalities, or of anecdotes, or of arguments *ad personam* . . .)". This is a definition adopted by G.P. Malalasekera, *Dictionary of Pali Proper Names*, and by Étienne Lamotte, in his *Histoire de Bouddhisme indien*, p. 1971.

Among the English translations from the Pali Sutras (Pali: *sutta*; in their collections known as the *Nikāyas*), C.A.F. Rhys-Davids gives "the advanced teaching of Doctrine" (*Dialogues*, III, 19.246); F.L. Woodward gives "extra doctrine" (*Gradual Sayings* I.276) and "the further doctrine" (*Gradual Sayings*, V, p. 19, 139 ff); E.M. Hare gives "More-Dhamma" (*ibid.* III.85, IV. 267); and Lord Chalmers gives "quintessential Doctrine" (*Further Dialogues* I.155) and "higher branches of the Doctrine" (*ibid.*, I.133).

Kōgen Mizuno gives, as a definition of *abhidhamma* in his *Index to the Pali Canon* (Part II, p. 34), the "superior dhamma", the "higher dhamma", and the "most distinguished dhamma".

E.J. Thomas, in his *History of Buddhist Thought* (p. 159, 276) gives "special dhamma" and "further-dhamma" as translations for *abhidhamma*. T.W. Rhys-Davids defines *abhi-dhamma* and *abhivinaya* as "the higher subtleties of the Dhamma and Vinaya".

From the above then we can see that there are two schools of interpretation concerning the meaning of the word *abhidhamma*, a fact pointed out by I.B. Horner in her article "Abhidhamma Abhivinaya in the First Two Piṭakas of the Pāli Canon", in *Indian Historical Quarterly* XII.3 (Sept. 1941), pp. 291–310. According to Horner, the meaning of the word *abhidhamma*, in the Pāli Canon, "fluctuates" between these two definitions (the non-judgmental "concerning the dhamma", and the judgmental "higher, superior (hence, better) dhamma"), but that in point of fact, these two meanings of the word are not mutually exclusive.

According to Ken Sakurabe, Geiger's definition of *abhidhamma* ("concerning the dhamma") is correct, whereas the Pali Text Society and I.B. Horner rely overmuch on the traditional interpretations of later Singhalese commentators.

Let us then take a look at the usage of the word *abhidhamma* as it is used in the Pāli Canon of the Theravādins. Following are some examples of these two words, *abhidhamma* and *abhivinaya*, used together as a set phrase in the Canon:

1. *Vinaya Piṭaka*, I, p. 64:
aparehi pi bhikkhave pañc'āṅgehi samannāgatena bhikkhunā na upasampādetabbam, na nissayo dātabbo, na sāmanero upaṭṭāpetabbo: na patibalo hoti antevāsim vā saddhivihārīm vā abhisamācārikāya sikkhāya sikkhāpetum, ādibrahmacāriyikāya sikkhāya vinetum, abhidhamme vinetum, abhivinaya vinetum, uppannam diṭṭhigataṁ dhammadto vivectum viveçāpetum.

"And monks, if a monk is not possessed of five further qualities he should not ordain . . . a novice should not attend him: if he is not competent to make a pupil or one who shares a cell train in the training regarding the fundamentals of conduct, to lead him in the training regarding the fundamentals of the Brahmāfaring, to lead him in what pertains to dhamma, to lead him in what pertains to discipline, to discuss or get (another) to discuss, by means of dhamma, a false view that has arisen . . ." (translation by I.B. Horner, SBB XIV, p. 84; see also Horner’s discussion of abhidhamma, abhivinaya in SBB XIII, Introduction, p. x and following).

This same passage is translated by Rhys-Davids and Oldenburg, SBE, XIII, pp. 184–5):

"And also in other five cases, oh Bhikkhus, a Bhikku should not confer, etc.: when he is not able to train an antevāsika or a saddhivihārika in the precepts of proper conduct, to educate him in the elements of morality, to instruct him in what pertains to the Dhamma, to instruct him in what pertains to the Dhamma a false doctrine that might arise . . .”

In the above text the words are given in the locative case, which in Pali means “with reference to”, “pertaining to”. Here the word abhidhamma refers to the details of the dhamma (i.e., Sūtra) study, and to the details of Vinaya study. Horner, Rhys-Davids, and Oldenburg all agree in this interpretation.

2. Dīgha Nikāya, III, 267:


"And furthermore, friends, he loves the doctrine, the utterance of it is dear to him, he finds exceeding joy in the advanced teaching of both Doctrine and Discipline.” (T.W. and C.A.F. Rhys-Davids, SBB, XC IV, p. 246; see also footnote 2, where Buddhaghosa’s gloss on this passage is given).

In this above example (which is in Av 24, 90, 201, 339) the ideal monk is
described. Horner feels that two *dhammas* are spoken of: 1) *dhamma-kāmo*, and 2) *abhidhamma* and that *abhidhamma* is used to distinguish it from the first and lower type of dhamma. According to Sakurabe, this is a forced meaning, an interpretation not necessary for an understanding of the passage.

3. *Majjhima Nikāya*, I, p. 472:

āraññaken'āvuso bhikkhunā abhidhamme abhivinaya yogo karaṇīyō. Sant'āvuso āraññakaṁ bhikkhurīm *abhidhamme* abhivinayā pañham pučchitaṁ. Sace āvuso āraññako bhikkhu *abhidhamme abhivinayē* pañhaṁ puṭṭho na sampāyati tassa bhavanti vattāro:

... āraññaken'āvuso bhikkhunā ye te santā vimokhā atikkamma rūpe aruppā tattha yogo karaṇīyo ... ārannaken'āvuso bhikkhunā uttarimanussdhamme yogo karaṇīyo.

"Your reverences, earnest study in Further-Dhamma, in Further-Discipline should be made by a monk who is forest-gone. Your reverences, there are those who will question a monk who is forest-gone on Further-Dhamma and Further-Discipline. If, your reverences, a monk who is forest-gone, on being asked a question on Further-Dhamma, on Further-Discipline, does not succeed in answering it, there will be those who speak about him and say . . .

"Your reverences, earnest study should be made by a monk who is forest-gone concerning those that are the peaceful deliverances and are incorporeal having transcended material shapes . . .

"Your reverences, earnest study in states of further-men would be made by a monk who is forest-gone . . ." (English translation by I.B. Horner, *Middle Length Sayings*, II, p.145).

Here Horner maintains that since the three accomplishments of the forest-dwelling monk are all put in the locative case (*abhidhamme, abhivinaye, yogo . . .*), *abhidharma* and *abhivinaya* refer to superior states of attainment. According to Sakurabe, however, this passage is like the *Dīgha* passage (no. 2 above). This occurrence of the terms *abhidhamma-abhivinaya* is the only place in the *Sūtras* where *abhidharma* and *abhivinaya* are ranked together with supernormal states of attainment, but such an explanation as Horner’s is not necessary for understanding the sense of this passage.

3. *Abhidhamma* alone.
There are, to be sure, a number of passages where the word *abhidhamma* occurs apart from the word *abhivinaya*.

1. *Majjhima Nikāya*, I, p. 214 gives:

\[
\text{idh'āvuso sāriputta dve bhikkhū abhidhammakathāni kathenti, te aṇṇamaṇṇaṁ paṇīhari pucchanti, aṇṇamaṇṇassā paṇīhari putthā vissajjenti no ca saṁcāḍenti, dharmā ca nesaṁ kathā pavattāni hoti.}
\]

"In this connection, reverend Sāriputta, two monks are talking on further dhamma; they ask one another questions; in answering one another's questions they respond and do not fall, and their talk on dhamma goes forward."

2. *Majjhima Nikāya*, II, p. 239:

\[
\text{taṃsātiha, bhikkhave, ye vo maya dhammā abhiṇṇa desotā, seyyathiddhānī: cattāro satipaṭṭhānā, cattāro sammappadhānā, cattāro iddhipādā, paṇc'indriya, pānce balāni, satta bojhāṅgā, ariyo aṭṭhaṅgiko maggo,—tattha sabbe'va samaggehi sammodamānehi avivadamānehi sikkhitabbān; te saṁ ca vo, bhikkhave, samaggānāṁ sammodamānānaṁ avivadamānānam sikkhatarh, siyāmsu dve bhikkhū abhidhamme nānāvādā.}
\]

"Wherefore, monks, those things taught to you by me out of superknowledge, that is to say the four applications of mindfulness, the four right efforts, the four bases of psychic power, the five controlling faculties, the five powers, the seven links in awakening, the ariyan eightfold Way—all together, in harmony and without contention you should train yourselves in each and all of these. But when you, monks, all together, in harmony and without contention have trained yourselves in these, there might be two monks speaking differently about Further-Dhamma." (English translation by I.B. Horner, *Middle Length Sayings*, III, p. 25.)

After the Buddha has taught, through his *dhammā-abhiṇṇa* (his higher or superior knowledge of the dharma), the thirty-seven factors of enlightenment, two monks are now depicted as having *abhidhamme nānāvāda*, "differing views on abhidhamma," and the other monks should try to settle the contentions of these two. The 37 dharmas so taught are by definition *dhamma abhiṇṇa*, or *abhidhamma*. Thus the two monks' contentions are regarding these itemized, 37 superior dharmas. This is the opinion of I.B. Horner.

Sakurabe points out that the word *dhammā* is given in the plural whereas
Pruden

abhidhamma is given in the singular locative case, so this connection between dhammā-abhiññā and abhidhamma is unnatural. Geiger translates this passage as “zwei Bhikkhu, die über den dhamma verschiedenes aussagen,” and so translates abhidhamme as “concerning the teaching.”

4. Abhidhamma-kathā.

The phrase abhidhamma-kathā occurs some three times in the Pali Canon.

1. Majjhima Nikāya, I, p. 214:

    idhāvuso sāriputta dve bhikkhū abhidhammakathāṁ kathenti, te aṭṭhamaññāṁ panham pucchanti, aṭṭhamaññassa pañham putthā vissajjenti no ca sāmsādenti, dharmmi ca nesaṁ kathā pavattani hoti.

    "In this connection, reverend Sāriputta, two monks are talking on further dhamma; they ask one another questions; in answering one another’s questions they respond and do not fall, and their talk on dhamma goes forward."

In this passage the phrase abhidhamma-kathā is followed by the words dhammi . . . kathā . . . So too the following passages from Majjhima Nikāya, I, p. 218:

    sādhu sādhu sariputta, yathā tāṁ Moggallāno va saṁma byākaramāno byākareyya. Moggallāno hi Sāriputta dhammakathiko ti.

    "It is good, Sāriputta, it is good. It is so that Moggallāna, in answering you properly, should answer. For, Sāriputta, Moggallāna is a talker on dhamma." (I.B. Horner, Middle Length Sayings, I, p. 270; see also her note on this passage.)

Here we see that anyone who gives a correct, clear account of dhamma is a dhamma-kathiko, a "speaker on dhamma." But later commentators (namely, Buddhaghosa, in his Asl. p. 29) terms a dhamma-kathiko to be an abhidhamma-bhikkhu, a monk who specializes in the study (and teaching) of the abhidhamma.

In another passage (Anguttara, III, p. 392), a monk who can do abhidhamma-kathā well is to be respected and honored. According to Sakurabe, this refers to one who can preach correctly and well, and the term abhidhamma in this passage as yet has no specific sense of a superior doctrine, but rather just the superior talent of being able to present the dharma well.

In another passage (Anguttara, III, p. 107) an ignorant monk confusion
abhidharma-talk, and becomes verbose and long-winded (vedalla-kathā) and, by
doing so, pollutes the Dharma and the Vinaya.

5. Traditional Explanations of Abhidhamma.

In the Pāli commentarial literature, the word abhidhamma clearly means "a
special, superior dharma." This is seen in some of the words and phrases used by
the later Pāli commentators in describing the abhidhamma.

In commentaries on the Sūtras, the abhidharma is termed uttara-dhamma,
"the highest dharma," and abhi-visiththa dhamma, "the very distinguished
dhamma."

In commentaries on the Abhidhamma, the words dhamma-atireka (unique
dhamma) and abhamma-visesa (distinguished) are used. Abhidhamma is called in
the plural vuddhimanto dhammā (the expanded, augmented dhammas), salak-
khana-dhammā (unique dhammas), pūjitā dhammā (dhammas to be honored,
worshipped), parichinnā dhammā (special dhammas), and adhikā dhammā (ex-
cellent dhammas). Such traditional Pali commentators have influenced the Western
translators of the Suttas to see in the word abhidhamma more than it probably
originally intended (as Rhys-Davids, Woodward, Hare, Chalmers, et al.)

This understanding was roughly the same in the case of the Sanskrit tradition
of Northern Buddhism. In the Chinese translation of the Majjhima Nikāya,
termed the Madhyama Āgama in Sanskrit and traditionally held, in Far Eastern
Buddhism, to be a Sarvāstivādin compilation), we see such phrases as "He
discusses the very deep abhidharma," or "He speaks the very profound abhi-
dharma . . ." (T. 1, p. 450a, p. 634c, p. 688c, and p. 727b which corresponds to
Majjhima, I, p. 214). The translation of the phrase abhidharma-katham kathenti
("he speaks abhidharma-talk," as above Majjhima, I, p. 214) is, in the Chinese
translation, prefaced by the word "deep" or "profound" (Skt. gambhiram), added
by the translator, based on his idea of the Abhidharma as a unique and superior
teaching.

6. Abhidhamma in the Mahāvibbāṣa

The major Sarvāstivādin compendium of thought, the Mahāvibbāṣa (The
Great Commentary) gives a full list of synonyms and definitions of the word
abhidharma (T. 27, p. 4) recognized by various Sarvāstivādin masters, as well as
by masters of various other traditions (the Mahiśāsakas, the Dharmottaras, the
Grammarians, etc.), which reflect by and large the prevailing traditional definition
of abhidharma as "a superior teaching"; but in the *Mahāvibhāṣā*’s list of definitions, covering some 20 pages in its Chinese translation, the definition "concerning the dharma" appears a large number of times also.

The *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam* reflects this approach when, in its analysis of the word abhidharma, it says that abhi means abhimukha, "facing," "with reference to," "in the direction of," "taking something as the object of study or analysis."

7. The *Abhidhamma Piṭaka*.

From whence then did the third collection of writings, the Third Pitaka, the *Abhidhamma Piṭaka*, arise? There are two major scholarly opinions concerning how the *Abhidhamma Piṭaka* came into existence.

The first opinion was initially propounded by Taiken Kimura in his book *Abidatsuma-ron no kenkyū* (*A Study of the Abhidharma Śāstras*, now vol. VI of the *Kimura Taiken Zenshū*.) According to Kimura, abhidharma signified "concerning the dharma," and soon referred to discussions centered on the dhammas, their various classifications, itemizations, etc. This discussion was termed abhidhamma-kathā (kathā = discussion, debate), and such discussions came to be collected together to form the *Abhidhamma Piṭaka*. This view is the generally accepted view among Japanese scholars. (For this view in recent Japanese publications, see *Bukkyogaku-jiten*, edited by Taya, Ōchō, and Funabashi, 1955 edition, under the entry abidatsuma, p. 6; and the article "Bukkyō tetsugaku no saishō no tenkai" by Tetsuro Watsuji, in the *Watsuji Tetsuro Zenshū*, vol. 5, p. 311, 344).

The second view was introduced by Geiger (in his *Pali Dhamma*, p. 118 ff.) and has been adopted by most Europeans (as A. Bareau, *Dhammasaṅgīni*, traduction annotée, 1951, p. 8 ff.; Étienne Lamotte, *Histoire*, p. 197; E. Frauwallner, *WZKSO* (1964), p. 59; see also Pāli Text Society, *Pali-English Dictionary*, under māṭikā). This opinion holds that the earliest form of what we now call the *Abhidhamma Piṭaka* is seen in what is termed in Pali the māṭikā (Skt: mārka). In the Pāli Canon there very frequently occurs (some 18 times) the set phrase: dhammadharo vinayadharo māṭikādharo ("holding, grasping," i.e. "study and recitation of Dhamma, of Vinaya, of Māṭikā"). Here there are three distinct objects of study, the Dhamma (the Sūtras), the Vinaya, and the Māṭikās, or "summaries".
8. The Mātikā.

The word mātikā is used in a variety of contexts. It is used to signify: 1. commentarial literature on the sūtras (Pat. I.1); 2. the books that go to make up the Abhidhamma Piṭaka (Asl., p. 3); and 3. commentaries not included within the Abhidhamma Piṭaka (Visn. p. 536, 546, 626, etc.).

Generally then, the meaning of mātikā is: a list of items or words that serve as the object of debate or discussion, the technical terms of the commentarial literature.

Within the Vinaya Piṭaka, the word mātikā is used in the order: Vibhaṅga, Khandhaka, Parivāra, and Mātikā, so that here the word means the Patimokkha list of rules, that is, the essential items or rules of the Vinaya, devoid of illustration and elaboration.

So mātikā with reference to the Suttas and Vinaya has points of similarity: the usage in both contexts signifies a bare, skeletal itemization of words or terms apart from their explanations or elaborations.

In the commentarial literature, then, mātikā signifies an (earlier) bare-bones list of dhammas, which underwent later elaboration, and the eventual codification of this elaboration developed into the various books of the Pali Abhidhamma Piṭaka. In the Vinaya, then, the mātikā referred to the Pratimokkha list of rules, which mātikā then led to the elaboration of these rules, the circumstances surrounding their promulgation by the Buddha, the exceptions to the rules, their penalties, etc.

The earliest meaning of the word mātikā, then, was merely a list. It was only later that the word mātikā came to mean the Patimokkha rules themselves (the present-day meaning of the word), a change in meaning from "a list" to "the List," a change likewise seen in its further meaning as a list of technical terms, of dhammas, used in abhidharma discussions.

Thus the word mātikā, as used in Vinaya Piṭaka, means a list of essential items (here the Vinaya rules) within the Vinaya Piṭaka; when the word is used in the Suttas, it refers to a list of items (a list of dhammas) within the Suttas.

Within the Suttas, the word mātikā occurs, according to Sakurabe, in only those passages in a later stratum of the Canon, texts which themselves are already close to being abhidharmic texts. Likewise this is the case with the Vinaya Piṭaka: the word occurs in its later passages, or in passages that have already assumed a commentarial status. So the list: dhamma-vinaya-mātikā could conceivably be translated "the teaching, its monastic rules, and the itemized lists of their contents or essentials."
One Japanese scholar even goes to far as to say that the phrase *bahussuto agatāgamo dhammadharo vinayadharo mātikādharo* be interpreted by *agata-āgamo* equalling *dhamma dharo*, and *vinaya* equalling *mātika* (Egaku Mayeda, in his *Genshi Bukkyō Seiten no Seiritsu-shi kenkyū*, p. 194), that is, "the learned *agata-āgamo* (understander of the tradition) who is a *dhamma-dharo*, (and the learned) upholder of the *Vinaya* who is an upholder of *mātika*.


There are several passages in the scriptures that do show that the term *mātrkā* was seen as synonymous with the word *abhidharma*.

A. In one text preserved in Chinese translation (T. 24, p. 408b), vol. 40 of the *Kṣudrakavastu* of the Mūla-Sarvāstivādin *Vinaya*, it states that after the First Council had finished reciting the *Sūtras* and the *Vinaya*, Kātyāyana said, “Persons of later generations will be of little wisdom and of dull faculties; their understanding will be based on the text [of scriptures], and they will not penetrate to its deeper meaning. Now I shall myself recite the *Mātrka*, in order that the meanings of the *Sūtras* and the *Vinaya* will not be lost.” He then recited the 37 components of enlightenment (the *bodhyāṇgas*, see above, Majj. II. 239), and he then said "Know therefore, this is the *Sūtra*, this is the *Vinaya*, this is the *Abhidharma*.” Here then *Mātrkā* means the itemized dharmas in the *Sūtras* and the *Vinaya*, and the identification is made between it and the *Abhidharma*.

B. The identification is also made in the *Kathāvaththu*, reputedly the latest work in the Pali *Abhidhamma Pitaka*, where in the "Journal of the Pali Text Society," 1898, p. 7, Geiger regards this identification as being the original word of the Buddha.

C. This identification is also made in the *Aśoka-avadāna*, the biography of the Emperor Aśoka; see its Chinese translation, the *O-yü-wang ch'uan*, T. 50, p. 113c.

D. In the Yogācāra’s huge encyclopaedic work, the *Yogācarabhūmi*, vol. 81 (T. 30, p. 753b), one of the twelve classes of literature into which all Buddhist literature is divided is *upadeśa*, discussions or debates wherein all the dharmas are correctly analyzed. Here *upadeśa* is otherwise termed *mātrkā* or *abhidharma*. Further, this *mātrkā* is an exhaustive and thorough-going analysis (of the dharmas).

From the above, then, we can see that the *Mātikās* (or *Mātrkās*) performed an important function in the development of the corpus of Buddhist literature, as admitted in traditional Buddhist literature itself.

By itemizing the component parts of the *Dharma* and the *Vinaya*, the
Mātrkā did play an important part in the later elaboration which is Abhidharma literature. However, the Abhidharmikas worked on these lists, minutely analyzed the items on these lists, and then proceeded to give long, exhaustive treatises on each item. So the Mātrkā represents but one aspect of the whole picture of the growth of the Abhidharma.

If the Abhidhamma was merely speaking on the dhamma as some scholars maintain, and if the Mātrikā served as the nucleus of later Abhidhamma elaborations, why, when the literature was codified into a Piṭaka, was it named the Abhidhamma Piṭaka, and not the Mātrikā Piṭaka? It appears then that the Mātrikās did not directly develop into the Abhidharma literature as we now have it.

As Kimura has shown, in the earliest Buddhist Sangha, abhidhamma-katha—discussion on the dharma—had a direct relationship with the later development of the commentarial literature on the Dhamma, the Abhidhamma commentaries. In the process, there were two tendencies; one: to summarize and to itemize, and two: to analyze and elaborate. This latter tendency came to predominate, and the name for this—abhidhamma—came to be attached permanently to this new corpus of literature.

10. Abhidharma in the Āgamas: the Religion of the Āgamas.

There are abhidharmic tendencies in the extant sutras, in Pāli as well as in those preserved in Chinese translation. Let us say a few words first, however, about the religion of the early Buddhist canon, the religion of the Āgamas.

According to de La Vallée Poussin, all the teachings of the Buddha were not publically given out. Instead, much of the philosophy and the more subtle forms of the teaching were embodied in texts which were reserved for the study of monks in their monasteries; and the Āgamas (or Nikāyas), the earliest form of the Buddhist sermons which have been preserved for us, are such philosophical texts as were transmitted from one generation of monks to those of a subsequent generation. Such texts are then the "clericalized" texts, and in these texts we see only a small bit of the popular side of early Buddhism.

Such is the case, to be sure, in any religion, and this is especially so in the case of Indian religions. Any Indian religion has two sides to it: a clerical, well worked-over doctrine, and a popular aspect of the religion, which includes many elements brought over in the mind of the new converts to the religion. But the important point to remember is that the extant literature of any religion is the technical literature used in the monasteries. The real face of early Buddhism in all of its aspects cannot be gotten at only through its literature, but must also be obtained
such a mass Buddhism was the Buddhism that preceded the canon, “precanonical Buddhism” (Bouddhisme precanonique). Its contents were not only a darśana—a systematic school of Indian philosophy, a consistent world-view—but a faith concerned with spirits and the release of these spirits from the round of birth and death, having, according to scholars, little in common with the doctrines of anītya, anātman, and duḥkha so often stressed in the Āgamas (see de La Vallée Poussin’s Nirvāṇa, 1925, p. 85, 115, 131). The spread of Buddhism was dependent upon its moral teaching, the personality of its founder, its wisdom embodied in memorable sentences and couplets (the Dhammapada or Udaṇṇavarga), coupled with popular animal tales (the Jātakas) (see The Way to Nirvāṇa, 1917, Chap. V). Buddhism was also closely related to ancient Indian nature worship, the worship of certain trees, and the veneration of snakes.

Buddhism also came to be changed, especially on its popular level, by virtue of the influence of non-Buddhist religions, through the conversion to Buddhism of many non-Buddhists who brought their own ideas into the company of older believers. Popular Buddhist religion absorbed much of the pan-Indian pantheon of deities. However formal and set its doctrines might have been, most of the believers of Buddhism were but "demi-civilized" or semi-civilized (Bouddhisme, 1909, p. 349 ff.). Such is also the view of A.B. Keith (Buddhist Philosophy in India and Ceylon, 1923) and C.A.F. Rhys-Davids (Śākya or Buddhist Origins, 1931, p. 431 ff.).

11. The Āgamas and the Nikāyās.

This above view was strongly opposed by Stcherbatsky (The Conception of Buddhist Nirvāṇa, 1927). De La Vallée Poussin would appear to oppose the popular elements of early Buddhism to the scholarly works of later Buddhism: such would imply that there is something essentially different between early Buddhism and Abhidharma Buddhism. Stcherbatsky held that the Buddha was a product of the philosophical environment of his time, and that he obviously had a well-defined philosophy with its attendant metaphysic.

But even if the set passages and formulas were removed from the Āgamas, de La Vallée Poussin and Rhys-Davids cannot say that Buddhism is merely a faith concerned with spirits and immortality. So-called popular Buddhism and “pure” clerical Buddhism cannot be so clearly distinguished one from the other. Yet the Āgamas do not give a clear picture of early Buddhism, especially in its popular
aspects: the Āgamas are the traditions (āgama) of a scholarly elite, as de La Vallée Poussin maintains.

The Āgamas, literally the "transmitted" (doctrines) were in a sense also Nikāyas (compilations): the transmitted doctrines were collected together, formalized, and their vocabulary became technical terms; these terms came to be analyzed through vibhaṅgas (long, explanatory definitions) and niruktas (etymologies); these same terms were also organized on the basis of numerical categories or on the basis of similarities (saṁyukta) into mātrkās. So the tendencies that led ultimately to a systematic Abhidharma literature led in this same process to the systematization of the Āgamas (the traditions) into Nikāyas (formal literary compilations).

In summary, the Āgamas are doctrinal compilations from an early stage of Buddhism, and their recensions (Nikāyas) are in a sense Abhidharmic compilations and, being largely abhidharmic in tendency, they led ultimately to the growth of the Abhidharma as a separate literary genre.


Abhidharmic tendencies, tendencies that led eventually to the growth of a separate literature, can be seen early in some scriptures. The use of numerical categories is one such tendency.

A. The Saṅgīti-suttanta (the "recited" sūtra, Dīgha Nikāya no. 33, vol. III, pp. 207-271) lists a variety of items in a list from one to ten (one item, two items, three items . . .). Dīgha Nikāya no. 34, the Daśuttara-suttanta, lists items in a list from one to ten, but now analyzes them according to various other categories, marking then a further development along abhidharmic lines.

This same tendency is seen in the case of the Aṅguttara Nikāya (aṅguttara, "increasing by an item"), which classifies all of the suttas in its collection on the basis of numerical categories: thus all suttas dealing with any group of "four" items are collected together, followed by all suttas dealing with "five" of anything (up to eleven items). This scheme then forms the basis for this one collection of texts, or nikāya.

B. Many other suttas or āgamas were joined to one another on the basis of their affinity in subject matter. To be sure, this is not sharply distinguishable from the above numerical classification, but now the items are more meaningfully arranged. Such texts are called saṁyuktas (Pali: saṁyuttas) or "conjoined" texts.
Examples of this tendency are the Sala-ayatanavagga (vagga = section or chapter) in the Majjhima Nikaya, and the Kamma-samyutta vagga in the Majjhima: i.e., all those texts dealing with the ayatanas were grouped together, as were all those texts dealing with karma.

This too became the guiding principle in the compilation and editing of the Sanyutta Nikaya and parts of the Khuddaka Nikaya.

C. The concept of an expanded commentary (a vibhaṅga) is best seen in individual suttas in the Sanyutta Nikaya and in the Majjhima Nikaya. Many such texts have the word vibhaṅga in their titles:

Sanyutta Nikaya XII.2: the Vibhaṅgam (II, pp. 2-4), which is an expansion of XII.1 (deśana); XLV.8, the Vibhaṅgo (V, pp. 8–10), which is a commentary on the Noble Eightfold Path; and LI.20, the Vibhaṅga (V, pp. 276–281), which is a commentary on the siddhi, or supernormal powers, of a Buddha.

The Majjhima Nikaya has Majj. 135, the Cula-kamma-vibhaṅga sutta (cula = smaller, lesser) (III, pp. 202–206), which treats of Karma, and is followed by the Mahā-kamma vibhaṅga-sutta, Majj. 136 (pp. 207–215) which is an elaboration of certain of the former sutta’s sections; Majj. 137, the Sala-ayatanavibhaṅga-sutta on the six ayatanas (p. 215–222) and all of its following suttas are vibhangas: Majj. 138, 139, 140 (on the dhdtus), 141, 142. Synonymous with the vibhaṅga is the word vedalla, which also means “expanded”: as the Cula-vedalla-sutta, and the Mahā-vedalla-sutta. The Buddha would give a short sermon, and one of his disciples, such as Kātyāyana, or the Buddha himself, would elaborate on it; or the disciples would discuss it among themselves, and in this way it would reach its present form.

The āgamas (in their Chinese translations) which have the characteristics of vibhangas can be rather closely identified with these same Suttas extant in Pali: they are largely the same text (especially Majj. 131 to 142, as above), a fact which does not hold for the other āgamas.

Thus abhidharmic tendencies are clearly seen in many texts in both Pāli and Chinese, so far advanced in many cases that it is merely a short step to real Abhidhamma literature, as the Samgūti-sutta has led to the Samgūti-pariyāya. There is in fact very little internal change from abhidharmic āgamas to Abhidhamma works; indeed, greater internal changes have come about in later Abhidharma works at a susequent period, as we shall see below.

13. Sarvāstivādin Āgamas.

There are sectarian, Sarvāstivādin āgamas, but there must have been some
chronological distance between the Sarvāstivādin āgamas and those āgamas in their final shape (in the form that we have them today) before the split of the Sarvāstivādins from the rest of the Sangha.  

Thus early āgamas, non-sectarian in content, led to the growth of sectarian, i.e., Sarvāstivādin āgamas, which in turn led to the growth of Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma. So to know the Sarvastivadin Abhidharma, it is important to know the Sarvastivadin āgamas. This however is almost impossible.

In the Abhidharma literature, when for instance the four types of pratyayas (conditions) are mentioned (as in Kośa T. 29, p. 36b, and the Nyāya-anusāra, T 29 p. 440a) the reference "as given in the Sūtra" is given, and since this particular sūtra can be fully reconstructed (as explained below), this one text can be claimed for the Sarvāstivādins. However this specific sūtra is today not found in any of the extant Pāli Canon or in the Chinese translation of the Āgamas.

Since the publication, in the latter half of the 18th century, of the scholar-monk Hōdō’s work, the Kusha-ron Keikō, it has come to be generally agreed upon by scholars that the Madhyama Āgama and the Kṣudraka Āgama, as they presently exist in Chinese translation, are, if not Sarvāstivādin in affiliation and editorship, at least very close to it. But as we know from the āgamas quoted in Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma works, there was a difference between the Sarvāstivādin āgamas that exist in Chinese and those āgamas that are directly quoted by the Sarvastivadin Abhidharma literature. How great a distance there was, we have no idea.

It is clear further that the Sarvāstivādin authors of their Abhidharma literature were clearly aware that there were sutras which claimed various sectarian affiliations and that there were differences among them. In the Kośa, phrases like “sūtras of the Mahiśāsakas” (p. 11.12a; 12.16a), “sūtras of the Kāśyapīyas” (p. 23.17a), “sūtras of the Śhaviravādins” (p. 19.19b), and sūtras of other groups (4.48a, 5a) occur very often. In one passage in the Kośabhāsyam where the question whether sukha (pleasure) is experienced by the mind, or by the mind and by the body (the former is a Sautrāntika position, the latter, Sarvāstivādin), the Sarvāstivādins quote as proof of their position a sūtra which the Sautrāntikas criticize by saying that "all sūtras hold that pleasure is experienced by the mind, whereas the sūtras of the Sarvāstivādins add the word 'body' in this passage.”

In another passage, the Nyāya-anusāra (T. 29, p. 330a-b) says, “This is not the teaching of the Buddha, but of the sūtras. We see differences in words and meanings in the scriptures of the different sectarian groups. Because the sūtras have different meanings, the sectarian teachings are different. That is, the
Sautrāntikas recite *The Sūtra of the Seven States of Existence*, and (on the basis of this) posit, in their *Abhidharma*, the existence of an *antara-bhava* (an intermediary existence), and so too posit a gradual manifestation of insight. There is also a text, *The Basic Teachings of All the Schools* (*Sarva-darśana mūla-parīyāya?*) which is not read by the Sarvāstivādins. The work *The Simile of Grasping with the Fist* (*the Hasta-dvala?*) collects together many scriptural quotations, but there are those groups, among all groups, who do not read this work. For although it collects together a number of scriptures which are unanimously read by all the sects, yet there are differences in their phraseology."

So it would thus be worthwhile to attempt a reconstruction of the sectarian *sūtras* of the Sarvāstivādins.


How can we know the Sarvāstivādin *āgamas*, and especially those *āgamas* quoted by Vasubandhu in the *Kośabhāṣyam*? One source is a commentary on the *Kośabhāṣyam* by one Samathadeva, an Indian scholar-monk about whom nothing is known. Only one work bearing his name remains, preserved in the Tibetan *Tanjur* (Tohoku no. 4094; Peking no. 5595), entitled the *Upāyika-nāma Abhidharma-kosa-Tīkā*. Although entitled a *ṭīkā* (sub-commentary), the *Upāyika* is not a commentary in the usual sense of that word; in fact, the *Upāyika* is only about half the length of the *Kośabhāṣyam*.

Rather, wherever there is a passage in the *Kośabhāṣyam* that quotes from an *āgama*, that passage is given by Samathadeva by the full quotation of the passage from out of the *sūtra* text. Often the whole paragraph is given, or if not, he gives the title of the *āgama* and the chapter or section title where the passage is to be found. Occasionally, if there is no passage to be found in relevant *āgamas*, related passages are given from *āgamas* which illustrate examples of usage. The *Upāyika* is valuable, not so much for understanding the *Kośabhāṣyam*, but for the reconstruction of sectarian, Sarvāstivādin *āgamas*.

It is premature to suppose that the *āgamas* quoted in the *Upāyika* are the same as those seen by Vasubandhu. Still they are close enough to get a good idea of the influences of the Sarvāstivādin *āgamas* on Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma. Yet the difficulties inherent in the *Upāyika* are still great.

For example, the *Kośabhāṣyam* gives "in the ninth *sūtra* of the *Dirgha Agama . . ." (19.17b), or "in the third *sūtra*, included in the thirteenth *śloka* of the *Śrāvaka-vyākhyāna . . ." (2.7b), or "in the second *sūtra* in the *Vibhaṅga-saṅgraha . . ." (10.10b), or sometimes simply "*śrāvastyam nidānam . . ." ("in the
episode at Śrāvasti"), or "Evam mayā śrutam . . ." ("Thus have I heard"). But since many of these works cannot be found in the extant Chinese or Pāli editions of the Canon, comparison is impossible.

Sakurabe (in an article on pp. 155–161 of the Yamaguchi Hakase Kanreki-kinen Indogaku Bukkyōgaku Ronshō) traces a number of Sarvāstivādin āgamas, and found a remarkably close correlation between the āgamas quoted in the Kosabhāṣyam (and the Upāyika) and those texts traditionally held to be Sarvāstivādin āgamas in the Chinese Canon.

Several of Sakurabe’s findings are: 1. that the Sarvāstivādins had a fifth āgama (as does the Pāli Canon today), for the Upāyika gives the sentence "in the Artha-vargīya sūtra of the Ksudraka" (see Kosabhāṣyam 1.10a), which Ksudraka (miscellany) is the same name given the fifth nikāya (the Khuddaka Nikāya) of the Pāli Canon; 2. that the Sarvāstivādin Ksudraka Āgama has texts that a) are in the Chinese Tso O-han Ching (the Chinese translation of the Ksudraka Āgama), b) which circulated separately, and c) which do not exist in the Pāli Canon; and 3. that the Dīrgha Āgama of the Kosabhāṣyam and Upāyika is totally different from the Chinese edition of the Dīrgha Āgama, the Ch’ang O-han Ching. His studies have shown that whereas the arrangement within the texts is often very close, texts not in the Pāli can exist in both the Kosabhāṣyam (and Upāyika) and in the Chinese Canon.

15. Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma Literature.

We can thus see that the early period of this literary genre went through three major states of development, as given above: 1. the early usage of the word abhidharma, 2. Abhidharmic elements in the Āgamas and Nikāyas, which in turn formed the basis for 3. an independent, elaborated literature, a literature the vast bulk of which (with the exception of the Kosabhāṣyam and its commentary, the Vyākhyā) exists today only in Chinese and Tibetan translation.

16. Origin of the Abhidhamma

According to the Pāli tradition, at night the Buddha would ascend to Tāvatiṃśa Heaven, and there he preached the Abhidhamma to his mother, Māyā, and to the Devas residing in that Heaven. In the daytime he would return to the earth, where he preached this same Abhidhamma to his disciple Sāriputta. Sāriputta, through his supernormal powers of memory, memorized the totality of
this teaching, and in turn recited it to Bhaddaji; Bhaddaji in turn recited it, *in toto* and without any error whatsoever, to his disciple, and in this way it was finally recited to Revata who, in turn, recited it publicly at the Third Council, held in Pāṭaliputra in 251 B.C. some 235 years after the death of the Buddha.

In the Theravāda tradition of Pāli Buddhism there are some seven long books that go to make up the third Piṭaka, the *Abhidhamma Piṭaka*. These books are, in the traditional order in which they are listed:

1. *Dhamma-saṅgaṇī*, "Enumeration of the Dhammas"
2. *Vibhaṅga*, "The Book of Treatises"
4. *Dhātu-kathā*, "Discussion of the Dhatus"
5. *Puggala-paṁñatti*, "Description of Individuals"
6. *Yamaka*, "The Book of Pairs"

Historians, however, place the *Dhamma-saṅgaṇī* and the *Vibhaṅga* as the earliest of these works, followed by the *Dhātu-kathā*, the *Puggala-paṁñatti*, the *Kathā-vatthu*, the *Yamaka* and the *Paṭṭhāṇa*. With the end of the composition of the *Paṭṭhāṇa*, the Abhidhamma Piṭaka is closed, and no subsequent Abhidhamma work in Pāli is included within the Canon.

The Sarvāstivādins claimed some six treatises (see below); these six works went to make up the *Jñānaprasthāna*, the *Jñānaprasthāna* gave rise to the *Mahā-vibhāṣā*, and this work in turn gave rise to later compilations of doctrine.

There was no closed canon for the Sarvāstivādins as far as the Abhidharma Piṭaka was concerned, and the numerous references to "the seven Abhidharma books of the Sarvāstivādins" must be understood in this context.

In the traditional view of the six smaller works that stand in relation to the *Jñānaprasthāna*, it is held that the *Jñānaprasthāna* is an earlier, more important work (the body), and that the other six works—shorter in length and dealing with only one or two topics—are its legs (Skt., *pāḍa*), implying by this that they were written subsequent to the *Jñānaprasthāna* in order to comment in greater detail on topics raised first in the *Jñānaprasthāna*. The contemporary scholarly opinion, however, is that these six works were the precursors of the larger *Jñānaprasthāna*.

These six, the *padaśāstras*, are:

la. *Saṅgīti-pariyāya*, by Śāriputra (var. by Mahākausthila) composed approximately 200 years after the Nirvāṇa of the Buddha. The contents of this work closely resemble the *Dasuttara-suttanta* of the *Dīgha Nikāya*; exists in Chinese translation, T. vol. 26, no. 1536.

lb. *Dharma-skandha*, by Maudgalyāyana (var. by Śāriputra). This work also


2c. *Prakarana-pāda*, by Vasumitra, composed some three hundred years after the death of the Buddha. This work, which closely resembles the Pali *Vibhaṅga-prakaraṇa*, exists in two Chinese translations, T. vol. 26, no. 1541 and no. 1542.

2d. *Prajñapti-śāstra*, composed by Maudgalyāyana. This work exists in one late, incomplete Chinese translation (T. vol. 26, no. 1538), and in a Tibetan translation.

According to Sakurabe, the bulk of Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma literature is divided into three major periods: 1. the early period, the period of the six *padaśātras*, before the composition of the *Jñānaprasthāṇa*; 2. the period of the *Jñānaprasthāṇa*, its commentaries (the *vibhaṅga*), to the composition of the *Āmṛta-rasa*; and 3. all works subsequent to the *Āmṛta-rasa*.

Abhidharmic tendencies found within the *Sūtras* were extended and developed into such texts as the *Sāṅgīti-paryāya* (la) and the *Dharma-skandha* (lb).

There is a *Sāṅgīti-suttanta* in the *Dīgha Nikāya*; the Sarvāstivādin text entitled the *Sāṅgīti-paryāya* is an extension of this *sūtra*.

The *Dharma-skandha* is not an extension or commentary on a *sūtra*, but it takes a topic from the *sūtra* literature and reclassifies it. The topic is taken from one *sūtra* preached by the Buddha at the Jetavana-vihāra, and quotations are taken from other texts to serve as a commentary to its subject matter.

The *Dharma-skandha* is made up of 21 chapters, and all but two of them are taken verbatim from *sūtras*. Of these two, one is a miscellaneous chapter, and one is on the *indriyas*.

The miscellaneous chapter in the *Dharma-skandha* lists some 78 different types of defilements, a list found verbatim nowhere in the *sūtras*. What the editor of this text obviously did was to bring together any and all descriptions of the defilements found scattered throughout the Canon, and collect them in this one work where they now form a total of some 78 defilements.

The chapter on the *indriyas* in the *Dharma-skandha* gives 22 different types of *indriyas*; again nowhere in the *sūtras* are the number of *indriyas* given as 22, but the editor collected all sutra references to the *indriyas*, and these came to 22.

According to Kimura, these *śāstras* were composed as a type of commentary to the *Sūtras*, and in the words of Lamotte, these works are "*tros proches des sūtra cathechetiques," "close to those sūtras which are catechetical in form."
According to Kimura, these two works have already left the *sūtra* form (that is, they are not attributed to the Buddha) and are now in the form of an independent Abhidharma sāstra. Nevertheless they are not totally outside of *sūtra* influence, and so they still have the appearance of being an edition (Lamotte: *recension*) of a *sūtra*.

Further, these works are not fully abhidharmic in their treatment of their subject matter; that is, there is no attempt to be inclusive in their range of topics; rather they are devoted to only one topic. Their sectarian tendencies are still quite small, and there is no attempt at polemics or defense of their specific doctrines. In this last respect, the Pāli *Vibhaṅga*, the *Dharma-skandha*, and the Sāriputra-Abhidharma are very close to one another. And too, both the Saṅgīti-paryāya and the *Dharma-skandha* are attributed to direct disciples of the Buddha, to Sāriputra and to Maudgalyāyana respectively (with the variants, to Mahākausthila and to Sariputra, respectively).

The *Prajñāpatti-sāstra* (2d) is included by Lamotte (*Histoire*, p. 206), Frauwallner and Ryūjō Yamada in the earliest period of this Abhidharma literature. Indeed, the fact that it is not fully abhidharmic in its treatment of subject matter, that its sectarian or polemical tendency is small, and that it is attributed to a direct disciple of the Buddha (here Maudgalyāyana) does apply to this text as well as to the Saṅgīti-paryāya and the *Dharma-skandha*. Nevertheless this work is not as close as these other two works to their origins, that of the *sūtra* form, but appears to mark a further step away from, or a development from its *sūtra* prototype, and so is placed by Sakurabe in the second stage of the development of early Abhidharma literature.

Both Frauwallner and Sakurabe place the Saṅgīti-paryāya as the earliest Abhidharma text, and the *Dharma-skandha* as being slightly later in time than the Saṅgīti-paryāya. De La Vallée Poussin and Lamotte place these texts however at approximately the same period of composition.

17. The Second Period of Early Sarvāstivādins Literature.

A slightly later period in the development of this Abhidharma literature saw an advance in terms of the texts’ internal organization and their doctrinal development. Characteristics of the literature of this period are a) the numerical classification of items, b) the detailed commentary given to each item of the series, and c) a greater elaboration in the contents of these works than was seen in the earlier period of the literature. In this period of literature we have the growth of Sarvāstivādin sectarian concepts and vocabulary, and by now the vocabulary comes
The Abhidharma
to be set.

The Sarvāstivādin sectarian influence can be seen primarily in their method of dividing, or classifying the dharmas: the dharmas are divided into defiled (aśrava) and undefiled (anaśrava) dharmas, or into the mind (citta) and its mental events (cetasika, caitasika). In this period too we have an elaboration of cause and effect relationships.

The Prakaraṇa-pāda (2c), a work from this period, is noteworthy in three respects: a) in form it is the first purely śāstra work of this literature; b) in doctrine it is the first purely Sarvastivādin sectarian work; and c) it is the first work to divide the dharmas into five major divisions: uncompounded dharmas (asaṁskṛtā dharma) and compounded (saṁskṛtā) dharmas. The compounded dharmas are made up of four groups: physical matter (rūpa), the mind (citta), mental states (caitasikā dharma) and dharmas or elements that are neither mind nor matter. (Sakurabe, however, finds evidences of the fivefold division of the dharmas in both the Saṅgīti-pāryāya and the Dharma-skandha.)

The Prakaraṇa-pāda is made up of eight chapters. Several chapters (nos. I, IV, and V) have had an independent translation into Chinese, which might point to the fact that they had an independent circulation in India itself.

According to the Prajñā-pāramitā Upadeśa (the Ta-chih-tu lun, traditionally attributed to Nāgārjuna), the Prakaraṇa-pāda comes from two different sources, Vasumitra and the Kasmirian Arhats, each writing four chapters apiece. Each of the eight chapter deals with a different subject: even though the chapter divisions in this work are meaningful divisions, each chapter is almost totally unrelated to the other chapters. The Prakaraṇa-pāda is thus perhaps a collection of eight independent works, brought together by one or two persons who were the final editors of this work. Frauwallner terms the Prakaraṇa-pāda "ein Sammelwerk."

Chapter Four of the Prakaraṇa-pāda is an elaboration of the mental states as first raised in the Dhātukāya; however, they are revised and augmented here by the editor of the Prakaraṇa-pāda.

Chapters Six and Eight have traceable origins in the Saṅgīti-pāryāya, but the Prakaraṇa-pāda has added considerable new material to them. Chapter Seven is one chapter from the Dharma-skandha; here, however, the contents undergo a reclassification.

The remaining chapters, I, II, III, and V, are the Prakaraṇa-pāda’s independent contribution to the development of Sarvastivādin thought, for it is in these chapters that we find the fivefold division of the dharmas, the tenfold wisdoms, a new classification of the āyatanas, and an elaboration of some 98 types of mental laziness.

The *Jñānaprasthāna* is a major compendium of Sarvāstivādin thought, and its bulk is considerably larger than all of the previous works. Its 44 chapters occupy (in Chinese translation) some 120 pages of the Taishō edition of the Canon.

The *Jñānaprasthāna* (*The Foundation of Knowledge*) also presents original contributions to Sarvāstivādin doctrinal development: it applies dependent origination (*pratītyasamut-pāda*) to biological life, and it elucidates some six different types of material causes (*hetu*).

Because of its central position in the development of Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma thought, it is termed the *mūla-sūtra* (Ch. *pen-lun*) and "the basic Abhidharma treatise" (*gen-pen o-pi ta-mo*).

Both the *Vibhāṣa* and the *Abhidharmakośa* state that Katyāyaniputra collected the teachings of the Buddha which had hitherto been scattered throughout the Scriptures, and brought them together in one work, the *Jñānaprasthāna*.

The internal organization of the work leaves much to be desired: within each topic, all information relevant to this topic is indeed collected together in one spot, but the overall organization of the text is haphazard.

The *Jñānaprasthāna* exists in two very different Chinese translations. Traditionally this was thought to be simply two rather differing editions of the same work, the one work (now termed the *Aṣṭa-grantha*, T. no. 1544) being the basic text, and the other translation (now termed the *Abhidharma-sūtra*, T. no. 1543) being a variant of it. Modern Japanese scholars now hold, however, that these two works represent two different traditions of Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma learning, one tradition being centered in Kāśmīr (the *Aṣṭa-grantha*), another being centered in Gandhāra (the *Abhidharma-sūtra*). This is also seen in the fact that the *Mahāvibhāṣa* (ostensibly a commentary on the *Jñānaprasthāna*) is also preserved in two very different Chinese translations.

(Kāśmīr) 3a *Aṣṭa-grantha*  
trans. 383 (in 30 *chüan*)  
by Sanghadeva and Chu Fo-nien

(Gandhāra) 3a *Abhidharma-sūtra*  
trans. 657–660 (in 20 *chüan*)  
by Hsüan-tsang
4a Mahā-Vibhāṣā

by Vasumitra and the
500 arhats, compiled
400 years after the
Parinirvāṇa of the Buddha,
trans. 656–659 (in 200 chüan)
by Hsüan-tsang

4b Vibhāṣā

by Katyayaniputra
trans. 437–439 (in 14 chüan)
by Buddhavarman

19. The Vibhāṣās

The Jñānaprasthāṇa was commented upon (in both Kaśmir and Gandhara?) and its commentaries (vibhāṣā) were termed simply "The Commentary," or Vibhāṣā. Since these works exist in two Chinese translations, the commentary from Kāśmir is termed the Mahāvibhāṣā (The Great Commentary, T. 1545), and the commentary from Gandhāra is termed simply the Vibhāṣā (T. 1546).

The Mahāvibhāṣā is a voluminous commentary upon the Āṣṭa-granṭha. It is made up of some 43 long chapters and the whole work occupies some 200 fascicules (volumes) in its Chinese translation, or one whole volume, vol. 27, of the Taishō Tripitaka. Volume 27 is 1,004 pages in length, each page having at most some 1,392 Chinese characters!

The Gandharan Vibhāṣā, however, is much shorter in length, occupying only 14 fascicules in its Chinese translation: it has only 16 chapters to its text.

Such a voluminous commentary demonstrates to us the importance of the Jñānaprasthāṇa to the Sarvāstivādins, and secures for the Jñānaprasthāṇa a position as the authoritative text of the Sarvāstivādins.

The Mahāvibhāṣā is a detailed analysis of everything in the Jñānaprasthāṇa; in one place, the Mahāvibhāṣā devotes some 76½ pages to commenting on one passage in the Jñānaprasthāṇa of only 100 characters. The work also raises new issues, issues not raised previously in the Jñānaprasthāṇa. Much new doctrine is introduced, and in addition, the Mahāvibhāṣā quotes differing opinions on topics from outside orthodox Sarvāstivādin ranks. Also many non-Buddhist theories are quoted at length.

By way of illustration, at the start of the work the Jñānaprasthāṇa asks the question, "What is the highest worldly dharma (laukika dharmā)?" The answer in the Āṣṭa-granṭha version of the Jñānaprasthāṇa is in some 70 Chinese characters, while the Mahāvibhāṣā's answer to this same question is in more than 8,000 Chinese characters, and takes up some two Chinese fascicules.

In the Mahāvibhāṣā, in answer to the question, "Why, in the Scriptures, did
the Blessed One first teach the highest worldly dharma?"; some 33 different answers are given, from this question's doctrinal implications for the concept of adherence (prāpti), to the various types of mindfulness (smṛtyupasthāna), to the four different types of conditions (pratyaya), and gives, in all, the names of eight different masters and schools.

The Mahāvibhāṣā spends many pages on important points and problems but, in the main, it follows the Jñānaprasthāna's (the Aṣṭa-grantha's) internal organization.

20. Development of the Literature After the Vibhāsās.

Sakurabe places the Abhidharma-amṛta-rasa (The Abhidharma Taste of the Deathless) between the Jñānaprasthāna and the Mahāvibhāṣā on the basis of its doctrines, for it introduces points not found in the Jñānaprasthāna, points which, however, are found in the Mahāvibhāṣā: the doctrine of the five types of results (phala), the theory of atoms (paramāṇu), etc.

This work is a simple summary of all Sarvāstivādin doctrine. It is made up of 16 chapters, and so, according to Sakurabe, constitutes the first work in the third period of Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma literature, the period after the composition of the Jñānaprasthāna. In its internal organization it appears to be a precursor to Dharmajina's Abhidarmahṛdaya, which was in turn the direct precursor to the Abhidharmakośabhāṣam.


The Abhidharmahṛdaya (Heart of the Abhidharma) is a work in seven integral chapters, the order of which almost perfectly parallels the later order of the chapters in the Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam.

The chapters of the Abhidharmahṛdaya are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Kośa chapters)</th>
<th>(Kośa chapters)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. Dhātu-nirdeśa</td>
<td>I. Dhātu-nirdeśa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Saṃskāra-nirdeśa</td>
<td>II. Indriya-nirdeśa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Karma-nirdeśa</td>
<td>III. Loka-nirdeśa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Anuśaya-nirdeśa</td>
<td>IV. Karma-nirdeśa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Pudgala-mārga-nirdeśa</td>
<td>V. Anuśaya-nirdeśa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. Pudgala-mārga-nirdeśa</td>
<td>VI. Pudgala-mārga-nirdeśa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Abhidharmahrdaya concludes with a supplement (a Miscellanea) and an appendix (a Discussion), for a total of nine chapters.

The Abhidharmahrdaya was the first work to use kārikās, or verses, followed by their prose commentary (bhasyam). This was the first real innovation in the internal organization of an Abhidharmic text. The work is internally coherent from beginning to end, and it is not merely a summary or an elaboration of a previous text: it is a well thought-out presentation of doctrine. The author of this work, Dharmajina (or Dharmaśreṣṭhi) clearly had a self-conscious awareness of this work as a whole, complete text.

This sevenfold chapter division of the Abhidharmahrdaya was adopted by later works, by the Abhidharmahrdaya of Upāsānta (Taishō no. 1551), the Kṣudraka-Abhidharmahrdaya (also called the Saṃyukta-Abhidharmahrdaya, Taishō no. 1552) of Dharmatrāta, and, with some modifications, by Vasubandhu, in his Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam.

22. The Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam.

Even though Vasubandhu’s Abhidharmakosabhāṣyam is the outstanding Abhidharma text of Far Eastern Buddhism, it is not the purpose of this article to discuss the question of the authorship of the Kosabhāṣyam, nor the circumstances surrounding its composition: these topics will be discussed in a later article. I should like rather to merely say a few words on the place of the Kosabhāṣyam in the general course of development of the Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma literature.

Vasubandhu changed the name of the second chapter (from Saṃskāra-nirdeśa) to Indriya-nirdeśa, and added another chapter, the third chapter, Loka-nirdeśa, for a total of nine chapters. The former supplement and appendix material was incorporated into the body of the work, and Vasubandhu added a new appendix chapter, the Pudgala-pratīṣedha (Refutation of the Soul), to the end of the work as a ninth chapter.

Later post-Kośa works, and indeed even anti-Kośa works like Sanghabhadra’s Nyāya-anusāra and his Samaya-pradīpika, not only kept the kārikā-bhāṣyam style of composition, but Saṃghabhadra even adopted the Kośa’s (Vasubandhu’s) kārikās verbatim, adding his own prose commentary, or Bhāṣyam. Saṃghabhadra changed the chapter names, and he took the ninth chapter, the Pudgala-
pratisedha, from the end of the work and put it at the beginning as a first chapter, there to serve as an introduction to what is the most essential feature of Buddhist thought, its doctrine of anātman.

Another work, the Abhidharma-dīpa (Lamp on the Abhidharma, or the Abhidharma-vṛtti Marmādīpa-nāma) was composed somewhat later than these above works. The author of this work (known only in Tibetan as Phyogs-kyi-glan-po) renamed the first chapter (the Dhātu-nirdeśa) the Skandha-ayatana-dhātu-nirdeśa, and the sixth chapter (the Pudgala-mārga-nirdeśa) became simply the Mārga-nirdeśa. The author kept the kārikā-bhāṣyam format, which was by now a distinctive feature of Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma literature.

The kārikā-bhāṣyam format has only one exception to it: the Abhidharma-aṅvatāra. This work, whose full name is the Sārasamuccaya-nāma Abhidharma-aṅvatāra-tīkā (Entry into the Abhidharma, being a Compendium of its Essentials) is a work roughly contemporary with the composition of the Kośa. Tradition names the author as one Parśva (or Skandati). This work does not have the kārikābhāṣyam format but is, rather, a short treatise completely in prose; moreover the work lacks chapter divisions. It classifies all Sarvāstivādin doctrine on the basis of the five skandhas and the three uncompounded dharmas, an original departure from the division based on uncompounded and compounded dharmas (see above).


Very little remains of the bulk of Abhidharma literature in its original Sanskrit or Indic languages, especially when compared with the remains of the various vinayas and śūtras which have been uncovered. Thus the Abhidharma literature of the schools of Kaśmīr and Gandhara—the Sarvāstivādins and the Sautrāntikas—exist primarily in their Chinese and Tibetan translations, and almost not at all in their original Sanskrit.

A fragment thought to be of the Saṅgūṭi-pārīyāya was found on 31 July 1930 in Bamiyan. In the village of Akkan, in the foothills of the Himalayas, there is a 35-meter-high image of the Buddha, and to the east of this image is a cave. It was from the collapsed roof of this cave that one page of text, written in Guptan script, was found. This fragment was studied by Professor Sylvain Lévi, and he discovered that it corresponded to a part of the Saṅgūṭi-pārīyāya. The results of his study were published in the Journal Asiatique (1932), and were translated and reprinted in two Japanese journals within that same year.
The passages in question were from that part of the Saṅgūṭi-pāryāya which is in close agreement with a Dīgha Nikāya passage and, indeed, the rediscovered passage was so fragmentary that it could also be from the Vināya or from the Aṅguttara Nikāya! But if it is indeed a section of the Saṅgūṭi-pāryāya, there is then but one page from the early period of Sarvāstivādin Abhidharma literature which has been preserved for us in its original language.

Furthermore, Bamiyan is 150 kilometers to the west of the city of Kabul, the present-day capital of Afghanistan. This area was the center—as Gandhāra—of Sarvāstivādin studies, a fact perhaps relevant to the identification of this fragment with the text of the Saṅgūṭi-pāryāya.

24. The Sanskrit Kośabhāṣyam.

Another piece of Sanskrit Abhidharma literature that has been found is the full text of the Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam.

The Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam is made up of two parts, the kārikā or verse sections (the Kośa), and the auto-commentary to these verses (the bhāṣya) by Vasubandhu.

The kārikā section has traditionally been known. It has in fact a separate translation into Chinese, which points to its having had an independent circulation in India.

The prose or commentarial section, the bhāṣyam, had long been lost, but in 1935 Rahula Saṁkṛtyāyana discovered a palm-leaf manuscript of both the kārikā and the bhāṣyam of the Abhidharmakośa, that is, the full text of this work, in the Tibetan monastery of Ngor, a Sakyapa institution located some two days' ride south of Shigatse.

This palm-leaf manuscript dates from the 12th or the 13th century. It is an incomplete text: in the sixth chapter, kārikās nos. 53 to 68 are missing. Nevertheless, the manuscript has some 600 kārikās, plus 13 from the last chapter.

The kārikā section of this manuscript find was published in the Journal of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, by V.V. Gokhale; but it was only recently (1967) that the prose section, the bhāṣyam, was published together with these kārikās (see below).

Preceding the find by Saṁkṛtyāyana, however, much scholarly work had already been done on the text of the Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam.
25. **Translations of the Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam.**

A team of Japanese and French scholars had worked on the *Kośa*, based on the *kārikās* as they had been preserved in the *Sphuta-arthā Abhidharmakośa Vyākhyā*, a Sanskrit commentary on the *Kośabhāṣyam* by Yaśomitra. In this *Vyākhyā* the *kārikās* are quoted, as well as large parts of the prose text (the *bhāṣyam*). Working with a Cambridge manuscript of Yaśomitra’s *Vyākhyā* and with the Tibetan translation of the *Vyākhyā*, Louis de La Vallée Poussin published a complete French translation of the Chinese text of the *Abhidharma­kosabhāṣyam* (i.e., the Chinese text of Hsuan-tsang’s translation) in six volumes in Brussels (1923–1931). In chapter six of his translation, de La Vallée Poussin published the complete text of all the *kārikās* as then recently discovered by Sylvain Lévi in Nepal, a total of some 210 ślokas.

Based on de La Vallée Poussin’s work, Sarṅkṛtyāyana published the *kārikās* with his own Sanskrit commentary (1933).

In 1935 the Japanese scholar Yoshio Nishi published the *Kusharon* (the *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam* in Hsüan-tsang’s Chinese translation) in the *Kokuyaku-issaikyo* series, and in this work he included the Sanskrit text of the *kārikās*. (The *Kokuyaku-issaikyo* series was an edition of important works from the Far Eastern Buddhist Canon, translated into Japanese with often valuable introductions and annotations to the texts). In 1936 Ryūjō Yamada published the *kārikās* of the first chapter of the *Kośabhāṣyam*, the *Dhātu-nirdesa*, with their Chinese and Tibetan Tibetan versions (in Japanese translation) in a leading Japanese cultural journal, *Bunka* (Culture).

More recently, Narendra Nath Law’s edition of Yaśomitra’s commentary served as the basis for Aiyaswami Sastri’s publishing all the *kārikās* to the third chapter, the *Loka-nirdeśa*, and his translation of them into English in the *Indian Historical Quarterly*, vol. XXIV (1953).

26. **Commentaries on the Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam.**

There are altogether some seven Indian commentaries to the *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam* preserved in Tibetan, Chinese, and Uighur translations. The only one whose complete Sanskrit text has been preserved is Yaśomitra’s *Vyākhyā* (which also exists in Tibetan translation). Manuscripts of the *Vyākhyā* exist in libraries in Paris, Cambridge, Leningrad, and Calcutta, and partial editions of this text are preserved in the libraries of Tokyo University and Kyoto University, Japan. The Paris manuscript, the best edition of this *Vyākhyā*, is preserved in the collection of the Societe Asiatique; this text was reproduced by the Japanese scholars Bun’yu Nanjō and Kenjū Sasahara, and deposited in the Ōtani
University Library, Kyoto.

In 1912, international efforts were begun to publish this work under the leadership of Sylvain Lévi. Lévi, Stcherbatsky, and Unrai Ogiwara began the publication of this work in *Bibliographie Bouddhique*, getting as far as the middle of the second chapter (1918, 1931). De La Vallée Poussin independently published the text and French translation of the third chapter, the *Loka-nirdeśa* (1914–1918).

In Japan an association was formed to aid in the publication of the *Vyākhyā*, an association headed by Ogiwara. This edition of the *Vyākhyā* was to be based primarily on the Calcutta manuscript, with reference to the Paris manuscript. It was then that the whole text of the *Vyākhyā* was finally published in Roman script in Tokyo (1932–1936). This work was recently reprinted (1971) in Tokyo, and is still readily available. In this work Ogiwara compared the text of the *Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam* with its Chinese and Tibetan translations. The text of the *Kośabhāṣyam* is italicized in the body of Yasomitra’s work, and all of the works quoted in both Vasubandhu and Yasomitra are checked out in the footnotes.

More recently, Narendra Nath Law has published Yasomitra’s *Vyākhyā* as far as the fourth chapter, *Karma-nirdeśa*, in Devanagari script, based on the Cambridge manuscript edition of this text. Law’s work was published in the *Calcutta Oriental Series*, no. 31 (1949–1955).

27. *The Tibetan Kośabhāṣyam*.

All of the work described above is based almost exclusively on the Sanskrit editions of the *Kośabhāṣyam* and the *Vyākhyā*, and on its Chinese translations. Nevertheless, the Tibetan translation of the *Kośabhāṣyam* has also received some attention from Western and Japanese scholars.

Stcherbatsky published the Tibetan text of the first chapter, the *Dhātu-nirdeśa*, in *Bibliographie Bouddhique*, XX, Part I (1918), and, in Part II (1930) of this same series, continued the publication of the text up to the 46th *kārikā* of the second chapter.

In Japan, Shunga Teramoto published the Tibetan text of the first chapter in Kyoto (1936), and the Department of Buddhist Studies (Bukkyōgaku kenkyū-shitsu) of Kyoto University published the Tibetan text of the first chapter of the *Kośabhāṣyam* along with the *Vyākhyā* of Yasomitra: they have now gotten as far as the sixth chapter of the work.
28. Translations of the Kośabhāṣyam and the Vyākhyā.

At the present time there exists a number of translations of the Kośabhāṣyam and of the Vyākhyā.

A complete French translation of the Kośabhāṣyam was carried out by de La Vallée Poussin. This translation is primarily based on the Chinese translation of Hsuan-tsang, but frequent reference is made to the Sanskrit text of Vasubandhu (as preserved in Yasōmitra), the Chinese translation of Paramārtha, and the Tibetan. This work was published from 1921 to 1931 (see above).

Stcherbatsky “translated” the ninth chapter, the Pudgala-pratisedha, from the Tibetan into English, under the title “The Soul Theory of the Buddhists” (1920). This translation was first published in the Bulletin de l'Academie des Russie, but it has been recently reprinted in India. This work is actually a very loose paraphrase of the ninth chapter.

Yasōmitra’s Vyākhyā has also undergone a number of partial translations. De La Vallee Poussin translated the Vyākhyā’s commentary on the third chapter of the Kośabhāṣyam into French (1914-1919), and the combined efforts of Ōgiwara, Susumu Yamaguchi, Gadjin Nagao, and Issai Funabashi have translated the Vyākhyā into modern Japanese up to the second chapter of the Kośabhāṣyam. In addition, Yamaguchi and Funabashi have published a Japanese translation of the Vyākhyā commentary on the third chapter, the Loka-nirdesa (1955). In this work, each sentence of the Sanskrit is compared with its Tibetan translation, Yasōmitra’s commentary is added, and illustrative material from Sthiramati and other Indian masters is added. Working in this same format, Funabashi translated parts of the fourth chapter, Karma-nirdesa, in 1956.

More recently, Sakurabe has translated the first and the second chapters of the Kośabhāṣyam into Japanese (1969), based on the full Sanskrit text edition of Pradhan (Patna, 1967).

29. Indexes to the Kośabhāṣyam

The first index to the Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam was an index based on the Chinese translation of this work. This index was called the Kando-Kusharon-sakuin. This index lists all of the Chinese words of the Kusharon (the Kośabhāṣyam) in the order of their Japanese reading. The text used as the basis for this index was the Kando-bon, or Kando edition of this text. The word kando literally means that the annotation or commentary (-dō) to the text was placed at
the top or crown (kan-) of the page. When a text is termed the Kandō edition, this means that the editing of the work was done by one eminent scholar monk of the late 19th and the early 20th century, Kyokuga Saeki. Saeki's edition (i.e., the Kandō edition) of the Kusharon was the edition of this text used by de La Vallée Poussin in his French translation, and most of de La Vallée Poussin's annotation is taken directly from the work of Saeki.

With the publication in 1946 of the Sanskrit kārikas by V.V. Gokhale (see above), and especially with the publication, in Devanagari script, of the full text of the Abhidharmakosa-bhāṣyam (Sāṃkṛtyāyana's manuscript find) by P. Pradhan in 1967, it now became possible to compile an index to the Sanskrit text of the Kośabhāṣyam. This was done in the Kusharon-sakuin, compiled by Professor Akira Hirakawa of Tokyo University. The English title of this index is "Index to the Abhidharmakosa-bhāṣyam, Part One", and it was published in Tokyo in 1973. The lead words in this index are given in Sanskrit, with their Tibetan and Chinese translations. The Chinese words are given as they appear in Hsüan-tsang's translation of the Kośabhāṣyam, with the variants of Paramārtha given when needed. In this index, the first and all subsequent occurrences of the Sanskrit lead words are given (as found in Pradhan's edition of the text), followed by the use of each word in a compound, then by its Tibetan and Chinese translation. Part One of the Kusharon-sakuin is prefaced by a long English essay by Professor Hirakawa dealing with a number of topics raised by the Kośabhāṣyam: the date of Vasubandhu, the relation of the Kośabhāṣyam to the Yogācāra tradition of Indian Mahāyāna Buddhism, the relation of the Sautrāntikas and Mahāyāna Buddhism, and a review of the internal structure and the contents of the Kośabhāṣyam.

Part Two of this Index was published in 1977 and in this index the lead entries are given in Chinese, with their Sanskrit equivalents; the occurrence of the Chinese words in both the translations of Hsüan-tsang and Paramārtha are shown, as well as the location of their Sanskrit originals in Pradhan's edition of the text.

Part Three was published in 1978 and is a Tibetan-Sanskrit index to the Kośabhāṣyam. The references to the Tibetan Kośabhāṣyam are taken from the Peking edition (vol. 115) of the Tibetan Canon, with occasional readings adopted from the Derge edition of the Canon. Part Three also includes a complete page concordance from the Pradhan edition of the Kośabhāṣyam (published in the Baudhā Bharati Series, vols. V, VI, VII, IX), to the Taishō editions of the text (the translations of Hsüan-tsang and Paramārtha), to the Kandō edition of Kyokuga Saeki (see above), and to both the Peking and the Derge edition of the Tibetan Kośabhāṣyam.
Part Three also contains an Addenda section with a supplement to the Sanskrit of Part One, and a valuable supplement to the corrigenda of Pradhan's text; and a 53-page corrigenda to Parts One and Two of this index concludes this work.
1. The Theravadin Tradition of Hinayana Buddhism—the religion of Ceylon, Burma, Thailand, Laos, and Cambodia—recognizes some seven works as comprising the totality of their *Abhidharma Piṭaka*: the Sarvāstivādins of Kaśmīr and Gandhara also have an *Abhidharma Piṭaka*, but the contents of this corpus are not limited to seven and include a larger number of works: nor it appears, was it ever a closed system like the Theravadins'.

2. On the split, see the Prefatory Notes of C.A.F. Rhys-Davids, in her *Points of Controversy*. According to Vasumitra, the original Sangha split into two, the Mahāsāṅghikas and the Sthaviravādins (Pāli: Theravadins), and the Sthaviravādins then split into two: the Haimavata (the "snow dwellers", the present-day Theravādins) and the Sarvāstivādins. This last split occurred around 250 B.C.
Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam
of Vasubandhu

Louis de La Vallée Poussin
INTRODUCTION

The earliest literature of Buddhism is divided into two parts or "baskets": The Vinaya, the rules and regulations of the monastic discipline, including a history and commentary on this discipline; and the Dharma, later termed Sūtra, a collection of discourses which explain the Dharma, that is to say, everything that directly or indirectly concerns the path to salvation—a little moral law (powerless though it is to definitively deliver one from suffering), and above all the Eightfold Path, the methods of contemplation and of meditation which lead to the definitive deliverance from suffering, that is to Nirvāṇa. This is the essential thing, for "the sole taste of the Good Law is the taste of deliverance."

The Sūtra or Dharma cannot be practiced exclusively. One effectively combats desire and hatred (lobha, dvesa) only by destroying ignorance (moha); the moral law presupposes samyagdrṣṭi or correct view with respect to the existence and retribution of action. Even more so, the elimination of the defilements and their most minute traces, indispensable to liberation from the round of rebirth, presupposes penetrating illumination into the nature of things, their accidental and transitory character. The sūtras always contained, we can believe, much psychology and ontology. When catechesis developed, numerous discourses of the Buddha were edited, which contained enumerations, filled with glosses, of technical terms. These are what the early tradition calls mārkās or indices. The Anguttara and Dīgha 33–4, where these categories are arranged according to the increasing number of their terms, have preserved for us an early type of this literature. [One of the most notable mārkā is the Sangitiṣuttanta. The Pāli Canon has made a sutra of this text and places it in the Dīgha. Under the name of Sangitiṣaryā, this mārkā takes its place among the seven canonical Abhidharma texts of the Sarvāstivāda.]

One school, more famous than the others, and which was perhaps the first to constitute standardized baskets of Vinaya and of Sūtra, was the school of the Pāli language, also the first to compile a third basket. The first catechism had been incorporated into the Sūtra. The name Abhidharma was given to the new, more systematic, catechisms. It was a name which designated a special manner of presenting the Dharma and the authenticity (if not historical, at least doctrinal) of these texts came to be affirmed and they were grouped into a "basket" placed on the same level as the baskets of Vinaya and Sūtra. [For a discussion of the
authenticity of the *Abhidhammapitaka*, see for example *Atthasālinī*, p. 35.] "Let it, then, be clearly understood," says Mrs. Rhys Davids, "that our present knowledge of such philosophy as is revealed in the Buddhist Pāli canon would be practically undiminished if the whole of the *Abhidhammapitaka* were non-existent . . . The burden, then, of Abhidhamma is not any positive contribution to the philosophy of early Buddhism (?), but analytic and logical and methodological elaboration of what is already given . . . The chief methods of that (=Abhidhamma) training were: first, the definition and determination of all names or terms entering into the Buddhist scheme of culture; secondly, the enunciation of all doctrines, theoretical and practical, as formulas, with coordination of all such as were logically interrelated; and finally, practice in reducing all possible heterodox positions to an absurdity . . ." 7 Nevertheless, the word Abhidhamma takes on a higher scope, which we can understand by example. The prohibition against drinking alcohol is a precept of the *Vinaya*; but to examine the transgression of alcohol as a transgression of nature or a transgression of disobedience is to bring pure theory to play upon the *Vinaya*, to "refined the *Vinaya*, and this is what is called Abhivinaya. In the same way, the Abhidharma did not remain a stranger to scientific research and philosophy; it concerns itself with questions whose relationship with the Dharma properly so-called are quite loose. This tendency is very much accentuated in the latest of the Pāli Abhidhamma treatises, the *Kathavatthu*, which tradition dates from the Council of Asoka.8 This work is an account of heresies, and fixes their positions very clearly with respect to a mass of purely speculative points: in this work one can verify the long work of exegesis of which the *Sūtra* had been the object.

The Pāli Abhidhamma does not form part of the ancient patrimony common to all the sects—which is not to say that it is Singhalese! Whereas all the soundings carried out in the canonical literature of purely Indian Buddhism reveals to us some *Vinayas* and sūtras that have developed out of the Pāli literature, or which have a close connection with this literature, no one has yet discovered the presence of any "prototypes" of the Pāli *Abhidhammas*.9

In any case, according to the tradition itself, the *Kathavatthu* belongs in its own right to a certain philosophic school, the Vibhajjavādins, "the followers of distinction." 10 To the old question, discussed in the sūtras, "Does all exist?", 11 these philosophers answered by distinguishing (vibhajya): "The present, and the past which has not yet brought forth its result exist; the future and the past which have brought forth their result do not exist.12

To this school there is opposed—from ancient times, we may believe—the school of "all exists," Sarvāstivāda, (Sarvāstivādinās, Sabbatthivādino). This
school—which also formed a sect, which had a special *Vinaya* and its own canon, and which was Sanskritized\(^{13}\)—"carved out" the Dharma. In addition to "casuists," *vinayadharas*, they had "philosophers," *abhidhārmikas*. [Their Devasarman, the proponent of the existence of the past and the future, was opposed to Mu-lien or Moggaliputta.] A long work, with regard to which we are little informed,\(^ {14}\) led to the redaction of numerous works among which are the seven books of the *Abhidharma*, *Treatises* (*śāstra*) or *Works* (*prakaraṇa*), the *Jñānapraśṭhāna* and its six "feet" (*pāda*), the *Dharmaskandha*, etc. There were philosophies which came out of this first level of wisdom literature.\(^ {15}\) But the speculative work continued and, towards the end of the first century of our era (Council of Kaniska),\(^ {16}\) a commentary was written on the *Jñānapraśṭhāna*: the *Vibhāṣā*, a collective work which gives its name to all the masters who adopted it. The *Vaibhāṣikas* are the philosophers who refer to the *Vibhāṣā* (Watters, i.276). The center of the school appears to have been Kaśmīr, even though there were Sarvāstivādins outside of Kaśmīr,—Bahirdeśakas, "masters from foreign lands"; Pascattiyaśas, "Westerners [relative to Kaśmīr]"; Aparāntakas, "masters from the western borders"—and some Kaśmīris who were not *Vaibhāṣikas*.

The Sarvāstivādins and the *Vaibhāṣikas* believed that the *Abhidharma* were the word of the Buddha. But there were masters who did not recognize the authenticity of these books. When they were obliged to observe that there is no "basket of the *Abhidharma*" outside of the *Abhidharms* of the Sarvāstivādins but that each one of them knew that the word of the Buddha was embraced within three "baskets," they answered that the Buddha taught the *Abhidharma* in the *Sūtra* itself—which is quite true. They recognized only the authority of the *Sūtra*, and took the name of Sautrāntikas.\(^ {17}\)

But we should not be mistaken with respect to their attitude. Even though formally opposed to some of the theses of the *Vibhāṣā* and of the *Vaibhāṣikas*, the Sautrāntikas had a modern enough speculation and perhaps a Buddhology. They did not systematically combat their opponents, who were, without doubt, their predecessors. They admitted everything from the system of the *Vaibhāṣikas* which they had no formal reason to deny.

Such is, at least—to speak with greater prudence,—the attitude of our author, Vasubandhu.\(^ {18}\)

His work, the *Abhidharmakośa*, a collection of approximately six hundred verses, describes itself as "a presentation of the *Abhidharma* as taught by the *Vaibhāṣikas* of Kaśmīr." This is not to say that Vasubandhu is a *Vaibhāṣika*; neither is he a Sarvāstivādin. He has evident sympathies for the Sautrāntikas, and utilizes the opinions of the "early masters"—namely "the Yogācārins, the chief
among them being Asaṅga”—but without doubt, in his own mind, the system of the Vaibhāṣikas is indispensable: the Vaibhāṣikas are "the School." One does not find anywhere else a body of doctrine as organized or as complete as theirs. Nevertheless they are sometimes in error, and on important points too. Vasubandhu completes his collection of technical verses, an impartial presentation of the Vaibhāṣika system, with a prose commentary, the Abhidharmakosa-bhāsyam, wherein his personal opinions, objections, and the opinions of diverse schools and masters are found presented among numerous theses rejected by the School. We know that Vasubandhu was, in his turn, combated and refuted by orthodox Vaibhāṣikas.

But it matters little to us whether he is always right! The essential thing, for us as for the masters who followed him, is that his book and his bhāsyam are truly a treasure (kosa).

***

From the point of view of dogmatics the Abhidharmakośa, with the Bhāsyam, is perhaps the most instructive book of early Buddhism (the Hinayāna). It renders a great service in the study of canonical philosophy and in the study of scholasticism properly so-called.

It would be very wrong to say that we do not know the philosophy of canonical Buddhism: we know its essentials, its principle teachings, its major affiliations, and many of its details. But the history of this philosophy, its origins and development, is less clear: even though we can imagine that Buddhism, like the Buddha himself, took many steps at its birth, and these in all directions. But it is fair to say (and encouraging to repeat) that if the history of the canonical philosophy has not yet been done, the image that scholars such as Rhys Davids and Oldenberg have given of this philosophy either remains definitive or calls for but light retouching. We may believe, however, that we do not fully know any part, because we so imperfectly know the scholasticism which certainly enriched it and perhaps deformed it, but which certainly unfolded within it; which moreover should be, by its methods and its tendencies, completely parallel to the early speculation from whence the canonical philosophy itself arose. This philosophy is made up of the earlier strata of a speculation which continues within scholasticism proper, Pāli as well as Sanskrit.

The impression of ignorance is very strong when we attempt to read early works such as the Dhammasaṅgani or the Kathavatthu; or when, with some rigor, we attempt to determine the sense of the sūtras themselves, word for word
(avayavārtha). How many terms the exact significance of which escape us! It is easy and often correct to observe that these terms originally did not have a precise meaning; that the general orientation of Buddhist thought alone merits our interest; that, if we were to ignore precisely the four dhyānas and the four ārūpyasamāpattisā, vitarka and vicāra, rūpa, the “fruits” and the “candidates for these fruits,” we nevertheless have a sufficient idea of the major purport of and the methods leading to holiness within Buddhism; and that it is the candidates for these fruits who should preoccupy themselves with the details of the Eightfold Path rather than Western historians. Some think that scholasticism is not interesting; that, throughout Buddhist history, it remains alien to religion proper, as with the early doctrine. This is wrong: iti cen na sūtra-rť-roadhataḥ, “If you think thus, no, for this is in contradiction with the Sūtra!” Buddhism was born complicated and verbose; its scholastic classifications are often pre-Buddhist; it is our good fortune to be able to examine them up close, in sources more ancient than Buddhaghosa; and the Abhidharmakośa bestows this good fortune upon us in the measure in which we have the courage to be worthy of it.

An example of this is given by the Buddhists themselves. The Abhidharmakośa has had a great destiny: “This work . . . had an enormous influence. From the time of its appearance, it became indispensable to all, friend and foe, we are told; and there is reason to believe this, for the same fortune followed it everywhere, first in China with Paramārtha, and Hsiian-tsang and his disciples, and then in Japan, where to this day specialized Buddhist studies begin with the Kośastra.”

The author assures us that we will find in his book a correct summary of the doctrine of the Vaibhāṣikas; but, however close may be his dependence on earlier Abhidharma masters, we may believe that he improves upon what they have said. When the Kośa has been read, the earlier works of the Sarvāstivādins, the Abhidharmas and the Vibhāṣa, undoubtedly lose part of their practical interest. Though the Chinese have translated these works, the Tibetan Lotsavas did not think it proper to put these works into Tibetan (with the sole exception of the Prajñāpāramitā), doubtless because the Abhidharmakośa, in accord with the resolution of Vasubandhu, constitutes a veritable summa, embracing all problems—ontology, psychology, cosmology, discipline and the doctrine of action, the theory of results, mysticism and sanctity—and treating them with sobriety and in clear language, with all the method of which the Indians are capable. After Vasubandhu, the Northern Buddhists—whichever school they belonged to, and whether or not they adhered to the Mahāyāna—learned the elements of Buddhism from the Kośa. All schools, in fact, are in agreement with respect to a great number of
fundamental items, the same admitted by Pāli orthodoxy, and the same, we may add, which are often subjacent to the sūtras themselves. These items, which the Vaibhāṣikas have elucidated, are nowhere so wisely presented as in the Abhidharmakosā. This sufficiently explains the reputation of the author and the popularity of the book.

If Vasubandhu is an excellent professor of Buddhism, of Buddhism without epithet of sect or school, he furthermore renders us a precious service by initiating us into the systematic philosophy of these schools. He constructs before us the spacious edifice of Vaibhāṣika dogma; he shows us its flaws; he explains what the Sautrāntika says, what the Vaibhāṣika answers, and what he himself thinks. Like many philosophical treatises, and like the best of them, the Abhidharmakosā is a creature of circumstances, written sub specie aeternitatis. We find in it many proper names, and many allusions to contemporary debates. This is not a dull book.

We also find in it a great number of quotations which are shortened elsewhere. Because of this, the Kosabhāṣyam is a precious testament for the study of the earlier literature. Its quotations add to the numerous fragments of the Sanskrit canon which the sands of Turkestan have given us or which have been discovered under the modernist prose of the Divyavadāna and the sūtras of the Great Vehicle. These bear most often on texts of a doctrinal order, and we become clear with respect to the doctrinal, if not the historical, relationships of the canons.

***

For a long time the importance of the Abhidharma has been recognized by European scholars, initially by Burnouf. Let us see why the study of this work has been deferred for such a long period of time.

The work of Vasubandhu is made up of two distinct parts: the Abhidharmakosā or the kārikās, a collection of approximately six hundred verses; and their commentary or bhāṣyam.

And of the vast exegetical literature that fills eight volumes of the Tibetan canon, the Nepalese scribes have preserved only a single document for us, a commentary on the Bhāṣya by Yasomitra, the Abhidharmakośaavyākhyā, which bears the name of Sphūtārthā, "of clear meaning."

This commentary by Yasomitra is not a complete commentary. It occasionally quotes the stanzas of Vasubandhu, and it elucidates such and such a passage of the Bhāṣya, indicating the passage in question by the first words of that passage,
following the general usage of commentators. "The subject itself," says Burnouf, "is difficult to follow because of the form of the commentary, which detaches each word from the text, and develops it or argues with it in a gloss which ordinarily is very long. It is only very rarely possible to distinguish the text from among those commentaries in the midst of which it is lost." Let us add that Yaśomitra passes over in silence everything that appears easy to him or without interest, and he plunges the reader ex abrupto into discussions of items and "positions" which are not indicated. In the First Chapter, he explains nearly every word of the text. Elsewhere he applies himself only to the points with respect to which there is something important to say.

The commentary of Yaśomitra is thus, as Burnouf says, "an inexhaustible mine of precious teachings" (Introduction, p. 447); we read thousands of interesting things in it; but it is, by itself, a very ineffective instrument for the study of the Abhidharmakośa.

This is why this work has been neglected for such a long time. Or, better, why, even though it solicited the attention of many seekers, no one has yet set his hand to work on it. A knowledge of Sanskrit is insufficient; one must join a knowledge of Tibetan and Chinese to this, for until recently it was solely in its Tibetan and Chinese versions that there existed, integrally, the book of Vasubandhu, Kārikā and Bhāṣyam.

II. Bibliography of the Kośa.


translation; the second is a list of the 75 dharmas with substantial notes); 2. an English translation of the Pudgalapratisetadhaprabhakaraṇa or the ninth chapter of the Kośa, Ac. de Petrograd, 1918.


2. The Kośa and its commentaries, Sanskrit, Tibetan, and Chinese sources.
   a. Abhidharmakosavyākhyā, Bibliotheca Buddhica, Sphūṭārtha Abhidharmakośavyākhyā, the work of Yaśomitra, first Kośasthāna, edited by Prof. S. Lévi and Prof. Th. Stcherbatsky, 1st fasc., Petrograd, 1918; 2nd fasc. by Wogihara, Stcherbatsky and Obermiller, (part of the second chapter), Leningrad, 1931.

3. Tibetan sources, Palmyr Cordier, Catalogue de fonds tibétain de la Bibliothèque Nationale, third part, Paris 1914, p. 394 and 499:
   b. Sūtrāṇurūpā nāma abhidharmakośa-vṛtiḥ of Viniṭabhadra, 64, fol. 109—304.
   c. Sphūṭārthā nāma abhidharmakośavyākhyā of Yaśomitra, 65 and 66. This is the commentary preserved in Sanskrit.
   d. Laksanānusārini nāma abhidharmakośaśīra of Pūrṇavardhana, a student of Sthiramati and master of Jinamitra and Śilendra-bodhi, 67 and 68.
   e. Upāyikā nāma abhidharmakośaśīra of Śamathadeva, 69 and 60, fol. 1—144.
   g. Laksanānusārini nāma abhidharmakośaśīra, an abridged recension of the "Bṛhattīka," above item d, 70, fol. 286—316.
   h. Sāratamuccayo nāma abhidharmavatāraśīra, anonymous, 70, fol. 315—393.
   i. Abhidharmavatāra-prakaraṇa, anonymous, 70, fol. 393—417.
   j. Tattvārthaḥ nāma abhidharmakośabhāṣyaśīra of Sthiramati, 129 and 130.


The references in our translation are to the edition of Kyokuga Saeki, the
Kandō Abidatsuma Kusharon (Kyoto, 1891), the pages of which correspond to those of the Ming edition, a remarkable work which notably contains, in addition to interesting notes of the editor, copious extracts 1. from the two major Chinese commentators, 2. from the Vibbāṣā, 3. from the commentary of Samghabhadra, and 4. from the work of K'uei-chi on the Trīṃśikā.

5. Among the Chinese commentaries on the Kośa:
   a. Shen-t'ai, the author of a Shu: the Chū-she lun shu, originally in twenty Chinese volumes, today only volumes 1, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, and 17 are extant; Manji Zoku-zōkyō 1.83.3–4.
   b. P'u-kuang, the author of the thirty-volume Chū-she lun Chi; TD 41, number 1821.
   c. Fa-pao, the author of a thirty-volume Chū-she lun Shu; TD 41, number 1822.

Two other disciples of Hsüan-tsang, Huai-su and K'uei-chi, have written commentaries on the Kośa which are lost. P'u-kuang has also written a short treatise on the teachings of the Kośa.

d. Yuan-hui wrote a thirty-volume Shu on the Kārikās of the Kośa, a work with a preface written by Chia-ts'eng and dated before 727; this work, the Chū-she lun sung Shu (var. Chū-she lun sung shih), is preserved in TD volume 41, number 1823. This Shu "was commented upon many times in China and very widely disseminated in Japan; it is from this intermediary text that Mahāyānists in general draw their knowledge of the Kośa. But from the point of view of Indology, it does not offer the same interest as the three preceding commentaries."

Hsüan-tsang dictated his version of Saṃghabhadra to Yuan-yu. There are some fragments of a commentary written by him.


Guṇamati is known through his commentary on the Vyākhyāyukti; many fragments of this commentary are quoted in the Chos-'byun of Bu-ston, trans. Obermiller, 1931. It is mentioned four times by Yaśomitra in his Abhidharmakośavyākhyā.  
   a. Introductory stanzas: Guṇamati comments on the Kośa, as has Vasumitra; Yaśomitra follows this commentary when it is correct.
   b. "Guṇamati and his disciple Vasumitra say that the word namas is declined in the fourth case. But when the word namas is not independent, we have the accusative. This is why this master (Vasubandhu), in the Vyākhyāyukti, says, 'Saluting the Muni with my head' . . ." (Kośa, Vyākhyā, i p.7).
   c. Guṇamati holds that the Kośa wrongly teaches that "Conditioned things,
with the exception of the Path, are sāsrava (Kośa, i. 4b)," for all of the dharmas, without exception, can be taken as an object by the āsravas (Vyākhyā i, p. 13).

d. On the subject of the continuity of the mental series, "the master Guṇamati, with his disciple the master Vasumitra, through affection for the doctrine of his own nikāya, instead of confining themselves to explaining the Kośa, refute it" (Kośa, iii. 11a–b, note).

N. Péri (Date, 41) recalls that Burnouf mentioned (Introduction, 566), according to Yaśomitra, the commentary of Guṇamati. He adds: "An author very rarely quoted. His Laksṇanāsāraśāstra (Taisho 1641) forms part of the Canon, where it is classified among the Hīnayāna works. It summarizes the ideas of the Kośa, and then presents his own opinions on several points. The Hsi-yü-chi, after having listed him among the celebrated monks of Nālandā (TD 51, p. 924a2), tells us that he left the monastery where he had been living in order to move to Valabhī (p. 936c2)."

Taishō 1641 is only an extract of the treatise of Guṇamati, the chapter which examines the sixteen aspects of the truths (Kośa, vii. 13): "Do we have sixteen things or sixteen names? The masters of the Vibhāṣā say that sixteen names are posited because there are sixteen things. But the sūtra-upadeśa masters say that there are sixteen names, but only seven things; four things for the first Truth, one thing for each of the three others. In the beginning the Buddha promulgated the Upadeśasūtra. After the disappearance of the Buddha, Ānanda, Kātyāyana, etc., recited that which they had heard. In order to explain the meaning of the Sūtra, as disciples do, they composed a śāstra explaining the Sūtra, which is thus called a sūtra-upadeśa. Then the Vibhāṣā extracted an upadeśa from that which was to be found [in this upadeśa]; since it only indirectly comes from the Sūtra, it is not called a sūtra-upadeśa."

Guṇamati continues as in the Kośa, vii.13a, "According to the first explanation, anitya, impermanent, because it arises dependent on causes (pratyayādhinatvāt)." And he comments, "Conditioned things, without force, do not arise in and of themselves . . . ."

The first volume ends, "The thesis of Vasubandhu is similar to the meaning of the sūtra-upadeśa masters."

The second begins, "The author says, 'I am now going to give the explanation of what I believe. Anitya, impermanent, because, having arising, it has extinction. Conditioned things, having arising, and extinction, are not permanent. Arising is existence . . . ."

The treatise touches on diverse points of philosophy, the absence of ātman, etc. In this work we encounter some very interesting notes, for example (Taishō,
page 168b9), "In the Hīnayāna, the pretas are superior to animals; in the Mahāyāna, the opposite. In fact, the pretas are enveloped in flames . . ."

It is curious that the title of the work of Guṇamati, literally Laksanānusārasāstra, is exactly identical to that of the book attributed to Pūrṇavardhāna in the Tanjur. We have Guṇamati, a teacher of Sthiramati, and Purṇavarudhāna, a student of Sthiramati.25

7. Sthiramati, a student of Guṇamati, defended the Kośa against Samghabhadrā. "His commentary on the Kośa is mentioned many times by Shen-t'ai, P'u-kuang, and Fa-pao in their work on the same text. The precise manner in which they quote it, in which they note and discuss its opinions, causes us to believe that Hsüan-tsang may have brought it to China, and perhaps they themselves had also read it" (N. Péri, Date, 41). Sthiramati, the author of the Tsa-chi, is one of the great masters of the Vijñaptimātratā system.

There exists (Taishō 1561) a small treatise by Sthiramati (transcription and translation) entitled Kosatattvārthaṭikā or Abhidharmakośāstraṭattvārthaṭikā, which is doubtless an extract of a voluminous work of the same name and by the same author preserved in Tibetan (Cordier, 499).

We observed, at the beginning, the commentary on the seven points indicated in the introductory stanza of the Kośa.

On the wisdom of the Buddha, superior to that of the saints, the author quotes the Kalpanāmanḍitikā stanza (Huber, Sūtrālaṃkāra), Kośa, i.1, vii.30; and recalls the ignorance that Maudgalyāyana had of the place where his mother had been reborn, Kośa, i.1.

In order to demonstrate the thesis of the Kośa that śraddhendriya can be impure, ii.9, the author quotes at length the sūtra on the request of Brahmā to the Buddha (setting into motion the Wheel of the Law), a sūtra briefly indicated by Vasubhandu.

The work ends with some remarks on the duration of life: The stanza says: "Among the Kurus life is always 1,000 years in length; half of this to the west and the east. In this continent, it is not set: at its end, some ten years; in the beginning, without measure" (Kośa, iii. 75–77), "There are, in fact, in this world, some beings who have extra meritorious actions and who make the resolution, 'May I have a long life!, without desiring more precisely, 'May I live one hundred years, ninety years, eighty years!' Or rather some venerable persons, parents and friends, say, 'May you live long!' without saying more precisely how long a time. If one makes similar vows, it is because the actions done by persons of this continent are associated with thoughts of desire. The Sūtra says, 'Know, oh Bhiksūs that the length of life was over 80,000 years under Vipaśyin, 20,000 years under Kāśyapa;
the length of life is now 100 years; few will go beyond this, and many will have less.' If the length of life is not set, why does the Blessed One express himself in this way? . . .” The treatise concludes with the well-known stanza: sucīrṇa-brahmacarye’smin . . . (Kośa, vi.60a).

8. Sarīghabhadrā has written two works.

The first (TD 29, number 1562), the title of which is transcribed into Chinese as Abhidharmanyayanusārasāstra—or perhaps better as Nyāyānusāro nāma Abhidharmaśāstram—is a commentary which reproduces without any changes the Kārikās of the Abhidharmakośa. But this eighty-volume commentary criticizes the Kārikās, which present the Vaibhāṣika doctrine by noting them with the word kīla, which means “in the words of the School”; it refutes the Bhāṣyam, the auto-commentary of Vasubandhu, when this work presents views opposed to those of the Vaibhāṣikas, and it corrects them when it attributes to the Vaibhāṣikas views which are not theirs.

The title of the second treatise (TD 29, number 1563) is not completely transcribed: Abhidharmasamaya-hsien-sātra or Abhidharmasamaya-kuang-sātra. J. Takakusu proposes Abhidharmasamayapradīpikāsāstra, which is not bad; however pradīpa, “lamp,” is always teng, and we have for hsien the equivalents prakāśa and dyotana.

This is a forty-volume extract from the Nyāyānusāra, from which all polemic is excluded and which is thus a simple presentation of the system (samaya) of the Abhidharma. It differs from the Nyāyānusāra by the presence of a rather long introduction, in seven stanzas and prose, and also by the manner in which it treats the Kārikās of Vasubandhu: these Kārikās are either omitted (ii.2–3) or corrected (i.11, 14) when they express false doctrines or when they cast suspicion on true doctrines by the addition of the word kīla.26

Sarīghabhadrā is an innovator, and K’uei-chi distinguishes the earlier and the later Sarvāstivādins, Siddhi, 45 (theory of atoms), 65 (lakṣaṇas of “conditioned things”), 71 (the viprayukta called ho-bo), 147 (vedana?), and 311 (divergent Sarvāstivādins, on adhimokṣa).

***

(Additions to the Bibliography, by Hubert Durt.)

The following titles are editions of texts and works related to the Abhidharmakośabhāṣyam, which have appeared in print since the first appearance of de La Vallée Poussin’s French translation (1923–1931).
Sanskrit:


Tibetan:


Chinese:


Otani University, *Index to the Taishō Tripitaka*, no. 16, Bidon-bu III (vol. 29), Research Association for the Terminology of the Taishō Tripitaka, Tokyo, 1962.

Funabashi, Suisai and Issai Funabashi, *Kandō Abidatsuma Kusharon Sakuin*, Kyoto, 1956. This index is based on the Chinese version of Kyokuga Saeki—the Chinese version used by de La Vallée Poussin—, the Kandō-bon Kusharon, in thirty volumes, Kyoto, 1887.

iii. The Date of Vasubandhu. The Former Vasubandhu.

We shall not undertake here a bibliography of Vasubandhu. But his treatise, the *Pratītyasamutpādavyākhyā* (Cordier, iii. 365), calls for the attention of the reader of the *Kośa*. G. Tucci has published some fragments of this work (*JRAS*. 1930, 611–623) where the twelve links in the chain are explained in detail, with numerous quotations from scriptures. G. Tucci also proposes to publish the *Trisvabhāvakārika*27 and some parts of the commentary to the *Madhyāntavibhāga*.

Introduction

samuccaya, chap. i, by R. Iyengar, pp. 31–35. It appears that Dignāga denies the authorship of the Vādavidhi to Vasubandhu, in spite of universal opinion, and the Tīkā quotes Kośa ii.64, which contradicts the above-mentioned definition of pratyakṣa. There are also numerous passages of the Vyākhyayukti in the Chos-byun of Bu-ston (above p.16).

Wassiliew, Buddhismus, 235 (1860): "Life of Vasubandhu."

Kern, Geschiedenis, trans. Huet, ii.450.

S. Lévi, JA., 1890, 2.252; Theatre indien, 1890, i.165, ii.35; "Donations religieuses des rois de Valabha" (Htes Etudes, vii, p. 97); "Date de Candragomin," BEFEPO., 1903, 47; Sūtrālaṅkāra, trans. preface, 2–3, 1911.

Bühler, Alter der indischen Kunst-Poesie, p. 97, 1890.


B. Shiiwo [Benkyō Shiīo], Dr. Takakusu and Mr. Péri on the date of Vasubandhu (270-350), Tetsugaku Zasshi, Nov.-Dec. 1912.

Winternitz, Jesbichte, ii.256 (1913), iii.693 (1922).


A group of articles, many of which are summaries of articles written in Japanese, in Mélanges Lanman (Indian Studies in Honor of Charles Rockwell Lanman), 1929; J. Takakusu, Date of Vasubandhu, the Great Buddhist Philosopher; T. Kimura, Date of Vasubandhu Seen from the Abhidharmakośa; G. Ono, Date of Vasubandhu Seen from the History of Buddhistic Philosophy; H. Ui, Maitreya as an Historical Personage. Further, mention of the opinions of B. Shiiwo, S. Funabashi, E. Mayeda, S. Mochizuki.

"H.P. Sastri pointed out the historicity of Maitreyanātha from the colophon of the Abhisamayālaṃkārakārikā, which is a commentary, from the Yogācāra point of view, on the Pañcavimśatisāhasrikā-prajñā-pāramitā-sūtra by Maitreyanātha" Kimura, Origin of Mahāyāna Buddhism, Calcutta, 1927, p. 170).

The date of Vasubandhu is bound to that of Asaṅga, his brother. Now some parts of the Yogaśāstra, the work of Asaṅga, were translated into Chinese in 413–421, and in 431. However, the opinion is accepted among Japanese scholars that the works attributed to Asaṅga, writing under the inspiration of the future
Buddha Maitreya, are in reality the works of a master Maitreya, an ācārya, "an historical personage." This thesis permits us to strip Asaṅga of one part of the library of which we thought he was the pious redactor, and to place him, along with his brother Vasubandhu, toward the middle or end of the 5th century, or—why not?—towards the 6th century. "If a scholar named Maitreya is found to be the author of those works hitherto attributed to Asaṅga, then the date of the latter ought to be shifted later, at least by one generation, if not more. The ground for an earlier date for Vasubandhu should give way altogether" (Takakusu, *Mélanges Lanman*, 85).

H. Ui, in *Philosophical Journal of the Imperial University, Tokyo*, number 411, 1921, takes into account the arguments, developed afterwards in his *Studies of Indian Philosophy*, i359, summarized in *Mélanges Lanman*. These arguments appear to be weak and, to my mind, non-existent (Note bouddhique, xvi, *Maitreya et Asaṅga*, Ac. Royale de Belgique, January 1930). I do not think that they gain any force from the observations of G. Tucci ("On some aspects of the doctrines of Maitreya-[nātha] and Asaṅga," *Calcutta Lectures*, 1930). The tradition of the Vijnāptimātrā school establishes, as Tucci observes, the lineage Maitreyanātha–Asaṅga–Vasubandhu, but Maitreyanātha is not the name of a man, but rather "He who is protected by Maitreya"; nātha is a synonym of buddha, or more precisely of bhagavat. The commentary of the *Abhisamayālaṃkāra* (p. 73 of the Tucci edition) gives to Maitreya the title of bhagavat in one place where he explains how "Asaṅga, in spite of his scriptural erudition and his insight (labdhdhiḥ gama’pi, *Kośa*, viii.39), did not understand the *Prajñāpāramitā* and lost heart. Then the Bhagavat Maitreya, for his sake (tam uddhiṣya) explained the *Prajñāpāramitā* and composed the treatise which is called the *Abhisamayālaṃkāra*.” It is with the title of the Maitreyanātha that Sāntideva designates the saint who, in the *Gaṇḍavyūha*, explains to the pilgrim Sudhana the virtues of “the Bodhi mind” (*Bodhicaryāvatāra*, i.14, Rajendralal Mitra, *Buddhist Nepalese Literature*, 92). If the School holds as sacred, as āryā deśanā, the treatises of Asaṅga, it is because the Bhagavat Maitreya has revealed them. That the Tibeto-Chinese tradition varies in its attributions, sometimes naming as author a revealing deity, sometimes an inspired master, does not pose any difficulty.

***

The biography of Vasubandhu (by Paramārtha) is not without its difficulties. The *Kośa* excited the criticism of Saṅghabhadra who, in his large *Nyāyānusāra*, brings up innumerable heresies of a Sautrāntika character which mar the work of
Vasubandhu. We are told that Vasubandhu refused to enter into controversy: "I am now already old. You may do as you please" (Takakusu's version). But we are also assured that Vasubandhu was then converted to the Mahāyāna by his brother Asaṅga, that he decided to cut out his tongue in order to punish it for not confessing the Mahāyāna earlier, and, more wisely, that he wrote numerous treatises wherein the doctrines of the Mahāyāna were brilliantly elaborated.

Yaśomitra, the commentator on the *Kośa*, says that the expression पुर्वाचर्याः, "former masters," of the *Kośa*, designates "Asaṅga, etc." (āsangaprabhṛtāyas). N. Péri thinks that Yaśomitra means to designate the school of the Pūrvācāryas by their most illustrious name, and that the text does not imply that Asaṅga is in fact *purvā* relative to Vasubandhu (see my *Cosmologie bouddhique*, p. ix).

The *Kośa* was only translated in 563, whereas the work of Dharmatrāta, an imperfect draft of the *Kośa*, was translated in 397–418, 426–431, and 433–442. Takakusu observes, "If the *Kośa* had existed, why did so many translators linger over the book of Dharmatrāta? (*Melanges Lanmari*). And it is difficult to give a pertinent answer to this question.29

But it appears almost impossible to believe that Paramārtha the biographer of Vasubandhu and first translator of the *Kośa*, arriving in China in 548, erred when he made the author of the *Kośa* the contemporary and the brother of Asaṅga. It is a hopeless hypothesis to identify the brother and the convert of Asaṅga with the former, or earlier, Vasubandhu.

One should admit the existence and the "Abhidharmic" activity of an earlier Vasubandhu. The problem, which I have taken up in the preface to *Cosmologie bouddhique* (above, p.6), has been taken up again by Taikens Kimura, "Examen lumineau de l'Abhidharma" (contents in *Eastern Buddhism*, iii, p.85), fifth part: "On the sources of the *Kośa*." We can see a summary of his conclusions in *Melanges Lanman*. Subsequently, see *Note Bouddhique* xvii, Acad. de Belgique: "Vasubandhu l'ancien."

Yaśomitra, in three places (*Kośa*, i.13, iii.27, iv.2–3), recognizes in a master refuted by Vasubandhu the author of the *Kośa* (and a disciple of Manorathra according to Hsuan-tsang), a "Sthavira Vasubandhu, the teacher of Manorathra,"30 an "earlier master Vasubandhu," विद्वद्विग्रहसायवासुबंधु. P'u-kuang (Kimura, *Melanges Lanman*, 91) confirms Yaśomitra, and designates the master in question under the name of "the earlier Vasubandhu, a dissident Sarvāstivādin master."

On the other hand, the gloss of the initial five stanzas of the treatise of Dharmatrāta, the re-edition of the *Abhidharmasāra* of Dharmasrī,31 attributes an edition of the same book in 6,000 verses to Vasubandhu. These stanzas and this
gloss are not very clear. Kimura has studied them (Mélanges Lanman); I have amended his interpretation (Note bouddhique xvii).

**iv. The Seven Canonical Treatises of the Abhidharma.**

The Sarvāstivādins recognize the authority of seven Abhidharma treatises, "the word of the Buddha." Among them, the Ābhidhārmikas, "who only read the Abhidharma with its six feet," are distinct from the Vaibhasikas "who read the Abhidharma."

The Abhidharma "with its six feet" is the great treatise of Kātyāyaniputra, entitled the Jñānaprasthāna, upon which the Viśāṣā is a long commentary, and six treatises the order and authorship of which vary somewhat according to our sources. Following the order of Abhidharmakośavyākhyā, there are: the Prakaranaṇāda of Vasumitra, Vijñānakāya of Devaśarman, Dharmaśaṅkha of Śāriputra (or of Maudgalyāyana, according to Chinese sources), Prajñāptiśāstra of Maudgalyāyana, Dvātukāya of Purṇa (or of Vasumitra, Chinese sources), and Saṅgīti-parāyāya of Mahākauṭīhila (or of Śāriputra, Chinese sources).

One should note that the Tibetans list the Dharmaśaṅkha first, and the Jñānaprasthāna only as sixth: "The Tibetans seem to regard the Dharmaśaṅkha as the most important of all." This is also the opinion of Ching-mai (664 A.D.), the author of the Chinese colophon (Takakusu, 75, 115).

Takakusu, in "On the Abhidharma Literature" (JPTS, 1905), brings together a number of details on these seven books which Burnouf was the first to list; he gives the contents of the chapters of each of them. The remarks which follow are an addition to this fine work.

**a. Jñānaprasthāna.**

1. According to Hsuan-tsang, Kātyāyaniputra composed this śāstra in the monastery of Tamasavāna 300 years after the Parinirvāṇa (the fourth century).

   However, the Viśāṣā (TD 26, p. 21c29), commenting on the Jñānaprasthāna (TD 26, p. 918) says, "When the Bhadanta composed the Jñānaprasthāna, he lived in the East, and this is why he cites as an example the five rivers that are known in the East." (Kośa, iii.57).

   2. We know through the quotations of Yaśomitra that the chapters bore the name of skandhaka (Indriyaskandhaka, Samādhiskandhaka), and that the work which he is referring to was written in Sanskrit.

   However, the first translation has for its title "Śāstra in eight chien-tu"; Paramārtha has "Śāstra in eight ch'ien-tu." We reminded of khaṇḍa, but
Paramārtha explains that *ch'ien-tu* is equivalent to *ka-lan-ta*, which is evidently *grantha*. S. Lévi thinks that *ch'ien-tu* is the Prakrit *gantho*. Takakusu concludes, "All we can say is that the text brought by Saṅghadeva seems to have been in a dialect akin to Pali . . . But this supposition rests solely on the phonetic value of Chinese ideographs." 36

3. The *Jñānaprasthāna*, a very poorly composed work, begins with the study of the *laukīkāgradharmas*. 37

"What are the *laukīkāgradharmas*? The mind and mental states which are immediately followed by entry into *samyaktvanyāma* (see *Kośa*, vi.26). There are those who say the five moral faculties (*indriyas*, faith, etc.) which are immediately followed by entry into *samyaktvanyāma* are called the *laukīkāgradharmas*." The text continues, "Why are this mind and these mental states so called . . . ?"

The *Vibhāṣā*, TD 27, p. 7cl, 38 reproduces the two definitions of the *Jñānaprasthāna* and explains: "Who are the persons who say that the *laukīkāgradharmas* are the five faculties? The former Ābhidhārmikas. Why do they express themselves in this way? In order to refute another school: they do not intend to say that the *laukīkāgradharmas* consist solely of the five faculties. But the Vibhajyavādins hold that the five faculties are exclusively pure (*anāsrava*) (see *Kośa*, ii.9) . . . In order to refute this doctrine, the former Ābhidhārmikas say that the *lokottaradharmas* consist of the five faculties. Now these *dharmas* are produced in the person of a *prthagjana*: thus it is proven that the five faculties can be impure."

The interest of this commentary lies in the fact that it distinguishes the "former Ābhidhārmikas" from Katyāyaniputra and from the *Jñānaprasthāna*.

4. One of the last stanzas of the last chapter is the *sloka* on the meaning of which, according to Vasumitra (*Sectes*, Masuda, p.57), the Vātsiputrīyas disputed among themselves: whence the separation of the four schools, Dharmottariyas, etc.

5. But if the *Jñānaprasthāna* is the work of Katyāyaniputra, how can the Sarvāstivādins consider this treatise as the word of the Buddha?

The *Vibhāṣā* answers this question: 39

"Question: Who has composed this treatise, that is, the *Jñānaprasthāna*?

"Answer: The Buddha Bhagavat. For the nature of the *dharmas* to be known is very profound and very subtle: apart from the omniscient Buddha Bhagavat, who would be able to understand them and to teach them?

"[Question]: If this is the case, who in this treatise, asks the questions, and who answers?

"[Answer]: There are many opinions on this: 1. the Sthavira Śāriputra asks
the questions and the Bhagavat answers; 2. the five hundred arhats ask the questions and the Bhagavat answers; 3. the gods ask the questions and the Bhagavat answers; 4. some fictive (nirmita) bhikṣus ask the questions and the Bhagavat answers. This is the law (dharmatā, fa-erb) of the Buddhas, that they should teach to the world the nature of the dharmas to be known. But is there no one who asks the questions? Then the Bhagavat creates some bhikṣus of correct appearance and aspect, agreeable to behold, shaven headed, dressed in robes; he causes these beings to ask the questions and he answers them . . .

"Question: If this is the case, why does tradition attribute the writing down of this treatise to the Āryan Kātyāyanīputra?

"Answer: Because this Aryan has upheld, and published this treatise in such a manner that it became widely propagated; this is why it is said to be his. But the treatise was spoken by the Bhagavat. Nevertheless, according to another opinion, this treatise is the work of the Āryan Kātyāyanīputra.

"Question: Have you not said above that no one, with the exception of the Buddha, is capable of understanding and of teaching the nature of the dharmas? How was the Aryan able to compose this treatise?

"Answer: Because the Aryan himself also possesses a subtle, profound, ardent, and skillful intelligence; knows well the unique and the common characteristics of the dharmas; penetrates the meaning of texts from the beginning to the end (pūrvāparakoti); knows well the Three Baskets; has abandoned the defilements of the Three Dhātus; is in possession of the three vidyās; is endowed with the six abhijñās and the eight vimokṣas; has obtained the pratisamvids; has obtained pranidhibhiñāna; formerly, under five hundred Buddhas of the past, he practiced the religious life; he made the resolution: (In the future, after the Nirvāṇa of Śākyamuni, I shall compose the Abhidharma.) This is why it is said that this Treatise is his work. In the mass of disciples of all the Tathāgatas Samyaksambuddhas, it is the law (dharmatā) that there shall be two great masters (Śāstracāryas) who uphold (dhātar, Kosa, viii.38,39) the Saddharma: in the lifetime of the Tathāgata as the Āryan Śāriputra, and after his Nirvāṇa as the Āryan Kātyāyanīputra. Consequently this Āryan, by the power of his resolution, has seen what was useful to the Dharma and composed this Treatise.

"Question: If this is the case, how do you say that it is the Buddha who spoke the Abhidharma?

"Answer: The Bhagavat, when he was in this world, explained and taught the Abhidharma in different places by means of diverse theoretical presentations (lit. vāda-patha). Either after his Nirvāṇa or when the Bhagavat was still in this world, the Āryan disciples, by means of their pranidhibhiñāna, compiled and
brought together [these teachings], arranging them into sections. Thus Kātyāyana-putra also, after the departure of the Bhagavat, by means of his prāṇidhā-jñāna compiled, brought together, and composed the Jñānaprasthāna. Among the theoretical teachings of the Bhagavat, he established the gates of a book (vākyadvāra); he arranged stanza summaries, and he composed diverse chapters to which he gave the name of Skandhaka. He brought together the diverse teachings dealing with disparate subjects and composed a Miscellaneous Skandhaka out of them; the teachings relative to the samyojanas, to the jñānas, to karman, to the mahābhūtas, to the īndriyas, to samādhis and to the dṛṣṭis constitute the Samyojanaskandhaka, etc. In this same way all the Udānagāthās were spoken by the Buddha: the Buddha Bhagavat spoke them, in diverse places for the benefit of different persons, in accord with circumstances. After the Buddha left the world the Bhadanta Dharmatṛata, who knew them from tradition, compiled them together and gave [to the groups] the name of varga. He brought together the gāthās relative to impermanence and made the Anitya-varga out of them, and so forth.

"The Abhidharma was originally the word of the Buddha; it is also a compilation of the Āryan Kātyāyana-putra.

"Whether the Buddha spoke [the Abhidharma], or whether the disciple spoke it does not contradict Dharmatā, for all the Buddhas want the bhikṣus to uphold the Abhidharma. Thus this Āryan, whether he knew the Abhidharma from tradition, or whether he sees and examines it by the light of his prāṇidhā-jñāna, composed this treatise in order that the Good Law should remain a long time in the world . . . ."

b. The Prakaraṇa of Vasumitra.

This is also called the Prakaraṇagrantha, or the Prakaraṇapādaśāstra: it is an important work, but little systematized (for many things have been brought together in the chapter of "The One Thousand Questions"); frequently quoted in the Kośa (for example, i.7, 9, ii.41, 51, 54 . . .).

On one important point it differs from classical Vaibhāṣikavāda: it ignores the akusala-mahābhūmikas (iii.32). Sometimes it expresses itself in terms which one must interpret with some violence to make them correct (ii.46, 52, ii.4, 41). It differs from the Jñānaprasthāna, v.10.

Ignorance of the akusala-mahābhūmika category seems to prove that the Prakaraṇa is earlier than the Jñānaprasthāna.

Sometimes the authors of the Vibhāṣā (p. 231c3) are unsure:

"Why does this treatise (the Jñānaprasthāna) say prthagjanatva and not
prthagjanadharma, whereas the Prakaranapada says prthagjanadharma and not prthagjanatva? . . . This Treatise having said prthagjanatva, the Prakaranapada does not repeat it; this Treatise not having said prthagjanadharma, the Prakaranapada says prthagjanadharma. This indicates that this treatise was composed after that one. There are some persons who say: that Treatise having said prthagjanadharma, this Treatise does not repeat it . . . ; this indicates that that Treatise has been composed after this one."

The Prakarana does not enumerate the indriyas in the same order as the Sūtra, the Jñānaprasthāna, or early Pāli scholasticism (Kośa, i.48).

c. The Vijñānakāya.

This is a work that some Chinese sources (quoted in Takakusu) place one hundred years after the Parinirvāṇa; attributed to Devaśarman or to lha-skyid (Devakṣema?). Concerning its author, who has the title of arhat in Hsüan-tsang, see Wassiliew in Taranatha, 296, Hsuan-thsang [=Hsuan-tsang], Vie, 123, Watters, i.373.

The interest of this book, though small from the point of view of doctrine, is notable from the point of view of history. The first chapter, 'Maudgalyāyanaskandhaka,' and the second, 'Pudgalaskandhaka,' are related to two great controversies, the existence of the past and the future, and the existence of the pudgala.  

Devaśarman refutes the doctrine of Mu-lien or Maudgalyāyana: this latter denies the existence of the past and future, exactly as does Tissa Moggaliputta in the Pāli language ecclesiastical histories.

Here we have, from the Sarvāstivādin side, the controversy which gave rise to the council of Aśoka. According to the legend that Buddhaghosa has spread to Ceylon and to London, the king was assured that the Buddha was "a follower of distinction" (vibhajyavādin)—that is to say, probably, not totally accepting "the existence of all" (sarvāstivāda); he then charges Tissa Moggaliputta, that is to say, I believe, our Mu-lien, to preside over a council where only the opponents of the existence of the past and the future were admitted.

There is not a very close relationship between the Maudgalyāyanaskandhaka and the work of Tissa (Kathavatthu, i.6 and following). We should not be surprised at this, since the two works represent and bring about the triumph of two opposing doctrines.

On the contrary, the Pudgalaskandhaka presents, together with Kathavatthu, i.1, some close analogies to this text even down to an identity of phrases.

Devaśarman speaks of two masters—a follower of pudgala (pudgalavādin), who admits a vital principle, a type of soul or self (pudgala), and a follower of
emptiness (*sūnyatavāda*), that is to say a negator of the soul (*ātman*), an orthodox Buddhist who does not recognize any permanent principle.

1. The thesis of the *pudgalavāda* is formulated in terms which are partially identical to those that the *puggalavāda* of the *Kathāvatthu* employs.  

2. The arguments are in part the same:
   a) Argument taken from the passing from one realm of rebirth to another (compare *Kathāvatthu*, i.1, 158–161).
   b) Argument taken from the passing from one degree of holiness into another (*ibid.*, i.1, 221).
   c) Connection between the doer of the action and the "partaker of its results" (*ibid.*, i.1, 200).
   d) Is suffering "done by oneself" or "done by another"? (*ibid.*, i.1, 212).
   e) Is the *pudgala* conditioned (*saṃskṛta*) or unconditioned? (*ibid.*, i.1, 127).
   f) The *pudgala* is not perceived by any of the six consciousnesses; the consciousnesses arise from well-known causes, without the intervention of a *pudgala* (*Kathāvatthu*, passim).

3. The method of argumentation is the same in the Sanskrit source and in the Pāli source. The negator of the *pudgala* puts the follower of the *pudgala* in contradiction to the sūtras, that is to say in contradiction with himself—for the follower of *pudgala* recognizes that the Buddha has well said all that he has said.

"The *pudgalavāda* says: There is a self (*ātman*), a living being (*sattva*), a living principle (*jīva*), a being that arises (*jantu*), a being that nourishes itself (*posa*), a person (*purusa*), a *pudgala*. Because there is a *pudgala*, he does actions which should bear an agreeable result (*sukhavedanīya*), a disagreeable result, or a result neither disagreeable nor agreeable. Having done these three types of actions, he experiences, accordingly, sensations which are agreeable, disagreeable, neither disagreeable nor agreeable.

"The *sūnyatavāda* asks him: Yes or no, it is the same person who does the action and who experiences the sensation?

"The *pudgalavāda* answers: No.

"Recognize the contradiction into which you fall!" If there is a *pudgala*, and if, because there is a *pudgala*, he does actions and experiences their proper retribution, then one should say that it is the same person who does the action and who experiences the sensation: hence your answer is illogical. If you now deny that it is the same person who does the action and who experiences the sensation, then one should not say that there is a self, a living being *et cetera*. To say this is illogical.

"If the *pudgalavāda* answers: 'It is the same person who does the action and
who experiences the sensation', then he should be asked: Yes or no, is what the Bhagavat says in the Sūtra well said, well defined, well declared, namely, 'Oh Brahmin, to say that it is the same person who does the action and who experiences the sensation, is to fall into the extreme opinion of permanence'?"  

"The pudgalavādin answers: Yes, this is well said.  

"Recognize the contradiction into which you fall . . ."  

The relation between the Pāli and the Sanskrit Abhidharma treatises is close. The comparison between the Prakarana and the Dhātukāya with the Dhammasaṅgāni brings out, as does that of the Vijñānakāya with the Kathāvatthu, numerous evidences of the unity of this scholasticism. The controversy of the pudgala is, without doubt, one of the kathāvatthus, one of the oldest subjects of discussion. Presented in Pāli and in Sanskrit according to the same principles, with, often, the same arguments and striking coincidences of phraseology—clearer in Devaśarman, but more archaic, it appears to me, in Tissa—it cannot fail to clarify to a certain degree the history of the gravest conflict to agitate early Buddhism. We may be surprised that Devaśarman's pudgalavādin does not make anything of the sūtra on the bearer of the burden, a sūtra which is one of the principal authorities of Vasubandhu's pudgalavādin (Kośa, ix).  

As for the Kathāvatthu, it is not imprudent to think that this book is made up of bits and pieces. Certain parts are old, other parts are suspect.  

d. The Dhammaskandha.  

Takakusa asks if the compilation of this name is the work of Śāriputra (Yaśomitra) or of Maudgalyāyana (Chinese title); but this is quite a useless concern.  

This is a collection of sūtras, promulgated in Jetavana, addressed to the bhiksūs, preceded by two stanzas: "Homage to the Buddha . . . The Abhidharma is like the ocean, a great mountain, the great earth, the great sky. I wish to make an effort to present in summary the riches of Dharma which are found in it."

The author, in fact, comments most frequently on the sūtras which he quotes by quoting other sūtras: "Among these four, what is stealing? The Bhagavat says . . ."

Without any doubt, the author was a scholarly man and well informed concerning the most subtle doctrines of the Sarvāstivāda: "The Bhagavat, in Jetavana, said to the bhiksūs: 'There are four śrāmanyaphalas, results of the religious life. What are these four? The result of srotaāpanna . . . What is the result of srotaāpanna? It is twofold, conditioned and unconditioned (samśkṛta, asamśkṛta). Conditioned, that is to say the acquisition of this result and that which
is acquired through this acquisition, the precepts of the Śaikṣa . . . all the dharmas of the Śaikṣa. Unconditioned, that is to say the cutting off of the three bonds . . .” (compare Kośa, vi. 51, 76).

e. The Prajñāptisāstra.

a. The Tibetan Prajñāptisāstra is made up of three parts: Lokaprajñāpti, Karanaprajñāpti, and Karmaprajñāpti.

The first two are described and analyzed in Cosmologie bouddhique, pp. 295–350.

The third is in the same style. The text is divided into chapters preceded by a summary. Here is the beginning:

“Summary: Intention, volition, past, good, object, sphere of desire, stanza, resume of actions.

1. Thus have I heard. The Bhagavat resided in Jetavana in the park of Anāthapiṇḍada; he said to the bhikṣus, “I teach the retribution of intentional actions, done and certain, retribution in this life . . .” Thus spoke the Bhagavat.

2. There are two actions: volition action (cetanā karman), and action after having willed (cetayitvā karman). What is the first? It is called: cetanā, abhisamcetanā, cintanā, cetayitvā, cittābhisaṁskāra, mānasa karman; this is called volitional action . . .

3. Volitional action is past, future, present. What is past volitional action? That which is āvitu, utpanna, abhinivṛttā . . . abhyatita, kṣīṇa, niruddha, vipariṇata, atîtāsasaṁgrhita, atitābhvasaṁgrhita . . .

4. Volitional action is good, bad, or neutral . . .

5. Is the object of volitional action good?

6. Volitional action is of the three Dhātus. What is of the sphere of desire and of kāma?

7. A stanza in honor of the Buddha who teaches the different types of action.

8. One action: all actions done (literally: ekahetunā karmāṇāṁ saṁgrahah karmāti). Two actions; volition and action after having been willed. Three actions: bodily, vocal, mental. Four actions: of Kāmādhatū, of Rūpadhatū, of Ārupyadhatū, and not belonging to the Dhātus. Five Actions: definite (=either good or bad) and neutral actions which are abandoned through Meditation, those not to be abandoned (aheya) . . . And so forth up to twelve.”

Almost all of the theories presented in Kośa, iv, are treated, with long quotations from the sūtras.

Many details deserve to be mentioned. For example, “Lying arisen from ignorance (Kośa, iv. 68).” Asked by a hunter if he had seen the deer, one thinks,
"It is not fitting that the hunter should kill the deer," and he answers that he has not seen it (compare the story of Kṣāntivādin, Chavannes, *Cing cents contes*, i. 161). Asked by the king's army if he has seen the bandits . . . Asked by the bandits if he has seen the king's troops . . . And, above all, in the case of frivolous speech arisen from desire, "or further, through attachment to examining the word of the Buddha."

Chapter xi is interesting from another point of view. In relation to the definition of death from exhaustion of life or merit (paragraph copied by Vasubandhu, ii. 107), the story of Kāśyapa the Nude (*Samyutta*, ii. 19-22) is cited, with some long developments: "A short time after he left the Bhagavat, he was killed by a bull. At the moment of his death, his organs became very clear; the color of his face became very pure; the color of his skin became very brilliant." Of note also is the fact that Kāśyapa was received as an *upāsaka*: "Master, I go to the Bhagavat: Master; I go to the Sugata; Master, I take refuge in the Bhagavat, I take refuge in the Dharma and in the Saṅgha. May the Bhagavat recognize (dhāretu) me as an *upāsaka* having renounced killing . . .” (compare *Samyutta*, ii.22 and *Dīgha*, i.178).

Then: "The acquisition of karman is of four types. They are enumerated as in the *Saṅgūtiparāyaṇa*” Then follow three paragraphs on giving: "Four gifts: it happens that the giver is pure and the recipient is impure . . . and so forth as in the *Saṅgūtiparāyaṇa*. Eight gifts: the *āsadya* gift (*Kośa*, iv.117), and so forth as in *Saṅgūtiparāyaṇa*. Eight gifts: it happens that a person of little faith gives little, to immoral persons, for a short period of time . . .”

b. The Chinese *Prajñāptisūtra* is incomplete. This edition, from its first part, gives only the title, "In the great *Abhidharmaśāstra*, the *Lokaprajñāpti*, or first part.” And a gloss says that the Indian original is missing. There follows immediately the title of the second part: *Karaṇaprajñāpti*.

The text begins as follows: "In the *śāstra*, the question is posed: For what reason does the Cakravartin have the jewel of a woman . . .?" In comparing the Tibetan *Karaṇaprajñāpti*, we see that the Chinese text omits the First Chapter on the *laksāṇas* and on the Bodhisattva; and that the Second Chapter omits the enumeration of the jewels and discussions on the wheel, the elephant, the horse and the jewel.

The third chapter, in Chinese as in Tibetan, is made up of stanzas on the Buddha, a king like the Cakravartin, and the jewel of the Buddha: the Dharma is a wheel; the *rddhipādas* are an elephant. The Tibetan tells us that these stanzas are the *Sailagāthās*. This refers to an edition that departs from the *Suttanipāta*, where the single stanza 554 has two *pādas* corresponding to the Tibetan: "Śaila, I
am king, sublime king of the Dharma. In the circle of the earth, I set in motion the Wheel of the Dharma; like a Cakravartin king, consider the Tathāgata as compassionate, full of pity, a Muni beneficial to the world."

The Chinese text has fourteen chapters; the last, which is meteorological (rain, etc.), corresponds closely, like the others, to the Tibetan text. This latter has four supplementary chapters: the four *gatis*, the five *yonis*, to which womb do beings of the different realms of rebirth belong, etc. It is likely that Vasubandhu had read this chapter, for his version has, like the Tibetan *Prajñāpti*, the story of the *preti* who eats her ten children every day, the story of Śaila, of Kapotamālinī, etc. (Kośa, iii.9; Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p626c).

Takakusu has ingeniously supposed that the *Lokaprajñāpti*, omitted either by mistake or on purpose in the Chinese *Prajñāptiśāstra*, of which it should be the first "gate," is found in fact in the śāstra (Taishō 1644) entitled *Li-shih*: "Nanjio translates Lokasthitī (?)-abhidharmāśāstra. But *li* signifies constructing, establishing, and is practically equivalent to *shib-she* or *prajñāpti*." Thus Takakusu translates *Lokaprajñāpti-abhidharmāśāstra*.

Taishō 1644 exhibits the characteristics of a sūtra. Some editions precede the title with the words, "Spoken by the Buddha."

The text begins: "As the Buddha Bhagavat, the Arhat, said, 'Thus have I heard.' The Buddha resided in Śrāvastī, in the monastery of the upāsikā Mṛgāramātar Visākhā, with many bhiksus, all arhats . . . with the exception of Ānanda. Then the earth shook. And Pūrṇa Maitrāyaṇīputra asks . . ." The chapters begin normally, "Then the Buddha said," "The Buddha said to the bhikṣu Pūrṇa," "The Buddha said to the bhikṣus," and end, "This is what the Buddha said; thus have I heard."

The contents of the chapters, established by Takakusu, show that, even though it treats of subjects that the Tibetan *Lokaprajñāpti* treats, Taishō 1644 has nothing in common with this *Lokaprajñāpti*. In this latter there is nothing that corresponds to the chapter on the *yakṣas* and notably to the conversion of "Śatāgirī" and "Hemavata" (the stanzas of the *Hemavatasutta* of the *Suttanipāta*, *Uragavagga*, Taishō, p. 177). The *Lokaprajñāpti* has only a summary indication of the heavenly gardens, concerning which Taishō 1644 has some long developments. But in both works there is the battle of the *suras* and the *asuras*, the movements of the sun and the moon, the length of life, the hells, the three small and the three great calamities. Their order, however, differs.

The title of the chapters of Taishō 1644 do not give, sometimes, a precise idea of the contents of the book.

For example, in the First Chapter, we have 1. the two causes of the shaking of
the earth (movement of wind, water; and the magical power of the saint who "considers the earth as small, the water as great"). 2. After two stanzas on the shaking of the earth, the Buddha says to Pūrṇa, "There are some winds named Vairambhas . . ." (Kośa, vi.12). In this circle of wind, there is the water and the earth whose thickness and height are fixed as in the Kośa (iii.45). 3. The Buddha explains the great hell called "Black Obscurity" which is found between the universes (and which is not mentioned in the Kośa), and the ten cold hells (Kośa, iii.59a-c, second note) . . . A little later, Ānanda manifests his admiration for the Buddha and his power. Udāyin reprimands him and is, in his turn, reprimanded by the Master. This is an edition of the celebrated Suttanta (Aṅguttara, i.228), which differs from the Pāli by the prophesy, "Aquatic beings are many, terrestrial beings are few . . . Samayavimukta arhats (Kośa, vi.56), are many, asamayavimukta arhats are few, and are difficult to encounter in this world: and I declare that Ānanda will become an asamayavimukta Arhat."

1. The Dhātukāya.

1. At the beginning of this work, one finds the enumeration and the definition of the dharmas of the Sarvāstivādins: 10 mahābhūmikas, 10 klesamahābhūmikas, 10 parittaklesas, 5 klesas, 5 drṣṭis, 5 dharmas . . .

   The kuṣalamahābhūmikas are missing, as are the akuṣalas.

   The five klesas make a strange list: kāmaraṇa, rūparaṇa, ārūpyaraṇa, pratigha and vicikitsā.

   More curious is the list of the five dharmas: vitarka, vicāra, vijñāna (understood as the six consciousnesses, eye, etc.), ābhirikṣa and anaparāpya.

   We can imagine that this book is from the early Sarvāstivāda. 2. The second part treats of samprayoga, association, and samgraha, inclusion.

   "Vedanā, which forms part of the mahābhūmikas, is associated with how many of the six vedanendriyas (pleasure, etc.)? With how many is it not associated? . . ." and so forth until: "Affection arisen from mental contact is associated with how many of the vedanendriyas? With how many is it not associated?

   "That which is associated with vedanā is included (samgrhitā) in what? In the mind and mental states, eight dhātus, two āyatanas, three skandhas. What is it that is left over? Vedanā, rūpa, asasamkṛta, the viprayuktasamkṛta; that is to say, eleven dhātus . . ."

   These are precisely the type of questions that the Dhātukathāpakarana examines: sukkhindriyam . . . kehi samapayuttam katibhi vippayuttam . . .? These are the same questions: Vedanākkahandheṇa ye dhammā samapayuttā te dhammā
katibi khandhehi katihiyatanehi katibi dhātūhi saṅgabūṭā? te dharmā tībhi khandhehi dvīhiyatanehi atthahi dhātūhi saṅgabūṭā (Section xii).

3. We can thus affirm the close relationship between the Dhātukāya and the Dhātukathāpakarana. The first, in its second part, is only a Sārvāstivādin recension (theory of the mahābhūmikas, of the viprayuktasamskāras . . .) of an earlier volume of scholastic exercises on the dharmas.

g. The Saṅgūtipāryāya

The Saṅgūtipāryāya is a recension of the Saṅgūtisuttanta which forms part of the Dīghanikāya.

Same nidāna: The Buddha at Pāvā; the death of the Nirgrantha; Śāriputra invites the monks to chant together the Dharma and the Vinaya so that, after the Nirvāṇa of the Tathāgata, his sons will not dispute them. Then follow chapters on the single dharmas, the pairs of dharmas . . . the tenfold dharmas. Finally the eulogy of Śāriputra: sādhū sādhū, by the Bhagavat, "You have well collected and recited with the bhikṣus the Ekottaradharmapāryāya taught by the Tathāgata . . ."

The close relationship of the Pāli and the Sanskrit texts do not exclude some variants. It is thus that, among the eight-fold dharmas, the Abhidharma omits the eight mithyātvas (number one of the Pāli list) and adds the eight vimokṣas (omitted in the Pāli list, but which figure in the Dasa-uttara). The order also differs. On the one hand mārgaṅga, pudgala, dāna, kausīḍyavastu, ārabhayavastu, punyotpatti, parsad, lokadharma, vimokṣa, abhibhāyatana; and on the other hand micchāta, sammatta, puggala, kusīṭavatthu, ārabhabatthu, dāna, dānuppatti, parisā, lokadhāmma, abhibhāyatana. Note that punyotpatti is better than dānuppatti.

Yasomitra and Bu-ston attribute the Saṅgūtipāryāya to Mahākauṭhiṭha; the Chinese sources attribute it to Śāriputra. Should we believe that in one recension, that known by Yasomitra, Mahākauṭhiṭha had the role that fit the Pāli and the Chinese texts assigned to Śāriputra?

Takakusu says that the Saṅgūtipāryāya, in volumes 15 and 18, quotes the Dharmaśakandhaśāstra. I have not encountered these quotations. The Prajñāptiśastra refers its reader to the Saṅgūtipāryāya.

v. Some Masters of the Vibhāṣā.

The Vibhāṣā frequently quotes the divergent opinions of masters and different schools. This presentation is often followed by the opinion of P’ing or of the P’ing-chia: "The P’ing-chia says that the first opinion is the best one."
Elsewhere, as the commentators remark, "there is no P'ing-chia" (Kośa, iii. 14, 20, 41, Siddhi, 552, 690).

A good specimen of the methods of the Vibhāṣa: "If there is a pure prajñā outside of the sixteen ākāras" (Kośa, vii. 12, Vibhāṣa, p. 529), why does the Vijnānakāya not say this...? If not, why do the Prakaraṇa and the Saṃgītāparāyaṇa, and even this treatise, the Vibhāṣa, say that...? And how does one explain such a sūtra? One should say that there is no pure prajñā outside of the sixteen ākāras. In this case, one understands the Vijnānakāya, but how does one explain the Prakaraṇa...? There are five reasons which justify this text...

Among the masters of the Vibhāṣa, of special note are Parśva, frequently quoted, and who, along with many anonymous commentators, comments on the Brahmajāla (Vibh. 98, p. 508, but see also Vibh. 175, p. 881, on the Śuddhāvāsikas and 177, p. 889, on the number of the laksana); Pūrṇāsa (Kośa iii. 28, Vibh. 23, p. 118b: Śamadatta (?), iii. 45, Vibh. 118c); Samghavasu (Vibh. 19, p. 97a, 106, p. 547a; 142, p. 732a) who recognizes only six indriyas in the absolute sense, the jīvita and the eight, eye, etc., because these six are the root of being, sattvamūla (Kośa, ii. 5); and, with respect to this, Kuṣavarman, who only admits one indriya, the manas, a doctrine which leans towards the Vijnānavāda.

a. Vasumitra.48

1. Vasumitra is one of the great masters of the Vibhāṣa, and one of the leaders of the Sarvāstivādin school. His theory on "the existence of all" is, Vasubandhu says, preferable to that of the three other masters, Dharmatrata, Ghoṣaka, and Buddhadeva (Kośa, v. 26).

One searches in vain in the two Abhidharma (of the collection of seven) attributed to Vasumitra, the Prakaraṇapāda and the Dhātukāya, for an allusion to this theory. Tārānātha says, moreover, that the author of the Prakaraṇa has nothing in common with the Vasumitra of the Vibhāṣa (p. 68).

2. The Áryan Vasumitra Bodhisattva gives his name to a treatise (Taishō 1549). According to the preface, this was the Vasumitra who, after Maitreya, will be the Simhatathāgata; the Vasumitra to whom the fathers refused entrance to the Council because he was not an arhat, and who later became the president of the Council (Hiuan-tsang, Watters, i.271). Watters does not think that he is the great master of the Vibhāṣa; indeed, the thirteenth chapter of Taishō 1549, entitled "Sarvāsti-ākhaṇḍa," does not contain any references to the system of avasthānya-thāṭṭa of the Bhadanta Vasumitra. This is all that I dare say about this very complicated chapter.
The theory of the time periods is encountered in the second volume (p. 780b), where the following text is discussed: "The past and the future are impermanent, and even more so, the present." Why does the Bhagavat say "And even more so, the present"? Six explanations follow (among which the fifth: "In former times the length of life was 80,000 years; it will again become 80,000 years"); then: "The Bhadanta says, 'The present appears for a short period of time; the past and the future do not remain permanently, but they come and go reciprocally. This is what conforms to the sūtra.'"

The paragraph devoted to avidyā (p. 722) does not formulate the opinion of the author. There is only "It is said," notably the opinion of the Mahīśāsakas. Is this ajñāna, the five nīvarana, ayoniśomanaskāra, viparyāsa, etc.? (See Kośa, iii.28). It appears, from the silence of Kyokuga Saeki, the editor of the Kośa, that the Vibhāṣā does not treat this point.

The problem of alcohol is treated on p. 786 (Kośa, iv.34, Vibhāṣā, jp. 645).

The discussion on ṭābha and bhāvānā (Kośa, vii.63), in which Vasumitra takes part (according to the Vyākyā, should be referred to Taishō 1549, for Vasumitra is not named in Vibhāṣā, p. 554b. The same remark applies to the erroneous opinion of Vasumitra on the falling away from the nirvedabhbāgyas, Kośa, vi.21.

The sloka on the eight anīyatās (Kośa, ii.27) is not found in Taishō 1549.

For the discussion, "Does it happen that the dharma which is hetupratyayā of a dharma is not hetupratyayā of this dharma?", see Taishō 1549, p. 791a, and compare the Jñānaprajñāpāla in Kośa, ii.52.

On living longer than a kalpa, see p. 782b; manodanda, schism, p. 785, classical doctrines.

3. Vasubandhu (ii.44) quotes the Paripṛcchā, and has also written a Pañcavastu (Vyākyā). The Paripṛcchā teaches a doctrine which is clearly Sautrāntika (that nirodhasamāpatti is accompanied by a subtle mind). Also, K'uei-chi (Siddhi, 211) says that this Vasumitra is a divergent Sautrāntika master.

As for the Pañcavastuka, we possess a commentary, the Pañcavastuکbhāṣā, from the hand of Dharmatrārā (Taishō 1555). The five vastus are the vastus explained in Kośa, ii.55-56 (svabhāvavastu, alambanavastu . . .).

This work does not appear to contain Sautrāntika opinions; it is divided into three chapters, Rājavibhāga, 'Cittavibhāga,' and Cittavibhāga.

Vasubandhu adopts the demonstration of "seeing by the two eyes" through the argument of seeing the two moons (Kośa, i.43, Pañcavastuکbhāṣā, p. 991c), and he probably adopts the theory (i.38) that the five vijñānas are both of retribution and out-flowing and that the sixth is also kṣaṇika (Pañcavastuka, p. 933c).
The demonstration of the existence of sukha (Kośa, vi.3) is very similar to the demonstration established in the Pañcavastuka, p. 994c.

K'uei-chi, in his treatise on the sects (Sarvāstivādin thesis, 28), mentions the opinion of the Pañcavastuka on the nature of the svalaksana which is the object of the vijñānas (Kośa, i.10).

b. Ghoṣaka and the Abhidharmamārtasastra.

After the Council and the death of Kaniṣka, a Tho-gar or Tukhāra was invited with Vasumitra to the country of Aśmaparānta—to the west of Kaśmir and close to Tukhāra (Tāranātha, 61)—by its ruler; he was the proponent of a theory that “all exists,” and is frequently quoted in the Vibhāṣā; he was also the author of the Abhidharmamārtasastra (Taishō 1553).

This treatise is a truly exquisite, small book, very readable (in spite of the early date of its translation, 220–265), very complete (for example, Chap. vi, on the doctrine of the lakṣanās and sub-lakṣanās, Kośa, ii. 45), but concise; however, we find some well-chosen details (for example, the enumeration of the fields of merit: father, mother, an old person, a sick person . . .).

The list of the viprayuktas, p. 970, is related to that of the Prakaraṇa (Kośa, ii. 35–36a): pṛāpti, jāti, sthiti, anityatā, asanijñisamāpatti, nirodhasamāpatti, asanijñi-āyatana, nānādesapṛāpti (?), vastuprāpti (?), āyatanaprāpti (?), the three kāyas, prthagjanatva.

The Kośa (ii.44) reproduces the essentials of a discussion between Ghoṣaka and the Sautrāntika Vasumitra, the author of the Paripṛcchā (see above p. 30), on the existence of the mind in the absorption of nirodha. The Vibhāṣā, it appears, ignores the author of the Paripṛcchā.

Among the opinions of Ghoṣaka mentioned in the Vibhāṣā and mentioned again in the Kośa, the most notable is that “visibles are seen by prajñā associated with the visual consciousness,” an opinion that departs from orthodoxy (Vibhāṣā, p. 61c, Kośa, i.42).

Elsewhere Ghoṣaka is very orthodox, or his divergences, which are minimal, indicate a progress; for example, Kośa, vi. 19, 20, 78. The references iv.4, 79 and v.66 merit examination.

Vibhāṣā, p. 397b, is interesting: “Ghoṣaka says: The five skandhas which form part of one’s own series, of the series of another, which belong to living beings and which do not belong to living beings, are ‘Suffering’ and the Truth of Suffering. The ascetic, upon understanding (abhisamaya), sees only that the five skandhas of his own series are suffering; he does not see that the others are
suffering. Why is this? Because one understands suffering under the aspect of torment: now the skandhas of another's series . . . do not torment his own series."

c. Buddhadeva.

S. Lévi asks (JA. 1896, 2, 450, compare Barnett, JRAS. 1913, 945) if the Buddhadeva of the Vibhāṣā should be identified with the Āryan Buddhadeva, a Sarvāstivādin, the Lion of Mathurā. The Sarvāstivādin Budhila mentions this same Lion who appears to be related to the Mahāsāṃghikas and who is perhaps the Fo-t’i-lo of Hsüan-tsang, the author of the Chi-chin-lun (Tattvasamuccayaśāstra) used by the Mahāsāṃghikas (?) (Lévi, ibid.; Watters, i.82).

We will find in Konow (Kharoshṭī Inscriptions, 44–49) the most recent remarks on these difficult inscriptions. There is nothing wrong with Buddhadeva being very much earlier than the Vibhāṣā. The Sarvāstivādins owe their name to the theory that "all exists," which Buddhadeva was probably one of the first to have explained.

In addition to his theory that "all exists" (Kośa, v.26), Buddhadeva is unique in maintaining that derived matter (bhautika) is only a mode (avasthā) of primary matter (mahābhūtas) (i.64), and that the mental states (cāittas, sensation, ideas, volition) are only modes of the mind (citta, vijñāna) (ii.23, ix; Siddhi, 395, Vibhāṣā, p. 661c, p. 730b), a doctrine which connects Buddhadeva to Dharmatrāta and to the Dārśāntikas-Sautrāntikas.

d. Dharmatrāta.

There are at least two Dharmatrātas:

1. The Bodhisattva who compiled the Udānavarga. The Vibhāṣā, followed by the Kośa, quotes it to show that a work can be the "word of the Buddha" even though edited by a master. According to the preface to Taishō 212 (A.D. 399), this Dharmatrāta was the maternal uncle of Vasumitra (Chavannes, Cinq cents contes, iii. 297).

2. The master quoted in the Vibhāṣā, the proponent of a theory of "all exists" (Kośa, v.26) which appeared to the Vaibhasikas to be too close to the systems of the heterodox.

3. This master of the Vibhāṣā is also the author of an Abhidharmasāra which bears his name (Taishō 1552), a commentary and a new edition of the Abhidharmasāra of Dharmasrī (Taishō 1550). In fact, the Dharmatrāta of the Vibhāṣā (p. 383b) denies the rūpa which forms part of the dharmāyatana, that is
to say, \textit{avijñatirūpa}; the same negation, somewhat more involved, but clear
nevertheless, appears in the Sāra (chapter on action, p. 888, see below).

4. There is nothing to prevent this same Dharmatrata from being
the commentator on the \textit{Pañcavastuka} of Vasumitra, Taishō 1555, the
\textit{Pañcavastukavibhāṣā}.\textsuperscript{55}

e. The Bhadanta Dharmatrāta.

The \textit{Vibhāṣā}, it appears, ignores Kumāralāta and Śrīlāta, who were the heads
of the Sautrāntika school (\textit{Siddhi}, 221, told to us by Kʻuei-chi). The Sautrāntika
school, or, more exactly, the school which should take the name of Sautrāntika, is
represented in the \textit{Vibhāṣā} by the Dārśtāntikas and by two masters: Dharmatrāta,
a divergent Sarvāstivādin, and the master whom the \textit{Vibhāṣā} simply calls
"Bhadanta," whom the \textit{Vyākhyā} of the \textit{Kośa} calls "the Sautrāntika Bhadanta"
(\textit{Kośa}, viii.9), who is at the "head of the list of Sautrāntikas" (viii.40), and who
adheres to or leans toward the Sautrāntika system (i.20).\textsuperscript{56}

Hsiian-tsang, Pʻu-kuang, and Bhagavadvīśeṣa recognize on occasion, in the
"Bhadanta" of the \textit{Vibhāṣā}, the Sthāvira or Bhadanta Dharmatrāta (\textit{Kośa}, i.20,
iv.4). Yaśomitra declares that Bhagavadvīśeṣa is wrong: "Bhadanta is the
philosopher that the \textit{Vibhāṣā} calls simply by the name of Bhadanta, a philosopher
who adheres to the Sautrāntika system or leans toward this system; whereas
Dharmatrāta, whom the \textit{Vibhāṣā} calls by his name, is a Sarvāstivādin, the author
of one of the four theories of the Sarvāstivāda (\textit{Kośa}, i.20)." On the other hand,
"the first version of the \textit{Vibhāṣā} gives the name of this master [Bhadanta] in
transcription and precedes this, like those of the other masters, with the title of
venerable" (note of N. Péri, in \textit{Cosmologie bouddhique}, 276).

Dharmatrāta expresses some opinions on important points which clearly
depart from the system of the \textit{Vibhāṣā} and from the orthodox Sarvāstivādin
system; the same may be said of Buddhadeva.

1. The Bhadanta does not admit that the eye sees: it is the visual consciousness
that sees (i.42); he has a particular theory on the non-contact of atoms (Wassiliew,
279), which Vasubandhu accepts and which Saṅghabhadra discusses (i.43);\textsuperscript{37} he
admits three caittas (ii.23, Add.), a position which distinguishes him from the
Dārśtāntikas; like the Sarvāstivādins, he denies that \textit{rūpa} is \textit{samanantarapratyaya}
(ii.62); he admits the prolonged existence of \textit{antarabhava}, against the Sarvāstivādins
(iii.14); he has a particular opinion on \textit{pratītyasamutpāda} and \textit{samutpanna}
(iii.28); he denies \textit{avijñāpti}, which is clearly anti-Sarvāstivādin (iv.4); on the four
modes of \textit{kusala}, he has a very orthodox doctrine (iv.8); he holds to the "mortal"
sin of intelligent animals (iv.97): he gives an explanation of the word \textit{vimokṣa}
(viii.33); he mixes the dhyānas and the sādhanapākṣas (Vibhāṣa, p. 881c); he treats the last thought of the arhat (p. 954a); on ucceda and sāsvata (p. 1003c); on the meaning of alpa, sulabha, anavadya, and on the praise of his disciples by the Buddha (p. 909a, and p. 900b, where he differs from Vasumitra).

The Bhadanta is very clear on vicāra-vitarka (Vibhāṣa, p. 744b, and p. 269, Kośa, ii.33 and viii.23): the author of the Jñānaprasthāna wants to refute what the Dārśāntākāya says. The latter says: "There is vitarka-vicāra from Kāmadhātu up to Bhavāgra. Why is this? Because the Sūtra says that grossness of mind is vitarka and that subtlety of mind is vicāra: now grossness and subtlety of mind exist up to Bhavāgra." The Bhadanta says: "The masters of the Abhidharma say that vitarka-vicāra are grossness and subtlety of mind. Now grossness and subtlety are relative things and exist up to Bhavāgra. However, these masters only admit vitarka and vicāra in Kāmadhātu and in Brahmaloka. This is poorly said, this is not well said."

The masters of the Abhidharma say, "What we say is well said, not poorly said. In fact . . ."

2. Vasubandhu (Kośa, vii.31) attributes to the Bhadanta Dharmatrata (see the correction ad vii.31) an opinion on the power of the Bhagavat which is an opinion of the Bhadanta according to Vibhāṣa, p. 155c.

In the Vibhāṣa (p. 61c) Dharmatrata says that visible matter is seen by the visual consciousness (cakṣur-vijñāna): an opinion that the Kośa attributes to a Vijnānavādin (i.42), and which differs from that of the Bhadanta (Vibhāṣa, p. 62b) who says that the eye sees by reason of light and the manas knows by reason of the act of attention.

3. Vibhāṣa, p. 661c16: the Jñānaprasthāna wants to refute what the other masters say. In this school there are two masters, the first Buddhadeva and the second Dharmatrata.

Buddhadeva says that rūpa is only the four mahābhūtas, that the caittas are citta. "Derived rūpa (upadasya-rūpa) is only mahābhūtaviśeṣa; the caittas are only citta-viśeṣa. Sūtras quoted in support of this theory: 1. "What is in the eye is solid . . ." (Kośa, i.35); 2. "Samādhi is citta-viśeṣa . . ." (viii.2). How does Buddhadeva prove the existence of dhūtas, āyatanas, skandhās? . . . The Abhidharmācāryas say, "The quoted sūtras do not have this meaning . . ."

Dharmatrata admits the existence of derived rūpa apart from primary rūpa, and of the caittas apart from citta. But he holds that derived tangibles and the rūpa which forms part of the dharmāyatana do not exist. He thus attempts to prove the existence of the dhūtas, āyatanas, skandhās, as does the Abhidharmā system. But the derived tangibles exist separately, as do the other derived rūpas; but if the rūpa of the dharmāyatana does not exist, avijñapti does not exist (Kośa, i.35, iv.3).
4. Vibhaśā, p. 383b: The Abhidharma says, “What is rūpaskandha? Ten rūpāyatanas and the rūpa included in the dharmāyatana (that is to say the avijñāpti).” What system does it want to refute? It wants to refute the Dārṣṭāntikas, for they deny any rūpa in the dharmāyatana. And Dharmatrāta also says, “Everything that is rūpa is either support or the object of vijñāna. How could there be rūpa which is neither one or the other?” It is in order to refute these opinions that the above-mentioned definition of rūpaskandha is given. But if the rūpa which is included within the dharmāyatana is real, how can one explain what Dharmatrāta says? It is not necessary to explain it, for this is not in the Tripitaka. Or, if one should explain it, one can say . . . that the rūpa included within the dharmāyatana, arising from the mahābhūtas which are the object of touch, can be considered as the object of touch consciousness. Thus the declaration of Dharmatrāta is without error.

5. Vibhaśā, p. 730b: Among the twenty-two indriyas or “organs” (Kośa, i.48), how many are separate things, and how many are only names? The Ābhidhārmikas say that for twenty-two names there are seventeen things, for the two sexual indriyas (parts of the organ of touch) and the three pure indriyas (combinations of faith, etc.) are not separate things (Kośa, ii.2, 9). Dharmatrāta only admits fourteen things: the first five indriyas, the jīviten-driya, the upeksendriya, and the samādhindriya are not things. In fact the jīviten-driya, the vital organ, is one of the viprayuktasamśkaras (Kośa, ii.45) and these are not real.60 There are no sensations apart from the agreeable and the disagreeable: thus the sensation of indifference (upeksendriya) is not a thing. There is no samādhi, concentration, apart from the mind.

Buddhadeva says that only a single indriya is real, namely the mana-indriya, the mental organ: “The samāskṛtas, he says, are of two types: mahābhūtas and cittas . . . ”

The index of proper names contains information, nearly complete, on the references to the Bhadanta in the Vibhaśā.

vi. Some Schools of the Vibhaśā.61

a. Dārṣṭāntikas and Sautrāntikas.

The history of this school, though long, is not yet clear. The notes of K’uei-chi (Siddhi, 221–224; Masuda, “Sects,” Asia Major, ii.67; Lévi, Drṣṭāntapaṇṭeti, p. 97) show that Hsüan-tsang was not well informed with respect to them. Takakusu (Abhidharma Literature, 131) says that the Vibhaśā speaks of the Sautrāntikas: rarely, in any case, for I have only found a single reference to the Sautrāntikas; we can say that the Vibhaśā only knows the Dārṣṭāntikas.
We have reason to establish a relationship between this name and the book of Kumāralaṭa, the Drṣṭāntaśāstra. We may ask if the Dārṣṭāntikas are characterized by the use of "comparisons," as the Tibetans say (Wassiliew, 274, according to whom Sautrāntika = Dārṣṭāntika); however, the sense of the word Drṣṭānta is not proven with certainty. J. Przyluski thinks the Drṣṭānta is opposed to scripture. This way of looking at it is confirmed, I believe, by the Vibhāṣā (p. 782b18). It is said in traditional Drṣṭānta:61 "He who gives alms to a person who has left nirodhasamāpatti is endowed with an action which bears a result in this life. Why is this? There is no reason to explain this text. Why is this? Because this is neither in the Sūtra, the Vinaya, nor the Abhidharma, but only in the traditional Drṣṭānta. That which is said in the traditional Drṣṭānta may be true or not true. If, however, one desires an explanation of this, one should say that this alms-giver obtains a result in this life or obtains great results. The text mentions only the first alternative, because it is pleasing to people of the world."62

We can speak of a Dārṣṭāntika-Sautrāntika school: in looking at it more closely, the Vibhāṣā assigns to its Dārṣṭāntikas almost all of the theses that the Kośa assigns to the Sautrāntikas.

Here are the more important disagreements between the Sarvāstivādins and the Dārṣṭāntikas-Sautrāntikas.

1. The Abhidharmas of the Sarvāstivādins are not authoritative (Kośa, i.2, ii.1, viii.11).
2. The asamskṛtas do not have any real existence (ii.55).
3. The viprayuktas (ii.35-36) do not have any real existence: negation of the prāptis, of the jñitendriya, etc.
4. The past and the future do not have any real existence (v.25-26).
5. The existence of the past permits the Sarvāstivādins to explain the play of causality; the prāptis serve the same function. Negating the past, the prāptis, etc., the Dārṣṭāntika-Sautrāntika school admits a subtle mind, either of the bijas or of vāsanā (perfuming), and thus takes into account the changes of the series (ii.36, 50, iv.79, ix).
6. Extinction does not have a cause; things do not have any duration (sthiti): the kṣaṇa or moment, is of a size that tends to zero (iv.2-3) (See Rocznik, vol. viii).
7. Notable divergence with respect to action: negation of the avijñāpatti (iv.3), of bodily action (iv.3), of the necessary character of retribution of an anantarya transgression (Vibhāṣā, p. 359b20).
8. On the caittas and the bhautikas: opinions which depart from the Sarvāstivādin system (ii.23).
9. Explanation of the three rāsīs (Kośa, iii.44), which exist from hell to Bhavāgra; beings having the dharmas of Nirvāṇa; beings not having them; indeterminate beings (Vibhāṣa, p. 930b15; compare the Siddhi and its gotras).

10. The body of the Arhats is pure, being produced through "wisdom" (i.4, Sarīghabhadrā, p. 331b).

11. Simultaneity of the Buddha (iii.95–96).

The references which follow, complete in the index of proper names (Dārṣṭāntika-Sautrāntika), are classified according to the material in the Kośa.

1. The Dārṣṭāntika rejects certain sūtras: how does he pretend to the name of Sautrāntika? (Sarīghabhadrā, p. 332a).

The vijñānas, including the manovijñāna, have a special object (Kośa, ix, Vibhāṣa, p. 449a16).

If the eye sees the visible (Kośa, i.42, Vibhāṣa, p. 61b19).

2. The Sthavira (=Śrīlāta) and all the other Dārṣṭāntika masters deny ākāśa (Samghabhadrā, p. 347b).

Negation of prāpti, of apratisamkhyānirodha (Vibhāṣa, p. 479a19, p. 796b6, p. 931b23).

The laksāṇas of "conditioned things"—Dārṣṭāntikas, Vibhajyavādins, Sāntānasābhāgikas (Vibhāṣa, p. 198a15 and foll.).

Pratyayatā is not real (Vibhāṣa, p. 680b27).

There is no vipākāhetu outside of the cetāna, no vipākaphala outside of the vedanā (Vibhāṣa, p. 96a26).

Rūpa is not "a similar cause" of rūpa—the opinion of the Dārṣṭāntika according to the gloss of Kyokuga Saeki (Kośa, ii.52), but, according to the Vibhāṣa (p. 87c20), the opinion of the Bahirdeśakas.

"Among the Sautrāntikas, the Bhadanta Dārṣṭāntika holds to the separate existence of vedanā-samjñā-cetanā; Buddhadeva adds sparśa and manasikāra: the other caittas are only citta; the master Śrīlāta holds that the asamāskṛtas and the viprayuktas have nominal existence" (Wassiliew, 281, 309, corrected).

Subtle mind in nirodhasamāpatti and in asamjñāsamāpatti (so too the Vibhajyavādins) (Kośa, ii.44, viii.33, Vibhāṣa, p. 774a14, p. 772c21).

Negation of the reality of dreams (Vibhāṣa, p. 193b5).

The caittas arise in succession, according to the Dārṣṭāntikas and the same Bhadanta (Vibhāṣa, p. 493c26, p. 745a7); the mind cannot be accompanied by jñāna or ajñāna (p. 547).

Vitarka and vicāra in the Three Dīhātus (Kośa, ii.33, viii.23, Vibhāṣa, p. 269b9, p. 744b9).

3. Antarābhava and nirmita (Vibhāṣa, p. 700a15).
38  Introduction

Sparsā is not a thing in itself (Vibhsā, p. 149a25).

4. Arising depends on hetupratyaya but not extinction; the Dārṣṭāntikas as against the Ābhidhārmikas (Kośa, iv.2–3; Vibhsā, p. 105a27).

Negation of the dharmāyatanaṇarūpa (=avijnapti); Dharmatrata and the Darṣṭāntikas (Vibhsā, p. 383b16).

On the four and eight types of actions from the point of view of their determination, Dārṣṭāntikas, or Sautrāntikas according toVyākhya (Kośa, iv.50–51; Vibhsā, p. 593b10): all actions can be “reversed,” action in antarābhava (Kośa, iii.14), ānantaraya, action in Bhavagra, action in asamjñīsamāpatti (Vibhsā, p. 359b20, p. 773c29).

Whether abhidhyā, vyāpāda, and mithyārśti are actions (opinion of the Dārṣṭāntikas, Kośa, iv.65, 78; of the Vibhajyavādinikāya, Vibhsā, p. 587a9).

5. All the klesas are “bad” (Dārṣṭāntikas, Vibhsā, p. 259c11); contra, Kośa, v.20–21).

Anusayana (Vibhsā, p. 110a21; Kośa, v.16).

In sāṅvṛtiyānā, the prthagjana does not cut off the klesas (Dārṣṭāntikas and the Bhadanta, Vibhsā, p. 264b19, p. 741c20).

The object of attachment and the pudgala are unreal, Dārṣṭāntikas (compare the cittamātravāda); the object of attachment and the pudgala are real, Vatsiputriyās (Vibhsā, p. 288b15 and following).

Reincarnation solely by reason of desire and hatred (Vibhsā, p. 309a11)—in fact, by reason of any klesa.

On the time periods (Vibhsā, p. 919b12).

6–7. Definition of the Truths (Kośa, vi.2; opinion of the Ābhidhārmikas, Dārṣṭāntikas, Vibhajyavādins, Ghoṣaka, Pārśva ... Vibhsā, p. 397b4).

On kṣānti and jñāna (Kośa, vii.1, 20, 22; Dārṣṭāntikas, the Bhadanta, Vibhsā, p. 489b16).

Purity of the body of the Arhat (Kośa, i.4, iv.4; Dārṣṭāntikas, according to Saṁghabhādra, p. 331b25).

8. Doctrine of dhyāna (the Bhadanta, Dārṣṭāntika-Sautrāntika, Kośa, viii.9).

The sāmantakas are “good” (Dārṣṭāntikas, Kośa, viii.22, Vibhsā, p 832a).

Mixed dhyāna (Kośa, vi.42, 58, vii.23) explained by perfuming (Dārṣṭāntikas and Yogācārins, Vibhsā, p. 879c26; compare Śuddha).

Falling away from asamjñīsamāpatti (Dārṣṭāntikas, Vibhsā, p. 773c29.

Nirmita is not real (Dārṣṭāntikas and the Bhadanta, Vibhsā, p. 700a15).

b. Vibhajyavādins.

They are clearly defined as “those who distinguish” and admit the existence of
a certain kind of past and a certain kind of future (Kośa, v.22, P’u-kuang quotes Kośa, v.9, and Vinitadeva, Traité sur les Sectes).

However, the information that we possess on the Vibhajyavādins is confused: the Vibhajyavādins are the Mahāsāṃghikas, the Ekavyavahārikas, the Lokottaravādins, or the Kaukkutikas (K’uei-chi, Siddhi, 109).

1. Vasumitra, in his Treatise on the Sects, does not mention them. Vinitadeva, presenting his theories concerning the history of the Sarvāstivādins, makes them the seventh Sarvāstivādin school. Bhavya (the Sthavira theory) makes them a division of the Sarvāstivādins, and (the Mahāsāṃghika theory) the third original school. According to Bhikṣvagra, they are the fourth Mahāsāṃghika school.

2. The note by Kyokuga Saeki (edition of the Kośa, xix, fol. 14a-b).64 K’uei-chi, commentating on the Siddhi [iv.1, 35, p. 179 of the French translation], says, “Those who were called Vibhajyavādins are now called Prajñaptivādins.” [This should be understood: Paramārtha, in his version of the Treatise of Vasumitra, has written “Vibhajyavādin,” whereas] Vasumitra [in the version of Hsuan-tsang] says, "In the second century, a school called the Prajñaptivāda came out of the Mahāsāṃghikas.” In connection with this, the commentator Fa-pao says, "According to these two translations, the Vibhajyavādins make up only one school [with the Prajñaptivādins”].65 In the Vibhāṣa, p. 116c5, the Mahāsāṃghikas, etc., are called Vibhajyavādins [that is to say: the Vibhāṣa attributes to the Vibhajyavādins an opinion that we know to be the opinion of the Mahāsāṃghikas, see Kośa, iii.28]. Consequently the Arthapradīpa, p. 48, says, ”The Vibhajyavādins are either some divergent Mahāyāna masters, or all the schools of the Hīnayāna are called Vibhajyavādins: they are not a definite school. Consequently, in the Mahāyānasamgraha (Taishō 1593), the Vibhajyavādins are explained as Mahīśāsakas; in the Vibhāṣa, as Sāṃmītiyas.”66

3. In many texts, the meaning of the word Vibhajyavādin is clearly defined.
   a. Bhavya: We call [the Sarvāstivādins] by the name of Vibhajyavādin when they distinguish (vibhaj) by saying, "Among these things, some exist, namely the former action whose result has not occurred; some do not exist, namely the former action whose result has been consumed, and future things.”
   b. Kośa, v. 25–26: Those who admit the existence of the present and a part of the past (namely the action which has not produced its result) and the non-existence of the future and a part of the past (namely the action which has produced its result), are held to be Vibhajyavādins; they do not belong to the Sarvāstivādin school.
   c. P’u-kuang, p. 310b23 (on Kośa, v.25–26): They say that there is no opinion which is completely correct; that some part exists, and some part does not exist
[or: in part true, in part false]: one should thus distinguish. Thus they are called Vibhajyavādins.

d. The Kāśyapiyas (Vasumitra, thesis 1 and 2) hold a clearly Vibhajyavādin position: "The action whose result has matured does not exist; the action whose result has not matured exists." Now Buddhaghosa (Katbāvatthu, i.8) attributes to the Kassapikas, a branch of the Sarvāstivādins, the opinion that one part of the past and future exists: this is the second Vibhajyavādin thesis of the summary of Vinītadeva. Now the Theravādin, which should be Vibhajyavādin like the Buddha, denies and refutes this.

4. Elsewhere: One calls Vibhajyavādins those who, distinguishing, admit that the skandhas are real, and that the āyatanas and the dhātuṣ have nominal existence.

5. Vibhaṣā, p. 571c24 and elsewhere, opposes the Vibhajyavādin and the Yuktavādin.

6. Vinītadeva attributes to the Vibhajyavādins the following thesis:
   a. The pudgala exists "absolutely"; b. the past does not exist, with the exception of the cause the result of which has not ripened; the future does not exist, with the exception of the result; the present rigs mi mthun pa (?) does not exist; c. dharma does not become an "immediate cause"; d. rūpa does not have a "parallel cause," as the Dārśāntānikas claim (Koṣa, ii.52).

7. More notable is the note of Hsüan-tsang (Siddhi, 179) which associates the Vibhajyavādins and the Shāvākas with belief in bhavāṅgaviṃśāna.

And also: pure mind, Siddhi, 109–111; persistence of a subtle mind in nirodhbasamāpatti (with the Dārśāntānikas), 207; see also 770.

8. References to Koṣa-Vibhaṣā:
   a. Sound is of retribution (with the Vatsīputriyas) (Koṣa, i.37–38a, Vibhaṣā, p. 612c13, Siddhi, 190).

The body of arising (janmakāya) of the Buddha is "pure" (with the Mahāsāṁghikas) (Vibhaṣā, p. 871c2, Siddhi, 769–770).

b. Śraddhā, etc., are pure (Koṣa, ii.9, Vibhaṣā, p. 7c3).

Life is cittānuvartin (Koṣa, ii.50, Vibhaṣā, p. 770c6—refuted by Vasumitra).

Consequently, there is a subtle mind in asamījnīsamāpatti, and in nirodhasamāpatti (Koṣa, viii.33, Vibhaṣā, p. 772c21, p. 774a14).

c. Negation of antarābhava (Koṣa, iii.10, Vibhaṣā, p. 356c15, p. 700a15. From whence the complicated explanation of the antarāparinirvāyin, Koṣa, iii.12, Vibhaṣā, p. 357b9).

Pratītyasamutpāda is asamūskṛta, like the Path (Koṣa, iii.28, Vibhaṣā, p. 116c5, p. 479—like the Mahāsāṁghikas and the Mahīśāsakas).
d. Greed, anger, false views are "action" (*Vibhāṣā, p. 587a9, Kośa, iv.65: Dārśāntīkikas).

Definition of "good by nature" (as jñāna), "through association" (as viṣṇāna), "in origin" (as action of the body . . .) (Kośa, iv.8, ix, Vibhāṣā, p. 741a15).

The mind of the Bhagavat is always absorbed (Kośa, iv.12, Vibhāṣā, p. 410b26).

e. The thirst for non-existence is abandoned through bhāvanā (Kośa, v.10–11, Vibhāṣā, p. 138c3).

On the viparyāsas (Kośa v.9, Vibhāṣā, p. 536c9).

f. Definition of the Truths (Kośa, vi.2, Vibhāṣā, p. 397b4).

Comprehension of the Truths at once (Kośa, vi.27, Vibhāṣā, p. 532a).

The Arhat does not fall (Kośa, vi.58, Vibhāṣā, p. 312b9).

Forty one bodhipāksikas (Kośa, vi.66, Vibhāṣā, p. 499a4).

g. Rūpa in Ārūpyadhāto (Kośa, viii.3, Vibhāṣā, p. 432a22).

Only the First Dhyāna has aṅgas (Vibhāṣā, p. 813c28).

The Āryan of the fourth ārūpya obtains the quality of an Arhat without the aid of the Path (Vibhāṣā, p. 929b14). (This is thesis 12 of the Mahīśāsakas in the treatise of Vasumitra).

c. Yogācārins

Or yoga-ācāryas, as the Chinese reads; we also have yogācārācittā (Vyākhya ii.49, ad Kośa, ii.23).

1. People who practice yoga or the contemplation of yogins;⁶⁷ (see Kośa, iv.4, note, and the Vibhāṣā, passim) they seek nirodhasatya (p. 534a19), practice sūnyatāsamādhi, p. 540c11), are disgusted with vedāna (Rūpadhātu) and saṃjñā (Ārūpyadhātu) (p. 775b3; also p. 35b25; p. 529b4; p. 832a22). The Ratnarāṣisūtra (Śikṣāsamuccaya, 55) examines the obligations of the vaiyāvṛtyakara bhikṣu,⁶⁸ the intendent and the minister of the monastery, with respect to the āranyaka, to the pindācaṃśa, to the contemplative or yogācārīn bhikṣu, to the student or bāhuśrutye'bhiyukta, to the preacher, dharmaṃkathika.

2. Devoted to yoga, to breathing exercises, to dhyāna, etc., the yogācārin becomes, as the Chinese say, a "master of yoga," a yogācārya: they had theories on prāṇāyama, on sūnyatāsamādhi . . . The Kośa, iv.18-19, mentions a thesis of this school of meditators on rūpa which arises through the power of absorption.

3. [This school of meditators became a philosophical school, the Yogācāra school, when, under the influence of Maitreya-Asaṅga, it became attached to the older formula of the Daśabhūmaka: "The threefold world is only mind." One can indeed see the relationship between the theories of ecstasy and idealism, and we
can see how the practice of the "mindless absorption" can lead to the affirmation of a subtle mind . . . Asanga utilizes Dārśāntika-Sautrāntika speculations.

Below are the references in the *Kośa* to the Yogācārins:

Explaining mixed *dhyāna* (*Kośa*, vi.42) by perfuming, (*Vibhaṣa*, p. 879c26, as do the Dārśāntikas).

Related to the Sautrāntikas (*Kośa*, ii.34, *Vyākhyā*: "the opinion of the Sautrāntikas or the Yogācārins.").

The Yogācāracitta admits that an agglomeration can be formed from a single *mahābhūta*, as a piece of dry earth; from two, the same, but wet . . . (*Kośa*, ii.22, *Vyākhyā*, ii.49).

In the *yogācāradāraśāna*, there is a *manodhātu* which is distinct from the six *vijñānas* (*Vyākhyā*, i.40, ad i.17; compare the Tāmrapārṇīyas).

(The Vijnānavādin denies that the eye sees, *Kośa*, i.42).

The Yogācāracitta defines *adhimukti* (*Kośa*, ii.24, *Vyākhyā*, ii.51).

According to the Yogācārins, the mindless absorptions are endowed with mind from the fact of the *alayavijñāna* (*Vyākhyā* ad ii.44). Yaśomitra speaks here of the school of Asanga; the same in *Kośa*, iii.2; *Vyākhyā*, ad v.8 (the 128 *klesas* of the Yogācārins).

(The "ancient masters" of the *Kośa*, ii.44, should be the Dārśāntikas).

Elsewhere, the *Vyākhyā* explains the "ancient masters" of the *Bhāṣya* as being "the Yogācārins" or "the Yogācārins, Asanga, etc." (*Vyākhyā* ad iii.15, iv.75, vi.4).

vii. The *Śariputrabhidharma*.

This book, Taishō 1548, is divided into four parts: *saprasnaka*, *aprasnaka*, *samprayukta-samgraha* (three titles which correspond to the first four sections of the *Abhidharma* according to the Dharmaguptas-Haimavata [J. Przyluski, *Concile*, 179, 353–4] and reminds us of the *Dhātukāya-Vibhaṅga-Dhātukathā*, above p. 27; and "succession" (*karma* or *nidāna*?).

This is, properly speaking, a śāstra, without any appearance of a sūtra, with its beginning phrase, "Thus have I heard . . ." It was compiled by Śāriputra, either during the lifetime of the master (according to the *Ta-chib-tu-lun*) or after his Nirvāṇa, to put an end to heresy, for some have "counterfeited the Dharma" (*dharmapratirūpaka*).

However this may be, it is a very extensive and old treatise, much in the style of the Pāli *Vibhaṅga*.

The *Ta-chib-tu lun* establishes some relations between the *Abhidharma* of Śāriputra and the Vatsīputriyaś. But I have not encountered, in the work of Śāriputra, any mention of the *pudgala* in the Vatsīputrīya sense of the word.
Kyokuga Saeki (Kośa, viii.3) mentions the fact that the Śāriputrābhidharma admits the existence of rūpa and Ārūpyadhātu. See in fact p. 552a, at the end of the chapter on the skandhas. This rūpa is avijñāpti. The book admits the avijñāpti, which is a Sarvāstivādin invention.

But it is not orthodox Sarvāstivādin. It believes that anuṣaya is disassociated from the mind (p. 690; Kośa, v.2). It does not contain anything on the existence of the past and the future, nor on “unconditioned” space. It explains prabhāṇa-
dhātu, "which should be abandoned" (576c; Kośa, vi.78). Its system of pratyayas, very developed (p. 679b), and its list of the dhātus (p. 575) have nothing Sarvāstivādin about them.

We can get an idea of the style of the Śāriputrābhidharma by comparing its description of rūpaskandha (p. 543) with the Kośa, i. 20 and Vibhaṅga, 1 and following; its definition of dharmadhātu (p. 535) with Vibhaṅga, 89; and its definition of nirodhasaṭṭva (p. 553) with Vibhaṅga, 103.

1. Dharmadhātu.

The dharmadhātu is first defined as identical to the dharmāyatana; then, as made up of vedanāskandha, saṃjñāskandha, saṃskāraskandha, invisible and impalpable (anidārsana, apratigha) rūpa, and the asaṃskṛtas (compare Vibhaṅga, 86). A third definition enumerates, after vedanā and saṃjñā, the series of saṃskāras associated with the mind (beginning with cetanā and ending with kleśānusaya); the series of the saṃskāras disassociated from the mind (viprayukta, see p. 547b): jati, jāra, maraṇa . . . nirodhasamāpatti; finally: pratisamkhyānir-
dha, apratisamkhyānirodha, niyamadharmasthitita, ākāśāyatana, vijñānāyatana, ākiṃcanyāyatana, naiva saṃjñānāsaṃjñāyatana,71 that is to say the list of the asaṃskṛtas: “this is what is called the dharmadhātu.”

On the one hand, the viprayuktas are not those of the Sarvāstivādins; although there is some doubt with respect to the equivalents of the translators (Dharmagupta and Dharmayaśas, 414 A.D.), the nāmakāya . . . are missing.

On the other hand, the asaṃskṛtas of Śāriputra recall those of the Mahāsāṃghikas and the Mahīśāsakas (Siddhi, p. 78).

2. Nirodhasaṭṭva.

To the question: “What is duḥkhaniruddha āryasatya?”, our text answers in canonical terms: yo tassā yeva taṁbhāya asesavirāganiruddho cāgopūrṇadhammaḥpati mutti anālayo (Vibhaṅga 103), and adds: “already cut off, not to arise anew: this is what is called duḥkhaniruddha āryasatya.”

The question is repeated: “What is duḥkhaniruddha āryasatya? Pratisamkhyānir-
dha is called duḥkhaniruddha āryasatya. This duḥkhaniruddha āryasatya is in
truth like that, not like that, no different, not a different thing. As the Tathāgata has well spoken the truths of the Āryans, it is āryasatyā.

But, "what is pratisāṁkhyānirodha?" The question is repeated three times: "If a dharma is destroyed when one obtains the Āryan Path, the destruction of this dharma is called pratisāṁkhyānirodha." . . . "The four śrāvaṇyaphalas are called pratisāṁkhyānirodha."

"What is srotāāpannaphala? If the three kleśas to be cut off by Seeing are cut off; if satkāyadrṣṭi, vicīkitsā and śilavrata are exhausted, this is called srotāāpannaphala." 72 Sāriputra takes up the question again, "What is srotāāpannaphala? The three kleśas to be cut off by Seeing being cut off, satkāyadrṣṭi-vicīkitsā-śilavrata being exhausted: if one obtains amṛta, this is what is called srotāāpannaphala."

It appears that what we are encountering here is a terminology alien to the Abhidharma and to the Sarvāstivāda.

viii. The Abhidharmasāra.73

1. Before Vasubandhu, many masters undertook to summarize the doctrines of the Abhidharma. We possess notably three works: 1. The Abhidharmasāra of Dharmasrī in ten chapters, made up of kārikās (probably in āryan stroph)74 and a commentary; 2. a second edition of this same Sāra by Upāsānta, to which the Chinese give the name of Abhidharmasāra-ching [=sūtra]: the same kārikās with a more developed commentary; and 3. a third edition of the Sāra, the Tsā [=Miscellaneous] Abhidharma-ching, by Dharmaṭrāta, which is in fact a new work, containing a new chapter and many new kārikās.75

2. The preface to the Vibhāṣā (Taishō 1546)76 by Tao-yen places the work of Dharmasrī before the Jñānaprasthāna: "After the nirodha of the Buddha, the bhikṣu Dharmasrī composed the four volumes of the Abhidharmasāra. Then Kātyāyaniputra composed the Abhidharma in eight books . . ."

3. The work of Dharmasrī contains ten chapters: Dhātu, Saṁskāra, Anuśaya, Ārya, Jñāna, Samādhi, Sūtra, Tsā and Āstravarga or Vādivarga.

Between the ninth and the tenth chapters of Dharmasrī, Dharmaṭrāta places a new chapter, the Pravīcayavarga, which indeed appears to constitute an independent work.

There is a stanza of introduction: "even though many dharmas have been spoken of, their meaning remains confused . . ." and four concluding stanzas: "The author has composed this book based on the book of Dharmasrī, not through pride or in order to acquire a reputation . . .

It begins with the dharmacakra, the Wheel of the Dharma: "The Muni said that the darśanamārga is called dharmacakra, either because it goes into the mind
of others . . . (Kośa, vi.54).

There then comes the brahma-cakra (vi.54, vii.31), the upāsaka (iv.69), the four parts of śīla (iv.29), the prātimokṣa . . . Later (p. 959b), cosmology: the periods of loss, etc. (iii.99), destruction by fire, etc. (iii.102); and then there follows the theory of the three "fallings away" (p. 960c; Kośa, vi.59) and the definition of the Bodhisattva (iv.108).

Suddenly (p. 961c): "How many types of Sarvāstivāda are there?" Presentation of the four doctrines (Kośa, v.25–26) without mentioning the name of the four masters. The second and the fourth are bad because they confuse the time periods. The first (difference in bhāva, translated fen): "One should know that this is the parināma-sarvāstivāda." 77

There is a diversity of opinion as to whether the Truths are seen at the same time (Kośa, vi.27), Sarvāstivādins and Vātsiputṛyas on the one hand, Dharma-gupta on the other; antarābhava (iii.34); then the Sarvāstivādin proof. And at the end of the paragraph, the discussion "whether the Buddha is part of the Samgha." Finally, the concluding stanzas.

4. The Sāṃskāravarga treats of the simultaneous arising of the citta-caitās and of atoms (Kośa, ii.22), of the four lakṣaṇas of "conditioned things" (ii.45), of the hetus and the pratīyayas (ii.48, 61).

The Sūtravarga is a collection of notes on the three Dhātus and a calculation of the places that they contain: sixteen in Rūpadhātu, but, according to some, seventeen (Kośa, iii.2): the sattvāvāsas (iii.6), the vijñānāsthitīs (iii.5–6); the three vartman of pratītyasamutpāda (iii.20, 25), the twelve limbs; the mahābhūtas, the Truths, the fruits of the Āryans, etc.

The Tsa-varga defines the mind-mental states as saṁṣrayukta, saśraya, etc. (ii.34); it enumerates the viprayuktas: āsāmyñika, two non-conscious absorptions, saṁbhāgata, nāmakāyādayas, ājīvindriya, dharmaprāpti, prthagjanatva, four lakṣaṇas (compare ii.35–36); it concludes with half a kārikā on the four bhavas (iii.13) and a kārikā on "disgust" and "detachment" (vi.79).

The Sāstravarga (or Vādavarga) is made up of ten questions in verse, followed by answers in prose, relative to saṁvara (iv.13), to the results, etc. Dharmatratā adds sixteen questions.

5. In order to appreciate the character of the treatises of Dharmaśrī, Upaśānta, and Dharmatrāta, and Vasubandhu's debt with respect to Dharmatratā, which appears to be notable, we may see how two dharmaparyāyas, the chapter of the three obstacles (āvaranaś) and that of avijñāpti, are treated by the different masters.

a. Obstacles, Kośa, iv.95–102, Vibhāṣā, p. 599.
Dharmasri, p. 815: "The Bhagavat says that there are three āvaranas: karman, klesa, and vipāka. What is their definition?"

"Ānantaṁya actions which are without remedy, developed defilements, bad action experienced in the painful realms of rebirth, are the āvaranas."

"These three form an obstacle to the Dharma; they hinder the grasping of the Āryan dharma; they are thus called 'obstacles.' Which is the worst action?"

"The action which divides the Saṅgha is said to be the worst.

"This action is the worst. One guilty of this remains a kalpa in Avīci hell. Which is the best action?"

"The cetanā or 'volition' of Bhavāgra is the greatest.

"Naivasamajñānasamajñāyatana is Bhavāgra. The volition which belongs to the realms of this sphere is the greatest and finest: its result is a life of some 80,000 kalpas in length."

Upasanta, p. 843b–c, has the same two stanzas, but a less meager commentary:

"That which hinders the Path of the Aryan and the means (upāya) to this path is said to be an obstacle. The obstacles to action are the five ānantaṁyas, namely, the killing of one's father, etc . . . He who commits such an action is immediately and necessarily reborn in Avīci: thus the action is ānantaṁya. The killing of one's father and mother destroys goodness, hence it is Avīci hell. Those guilty of the other three are led to injure a field of merit. The obstacles of the defilements are 'agitated' and 'sharp' defilements: the first is habitual defilement; the second is the overriding defilement. This refers to the 'present' defilements, not to the defilements that one 'possesses' (that one has as potential), for all beings 'possess' all the defilements . . ."

There is a variant to the second stanza: "Lying which divides the Samgha . . .; volition in Bhavāgra, among good actions, has the greatest result," which is better. The commentary notes the differences in the two schisms (cakrabhedā, karmabheda).

Dharmatrata is longer (p. 898b–899c) and very close to Vasubandhu:

According to the first stanza of Dharmasri: 1. the āvarana of klesa is the worst; the āvarana of action, mediocre; and the āvarana of retribution, the least; 2. the division of the Saṅgha, by nature, is non-concord; this is a viprayukta samīskāra of the anivṛta-avyākṛta class; 3. the division is a thing of the Saṅgha; the transgression is of him who divides the Saṅgha; he experiences, in Avīci, a retribution of kalpa; 4. the bhikṣus are divided in their opinion of who is the Master, of what is the Path: this is the division of the Saṅgha which was united, and he who breaks it is 'one who possesses views' (drśṭicarīta); 5. in three continents, a minimum of eight persons is required for karmabheda; in
Jambudvīpa, a minimum of nine persons is required for cakrabhedā; 6. cakrabhedā is impossible in six time periods: when a boundary is not delimited; at first; following; when the Muni has passed into Nirvāṇa; when the running sore has not been produced; when the pair of chief disciples has not been established (six pādas); 7. lying which divides the Sarṅgha is the worst of actions; the volition of Bhavāgra is said to bear the greatest result.

b. Avijñāpti, Kośa, iv.2, 3.

Dharmaśrī (p. 812c):

"Bodily action is vijñāpti and avijñāpti. The vijñāpti of the body is the movement of the body, good, bad, or neutral: good when it arises from a good mind . . . For avijñāpti: when one does an action in a firm manner, the mind can change, but the seed remains. If, for example, a person undertakes the precepts, his mind can then be bad or neutral: nevertheless the precepts continue . . . Action of the manas is solely avijñāpti . . . because this action is not visible . . . vijñāpti is good, bad, or neutral; the same for the avijñāpti which belongs to the manas. The other vijñāptis are never neutral."

Upaśānta (p. 840) adds a bit. The hunter is regarded as free from bodily avijñāpti. Mental action is called avijñāpti because it does not inform others. Some say that it is called vijñāpti because it is discourse (jalpa?).

Dharmatrāta (p. 888b) replaces the terms vijñāpti and avijñāpti with "doing" and "not doing" (karana, akarana) (Kośa,iv.14):

"Bodily action is of two types: karaṇasvabhāva, or akaraṇasvabhāva. 'Doing' (karana): movement of the body, exercise78 of the body is the 'doing of the body.' 'Not doing' (akaraṇa, u-u-tso): when the movement of the body has ended, the nature (good or bad) of this movement, of this action which is the movement, continues to arise, simultaneous with minds of a different nature, even as the good precepts produced by their undertaking (kuṣalasamādānasīla) continue to arise even when bad or neutral minds are present. Like the immoral person (daunśīlyapuruṣa): even when good or neutral minds are present, his immorality continues to arise."

". . . Action of the manas is cetanā, volition, by nature . . .

"'Not doing' (akaraṇa) is also called niratī (Vyu. 21, 114), viratī; upekṣā, akiṃyā (pu-tso). Because it does not do, it is called 'not doing.' If one says that this is not an action (karman), this is wrong, because it does. Good does not do evil, evil does not do good: this is also an action. As the upekṣā part of Bodhi is not upekṣā by reason of what is called upekṣā; but the practice of the Path, the arresting of things, is called upekṣā. The same here. Furthermore, in doing the
cause one does the result: ... 'not doing' is not ṛūpa, but the doing of it (which is the cause of the 'not doing' or avijñāpti) is ṛūpa; 'not doing' is thus called ṛūpa. In this same way then, 'not doing' is action.
1. Originally printed as a Foreword to de La Vallée Poussin’s *Cosmologie bouddhique*: 1913, and published 1919 in the four-part *Memoires of l'Académie royale de Belgique* (Luzac, London). This contained the restoration of the *kārikās* of the third chapter of the *Kośa*, the Tibetan *kārikās*, the *Bhāṣya*, and the text of the *Vyākhyā*; in the appendix, a summary of the *Lokaprajñāpti* and the *Kāraṇaprajñāpti*.


4. In the *Divya*, a Sarvāstivādin work, where we encounter the expressions *sūtrasya vinayasya māṭṛkā*: "The monks ask with respect to the Sūtra, the Vinaya, and the Māṭṛkā" (p. 18, 15), and *sūtram māṭṛkā ca*, equivalent to *āgamacatuṣṭayam* (p. 333, 7), Kern (Manual, p. 3) thinks that the term *māṭṛkā* is employed "as synonymous with abhidharma." It cannot in any case designate the *Abhidhammas* of the Sarvāstivādins of which we are speaking below (p. 3) which are treatises; it fits the *Abhidhammas* a little less poorly, but without being satisfying. Does it designate some lists "omitting all the explanations and other details" (Childers, 243), lists of items which form part of the *āgama* and which are not specifically *Abhidharma*? The Sautrāntikas, who deny the existence of an *Abhidharma Piśaka* distinct from the Sūtra, certainly had such an "index," exactly like the Sarvāstivādins of that period, and earlier than the *Abhidhammas* to which the expressions of the *Divya* refer. Does it designate some presentations, in the manner of the sūtras, like those that constituted the *māṭikās* of the *Vibhanga*? In this book, which is the property of the *Abhidharma*, it is often a type of commentary in the form of glosses.

5. See the article of Rhys Davids in Hastings’ *Encyclopedia of Religion and Ethics*.


8. It knows, however, that the author of the *Kathāvatthu* foresaw and refuted in advance the heresies to come; see *Aṭṭhakathā*, pp. 6–7. The remark is by Minayeff, and the observations by H. Oldenberg (*Buddh. Studien*, p. 633, 676) do not demonstrate that the *Kathāvatthu* has not been amplified in the course of time.

9. This is incorrect. The *Sarīgātisparyāya* is only the *Sarīgātisuttanta*. The second part of the *Dhātukāya* has a close relationship with the *Dhātukathāprakarana*. A careful study will show other points of contact, and one can see that the Sarvāstivādins simply enriched by their inventions (theory of the *viprayukta*s, of the *mahābhāmikas*, etc.) the earlier material of the *Abhidharma*.

10. The account of Buddhaghosa, *Kathāvatthu-Aṭṭhakathā*, p. 6, holds that because of this, at least the Vibhajjavādins are the orthodox party.

11. This is one of the aspects of the problem of *kāriyāvāda*.

12. This definition of the two schools is borrowed from the *Abhidharmakośa*, v.9; see *Kathāvatthu*, I.8 (which does not entirely confirm our interpretation). The controversy of time and the *pudgala* in the *Vijñānakāya*, *Études Asiatiques*, 1925.

13. Geography of the Sarvāstivādin sect, J. Przyluski, *Aṣoka*. I know that Sinologists, notably Takakus, are not settled on the language in which the first of the *Abhidhammas* of the
Sarvāstivādins, the Jñānaprathāna, was written: "In what language, however, the original text was composed we have no means of ascertaining. All we can say is that the text brought by Sarhghadeva and Dhammapiya [Dharmapiya] from Kaśmīra [383 A.D.] seems to have been in a dialect akin to Pali, whereas the text used by Hiuen-tsang [657 A.D.], as in other cases, seems to have been in Sanskrit. But this supposition rests solely on the phonetic value of Chinese ideographs employed in these translations, and is not corroborated by any other evidence . . . It seems to me more than probable that the Jñānaprathāna at least was written in some dialect: one thinks naturally of the dialect of Kaśmīra, but we really have no certainty that the Jñānaprathāna was not composed in Kosala (JPTS; 1905, p. 84, 86)."

We possess a fragmentary quotation from the Sarvāstivādin Pratimokṣa which proves that some earlier forms, Pāḷi or dialect, remained in use: "When, in the Posadha ceremony, the Vinayadhara asks, 'Are you pure?' (bhikṣuposadhe hi kacci ttha parisuddha īti vinayadharenānuśāvite), if any bhikṣu does not confess his transgression . . ." (Abhidharmakośavyākhyā ad iv. 72; compare the introduction of the Prātimokṣa and the remarks of Rhys Davids, Dialogues, II, p. 257). (See L. Finot, "Prātimokṣasūtra des Sarvāstivādins," JA, 1913, 2.177–9).

But we possess a fragment of the Jñānaprathāna, quoted in the Abhidharmakośavyākhyā (ad i.49): katamad buddhavaṃcanaṃ tathāgatasya yā vāg vacanaṃ vyavahāro gīr niruktir vākpato vāgghosya vākkarma vāgvinijātaḥ // buddhavaṃcanam kṣaṇam vaktavayam athāvāyātkarṇ vaktavayam / syāt kṣaṇam syād avyākṛtaḥ // katarat kṣaṇam / kusala-cittāya tathāgatasya vācām bhāṣamāṇasya yā [vāg]vijñātaḥ // katarad avyākṛtaḥ / . . . pūrvavat / pumān saraṇvānantaram uktam / buddhavaṃcanam ka esa dharmāḥ / nāmakāya-padakāya-vyañjana-kāya-yañā kṣaṇeraṃ parāvavacanaṃ anupūrvavasātāṃ anupūrvavasāmanayoga īti /

14. Invention of the prāptis, of sabbatā, of the existence of the past and the future, of diverse types of cause, of apratisamkhyanirodha, not to mention the nirvedhabhagiyas, etc.

15. The Abhidharmakośavyākhyā speaks of satpādābhidharma-mārṇapāthīna Ābhidhārmikas, Ābhidhārmikas "who read only the six-legged Abhidharma," which we understand to mean "who do not read the Vībhāṣa." These are Sarvāstivādins; but all Sarvāstivādins are not "followers of the Vībhāṣa" (Vaibhāṣikas). We know, for example, that there were four ways of understanding "all exists," those of the Sarvāstivādins Dharmatrāta, Ghoṣaka, Vāsumatī, and Bhaddadeva: the Vaibhāṣikas of Kaśmir condemn the first, the second and the fourth; and the first for the serious reason that it is confused with the non-Buddhist teaching of the Sārkhayas.


17. See this Introduction, Dārṣṭāntikas, and Index, Sautrāntikas.

18. I omit here the rather long note where the bibliography on the "dating" of Vasubandhu is summarized, and where the texts proving the existence of an "earlier Vasubandhu" were brought together; see below.

19. All the opinions, or almost all the opinions, marked in the Kośa or in the Bhaṣyam by the adverb kīla ("certain," "it is said," grags so), are erroneous opinions of the Vaibhāṣikas. A correct translation would be: "The School says, wrongly, that . . ."

20. N. Péri, "A propos de la date de Vasubandhu," BEFEO, 1911, p. 374. The Tibetan Siddhāntas also take a great deal from the Kośa. Note that it was translated into Chinese only in 563, and the Tibetan version, by Jinamitra and Śrīkūṭarakṣita, during the period of Ral-pa-can (816–838).

21. This does not exist in extenso in Chinese (JPTS, 1905, p. 77). This is the treatise the first two parts of which are analyzed in the Appendix of Cosmologie bouddhique.

22. The Vṛṣekā, the commentary on the Bhaṣyam by Yaśomitra, adds many details.
23. It is from this point of view that Oldenberg recommends the study of the *Abhidharmakośa*, in *Buddhistische Studien*, ZDMG, LII; p. 644 (1898).


26. Missing in the two treatises of Sarṅghabhadra, the Āryan quoted in *Vṛṣabhasūrya* i.31, which is a criticism of *Kośa* i, karika 11.

   In the two treatises of Sarṅghabhadra, the first chapter is entitled *Mūlavastunirdesa*, the second *Vīteśanirdeśa*, the third *Pratīyasaṃputpadanirdesa*. As is proper, the *Pudgalapuratisedha-prakarana*, an appendix to the *Kośa*, is ignored.

27. It has been preceded by Susumu Yamaguchi [September 1931].

28. See *Kośa* i.1. Obermiller, in the preface to his translation of the *Uttaratantra* (*Asia Major*, 1931), digresses from the thesis of Ui.

29. Perhaps because the work of Dharmatrāta enjoyed, for a long time, a great reputation; because, in the eyes of the Sarvāstivādins, the *Kośa* passed, with good reason, for heretical and tendentious.

30. Quoted iii.59, on the explanation of the word *utsada*.

31. See below.

32. *Satpādabhīdharmanātraṇaḥ*, a good reading for the *Kośa*, v.22, note 80.


34. Translated in 383 by Gotama Sarṅghadeva of Kaśmīr, and by Hsüan-tsang.

35. Watters, i.294; S. Lévi, *Catalogue géographique des Yakṣas*, 55; J. Przyluski, *Ācoka*, 263.

36. On the language in which the *Jñānaprasthāna* was written, see Takakusu, p. 82, 84, 86. See above p. 3.

37. On the *laukikāgradharmanas*, *Kośa*, vi. 19c, and "Pārāyaṇa quoted in the *Jñānaprasthāna*," *Mélanges Linossier* (where we see that the *Jñānaprasthāna* poorly presents the problem of the *nirvedhabhāgīyas*).

38. Same text, *Small Vibhāṣā*, p. 5b.

39. Compare *Kośa* i.3, and *Documents d'Abhidharma*; *Vibhāṣā*, p. 236b.


   The fourth volume of the Japanese translation reached me in September, 1931. It contains the *Vīṇānakāya*. The translator, Bun'yu Watanabe, in a short preface, treats of the philosophic import of the book, of its compilation, and its relation with the *Abhidhammas*.

41. One must be more precise with respect to the remarks made by Barth (ii.355): in truth the editors of the *Dīpavamlisa* are alone in knowing a Tissa Moggaliputta "who must have presided over the council of Ashoka and composed the *Kathāvatthu*." But the Sarvāstivādin tradition knows of a Mu-lien to whom it attributes, in the controversy of the past and the future, the position that the *Dīpavamlisa* assigns to Tissa. There is certainly much legend in Singhalese hagiography.

42. The enigmatic Gopāla of Hsüan-tsang? Our sources are in agreement in attributing to the
Sammiṣṭhas, and to the Vātsiputṛyas, the doctrine of the pudgala. See Madhyamakavṛtti, pp. 275–276.

43. Kathāvatthu: saccikaṭṭhapaṭamaṭṭhena puggalo upalabbhati. The Sanskrit formula is not restored with any certainty. We have tatvārbhataḥ (satyārbhataḥ?) paramārbhataḥ pudgala upalabhyaat sāksijīryate sampratividyate (?) samvidyate. The edition of Devasarman, more developed than that of Tissa, appears to be later.

44. Sanskrit sources like the expression purusapudgala; for example, the Sanskrit edition of Majjhima, iii.239 (chadhāturo ayam puriso) has sādhdātur ayam purusapudgalah. See Madhyamakavṛtti, pp. 129, 180, etc.

45. The expression that I translate as "Recognize the contradiction into which you fall!", ju t'ing tuo fu, corresponds to a Sanskrit original ājñābhi nigraham. Tuo fu is in fact translated by nigrabha sthāna in a word list (Tetsugaku Daijisho, Tokyo, 1912) abstracted by Rosenberg ("Introduction to the study of Buddhism," i, Vocabulary, Tokyo, 1916). Thus we have here the exact equivalent of the formula ājñābhi niggaham of the Kathāvatthu and the Milinda.

46. The doctrine of the Bhagavat is a path between two extremes. It avoids the extreme theory of permanence by saying that he who eats the fruits of the action is not the same person who carried out the action (sa karoti so'nubhavati?): it avoids the theory of annihilation by denying that he who eats the fruit is anyone other than he who carried out the action. Compare Samyutta, ii. p. 23.

47. The edition of the Dīrgha has only four octades: vimokṣa, abhibhū, lokadharma and samyagmārga (which recalls the Pali samattas).

48. On the different Vasumitrās, see Watters, i.274–5; the Introduction to the Traite sur les Sectes, Masuda, Asia Major, ii. p. 7; Tāranātha, 174.

49. Who (Vibhāṣa, p. 152a) declares that all citta-caitta disappears in nirodhasamāpatti?

50. Perhaps Taishō 1556, anonymous: Sarvāstivādasamaya-pañcavastuka, notable for its enumeration of the viprayuktau; 997c: prāpti, asamjñiṣamāpatti, nirodhasamāpatti, āsāmiṃkika, jīvitenārya, sabbhāgata, desapraṇāti (?), āyatanapraṇāti, jāti jāra, sthiti, anityatā, nāma-pāda-vaśyānākāyas.

51. It quotes the Abhidharma-ācāryas. It admits the mahābhūmikas, p. 994b3, and also avijñapti, p. 992c, which it explains, along with the samvaras, exactly as the Kośa does. But the formula, "There are two gates to amṛta, the contemplation of the loathsome and the regulation of the breath," is to be noted, p. 989b.

52. On the anāgāmin, Vibhāṣa, p. 879b; on the meaning of bhava, p. 960b; on the absorptions which follow a good mind of Kāmadhātu, p. 961c.

53. One gloss says that the word signifies "Bodhi-taking," which would give Bodhilāta.

54. The Dārṣṭāntikas deny the caittas; the Sautrāntikas admit the caittas, but differ on their number.

55. See above, p. 30.

56. Sautrāntikā Bhadantādayah; sautrāntikadārśanavalambin.

57. According to Wassiliew, 279, Saṅgharaksita differs a little. We do not know this master, nor the Bhūmisena of p. 280.

58. The opinion on seeing through the visual consciousness, on the number of the caittas, on the non-existence of avijñapti, are clearly non-Vaibhāṣika. Moreover, the Vibhāṣa carefully notes the opinions of the Bhadanta.
59. See also *Vibhāṣā*, p. 219.

60. However Dharmatrāta, in *Abhidharmasāra*, p. 885, explains the causes of the *viprayuktas*.

61. See the references to the Mahāsāṃghikas, the Vātsiputriyas, the Mahiśāsakas, and the Dharmaguptas in the index.

62. *Ch’uan-yü*; *Ch’uan* translates āgama or *avavāda*.

63. Vasubandhu, *Kośa*, iv. 56, as well as Saṅghabhadra, p. 572 (which is surprising enough), do not take into account the second alternative and follow the doctrine of the *ch’uan-yü*.

64. A note translated imprecisely in *Kośa*, v. 9d, note.

65. The truth is that Paramārtha wrote one word for another.

66. This is obscure; the *Samgraha* quotes the *Āgama* of the Mahiśāsakas and ignores the Vibhajyavādins; the *Vibhāṣā*, it appears, ignores the Sāṃhitīyas.

67. This is the meaning *yogacāra* in the *Saundarananda*, and in the *Mahāvastu*.

68. Or *vaiyāprtya*, *Avadānasataka*, ii.235.

69. "Some say: ‘When the Buddha was in this world, Sariputra, with an end to explaining the words of the Buddha, compiled the *Abhidharma*. Later, the monk Vātsiputriya recited [this work]. Up to the present day, this is what is called the *Abhidharma* of Sariputra,’” J. Przyluski, *Concile*, p. 73.

The only book of the *Abhidharma* which teaches the doctrine of the *pudgala* appears to be Taishō vol. 32, no. 1649, the *Sāmittya-nikāya-śāstra*, *Kośa*, ix.

70. "The past is that which has arisen and is destroyed; the future is that which has not arisen, not appeared,” p. 543b.

71. For the last terms, compare the variant p. 526c: the Sanskrit reading is doubtful: *ākāśāyatana[jānā] ... and ākāśāyatana[pratya][jānā]*.

72. Compare the doctrine of the *Dhammasaṅgāṇi*, *Kośa* v.4, note.

73. Taishō volume 28, numbers 1550, 1551, 1552, *Abhidharmahṛdaya*; see above p. 16.

74. We have the Sanskrit text of one of the *kārikās*, *Kośa*, v, note 14.

75. For example, the ninth chapter: Dharmatrāta takes up twenty *kārikās* of Dharmāstī and interpolates six new *kārikās*; he continues with twenty-two new *kārikās*.

76. Taishō 1546; mentioned by Takakusu, p. 128.

77. The third doctrine, difference in *avasthā*, (trans. *fen-fen*).

78. We have *fang-pien*, which should translate *vyāyāna* (see Demieville, *Milinda*) more often than *upāya*.

79. See above p. 33.
Om. Homage to the Buddha.

1. He has, in an absolute manner, destroyed all blindness; He has drawn out the world from the mire of transmigration: I render homage to Him, to this teacher of truth, before composing the treatise called the Abhidharmakosa.

Desiring to compose a treatise, with the intention of making known the greatness of his master, the author undertakes to render him homage and to first present his qualities.

"He" refers to the Buddha, the Blessed One.

"He has destroyed all blindness," that is to say, by him or through him blindness with respect to all things is destroyed.

"Blindness" is ignorance, for ignorance hinders the seeing of things as they truly are.

By this, the Buddha, the Blessed One is sufficiently designated, for he alone, through the possession of the antidote to ignorance (v. 60), has definitely destroyed all ignorance with respect to all knowable things, so that it cannot rearise.

But the Pratyekabuddhas and the Śrāvakas have also destroyed all blindness, for they are freed from all ignorance defiled by the defilements.

But they do not know the qualities proper to the Buddha (vii.28), objects very distant in space or time (vii.55), nor the infinite complex of things; therefore, they have not destroyed blindness in an absolute manner, for the ignorance freed from the defilements is active in them.

Having thus praised the Blessed One from the point of view of qualities useful to himself, the author praises him from the point of view of qualities useful to others: "He has drawn out the world from
the mire of transmigration." Transmigration is a mire, because the world is bound up in it, and because it is difficult to traverse. The Blessed One, having pity on the world which finds itself drowned without recourse in this mire, has pulled it out, as much as possible, by extending to each one the hands of the teaching of the Good Law.

"I render homage," by prostrating myself even to my head "to this teacher of truth:" because he teaches in conformity with that which is, without error. By thus qualifying the Blessed One, the author indicates the manner in which the Blessed One is useful to others. It is by the true teaching that the Blessed One, the teacher, has pulled the world out of the mire of transmigration, not by his supernatural powers, nor by the granting of favors.

After having rendered homage to this teacher of truth, what will the author do? "I shall compose a treatise." A treatise is that which instructs disciples. Which treatise?

The Abhidharmakośa.

***

What is Abhidharma?

2a. Abhidharma is pure prajñā with its following.

Prajñā which will be defined below (ii.24, vii.1) is the discernment of the dharmas.

Pure prajñā is undefiled prajñā.

The "following" of prajñā is its escort, namely the five pure skandhas (i.7a) which coexists with prajñā.

Such is the absolute meaning of Abhidharma.

2b. It is also prajñā, and the Treatise which brings about the obtaining of pure prajñā.

In common usage, the word Abhidharma also designates all prajñā which brings about the obtaining of Abhidharma in the absolute sense of the word; defiled prajñā whether it is innate or natural, or whether the result of an effort, the result of hearing, reflection, absorption
The Dhatus

(śrutacintābhāvana-mayī, ii.71c), receives, along with its following, by convention, the name of Abhidharma.

One also gives the name of Abhidharma to the Treatise, for the Treatise also brings about the obtaining of pure prajñā: it is thus a factor in Abhidharma in the absolute sense of the word.

Dharma is that which bears (dbāraṇa) self-(or unique) characteristics.

The Abhidharma is called abhi-dharma because it envisions (abhimukha) the dharma which is the object of supreme knowledge, or the supreme dharma, Nirvāṇa; or rather it is so-called because it envisions the characteristics of the dharmas, both their self-characteristics and their common (or general) characteristics.

***

Why is the present work called the Abhidharmakosa?

2c-d. The present work is called the Abhidharmakosa because the Abhidharma enters into it through its meaning; or because the Abhidharma constitutes its foundation.

The Treatise that bears the name of Abhidharma enters by its meaning into this work, which is thus the Abhidharmakosa, "the sheath of the Abhidharma." Or rather as the Abhidharma is the point of support of this work, one can say that this work is drawn from out of the Abhidharma, as from a sheath; it is thus called the Abhidharmakosa, "the work which has the Abhidharma for a sheath."

Why was the Abhidharma taught? By whom was the Abhidharma originally taught? The answer to these two questions will tell us why the author piously undertakes the writing of the Abhidharmakosa.

3. Apart from the discernment of the dharmas, there is no means to extinguish the defilements, and it is by reason of the defilements that the world wanders in the ocean of existence. So it is with a view to this discernment that the Abhidharma has been, they say, spoken [by the Master].15
Apart from the discernment of dharmas, there does not exist any means for the extinguishing of the defilements (v.1), and these are the defilements which cause the world to wander in the great ocean of transmigration. This is why, say the Vaibhāṣikas, with a view to the discernment of the dharmas, the master, the Buddha, the Blessed One, spoke the Abhidharma. For, without the teaching of the Abhidharma, a disciple would be incapable of discerning the dharmas.

However, the Vaibhāṣikas explain, the Blessed One spoke the Abhidharma in fragments. And in the same way that the Sthavira Dharmatrāta made a collection of the Udānas scattered throughout the Scriptures,—the Udānavarga,—in this same way the Āryan Kātyāyānīputra and the other Saints established the Abhidharma [by collecting it into the seven Abhidharmas].

***

What are the dharmas of which the Abhidharma teaches the discerning?

4a. The dharmas are impure, “in a relationship with the defilements,” or pure,”with no relationship to the defilements.”

This is the complete teachings of all the dharmas.

What are the impure dharmas?

4b-c. Conditioned dharmas, with the exception of the Path, are impure.

With the exception of the Path, all conditioned dharmas are defiled. Why is this?

4d. They are impure because the defilements adhere to them.

(For the samkṛtadharma see i.7a, ii.45c-d. For the defilements, the āsravas, see v.40.)

Without doubt certain defilements, for example false views, can have the Path or the unconditioned dharmas, for their object. This does not make the Path or these dharmas impure, or in a (necessary)
relationship with the defilements, because the defilements do not adhere to them. This point will be explained later in the Fifth Chapter.

What are the pure dharmas?

5a-b. The undefiled truth of the Path and the three unconditioned things are pure.\(^{20}\)

What are the three unconditioned things?\(^ {21}\)

5c. Space and the two types of extinctions.\(^ {22}\)

The two extinctions are *pratisamkhyānirodha*, extinction due to knowledge, and *apratisamkhyānirodha*, extinction not due to knowledge.

The three unconditioned things and the truth of the Path are pure dharmas because the defilements do not adhere to them.

5c. Space is "that which does not hinder."

Space has for its nature not hindering matter which, in fact, takes place freely in space; and also of not being hindered by matter, for space is not displaced by matter.\(^ {23}\)

6a. *Pratisamkhyānirodha* is disjunction.\(^ {24}\)

(Conscious) disjunction (*visāmyoga*, ii.57d) from the impure dharmas is *pratisamkhyānirodha* (ii.55) [or Nirvana]. *Pratisamkhyāna* or *pratisamkhyā* signifies a certain pure *prajñā*, the comprehension of the Truths. The "extinction" of which one takes possession by this prajñā is called *pratisamkhyānirodha*; we could say *pratisamkhyā-[prāpya]-nirodha*, "the extinction obtained through pratisamkhyā," but the middle word (i.e., *prāpya*) is elided, as in the expression "ox-cart," and not "cart hitched to oxen" (goratha = go-[yukta]-ratha).

***

Is there but one single *pratisamkhyānirodha* from all of the impure dharmas?
No.
Why is this?


Each disjunction taken separately is pratisamkhyaṇīnirodha. The objects of “disjunction” are as numerous as the objects of “junction.”  
If it were otherwise, if pratisamkhyaṇīnirodha were single, then a person who has experienced the extinction of the defilement which is abandoned by seeing the Truth of Suffering, would have obtained at the same time the extinction of the defilements which are abandoned by the Seeing of the other Truths, and by Meditation. It would be useless for him to cultivate the part of the Path which is opposed to these defilements. (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 164c16).

This does not mean that all extinction is alike, that there is not an extinction corresponding to another extinction. This means that extinction does not have a “cause corresponding to its effect (sabhāgahetu),” and that it is not a “cause corresponding to its effect” (ii.52).  

6c-d. A different type of extinction, which consists of the absolute hindering of arising, is called apratisamkhyāṇirodha.

Apratisamkhyāṇirodha is an extinction which is different from “disjunction;” it consists of the absolute hindering of the arising of future dharmas. It is so called because it is obtained, not by the comprehension of the Truths, but by the insufficiency of the causes of arising.  

For example, when the organ of sight and the mental organ are occupied with a certain visible matter, other visible things, sounds, odors, tastes and tangibles pass from the present into the past. It follows that the five sense consciousness, the visual consciousness, etc., which have had for their object other visible matter, sounds, odors, tastes and tangibles, cannot arise, for the sense consciousnesses are not capable of grasping their object when the object is past. There is thus an absolute hindering of the arising of the said consciousnesses, by reason of the insufficiency of the cause of arising.
Here we have a four-fold alternative (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 164c16):
1. solely *pratisamkhyānirodha* of the impure *dharma*s, past, present, and destined to arise;
2. solely *apratisamkhyānirodha* of pure, conditioned *dharma*s, not destined to arise;
3. *pratisamkhyānirodha* and *apratisamkhyānirodha* of impure *dharma*s, not destined to arise; and
4. neither *pratisamkhyānirodha* nor *apratisamkhyānirodha* of pure *dharma*s, past, present or destined to arise.  

***

We have said that the impure *dharma*s are the conditioned *dharma*s, minus the Path. What are the conditioned *dharma*s?

7a-b. Conditioned things are the fivefold *skandha*s, matter, etc.  

These are the aggregate of matter, the aggregate of the sensations, the aggregate of ideas, the aggregate of mental formations, and the aggregate of consciousness.

_Saṃskṛta_, conditioned, is explained etymologically as “that which has been created (kṛta) by causes in union and combination.” There is no _dharma_ which is engendered by a single cause (ii.64).

Even though the expression *saṃskṛta* signifies “that which has been created . . .,” it also applies to future *dharma*s and to present *dharma*s, as well as to past *dharma*s; in fact, a *dharma* does not change its nature by changing its time period. In the same way, one calls milk in the udder *dugdha*, “that which has been drawn,” and kindling *indhana*, or “wood to be burned.”

7c-d. Conditioned things are the paths; they are the foundations of discourse; they are “possessed of leaving;” they are “possessed of causes.”

1. Conditioned things are paths—that is to say, the time periods, the past, present and future—because they have for their nature
having gone, of going, of shall be going. In the same way, one says that a path led somewhere, that it goes, or that it will go to the town.

Or rather conditioned things are called paths (adhvan) because they are devoured (adyante) by impermanence (ii.45c).

2. Discourse (kathā), means words, or speech (vākya); discourse has names or words (nāman, ii.36) for its foundation.

Should one take literally the definition given by the stanza, and say that conditioned things are words?

No. By “foundations of discourse” one should understand “the foundations of discourse, that is, words, together with that which the words signify.” If we understand “foundations of discourse” to be only words, we would be at variance with the Prakarana-pāda31 which says; “The kathavastus, the foundations of discourse, are embraced within the eighteen dhātus.” (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 74a20).

3. Nihsāra signifies “leaving” (sāra = niḥsarana) which is the Nirvāṇa of all conditioned things. As one should depart from conditioned things, one qualifies them as “endowed with leaving.”

4. Conditioned things are dependent on causes; they are thus qualified as savastuka, that is, “having causes.”

The Vaibhāṣikas believe that, in the expression savastuka, vastu signifies cause (hetu).

Such are the diverse synonyms of “conditioned things.”

8a-b. When they are impure, they are upādānaskandhas. Impure conditioned things constitute the five upādānaskandhas. Everything that is upādānaskandha is skandha; pure conditioned things are included within the skandhas, but are not included within the upādānaskandhas (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 387a9).

The upādānas are defilements (kleśas, v.38).

The upādānaskandhas are so called (1) because they proceed from the defilements, as one says “grass fire” or “straw fire;” (2) or rather because they are governed by the defilements, as one says “the king’s man;” (3) or rather because they give rise to the defilements, as one says “flower-bearing tree” or “fruit-bearing tree.”

8c. They are called “of battle.”
The defilements are of battle because they injure oneself and others. Impure conditioned things are qualified “of battle,” “in a relationship with battle,” because the defilements of battle adhere to them; equally, as we have seen, they are qualified as “impure,” “possessing impurity,” because the defilements adhere to them.

8c-d. They are also suffering, arising, the world, the locus of false opinions, existence.

1. Suffering, because they are odious to the Saints (vi.2).
2. Arising, because suffering arises from them (vi.2).
3. World, because they are in the process of decomposition.\(^{38}\)
4. Locus of opinions, because the five opinions abide in them and adhere to them (v.7) (Prakarana, p. 33b7).
5. Existence, because it exists.\(^{39}\)

***

We have seen that there are five skandhas (i.7, 20). Let us first study rūpaskandha (i.9-14b).

9a-b. Rūpa, or matter, is the five sense organs, five objects, and avijñāpti.\(^{40}\)

The five organs are the organs of sight, hearing, smell, taste and touch.
The five objects of the five organs are visible matter, sounds, odors, tastes and tangibles.
And avijñāpti (i.11); such is rūpaskandha.

***

We have enumerated five things, visible matter, sound, etc.

9c-d. The points of support of the consciousnesses of these things, namely the subtle material elements, are the five organs, the organ of sight, etc.\(^{41}\)
The five which are the point of support of the consciousnesses of visible matter, sounds, odor, taste and tangibles, and which consist of the suprasensible subtle material elements, are, in this order, the organs of sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch.

The Blessed One said in fact, "The eye, Oh Bhiksus, an internal ayatana, a subtle matter derived from the primary elements . . ." 42

Or rather, (the point of support of the consciousnesses of these organs, are) the points of support of the visual consciousness, or eye consciousness, etc. 43 This interpretation is in conformity with the Prakarana (p. 692c12) which says: "What is the organ of sight? It is the subtle matter which is the support of the consciousness of sight."

***

Let us now examine the five objects beginning with visible matter, rūpāyatana.

10a. Visible matter is twofold. 44

1. Visible matter is color and shape. Color is fourfold: blue, red, yellow, white; other colors proceed from out of these four colors. Shape (samsthdāna, iv.3c) is eightfold: long, short, square, round, high, low, even, uneven. 45

10a. Or twentyfold.

2. Or there are some twenty types: the four primary colors, the eight shapes, and eight more colors: cloud, smoke, dust, mist, shade, hot light, light, darkness. Some make a color of the firmament [which appears like a wall of lapiz-lazuli]; this would give us the number twenty-one.

"Even" signifies "of even shape;" "uneven" is the opposite; mist is the vapor which rises from the ground and from water; "hot light" is the light of the sun; "light" is the light of the moon, the stars, fire, grasses and gems; "shade"—arisen from an obstacle to light—is where forms still remain visible; "darkness" is the opposite.

The other terms do not call for any explanation.
The Dhātus

3. Visible matter can be color without being shape: blue, red, yellow, white, shade, hot light, light, darkness.

There can be shapes without there being color: that part of the long, of the short, etc., which constitutes bodily action (kāyavijñāpti, iv.2).

There can be color and shape at one and the same time: all the other categories of visible matter.

Some other Masters maintain that only hot light and light are exclusively color; for blue, red, etc., present themselves to the sight under the aspect of long, short, etc.

4. But, say the Sautrāntikas, how could a single thing be twofold, [color and shape together? For, in the system of the Vaibhāṣikas, color and shape are distinct things, dravya, iv.3.]

Because color and shape are perceived in a single substance. The root vid has here the sense of “to know,” and not the sense of “to exist.”

But, reply the Sautrāntikas, you should admit that bodily action is at one and the same time color and shape.

10b. Sound is eightfold.

1. It is fourfold: having for its cause present primary elements forming part of the organs, having for its cause other primary elements (upāttānupāṭṭāmahābhūtahetuka, i.34c-d), belonging to living beings, and not belonging to living beings. Each of these four categories is agreeable or disagreeable.

First category: sound caused by the hand or by the voice.
Second category: sound of the wind, of the trees, of water.
Third category: sound of vocal action (iv.3d). Fourth category: every other sound.

2. According to other masters, one sound can belong to the first two categories at one and the same time, for example, a sound produced by the coming together of a hand and a drum. But the School (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 663c12) does not admit that one atom [of matter] has for its cause only two tetrades of the primary elements; thus one cannot admit that one atom [of sound] is produced by the four primary
elements of a hand and the four primary elements of a drum.

10b-c. Taste is of six types.\textsuperscript{50}

Sweet, sour, salty, pungent, bitter, and astringent.

10c. Odor is fourfold.\textsuperscript{51}

For good odors and bad odors are either excessive or non-excessive. But, according to the \textit{Prakarana} (p. 692c22), odor is threefold: good, bad, and equal or indifferent.

10d. The tangible is of eleven types.\textsuperscript{52}

1. Eleven things are tangible things: the four primary elements, softness, hardness, weight, lightness, cold, hunger, and thirst.

2. The elements will be explained below (i.12). "Softness" is smoothness; "hardness" is roughness; "weight" is that by which bodies are susceptible of being weighed (i.36); "lightness" is the opposite; "cold" is what produces a desire for heat; "hunger" is what produces a desire for food; "thirst" is what produces a desire for drinking. In fact the tangible which produces hunger and thirst is designated by the word hunger: the cause is designated by the name of the effect. In the same way that it is said "The appearance of the Buddha is (the cause of) happiness; the teaching of the religion is happiness; happiness, the harmony of the community; happiness, the austerities of monks who are in agreement."\textsuperscript{53}

3. Both hunger and thirst are lacking in Rūpadhātu,\textsuperscript{54} but the other tangibles are found there.

It is true that the clothes of the gods of Rūpadhātu, individually, have no weight; but, brought all together, they have weight.

It is true that bothersome cold is lacking in Rūpadhātu but beneficent or pleasing cold is found there: such is the opinion of the Vaibhāṣikas. [It is the absorption that the gods enjoy, not the cold.]

It is possible\textsuperscript{55} for one visual consciousness to arise from a single thing, from a single category of visible matter: when a characteristic of this thing (blue, etc.) is separately distinguished. In other cases, one consciousness is produced by many things: when such a distinction is
lacking; for example, when one sees the multiple colors and shapes that an army or a pile of jewels present at a distance and bunched together. The same remark is applicable to the auditory consciousness, the olfactory consciousnesses, etc.

But one touch consciousness arises from only five things at most, namely the four primary elements and one another of the other tangibles, soft, hard, etc. Such is the opinion of certain masters.

But, according to another opinion, one touch consciousness can arise from eleven tangibles at one and the same time.

[Objection]. According to what you say, each of the five sense consciousnesses bears on a totality, for example the visual consciousness bears on blue, red, etc.; consequently the sense consciousnesses have "general characteristics for their object" and not, as Scripture teaches us, "specific characteristic" (svalakṣaṇa).

[The Vaibhāṣikas (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 65c12) answer that the Scripture] means by specific characteristic not the specific characteristic of things, but the specific characteristic of an āyatana (ii.62c).

When the organs of touch and of taste attain their object at the same time (i.43c-d), which consciousness is the first to arise?

The one whose object is the strongest. But if the strength of the two objects is equal, the consciousness of taste arise first, because the desire for food dominates.

***

We have explained the objects of the five organs of sense consciousness, and how these objects are perceived. Let us now examine the avijñāpti, which is the eleventh category of rūpaśraddha.

11. There is a serial continuity also in a person whose mind is distracted, or who is without mind, pure or impure, in dependence on the primary elements: this is called the avijñāpti. 57

"One whose mind is distracted" is one who has a mind different from the mind that provoked the avijñāptī,—for example, a bad mind
when the *avijnāpti* has been provoked by a good mind.

“One without mind” is one who has entered into one of the absorptions of non-consciousness called *asamjñīsamāpatti* [and *niruddhasamāpatti*] (ii.42).

“Also in a person . . :” the word "also" indicates that *avijnāpti* also exists in a person with a non-distracted mind, and in a person whose mind is not in the two absorptions.

“A serial continuity” is a flux.

“Pure or impure” means good or bad.

“In dependence on the primary elements:” this in order to distinguish the *avijnāpti* series from the *prāpti* series (ii.36). *Avijnāpti* depends on the primary elements, because they are its generating cause, etc. (ii.65; *Vibhāṣa, TD* 27, p. 663a26).

“This is called the *avijnāpti*” in order to indicate the reason for the name *avijnāpti*.

This serial continuity, while being by its nature matter and action,—like *vijnāpti*, bodily and vocal action,—nevertheless does nothing by way of informing another as *vijnāpti* does.

“Is called,” in order to show that the author here expresses the opinion of the Vaibhāṣikas, and not his own.

In short, *avijnāpti* is a *rūpa*, good or bad, arisen from *vijnāpti* or from absorption.

***

What are the primary elements?

12a-b. The primary elements are the elementary substance "earth," and the elementary substances "water," "fire" and "wind." 58

These four are the four *dhātus*, so called because they bear their own unique characteristics, as well as derived or secondary matter.

They are called “great” (=primary) because they are the point of support for all derived matter. Or it is because they assemble on a large scale in the mass of the earth, the water, the fire and the wind, where
their modes of activity are manifested together (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 681a17, p. 663a11). The activity establishes the existence of these *dhātus*, and what is their nature?

12c. They are proven to exist by the actions of support, etc.

The elements of earth, water, fire, wind, are, in this order, proven to exist by the actions of support, cohesion, ripening and expansion. Expansion signifies growth and displacement. These are their actions.

12d. They are solidity, humidity, heat and motion.

As for their natures, the earth element is solidity, the water element is humidity, the fire element is heat, and the wind element is motion. Motion is what causes the series of states which constitutes a thing to reproduce itself in different places; in the same way that one speaks of the motion of a flame (iv.2c-d).

The *Prakarana* and the *Sūtra* say: "What is the wind element? It is lightness;" the *Prakarana* also says: "Lightness is a derived rūpa." Consequently, the dhārma which has motion for its nature is the wind element: its nature (lightness) is manifested by its act of motion.

What is the difference between the earth element, and earth, etc?

13a. In common usage, what is designated by the word "earth" is color and shape.

That is, when one sees earth, one sees its color and its shape. As is the case for the earth,

13b. The same for water and fire.

In common usage, that which one designates (by the word water or fire) is color and shape.

13c. Wind is either the wind element,

But the wind element is simply called "wind" in the world.

13d. Or else [color and shape].
What is called “wind” in the world is also the wind element; in fact, one speaks of “black wind,” or “circular wind.”

***

Why do all these dharmas, from visibles to avijñāpti, receive the name rūpa? Why do they together constitute the rūpaskandha?

i. The Blessed One said: “Because it is incessantly broken, Oh Bhiksus, one terms it rūpa upādānakandha. By what it is broken? It is broken by contact with the hand.”

“To be broken” signifies “to be damaged,” as stated in the Arthavargīya stanza of the Kṣudrakāgama (=Āṭṭhakavagga, i.2):68 “If the pleasures are lacking in a person who ardently searches out these pleasures, such a person is broken, as a person pierced by an arrow is broken.” (Compare Mbh xiii.193, 48).

But how is rūpa damaged?

By deteriorating, by being transformed.

ii. According to other masters, the quality that makes physical matter rūpa, namely rūpana, is not cutting off, deterioration, but rather impenetrability, impact or resistance, the obstacle that a rūpa opposes to its place being occupied by another rūpa (see i.43c-d).

[iii. Objections.]

1. If this is so, the rūpa that constitutes an atom, a “monad,” will not be rūpa, for a monad, not susceptible to deterioration or resistance, is free from rūpana.

Without doubt, a monad is devoid of rūpana; but a monad never exists in an isolated state; in the state of agglomeration, being an agglomerate, it is liable to deterioration and to resistance (Vibbāṣā, TD 27, p. 390a).

2. Rūpas of the past and the future are not rūpa, for one cannot say that they are now in a state of resistance.

Without doubt, but they have been, and they shall be in this state. Whether past or future, they are of the same nature as the dharma which is now in a state of resistance. In the same way indhana is not only (presently) kindled wood, but also (future) fuel.
3. *Avijñāpti* is not *rūpa*, for it is devoid of resistance.

Without doubt, but one can justify the quality of *rūpa* attributed to *avijñāpti*:

a. *Vijñāpti*, bodily or vocal action, from whence proceeds *avijñāpti*, is *rūpa*; thus *avijñāpti* is *rūpa*, as the shadow moves when the tree moves.

No. For *avijñāpti* is not subject to modifications; further, in order that the comparison be exact, the *avijñāpti* should perish when the *vijñāpti* perishes, as is the case for the shadow and the tree.

b. Second explanation. *Avijñāpti* is *rūpa*, for the primary elements, which constitute its point of support, are *rūpa*.72

[Objection.] According to this principle, the five sense consciousnesses would be *rūpa*, for their point of support (the organ of sight, etc.) is *rūpa*.

This response is not valid. *Avijñāpti* exists dependent upon the primary elements, as a shadow exists dependent on a tree, as the brilliance of a jewel exists dependent upon the jewel. The visual consciousness is not dependent upon an organ which is solely the cause of its arising.

[Answer.] That the shadow, or the brilliance of a jewel exists dependent upon the tree, or on the jewel, is a hypothesis that does not conform to the principles of the Vaibhāṣikas (*Vibhaṣa*, TD 27, p. 63c22). The Vaibhāṣikas hold that each one of the atoms of color which constitute shade and brilliance, exists dependent upon a tetrad of primary elements. And even supposing that: "The shadow is dependent upon the tree, since the shadow is dependent on the primary elements which are proper to it, and these are dependent upon the tree,"—the comparison to the shadow and *avijñāpti* is inadmissible. The Vaibhāṣikas admit that *avijñāpti* does not perish when the primary elements which serve as its point of support perish (iv. 4c-d). Consequently your refutation ("This response is not valid. *Avijñāpti* . . .") is worthless.

But, we would say, one can refute the objection: "According to this principle, the five sense consciousnesses would be *rūpa*.

In fact, the support of visual consciousness is twofold: 1. the organ
of sight, which is in a state of "impact" (i.29b), which is rūpa; and 2. the mental organ (manas, i.44c-d) which is not rūpa.

Now the same does not hold for avijñapti whose point of support is exclusively rūpa. Thus, from the fact that avijñapti is called rūpa because its point of support is rūpa, one cannot conclude that visual consciousness should be called rūpa. Therefore, the second explanation is the right one.

***

The organs and objects which have been defined as rūpaskandha, 14a-b. These same organs and objects are regarded as ten āyatanas, ten dhātus.73

Considered as āyatana, origin of the mind and of the mental states (i.20), they are ten āyatanas: caksurāyatana, rūpāyatana, . . . kāyāyatana, sprāstavyāyatana.

Considered as dhātu, a mine (i.20), they are ten dhātus: caksur-dhātu, rūpadhātu . . . kāyadhātu, sprāstavyadhātu.

***

We have explained rūpaskandha and how it is distributed into āyatanas and dhātus. We must now explain the skandhas.

14c. Sensation is painful impression, etc.74

Vedanāskandha is the threefold mode of feeling or experiencing sensation which is painful, pleasant, neither-painful-nor-pleasant. One should distinguish six classes of sensations: those which arise from the contact of the five material organs, the organ of sight, etc., with their object; and those which arise from contact with the mental organ (ii.7 and following).

14c-d. Ideas consist of the grasping of characteristics.75

The grasping of the diverse natures—perceiving that this is blue,
yellow, long, short, male, female, friend, enemy, agreeable, disagreeable, etc.—is *samjñāskandha* (see i.16a). One can distinguish six types of *samjñā*, according to organ, as for sensation.

15a-b. *Sāmkāraskandha* are the *sāṃskāras* different from the other four *skandhas*.76

The *sāṃskāras* are everything that is conditioned (*sāṃskṛta*, i.7a); but the name is reserved for those conditioned things which are not included in either the *skandhas* of *rupa*, *vedana*, or *samjñā*, explained above, or in the *skandha* of *vijñāna* explained below (i.16).

It is true that the Blessed One said in a Sūtra, "The *sāṃskāraskandha* is the six classes of volition;"77 but this definition excludes from *sāṃskāraskandha* 1.) all the *viprayuktasāṃskāras* (ii.35), and 2.) the *samprayuktasāṃskāras* (ii.23b, 34), with the exception of volition itself. But the Sūtra expresses itself thus by reason of the capital importance of volition, which, being action by its nature,78 is by definition the factor which creates future existence. Also the Blessed One said, "The *upādānaskandha* called *sāṃskāra* is so called because it conditions conditioned things,"79 that is to say, because it creates and determines the five *skandhas* of future existence.80

If we take the definition of the Sūtra literally, we would then arrive at the conclusion that the mental *dharma*, with the exception of volition, and all of the *dharma* of the *viprayukta* class (ii.35), do not form part of any *skandha*. They would thus not form part of the Truths of Suffering and Arising: one would not either know them, nor abandon them. Now the Blessed One said, "If there is a single *dharma* which is not known and penetrated, I declare that one cannot put an end to suffering" (vi.33). And again "If there is a single *dharma* which is not abandoned . . ." (Samyukta TD 2, p. 55b7, b23). Thus the collection of mental states and *viprayuktas* is included within the *sāṃskāraskandha*.

15b-d. These three *skandhas*, with *avijñāpti* and unconditioned things, are the *dharma* *ayatana*, the *dharma* *dhātu*.

*Vedanāskandha, samjñāskandha, sāṃskāraskandha*, plus *avijñāpti*
and the three unconditioned things (i.5b), are seven things which are called dharmāyatana or dharmadhātu.

16a. Consciousness is the impression relative to each object.\(^{81}\)

\(\textit{Vijñānakandha}\) is the impression relative to each object, the "raw grasping"\(^{82}\) of each object.\(^{83}\) \(\textit{Vijñānakandha}\) is six classes of consciousness, visual, auditory, olfactory, taste, touch, and mental consciousness:

Considered as āyatana (i.20a),

16b. It is the mental organ.

Considered as dhātu (i.20a),

16c. It is seven dhātus.

What are the seven?

16d. The six consciousnesses and the manas.

That is to say: the dhātu of the eye or visual consciousness (caksurvijñānadātā), the dhātu of the ear or auditory consciousness (srotravijñānadātā), the dhātu of the nose or olfactory consciousness (ghrānavijñānadātā), the dhātu of tongue or taste consciousness (jihvāvijñānadātā), the dhātu of body or touch consciousness (kāyavijñānadātā), the dhātu of mind or mental consciousness (manovijñānadātā), and the dhātu of the mind (manodhātā).

We have seen that there are five skandhas, twelve āyatanas, and eighteen dhātus.

1. Rūpakandha is ten āyatanas, ten dhātus, and avijñapti.
2. The dharmāyatana, or dharmadhātu is vedānā, samijñā and sanskrātā; avijñapti; and the unconditioned things.
3. Vijñānakandha is the mana-āyatana; it is seven dhātus, namely the six classes of consciousness (vijñānakāya = vijñānadātā) and the mental organ.

Could a manas or manodhātā be distinct from the six classes of consciousness, distinct from the sense consciousness and from the mental consciousness?

There is no manas distinct from the consciousness.\(^{84}\)
17a-b. Of these six consciousness, the one which continually passes away, is the manas.\(^8\)

All consciousness which has just perished receives the name of manodbātu; in the same way, a man is both son and father, the same vegetable element is both fruit and seed.

[Objection.] If the six consciousnesses which make up six dhātus constitute the manas, and if the manas is not a thing other than the six consciousnesses, then there would be either seventeen dhātus,—by excluding the manas which is co-functional with the six consciousnesses,—or else twelve dhātus, by excluding the six consciousnesses which are co-functional with the manas,—supposing of course that you want to enumerate distinct things and not mere designations.

This is true; but

17c-d. One counts eighteen dhātus with a view to assigning a point of support to the sixth consciousness.

The first five consciousnesses have for their point of support the five material organs, organ of sight, etc. (see i.44c-d); but the sixth consciousness, the mental consciousness, does not have such a point of support. Consequently, with a view to attributing a point of support to this consciousness, one calls manas or manodbātu, or again manāyātana and mana-indriya, that which serves it as its point of support, that is to say, any one of the six consciousnesses which depend on these six points of support, and six objects.

[Objection.] If the consciousness or mind is called manas when, having perished, it is the point of support of another consciousness, the last mind of an Arhat will not be a manas, for it is not followed by a mind of which it would be the immediately antecedent cause and point of support (i.44c-d).

This last mind has indeed the nature of manas, the nature of being a point of support. If it is not followed by a new mind, namely the consciousness-of-conception of a new existence (punarbhava), this is not related to its nature; rather, this results from the absence of other causes, actions and defilements, necessary to the production of a new thought.
All conditioned dharmas are included within the totality of the skandhas (i.7); all of the impure dharmas are included within the totality of the upādānaskandhas (i.8); and all the dharmas are included within the totality of the āyatanas and the dhatus (i.14). But, more briefly,

18a-b. All the dharmas are included in one skandha, one āyatana, and one dhātu.86

In rūpaskandha, mana-āyatana and dharmadhātu.

18c. A dharma is included in its own nature.87

Not in another nature. Why is this?

18d. For it is distinct from the nature of others.

A dharma is not included (saṃgraha) in that from which it is distinct. For example, the organ of sight is included within the rūpaskandha, being rūpa by its nature; within the caksurāyatana and within the caksurdbhātu, for it is the caksurāyatana and caksurdbhātu; within the Truth of Suffering and Arising, for it is suffering and arising; but it is not included within the other skandhas, āyatanas, etc., for it is distinct by its nature from that which is not itself.

Without doubt the assemblies are won over by alms-giving and other saṃgrahavastus:88 there is therefore saṃgraha of one thing by a thing different from it.

But the saṃgraha is occasional and as a consequence, not real, but conventional.

But, there are two organs of sight, of hearing, and of smell; consequently one should count twenty-one dhātus.

19a-c. The organs of sight, of hearing, and of smell, although twofold, form only, in pairs, one dhātu, for their nature, their sphere of activity, and their consciousnesses are common.

The two organs of sight have a community of nature, for they
are—both of them—the organ of sight; community of sphere, for they both have visible matter for their sphere; and community of consciousness, for they are both the point of support of the visual consciousness. Consequently the two organs of sight form a single dhātu.

The same holds for the organs of hearing and smell.

19d. It is for beauty’s sake that they are twofold.

Although they form only one dhātu, these organs are produced in pairs, with a view to the beauty of the body. With but a single eye, a single ear, or a single nostril, one would be very ugly (ii.la; i.43, 30). 89

***

What is the meaning of the terms skandha, āyatana, and dhātu?

20a-b. Skandha signifies “heap,” āyatana signifies “gate of entry,” “gate of arising,” and dhātu signifies “lineage.”

i. In the Sūtra, skandha signifies “heap:” “Whatever rūpa there is, past, present, or future, internal or external, gross or subtle, inferior or excellent, far or near, if one puts together all this rūpa, that which is past, etc., one has that which is called rūpaskandha.” 90

According to the Vaibhāṣikas,] (1) past rūpa is rūpa destroyed by impermanence, 91 future rūpa is rūpa which has not arisen, and present rūpa is rūpa which has arisen and which has not been destroyed; (2) rūpa is internal when it forms part of the series called “me” (i.39); all other rūpa is external; or rather the terms internal and external are understood from the point of view of āyatana: the organ of sight is internal because it forms part of my series or of the series of another; (3) rūpa is gross when it offers resistance; or rather these two designations are relative and not absolute.

Should one say that, in this second hypothesis, the gross and the subtle are not proven, since the same rūpa is gross or subtle according to whether one compares it to a rūpa more subtle or gross?

This objection is invalid, for terms of comparison do not vary:
when a rūpa is gross in relation to another rūpa, it is not subtle in relation to this same other rūpa: like father and son.

(4) Inferior rūpa is defiled rūpa; excellent rūpa is non-defiled rūpa; (5) past and future rūpa are distant; present rūpa is near.92

The same for the other skandhas, with this difference: gross consciousness is that which has for its point of support the five organs; subtle consciousness is the mental consciousness; or rather consciousness is gross or subtle according to whether it belongs to a stage which is inferior or superior.

According to the Bhadanta,93 (1) gross rūpa is that which is perceived by the five organs; all other rūpa is subtle; (2) “inferior” signifies “unpleasant,” “excellent” signifies “pleasant;” (3) distant rūpa is that which is found in an invisible place; near rūpa is that which is found in a visible place.

[The explanation of the Vaibhāṣikas is bad, for] past rūpa, etc., has already been designated by its name. The same for sensation; it is far or near according to whether its point of support is visible or invisible; it is gross or subtle according to whether it is corporeal or mental (ii.7).

ii. āyatana signifies “gate of entry or of arising of the mind and of the mental states” (cittacaitta, ii.23). Etymologically, āyatana is that which extends (tanvanti) the entry (āya) of the mind and of the mental states.94

iii. Dhātu signifies gotra, race, lineage.95 In the same way that the place, the mountain, where there are many “families” of gems,—iron, copper, silver, gold,—is said “to have numerous dhātus,” in this same way in the human complex or series, there are eighteen types of “families” which are called the eighteen dhātus.

Gotra is thus a mine.96 Of what is the organ of the eye the mine? Of what are the other dhātus the mine?

The dhātus are the mine of their own species: the eye, being a “cause similar to its effect” (sabhāgabetu, ii.52) of the later moments of the existence of the eye, is the mine, the dhātu of the eye.

But then unconditioned things, which are eternal, cannot be considered as dhātu?

Let us say that they are the mine of the mind and mental states.
According to another opinion, dhātu signifies species. The specific nature of the eighteen dhātus is what is understood by the eighteen dhātus.

iv. [Objections.97] 1. If skandha signifies "heap," the skandhas have only a nominal existence, not a real existence, for collections are not a thing: for example a pile of wheat, or the pudgala.98

99 No, [reply the Vaibhāṣikas,] for an atom is a skandha.

As an atom in this hypothesis cannot have the quality of being a heap, do not say that skandha signifies "heap."

2. According to another opinion (Vibhāṣā TD 27, p. 407c9), skandha signifies "that which bears the burden, namely its effect."100 Or else skandha signifies "part, section,"101 as one says in the world, "I will lend you three skandhas, if you promise to return them to me."102

These two explanations are not in conformity with the Sūtra.103 The Sūtra, in fact, attributes the sense of heap to skandha and no other sense: "Whatever rūpa there is, past, present, or future, . . . if one puts together all this rūpa . . ."

3. [The Vaibhāṣikas say: The Sūtra teaches that] all rūpa,—past rūpa, future rūpa, etc.,—is, individually, called skandha, the same way that it teaches that hair, etc., is earth-element (below, note 120); thus each "real" (atomic) element of past rūpa, future rūpa, etc., receives the name of skandha. Thus the skandhas have real existence and not merely nominal existence.

This interpretation is inadmissible, for the Sūtra says "... if one puts together all this rūpa, . . . one has that which is called rūpaskandha."

4. [The Sautrāntikas:] If this is the case, then the material āyatana,—the organs and objects of the five sense consciousnesses,—have only a nominal existence, for the quality of being a "gate of arising of the mind or mental states" does not belong to atoms taken one by one, which are solely real, but to collections of atoms which constitute an organ of sight, a visible object, etc.

[Answer:] No, since each of these atoms individually possesses the quality of being "a gate of the arising of the mind," of being the cause of consciousness (compare i.44a-b.iii). If you do not accept this
doctrine, you will refuse to the organ, in its totality, the quality of being a cause of consciousness, for it does not produce a consciousness by itself, without the cooperation of an object.

5. On the other hand, the Vibhaṣā (TD 27, p. 384a18) expresses itself thus: "When the Ābhidhārmikas take into consideration the fact that the term skandha is only the denomination of a heap, they say that an atom is part of a dhātu, an āyatana, and a skandha; when they do not take this fact into consideration, they say that an atom is a dhātu, an āyatana, a skandha." In fact, one metaphorically designates the part by the whole; for example, "The robe is burned," for "One part of the robe is burned."

***

Why did the Blessed One give skandhas, āyatanas and dhātus as the triple designation of the dharmas?

20c-d. The teachings of the skandhas, etc., because error, faculty, joy are threefold.

1. Error is threefold: the first category of persons go astray by considering mental phenomena as together constituting a self; the second are similarly mistaken with respect to the material elements; and the third similarly err with respect to both the mental and the material elements.

2. The moral faculties (ii.3c-d), the faculty of speculative consciousness (prajñendriya, ii.24d), are of three categories, sharp, mediocre, dull.

3. Joy is threefold: the first category of persons apply themselves to that which is said in brief; the second to that which is said normally; the third to that which is said at great length.

The teaching of the skandhas addresses itself to the first category of hearers, to those who are mistaken with respect to mental phenomena, who are of sharp faculties, and who are fond of a brief teaching; the teaching of the āyatanas addresses itself to the second
category, and the teaching of the dhātus addresses itself to the third category.107

***

Sensation and ideas each constitute a separate skandha: all the other mental dharmas (ii.24) are placed within the saṃskāraskandha (i.15). Why is this?

21. The two mental states, sensation and ideas, are defined as distinct skandhas because they are the causes of the roots of dispute, because they are the causes of transmigration, and also by reason of the causes which justify the order of skandhas. (i.22b)108

1. There are two roots of dispute:109 attachment to pleasure, and attachment to opinions. Sensation and ideas are, respectfully, the principal causes of these two roots. In fact, if one becomes attached to pleasures, it is because one relishes the sensation; if one becomes attached to opinions, it is by reason of erroneous or false ideas (viparītasamjñā, v.9)

2. Sensation and ideas are the causes of transmigration: those who are greedy for sensation and whose ideas are erroneous transmigrate.

3. The reasons which justify the order of the skandhas will be explained below (i.22b-d).

***

Why do unconditioned things, which form part of the dharmāyatana and the dharmadhātu (i.15d), not form part of the skandhas?

22a-b Unconditioned things are not named with respect to the skandhas, because they do not correspond to the concept.110

1. Unconditioned things cannot be placed within any of the five skandhas, for they are not matter, nor sensation . . .
2. One cannot make a sixth skandha of the unconditioned: it does not correspond to the concept of skandha, since skandha signifies "heap," "capable of being put together." One cannot say of the unconditioned what the Sūtra says of matter: "If one puts together all this unconditioned, that which is past . . . , one has that which one calls the a asamāsraskandha," for the distinctions of past, etc., do not exist with respect to unconditioned things.

3. Furthermore, the expression upādānakandha (i.8a) designates the totality of that which is the cause of defilements; the expression skandha designates the totality of that which is the cause of defilement (impure conditioned things) as well as the cause of purification (pure conditioned things: the Path). Thus unconditioned things, which are neither the cause of defilement, nor the cause of purification, cannot be placed either among the upādānakandhas nor among the skandhas.

4. According to one opinion, the same way that the end of a jug is not a jug, in this same way unconditioned things, which are the end or cessation of the skandhas, are not skandhas (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 385b18). And so according to this reasoning unconditioned things will be neither āyatanas nor dhātus.

***

We have defined the skandhas. We should now explain the order in which the skandhas are enumerated.

22b-d. The order of the skandhas is justified by their grossness, their defilement, the characteristic of the jug, etc., and also from the point of view of their spheres of influence.\textsuperscript{111}

1. Matter, being subject to resistance (i.29b), is the grossest of the skandhas. Among the non-material skandhas, sensation is the grossest, by reason of the grossness of its functioning: in fact, one localizes sensation in the hand, in the foot, etc. Ideas are grosser than the last two skandhas. The samskāraskandha is grosser that the skandha of consciousness. The skandhas are thus arranged in order of their diminishing grossness.
2. In the course of external transmigration, men and women are mutually infatuated by their bodies (*rūpas*) because they are attached to the pleasures of sensation (*vedanā*). This attachment proceeds from erroneous ideas (*samjñāviparyāśa*), which are due to the defilements which are *sāṁskāras*. And it is the mind (*citta*) which is defiled by the defilements. The *skandhas* are thus arranged according to the process of their defilement.

3. Matter is the pot, sensation is the food, ideas are the seasoning, the *sāṁskāras* are the cook, and the mind is the consumer. We have a third reason for the order of the *skandhas*.

4. Finally, in considering the *skandhas* on the one hand, and the *dhātus* or spheres of existence (ii.14) on the other, one sees that Kāmadhātu is characterized by matter, namely by the five objects of sense enjoyment (*kāmaguṇa*: Dharmaskandha, 5.15, Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 376 all: compare Kathāvatthu, viii.3). Rūpadhātu, that is to say the Four Dhyānas, is characterized by sensation (organs of pleasure, satisfaction, and indifference, viii.12). The first three stages of Ārūpyadātātu are characterized by ideas: ideas of infinite space, etc. (viii.4). The fourth stage of Ārūpyadātātu, or the summit of existence, is characterized by volition, the *sāṁskāra* par excellence, which there creates an existence of twenty-four thousand cosmic ages (iii.81c). Finally, these diverse stages are the "abodes of consciousness" (*vijñānasathiti*, iii.6): it is in these places that the mind resides. The first four *skandhas* constitute the field; the fifth constitutes the seed.

There are thus five *skandhas*, no more, no less. One sees how the reasons which justify the order of the *skandhas* also justify the doctrine that makes sensation and ideas separate *skandhas*: they are grosser than the other *sāṁskāras*; they are the cause of the process of defilement; they are the food and the seasoning; and they reign over the two spheres of existence.

***

One should now explain the order in which the six *āyatanas* or *dhātus* which are the six organs of consciousness, the organ of sight,
etc., are enumerated: an order the function of which is to arrange the objects (*vīṣaya*) and the consciousnesses which correspond to these organs (*rūpadhātu, caksurviṃśānaṃadhātu* . . .)

23a. The first five are the first because their object is present.

Five, beginning with the organ of sight, are called the first, because they bear only on present, simultaneous objects. Conversely, the object of the mental organ can be either (1) simultaneous to this organ; (2) earlier or past; (3) later or future; (4) tritemporal, that is to say simultaneous, earlier and later; or (5) beyond time.

23b. The first four are the first because their object is solely derived or secondary matter.

The organs of sight, of hearing, of smell and of taste do not attain to the primary elements (i.12), but solely to matter which derives from the primary elements (*bhautika, ii.50a, 65*).

The object of touch is not constant (i.35a-b, 10d): sometimes primary elements, sometimes derived matter, sometimes both at the same time.

23c. These four are arranged according to the range and speed of their activity.

Their activity is at a distance, at a greater distance, very rapid.

The organ of sight and the organ of hearing bear on a distant object (i.43c-d). They are thus named first.

The organ of sight bears on objects at a greater distance than does the organ of hearing: for one can see a river of which one cannot make out the sound. The organ of sight is thus named before the organ of hearing.

Neither odor nor taste are perceived at a distance. But the activity of smell is more rapid than that of taste. The organ of smell perceives the odor of food before the organ of taste perceives its taste.

23d. Or rather the organs are arranged according to their position.
The point of support or the place of the organ of sight, that is to say, the eye, is the highest; below that, the place of the organ of hearing; below that, the place of the organ of smell; below that, the place of the organ of taste. As for the place of the organ of touch, that is to say the body, it is, for the most part, lower than the tongue. As for the mental organ, it is not matter (i.44a-b).

***

Among the ten āyatanas included within rūpaskandha, only one receives the name of rūpa-āyatana. And although all the āyatanas are dharmas, only one is called dharma-āyatana. Why?

24. A single āyatana is called rūpa-āyatana with a view to distinguishing it from the others, and by reason of its excellence. A single āyatana is called dharma-āyatana with a view to distinguishing it from the others, and because it includes many of the dharmas as well as the best dharma.

The ten material āyatanas (i.14a-b) are, each one separately, āyatana: five are subjects, and five are the objects of a specific consciousness. They are not, in their totality, a single āyatana, a single source of consciousness, so that they could be called a rūpa-āyatana. Nine are individualized by specific names: caksurāyatana, śrotrāyatana, sabdāyatana . . . The āyatana which does not bear any of these nine names, and which is matter, is sufficiently designated by the expression rūpa-āyatana, without there being any need to give it another name.

But the nine other āyatanas are also both āyatana and rūpa: why is the name of rūpa-āyatana given in preference to the object of the organ of sight?

By reason of its excellence. It is rūpa, in fact, (1) by reason of pratigha: being subject to resistance, it is “deteriorated” through contact with the hand, etc.; (2) by reason of desanidarsana (i.13, p. 70): one can indicate it as being here, as being there; and (3) by reason of common usage: that which one understands in the world by rūpa, is
visible matter, color and shape.

The dharmāyatana (i.15b-d) is sufficiently distinguished from the other āyatanas by the name of dharmāyatana. Same explanation as above. It includes numerous dharmas, sensations, ideas, etc.; it includes the best dharma, that is to say, Nirvāṇa. This is why the general name, dharmāyatana, is attributed to it par excellence.

According to another opinion, visible matter is called rūpā-yatana because it includes twenty varieties (blue, etc.), and because it is the sphere of three types of eyes, a fleshy eye, the divine eye, and the wisdom eye (māṁsa-, divya-, and prajñācaksus; Itivuttaka, 61).

***

The Sūtras name other skandhas, other āyatanas, and other dhātus. Are these included within the skandhas, āyatanas, and dhātus described above?

25. The eighty thousand dharmaskandhas that the Muni promulgated, depending on whether one regards them as "voice" or as "name," are included within the rūpaskandha or the saṃskāraskandha.114

For the teachers who say "The word of the Buddha is, by its nature, voice," these skandhas are included within the rūpaskandha; for those who consider the word of the Buddha as "name," these skandhas are included within the saṃskāraskandha (ii.36, 47a-b).

***

What is the dimension of a dharmaskandha?

26a. According to some, a dharmaskandha is of the dimension of the Treatise.115

That is to say, of the dimension of an Abhidharma Treatise known by the name of Dharmaskandha, which is six thousand stanzas long.116
26b. The exposition of the *skandhas*, etc., constitutes so many *dharmanaskandhas*.

According to another opinion, the exposition of the *skandhas*, *āyatanas*, *dhātus*, *pratîyāsyasamutpāda*, the Truths, the foods, the *dhyānas*, the *apramānas*, the *ārūpyas*, the *vimokṣas*, the *abhībhvaśyatanas*, the *kṛṣṇāyatanas*, the *bodhipaksikas*, the *abhijñās*, the *pratisamvids*, *pranidbijñāna*, or *araṇā*, etc., are each one of them separately so many *dharmanaskandhas*.

26c-d. In fact, each *dharmanaskandha* has been preached in order to heal a certain category of believer.

Beings, with respect to their dispositions (ii.26), number eighty thousand: some are dominated by affection, others by hatred, others by error, others by pride, etc. Eighty thousand *dharmanaskandhas* have been preached by the Blessed One in order to cure them.

***

In the same way that the *dharmanaskandhas* are included within *rupaskandha* or *samāskāraskandha*,

27. In this same way the other *skandhas*, *āyatanas* and *dhātus* should be suitably arranged within the *skandhas*, *āyatanas* and *dhātus* as described above, by taking into account the characteristics that have been attributed to them.

The other *skandhas*, *āyatanas* and *dhātus* which are mentioned in other Sūtras should be arranged within the five *skandhas*, twelve *āyatanas* and eighteen *dhātus*, by taking into consideration the unique characteristics which have been attributed to them in these works.

There are five pure *skandhas*, *śīla* (iv.13), *samādhi* (vi.68), *prajñā* (ii.25), *vimukti* (vi.76c), and *vimuktijñānadarśana*: the first forms part of the *rupaskandha*, the others of the *samāskāraskandha* (*Sarīyutta*, i.99, *Dīgha*, iii.279, *Dharmasamgraha*, 23).

The first eight *kṛṣṇāyatanas* (viii.35), being by their nature
absence of desire, form part of the *dharmāyatana*. If one considers them along with their following, they are by their nature five *skandhas*, and they are included within the *mana-āyatana* and the *dharmāyatana*.

The same holds for the *abhibhvāyatanas* (viii.34).

The last two *kṛtSnāyatanas* and the four *ārūpyāyatanas* (viii.2c) are, by their nature, four *skandhas*, with the exclusion of *rūpa*. They are included within the *mana-āyatana* and the *dharmāyatana*.

The five "gates of entry into deliverance" (*vimuktyāyatana*)¹¹⁸ are, by their nature, speculative knowledge (*prajñā*); they are thus included within the *dharmāyatana*. If one considers their following, they are included within the *sabdāyatana*, the *mana-āyatana*, and the *dharmāyatana*.

Two other *āyatana* are left: 1. the Asaṃjñisattvas (ii.41b-d), which are included within the ten *āyatanas*, with the exception of smell and taste; and 2. the Naivasaṃjñānaṃsaṃjñāyatanaṃopagas, which are included within the *mana-āyatana* and the *dharmāyatana*.

In this same way the sixty-two *dhātus* enumerated in the *Bahudhātuka* should be arranged within the eighteen *dhātus* by taking their nature into consideration.¹¹⁹

***

Among the six *dhātus* or elements mentioned in the Sūtra,—earth element, water element, fire element, wind element, space element, and consciousness element—the last two have not been defined. Is the space element the same thing as all space, the first of the unconditioned things (i.5c)? Is all consciousness (*vijñāna*, i.16) the consciousness element?

28a-b. Cavities are called the space element; it is, one says, light and darkness.

[The cavity of the door, the window, etc., is the external space element; the cavity of the mouth, the nose, etc., is the internal space element.]¹²¹
According to the School (kila), the void of the space element is light or darkness—that is to say, a certain type of color, of matter (i.9b), for that which one perceives in a cavity is light or darkness. Being by its nature light or darkness, the void will be day or night.  

The void is called aghasāmantaka rūpa (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 388b5).  

Agha, some say, is etymologically explained as atyartham ghātāt: "because it is extremely capable of striking or of being struck." 123 One should thus understand agha as solid, agglomerated matter. The void is thus a type of matter close (sāmantaka) to agha.  

According to another opinion, [our own], agha signifies "free from striking" (a-pratighātā). A void is agha because other matter does not strike it; it is at the same time close to other matter; it is thus both agha and sāmantaka.

28c. The consciousness element is an impure consciousness.  

[Impure consciousness, that is to say, the mind which does not form part of the Path.] Why is it not called pure?  
Because these six dhātus are  

28d. The support of arising.  

The six dhātus are given in the Sūtra (note 120) as support, as the raison d'être of arising, that is to say, of the "mind at conception", and of all existence until the "mind at death".  

The pure dharmas are opposed to arising, to existence. Thus the five sense consciousnesses, which are always impure, and the mental consciousness when it is impure, give us the consciousness element (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 389a8).  

***  

Of these six dhātus, the first four are included within the tangible, the fifth is included within visible matter, and the sixth within the seven dhātus enumerated above i.16c.  

***
Among the eighteen dhātus, how many are visible, “capable of being pointed out?”

29a-b. Only rūpadhātu is visible.

One can indicate its place, here, there. The other dhātus are invisible.

29b-c. The ten dhātus which are exclusively material are capable of being struck.¹²⁴

The ten dhātus which are included within the rūpaskandha are capable of being struck.¹²⁵

1. Striking, or collision, is of three types: āvaraṇapratīghāta, visāyaprātiṣṭhāna, and alambanaprātiṣṭhāna (Vibhaṣā, TD 27, p. 391c6).
   a. Āvaraṇapratīghāta, being struck by reason of resistance: the quality that belongs to a body of making an obstacle to the arising of another body in the place where it itself is found; impenetrability. When a hand strikes a hand or a rock, when a rock strikes a rock or a hand, it is counterstruck or repelled.
   b. Visāyaprātiṣṭhāna, the striking of the organ with that which is its sphere of action. According to the Prajñāpti:¹²⁶ “There is an eye, an organ of sight, which is struck by water and not by dryness, namely the eye of a fish; there is an eye which is struck by dryness and not by water, namely, the eyes of humans in general, (with the exception of fishermen); there is an eye which is struck by water and by dryness, namely, the eye of a crocodile, a crab, a frog, or fishermen; there is an eye which is neither struck by water nor by dryness, namely the eyes which are not of the preceding categories (for example, the eyes of beings who perish in the womb). There is an eye struck by night, namely the eye of a bat, an owl, etc.; there is an eye which is struck by daylight, namely the eye of humans in general, (with the exception of thieves, etc.); there is an eye which is struck by the night and by daylight, namely the eye of a dog, a jackal, a horse, a leopard, a cat, etc.; there is an eye which is not struck by either night or daylight, namely the eyes which are not of the preceding categories.”¹²⁷
   c. Alambanaprātiṣṭhāna, the striking of the mind and mental states
with their object. (ii.62c).

What is the difference between a sphere, *vīṣaya*, and an object, *ālambana*?

*Vīṣaya* is the place where the organ exercises its activity, seeing, hearing, etc.; *ālambana* is what is grasped by the mind and the mental states. Thus, whereas the mind and mental states have both *vīṣaya* and *ālambana*, the eye, the ear, etc., have only *vīṣaya*.

Why term “striking” or “evolving” the activity of the organ or the mind with respects to its *vīṣaya* or *ālambana*?

Because the organ does not proceed, is not active, beyond the *vīṣaya*: thus it is struck by the *vīṣaya* (for one says in common usage that one is struck by a wall beyond which one cannot “proceed”). Or rather, “to strike” signifies “to encounter”: this is the process or activity of the organ with respect to its own sphere.

2. When we say that ten *dhātu* are capable of being struck, or *sapratigha*, “characterized by *pratighāta*,” we are speaking of *āvarana-pratighāta*: these bodies are mutually impenetrable, capable of collision.

3. Are the *dharma* which are *sapratigha* through “striking the sphere of action,” also *sapratigha* through “impenetrability?”

Four alternatives: 1. the seven *cittadhātu* (i.16c) and one part of the *dharma*dhātu, namely the *samprayuktas* (ii.23), are *sapratigha* solely through “striking the sphere of action;” 2. the five spheres, visible matter, etc. (i.9) are *sapratigha* solely through “impenetrability;” 3. the five organs, eye, etc. (i.9) are *sapratigha* from the above two points of view; 4. one part of the *dharma*dhātu, namely the *viprayuktas* (ii.35), are not *sapratigha* through “striking the sphere of action,” but are *sapratigha* through “striking the object.”

Let us now answer the second term of the question: the *dharma* which are *sapratigha* through “striking the object” are also *sapratigha* through “striking the sphere of action”: but there are *dharma* which are *sapratigha* through “striking the sphere of action” without being at the same time *sapratigha* through “striking the object,” namely the five organs.

4. The Bhadanta Kumāralābha says: “*Sapratigha* is that in which and with regard to which the consciousness can be hindered from
arising by a foreign body; apratigha is the opposite.”

***

Among the eighteen dhatus, how many are good, how many are bad, and how many are morally neutral (avyakta, iv.8, 9, 45)?

29c. Eight dhatus are morally neutral.

What are the eight? These are the ten dhatus which are characterized as sapratigha (i.29b-c),

29d. Minus visible matter and sound.

“Minus visible matter and sound,” that is to say, eight dhatus: the five material organs, odor, taste and the tangible, are neutral, not being defined as good or bad; or rather, according to another opinion, not being defined from the point of view of retribution (vipaka).

30a. The others are of three types.

The other dhatus can be, according to the case, good, bad, or neutral.

1. The seven dhatus (cittadhatavaḥ, i.16c). are good when they are associated with the three good roots (iv.8), bad when they are associated with bad roots, and neutral in all other cases.

2. The dharmadhātu (i.15c-d) includes (1) the good roots, the dharmas associated with these roots, the dharmas that issue from these roots, and pratisamkhyanirodha or Nirvāṇa; (2) the bad roots, the dharmas associated with these roots, the dharmas that issue from these roots; and (3) neutral dharmas, for example space.

3. Rūpadhātu and sabdadhātu, the visible matter and the audible, are good or bad when they constitute a bodily or vocal action (iv.26, 3d) that issued from a good or bad mind. They are neutral in all other cases.

***

Among the eighteen dhatus, how many exist in each sphere of
existence, Kāmadhātu, Rūpadhātu, and Ārūpyadhātu (iii.1-3)?

30a-b. All exist in Kāmadhātu.\textsuperscript{131}

All the \textit{dhātu}s are associated with, or bound to Kāmadhātu, not disassociated from Kāmadhātu (\textit{Vibbāṣā, TD 27, p. 746cl}).

30b. Fourteen exist in Rūpadhātu.

There are fourteen \textit{dhātu}s in Rūpadhātu.

30c-d. With the exception of odor, taste, the consciousness of odor, and the consciousness of taste.\textsuperscript{132}

1. Odor and taste are lacking there, for they are “morsel-food” (iii.39) and no one is born into Rūpadhātu who is not detached from this food. Since odor and taste are lacking, the consciousness of odor and taste are lacking also.

Objection: Tangible things should be lacking also, for it is also tangible food by the “mouthful.”

No, for tangible things are not exclusively food. Tangibles which are not food do exist in Rūpadhātu.

Objection: One can reason in the same way with respect to odor and taste.

No. The tangible has a useful function apart from food: it serves as the point of support of the organs; it serves as a support in general; and it serves as clothing. Odor and taste have no function outside of eating: they are of no use to beings detached from food.

ii. Śrīlābha gives a different explanation: When a person in Kāmadhātu enters into absorption or \textit{dhyāna}, he sees visible matter; he hears sounds; his body is comforted by a certain tangible which accompanies physical well-being produced by the \textit{dhyāna} (vii.9b). One can conclude from this fact that, in the celestial abodes of Rūpadhātu which bear the name of \textit{dhyāna} (\textit{upapattidhyāna}, iii.2, viii.1), there are visible, audible and tangible things, but not taste and odor.

iii. We think that, if odor and taste are lacking in Rūpadhātu, the organs of smell and taste should also be lacking, for they do not serve any purpose. (Thus there are only twelve \textit{dhātu}s in Rūpadhātu.)
1. [Answer of a master who speaks for the Vaibhāṣikas, vaibhāṣikadesīya.] The organs of smell and taste are useful in Rūpadhātu, for, without them, beauty and elocution would be missing.

The nose, support of the subtle matter that constitutes the organ of smell, suffices for beauty (i.44); the tongue, the place of the organ of taste, suffices for elocution.

[The Vaibhāṣikadesīya.] The members,—nose and tongue,—which support the organ, cannot be deprived of this organ. There is no nose or tongue where the subtle matter that constitutes the organ of smell or the organ of taste is missing, in the same way that the sexual member is always endowed with a special organ of touch which is called the sexual organ (i.44a, ii.2c-d).

One can well conceive that the sexual member is lacking when the sexual organ is lacking, for, stripped of this organ, it serves no function; but the nose and the tongue are useful independent of the organs of smell and taste. Thus the nose and tongue exist in Rūpadhātu, although the organs which correspond to them are lacking. Thus there are only twelve dhātus in Rūpadhātu.

2. [Answer of the Vaibhāṣikas:] But an organ can arise without having any use, for example the organs of beings destined to perish in the womb.

Agreed! The arising of an organ can be without usefulness: but it is never without a cause. What is the cause of the arising of an organ, if not a certain act commanded by a desire relative to this organ? Now whoever is without attachment to the object, odor, is also without attachment to the organ, the organ of smell. Thus there is no reason for the organs of smell and taste to appear among beings who are reborn in Rūpadhātu, since these beings are detached from odors and tastes. Otherwise, why is the sexual organ lacking in Rūpadhātu?

Reply of the Vaibhāṣikas. The sexual organ is a cause of ugliness (ii.12).

Is it not beautiful among beings who possess the marks of the Mahāpuruṣas? Moreover, it is not by reason of its utility that the sexual organ arises, but rather by reason of its cause. Given its cause, it will arise, even if it is ugly.
3. [Argument from authority.] According to the Vaibhāṣikas, to maintain that the organs of smell and taste are lacking in Rūpadhātu is to contradict the Sūtra. The Sūtra\textsuperscript{133} teaches that beings of Rūpadhātu possess, complete, all the organs: they are never one-eyed, or only one-eared (iii.98a).

This text teaches that beings of Rūpadhātu possess, complete, the organs that exist in Rūpadhātu. If the Vaibhāṣikas do not understand it thus, they must then attribute the sexual organ to those beings.

[4. Reply and conclusion of the Vaibhāṣikas.]

Although odor and taste are lacking there, the organs of smell and taste exist in Rūpadhātu.

In fact, a person who is detached from odors keeps his attachment with respect to the organ of smell which is part of his person. Thirst (=desire) enters into action with regard to these six organs of consciousness, not by reason of the object of these six organs, but by reason of the person himself. Thus the arising of the organs of smell and taste has a cause, even if one were detached from odors and tastes. But the same does not hold for the sexual organ. Attachment relative to this organ has for its principle attachment to the tactile consciousness of sexual union. Now beings who will be reborn in Rūpadhātu are detached from this consciousness; thus they have not accomplished actions commanded by a desire relative to the sexual organ; thus this organ is lacking in Rūpadhātu.\textsuperscript{134}

31a-b. In Ārūpyādhatu, there is a mental organ, an object of the mental consciousness, and the mental consciousness.

Beings detached from matter arise in Ārūpyādhatu, thus the ten dhātus which are material, namely the five organs and their objects, and the five consciousnesses which have for their point of support and for their objects a material dhātu (viii.3c), are lacking in Ārūpyādhatu.

***

How many dhātus are impure? How many are pure?

31c-d. The three dhātus which have just been named can be
pure or impure.

They are pure when they form part of the Truth of the Path or of unconditioned things; in the opposite case they are impure (i.4).

31d. The others are impure.

The other dhātus, fifteen in number, are solely impure.\(^{135}\)

***

How many dhātus are associated with vitarka and with vicāra, free from vitarka and associated with vicāra, or free from both vitarka and vicāra?\(^{136}\)

32a-b. Five consciousnesses always include vitarka and vicāra.

They are always associated with vitarka and with vicāra, for they are gross, being turned towards externals. The word hi, "always," indicates restriction; they are exclusively dharmas which include vitarka and vicāra.

32c. The last three dhātus are of three types.

These dhātus are the mental organ, the object of mental consciousness, and the mental consciousness.

1. In Kāmadhātu and in the First Dhyāna (viii.7, 11), (1) the manodhātu, (2) manovijñānadhātu, and (3) that part of the dharma-dhātytu which is associated with the mind (ii.23), with the exception of vitarka and vicāra themselves, are associated with vitarka and vicāra.

2. In the intermediary dhyāna (dhyānāntara, viii.22d), these same are free from vitarka, but associated with vicāra.

3. In the higher stages up to and including the last stage, these same are free from both vitarka and vicāra (viii.23c-d).

4. The part of the dharmadhātu which is disassociated from the mind (ii.35) and the vicāra of the intermediary dhyāna are free from both vitarka and vicāra.

5. As for vitarka, it is always accompanied by vicāra; it is always free from vitarka, since two simultaneous vitarkas are impossible. But
the vicāra of Kāmadhātu and the First Dhyāna are not placed within any of the three categories: in fact, it is always associated with vitarka, and it is never accompanied by vicāra, two simultaneous vicāras being impossible.

We therefore say that, in the stages which include vitarka and vicāra (viii.7), there are four categories: 1. The dharmas associated with the mind, with the exception of vitarka and vicāra, are accompanied by vitarka and vicāra. 2. Vitarka is free from vitarka, but accompanied by vicāra. 3. The dharmas disassociated from the mind are free from vitarka and vicāra. 4. Vicāra is free from vicāra, and is accompanied by vitarka.

32d. The other dbhātus are free from the one and the other.

The other dbhātus are the ten material dbhātus. Not being associated with the mind, they are free from both vitarka and vicāra.

***

But, if the five sense consciousnesses are always accompanied by vitarka and vicāra, how are they defined as free from vikalpa?

33a-b. They are free from vikalpa to the extent that they are free from nirūpanāvikalpa and from anusmaranāvikalpa.¹³⁷

According to the Vaibhāṣikas,¹³⁸ vikalpa is of three types: vikalpa in and of itself or by definition, vikalpa consisting of examination, and vikalpa consisting of remembering.¹³⁹ The five sense consciousnesses include the first type of vikalpa but not the other two.¹⁴⁰ This is why one says that they are free from vikalpa, in the same way that when a horse has only one foot, one says that it does not have any feet. “Vikalpa by definition” is vitarka, which we shall study in the chapter on the mental states (ii.33). As for the other two vikalpas:

33c-d. They are dispersed mental prajñā, mental memory whatever it may be.

Mental prajñā, that is, the discernment of the dharmas associated with the mental consciousness, but dispersed, that is to say, not
concentrated, not in the state of absorption (viii.1), is either *vikalpa* of examination or by definition. All mental memory, concentrated or not concentrated, is *vikalpa* of remembering.\textsuperscript{141}

***

How many *dhātus* "have an object," that is to say, are the subject of consciousness?

34a-b. The seven *dhātus* which are mind have an object.\textsuperscript{142}

Only the *dhātus* of visual, auditory, olfactory, taste, touch, and mental consciousness have an object, because they always grasp their spheres.

34b. And also one part of the *dharmadhātu*.

That part which consists of the *dharmas* associated with the mind (ii.23). The other *dhātus*, namely the ten material *dhātus* and the part of the *dharmadhātu* which is not associated with the mind (ii.35), do not have an object.

***

How many *dhātus* are non-appropriated? How many are appropriated?

34c. Nine are non-appropriated.

What are these nine? The seven that have been mentioned which have an object, together with one-half of the eighth.

34c. The eight that have been mentioned, and sound.

These nine are never appropriated: the seven *dhātus* of mind (i.16c), the *dharmadhātu* (i.15c), and sound are never appropriated.

34d. The other nine are of two types.

They are sometimes appropriated, sometimes non-appropriated.
1. The five organs of sense consciousness (caksurdhātu, etc.), of the present time, are appropriated. They are not appropriated in the future and in the past.

Four objects,—visible matter, odor, taste, and tangible things,—are appropriated when they are present, when they are an integral part of the organs. Every other visible matter, every other odor, every other taste, and every other tangible is not appropriated: for example, the physical matter,—color and shape,—of hair, body hair, nails and teeth,—with the exception of their roots, which are bound to the body or to the organ of touch; color and shape of excrement, urine, saliva, mucus, blood, etc.; the color and shape of earth, water, fire, etc.

2. What is the meaning of the expression “appropriated?” That which the mind and the mental states grasp and appropriate to themselves in the quality of a support is called “appropriated.” Organic matter, that is to say matter which constitutes the five organs of consciousness, as well as matter not separable from organic matter, is “appropriated,” is “made one’s own,” by the mind: this results from the fact that, in the case of well-being or illness, there is a reciprocal reaction between the mind and this matter. Matter that the Abhidharma calls “appropriated,” is called in common language, sacetanā or sensitive matter.\textsuperscript{143}

***

How many \textit{dhatu} are primary matter, or the great, primary elements? How many are secondary matter, matter derived from the primary elements?\textsuperscript{144}

35a. The tangible is of two types.

Tangibles are (1) the four primary elements, solidity, fluidity, heat, and motion (i.12); and (2) sevenfold secondary matter, the soft, the hard, etc. (i.10d).

35b. The other nine material \textit{dhatu} are solely secondary matter.
The other material dhātus, the five organs and the objects of the first four organs, are solely secondary matter.

35c. As is the part of the dharmadhātu which is material.\textsuperscript{145}

The same for avijñapti (i.11), which forms part of the dharmadhātu (i.15c-d).

The dhātus of mind (i.16c) are neither primary matter nor secondary matter; the same for the dharmadhātu, with the exception of avijñapti.

i. According to the Bhadanta Buddhadeva, the ten āyatanas, that is, the five organs of consciousness and their objects, are solely primary matter.\textsuperscript{146}

An inadmissible opinion. The Sutra teaches, in a limited manner, that there are four primary elements, and it defines them in a limited manner as being solidity, fluidity, etc., (i.12d). Now solidity, fluidity, etc., are tangibles and solely tangibles: solidity is not perceived by the organ of sight. Furthermore, each organ attains to the secondary matter which is appropriate to it: color is not perceived by the organ of touch.\textsuperscript{147}

Further, that the tangible is primary matter and secondary matter, and that the nine other materials āyatanas are solely secondary matter, results from the same words of the Sūtra: "Oh Bhikṣus, the eye, the internal source of consciousness (i.39), a subtle matter derived from the primary elements, material sources, invisible, capable of being struck," and so on with respect to the four other material organs which are described in the same terms. With respect to the first four objects: "The visible matter is an external sources of consciousness, deriving from the primary elements, material, visible, capable of being struck." The same with respect to odor and taste. But, with respect to the tangible: "Tangibles are an external source of consciousness, the four primary elements and matter deriving from the four primary elements. . . ."

ii. One can maintain that the five organs are primary matter, for the Sūtra (Samyukta, 11.1) says: "Everything that is in the eye, a ball of flesh, is solid, resistant . . ."
Reply. Here the Sūtra refers to the ball of flesh which is not separable from the organ of sight, and not to the organ itself.

So be it. But, according to the Garbhāvakrāntisūtra (note 120) "a person is the six dhātus," the primary element of earth, the primary element of water, the primary element of fire, the primary element of wind, the space element and the vijñāna element. Thus, in the embryonic state, the body is made up of primary matter, not secondary matter.

No. For in this first phrase, "a person is the six dhātus," the Sūtra means to describe the essence of a person, and it does not pretend to give an exhaustive definition. In fact, the Sūtra then says that a person is the six points of support of the mental dharma called contact (ii.24), that is to say, the six organs. Further, to take this definition literally: "a person is the six dhātus," one would infer the non-existence of the mental states (caittra, ii.24, 34), for the mental states are not included within vijñānadhātu, which is the mind.

Would one maintain that the mental states are the mind, and as a consequence are included within vijñānadhātu?

One cannot, for the Sūtra says "Sensation and ideas are dharmas which are mental states, dharmas associated with the mind, having the mind for their point of support;" and the Sūtra speaks of a "mind possessing desire;" thus desire, which is a mental state, is not the mind (vii.lld).

It is thus proven that our definition (i.35a-c) is correct.

***

How many dhātus are agglomerations? How many are not agglomerations?

35d. The ten material dhātus are agglomerations.

The five organs of sense consciousness, and their objects, are agglomerations of atoms (ii.22).
Among the eighteen *dhātuḥ*, how many cut, and how many are cut; how many burn, and how many are burned; and how many weigh, and how many are weighed?

36e. Four external *dhātuḥ* cut, are cut;

Visible matter, smell, taste and tangible cut, when they bear the name of axe, etc.; they are cut, when they bear the name of wood, etc.

What is the *dharma* that is called "to cut?"

To cut is to produce the sectioning of the process of an agglomeration the nature of which is to continue itself in an uninterrupted series. The axe cuts a piece of wood which is a series, and makes of it two series which exist and which develop separately.

The organs cannot be cut off. For example, when all of the parts of the organ of touch or the body are cut off, they are not, for all this, multiple: the members which have been cut, that is to say, separated from the trunk, do not possess touch.

The organs themselves do not cut, by reason of their translucidity, like the sparkle of a jewel.

36b. The same are burned and weighed.

The same holds for being burned and weigh as for cutting off and being cut off. Four external *dhātuḥ* alone are burned. They weigh, for example, when they constitute a scales. Not the organs, by reason of their translucidity, like the sparkle of a jewel.

Sound does not cut off, is not cut off, is not burned, and does not weigh, for it does not exist in a series.

36c-d. There is no agreement with respect to that which is burned and weighed.¹⁵²

There is no agreement with respect to what burns and what is weighed. According to some, the same four external *dhātuḥ* burn and are weighed. According to others, only the primary element of fire burns, when it manifests its own manner of being in the flame; only weight, which is one type of secondary matter (i.10d), is weighed: lightweight things, light, etc., where nevertheless *rupa* manifests its
own manner of being, are not weighed.

***

Among the eighteen dhātus, how many are fruition, accumulation, or outflowing? How many are conjoined with material substances? And how many are momentary?

37a. Five internal dhātus are of fruition and accumulation.

i. Definitions.

1. Vipākaja, “of fruition,” or literally, “arisen from fruition” instead of “arisen from the cause of fruition” (vipākahetuja, ii.54), by omission of the middle word, the same way that one says “ox-cart” for “ox-drawn cart.”

Or else, in the expression vipākaja, “arisen from vipāka,” the word vipāka designates not the fruition, but the ripened action, the action arriving at the time period when it gives forth its fruit. That which arises from ripened action, namely the fruit of retribution, is called “arisen from vipāka.” The fruit is furthermore also called vipāka, because it is cooked (=done).

Or else the expression vipākaja, “arisen from fruition,” signifies “arisen from the causes of fruition,” but one should not say that the word “cause” is omitted. In fact, a cause is often designated by the name of its effect, the same way that an effect is often designated by the name of its cause: “The present six organs are past action” (Ekottara, p. 9a7; Sānāyutta, ii.65, iv.132; below ii.28).

2. Aupacayika, “of accumulation,” that is to say “that which is accumulated nearby” through certain foods (iii.39), certain actions (bathing, etc.), certain sleep, or certain absorptions (iv.6c). According to one opinion, chastity is also a cause of accumulation; but in reality, chastity causes there to be no diminution; it is not a cause of accumulation.

Matter “of accumulation” protects the matter “of retribution” as a wall does, by surrounding it.

3. Naisyandika, “of outflowing,” that is to say, nisiyandaphala
(ii.57), "that which is produced by a cause similar to its effect."

ii. Five organs or internal dhātus, with the exclusion of the mental organ, are of fruition and accumulation. They are not outflowing, for they are outflowing only when they are fruition and accumulation.\footnote{156}

iii. Sound is accumulation, for the voice is in a weak state when the body is emaciated.\footnote{157} It is also outflowing. It is not a cause of fruition, for the voice proceeds from a desire for action (chanda, ii.24).\footnote{158}

37b. Sound is not of retribution.

Objection. The Prajñaptisāstra says, "This mark of the Mahāpuruṣa (iii.98) which is called 'the voice of Brahmā' results from the perfect practice of abstaining from harmful language (iv.76c)."\footnote{159} Thus sound is fruition.

Etiology of sound. First opinion. One should distinguish three moments: (1) action; (2) primary elements arising from this action which are of retribution; and (3) sound, which arises from the primary elements.

Second opinion. One should distinguish five moments: (1) action; (2) primary elements of retribution; (3) primary elements of accumulation; (4) primary elements of outflowing; and (5) sound. Thus sound is not retribution, because it does not immediately proceed from action.

Objection. To reason thus, bodily sensation (ii.7), not being produced immediately through action but being immediately produced through the primary elements arisen from action (iii.32), will not be retribution.

Reply. But sensation is not provoked by a desire to experience such a sensation, whereas sound is provoked by a desire to speak. If it were provoked by desire, it would not be retribution.

37c-d. The eight dhātus free from resistance are of outflowing and also of fruition.

iv. The eight dhātus not capable of resistance (i.29b), namely the seven dhātus of mind and the dharmadhātu, are outflowing and retribution; they are outflowing when they are produced by similar causes (sabhāgabētu, ii.52) or universal causes (sarvatragabētu, ii.54),
retribution when they are produced by retributive causes (*vipākāhētu*, ii.54c). They are not accumulation, because the non-material *dhātus* have nothing in common with agglomeration.

38a. The others are of three types.

v. The other *dhātus*, that is, the four not mentioned above,—visible matter, smell, taste, and tangibles,—are of three types: retribution, when they are not separable from organic matter (i.34); accumulation and outflowing.

***

38a. A single *dhātu* "is real."

The unconditioned, being permanent, is a "real thing." The unconditioned forms part of the *dharmadhātu* (i.15); the *dharmadhātu* is thus the single *dhātu* which "contains a real thing."

***

38b. The last three *dhātus* are momentary.

The last three *dhātus* are the mental organ, the object of mental consciousness, and the mental consciousness.

In the *dharmas* of the moment called *duḥkhe dharmaṇānaksānti*, which is the first moment in the Path of Seeing the Truths (vi.25) and as a consequence the first moment which is pure, these three *dhātus* are "not produced by a cause similar to its effect" (*sabhāgāhētu*, ii.52), for, in the series which constitutes the person under consideration, a pure *dharma* has not yet appeared which would be a "cause similar to its effect" of *duḥkhe dharmaṇānaksānti*. This is why these three *dhātus* are called momentary, because, for a moment, they do not proceed from this type of cause.

In the group under consideration, the mind to which the *kṣānti* is associated is *manodhātu* and *manovijñānadhātu*; the *dharmas* which coexist with this mind are *dharmadhātu*: pure discipline (iv.13c);
sensations, ideas, volition and other mental states; plus the prāptis (ii.36) and the samāskṛtalakṣāṇas (ii.46).

***

There is a problem to be examined. Does he who obtains possession of the organ of sight where he had previously been lacking it, also obtain possession of the visual consciousness? And does he who obtains possession of the visual consciousness where he was previously lacking it, also obtain possession of the organ of sight?

38c-d. He can obtain the organ of sight and the visual consciousness either separately or together.¹⁶⁰

1. A person lacking the organ of sight takes possession of it without at the same time taking possession of the visual consciousness: (a) a being of Kāmadhātu whose organs progressively appear (ii.14), for, before the organ of sight appears within him, he is already in possession of his past and future visual consciousness (in the intermediary state, iii.14; on “possession,” ii.36b); and (b) a being who dies in Ārūpyadhātu and who is reborn in the heavens of the three higher Dhyānas, where the visual consciousness is lacking although the organ of sight exists there (viii.13a-c).

2. A person devoid of the visual consciousness takes possession of it without at the same time taking possession of the organ of sight: (a) a being born in a heaven of the three higher Dhyānas can manifest a visual consciousness of the sphere of the First Dhyāna (viii.13): he does not take possession of the organ of sight which he possesses already; and (b) a being who falls from one of the three higher Dhyānas and who is reborn in a lower sphere.

3. A person devoid of the two takes possession of the two: a being who falls from Ārūpyadhātu and who is reborn either in Kāmadhātu or in the First Dhyāna (world of Brahmā).

We have up to now understood the term that the stanza employs, “to obtain” (lābha) in the sense of pratilambha, taking possession; but one can also understand it in the sense of prāpti, possession (ii.36b).
The question is thus posed: Is one who is endowed with the visual organ also endowed with visual consciousness? Four cases are possible:

(a) a being born in a heaven of the three higher Dhyānas necessarily possesses the visual organ, but possesses only the visual consciousness if he manifests a visual consciousness of the sphere of the First Dhyāna;

(b) a being in Kāmadhātu who has not taken possession of the visual organ in the course of his embryonic life or who becomes blind: he remains in possession of the visual consciousness acquired in the course of his intermediary existence (iii.14) or at conception;

(c) a being in Kāmadhātu who has taken possession of the organ of sight and who has not lost it, a being born in the heaven of the First Dhyāna, a being born in a heaven of the three higher Dhyāna who manifests a visual consciousness of the sphere of the First Dhyānas: these three categories of beings are endowed with both the organ and the consciousness;

(d) all other beings,—beings of Ārūpyadhātu,—are devoid of both the organ of sight and visual consciousness.

The taking possession of and possession, simultaneous or not, of the organ of sight and visible matter, of the visual consciousness and visible matter, of the organ of hearing and sound, etc., shall be defined, as fitting, in each case.

***

How many are external?

39a. Twelve are personal

What are these twelve?

39b. With the exception of visible matter, etc.¹⁶¹

 Twelve dhātus are personal, the six organs and the six consciousnesses; six dhātus are external, the six objects of consciousness, visible matter, etc.
But how can one speak of personal dhātus, or of external dhātus, since there is no ātman?

The mind is the object of the idea of self, the mind is what persons falsely grasp for their self. This mind receives, metaphorically, the name of ātman. Compare, for example, these two line of Scripture: "The sage obtains heaven, by means of a well subdued ātman," and "It is good to subdue the mind; the subdued mind brings happiness." 162 Now the organs and the consciousnesses are close to the mind to which one gives the name of ātman: they are in fact the point of support of them; then one qualifies them as "internal," or "personal," whereas the visible and the other objects of the consciousness are held to be "external."

But can one say that the six consciousnesses are the point of support of the mind?

They are the point of support of the mind only when, having perished, they acquire the quality of mental organ (i.17). Thus they are not personal.

This objection is worthless. When the consciousnesses, having perished, becomes the point of support of the mind, it is indeed these consciousnesses themselves which become the point of support; thus, before becoming a point of support, they are not foreign to the quality of point of support. They are thus personal by reason of their future quality of point of support. If it were otherwise, the mental organ would be solely past; it would be neither present nor future. Now it is well understood that the eighteen dhātus belong to the three time periods. Moreover, if the present or future consciousness does not have the characteristic of manodhātu, it is absurd to attribute this characteristic to it once it is past. For a dharma does not change its characteristics in the course of time (v.25; Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 109a18, p. 200b2).

***

Among the eighteen dhātus, how many are sabhāga, "active" or "in mutual assistance?" How many are tatsabhāga, "analogous to sabhāga?"
39b-c. The dhātu called dharma is sabhāga.\(^{163}\)

An object of consciousness is qualified as sabhāga when the consciousness which constitutes its proper sphere arises or is destined to arise with respect to it.

Now there is no dharma with respect to which an unlimited mental consciousness has not arisen or is destined to arise. All the Saints in fact necessarily produce the thought "All dharma are impersonal" (vii.13a). It is true that this thought bears neither on itself, nor on the dharma which are coexistent with it (sahabhū, ii.50b); but this thought and the dharma which are coexistent with it are the object of a second moment of a thought of universal impersonality; all the dharma are thus included within the object of these two moments of thought (vii.18c-d). Therefore the dharma-dhatu, the proper object of the mental consciousness, is, in its totality, sabhāga, active as an object.

39c-d. The other dhātus are also tatsabhāga.

The word "also" shows that they are both sabhāga and tatsabhāga. When are they tatsabhāga?

39d. When they do not do their proper work.

This implies the definition: they are sabhāga when they do their proper work.

1. The organ of sight which has seen, does now see or shall see visible matter, is termed sabhāga. The same with respect to the other organs, by indicating for each its own object and its own operation (karitra, ii.58).

2. According to the Vaibhāṣikas of Kaśmīr, the organ of sight is tatsabhāga in four cases: the organ of sight which has perished, which is now perishing, which will perish without having seen, and the organ of sight destined to arise (anutpattidharman, v.24). According to the Westerners, the organ of sight not destined to arise constitutes two categories depending on whether it is accompanied by visual consciousness or not.

The same with respect to the other organs of sense consciousness.
The mental organ is *tatsabhāga* only when it is not destined to arise; in fact, when it arises, it always has an object.  

3. Visible matter, which has been seen, which is now seen, or which will be seen by the organ of sight, is *sabhāga*.

It is *tatsabhāga* when it has perished, is now perishing or shall perish without having seen, or when it is not destined to arise.

The same with respect to the other objects of sense consciousness by indicating for each organ the function which corresponds to it.

4. The organ of sight which is *sabhāga* or *tatsabhāga* is such for everyone, for the person to whom this organ belongs, and for other persons. The same for the other organs. But a certain visible thing is *sabhāga* for the person who sees it. In fact, the visible matter that a person sees can be seen by many, for example, the moon, a stage performance, or a contest, whereas two persons do not see by means of the same organ. Consequently, since one organ of sight is not general, it is though relationship with one person that it will be qualified as *sabhāga* or *tatsabhāga*; the organ of sight is *sabhāga* when he sees a visible thing, even though he has not seen, does not now see, or will not see another visible thing. On the contrary, the visible thing is general: one would qualify it as *sabhāga* and *tatsabhāga* by putting oneself in the point of view of numerous persons: it is *sabhāga* in relation to those who see it, *tatsabhāga* in relation to those who do not see it.

The same holds for sounds, smells, tastes, and the tangible things as for visible matter.

Granted, one would say, with respect to sound which, like visible matter, is perceived at a distance and can be perceived by many persons (i.43c-d). But smells, tastes and tangibles are not perceived at a distance, and are perceived only when they enter into a close relationship with the organ: thus the smell that one person perceives is not perceived by another. Thus these objects are not general, and we should compare them to the organs with respect to the qualification of *sabhāga*, or *tatsabhāga*: when they are *sabhāga* to one person, they are *sabhāga* to everyone.

We would answer: We regard these objects as general, because they
can be so. It can be the case that smell—the same atomic group of a smell—which produces a consciousness of smell in one person, is also perceived by another. Now this does not hold for the organs. Consequently smells, tastes and tangibles should be compared to visible matter and sounds.

5. The six consciousnesses are *sabha‘ga* or *tatsabha‘ga* depending on whether they are destined to arise, or are not destined to arise, like the mental organ.

6. What is the meaning of the expressions *sabha‘ga* and *tatsabha‘ga*? *Bhaga* signifies the mutual services that the organs, their objects and their consciousnesses, render one another in their quality of point of support of the consciousness, of objects of consciousness, of consciousness supporting itself on the organ. Or else *bhaga* signifies possession of the activity or function; the function of the organ is to see, etc.; the function of the object is to be the subject of the consciousness (*visaya* or *alambana*), of being seen, etc.; the function of consciousness is to be the subject of consciousness, to be “the discerner.”

The dharmas which possess (sa-) *bhaga* are termed *sabha‘ga*, that is to say, the organs, objects and consciousnesses which are endowed with their proper function, or else the organs, objects and consciousness which render one another mutual service. Or else the *dharmas* which have “contact” for their effect, that is, the encounter of the eye, visible matter, the visual consciousness, etc., (iii.22), are *sabha‘ga*.

That which is not *sabha‘ga*, but is nevertheless analogous to *sabha‘ga*, is called *tatsabha‘ga*, that is to say “analogous (sabha‘ga) to that (tat),” that is, “analogous to sabha‘ga.”

***

How many *dhatus* can be abandoned (*bā*, v.28, vi.1) by Seeing the Truths, in other words, by the Path of Seeing or through Seeing (*darsana*, vi.25b)? How many can be abandoned by Meditation or repeated consideration of the Truths, in other words, by the Path of Meditation or by Meditation? How many *dhatus* are not to be
abandoned, or cannot be abandoned?

40a. Ten and five are abandoned through Meditation.

i. The ten material dhātus, organs and objects, and the five sense consciousnesses, are abandoned through Meditation.

40b. The last three are of three types.¹⁶⁸

From the point of view of abandoning them, the last three dhātus,—the mental organ, the mental object, and the mental consciousness,—include three types of dharmas:

(a) Eighty-eight anusayas (v.4), with their coexistent dharmas—whether these coexistents be of the samprayukta class (ii.24) or of the viprayukta class (ii.46, i.e., laksānas and anulaksānas)—are abandoned by Seeing, with the prāptis (ii.36) of the said anusayas and the said coexistents, with their following {anuprdptis and laksanas} of the said prāptis.

(b) The other impure dharmas are abandoned by Meditation: 1. ten anusayas (v.5) with the coexistents, prāptis, etc.; 2. the good-impure (kuśalasāsrava) and undefiled-neutral (anivṛtāvyākṛta, ii.66) samskāras; 3. the impure avijnapti with its following (iv.13).

(c) The pure dharmas, that is, unconditioned things and the dharmas which form part of the Path, are not to be abandoned.

ii. Objection. [The Vatsiputriyas believe that,] not only the eighty-eight anusayas, but also some other dharmas are abandoned by Seeing. (1) The quality of Prthagjana¹⁶⁹ is a dharma which is undefiled-neutral, and yet you place it among the dharmas abandoned by Meditation; (2) bad bodily or vocal action, retributed by a bad realm of rebirth, is "visible matter," and yet you also place it within the second category. Now the quality of Prthagjana and the action which causes a bad realm of rebirth are in contradiction with the Path of Seeing the Truths. Thus, according to us, both are abandoned through Seeing.

In order to refute the thesis [of the Vatsiputriyas,] the author says in summary:

40c. Neither the "undefiled," nor matter, are abandoned by Seeing the Truths.¹⁷⁰
1. Nothing that is defiled, that is bad, nor defiled-neutral (nirrtavyākṛta, ii.66), and nothing that is material, can be abandoned by the Seeing of the Truths.

Now the quality of Prthagjana is not defiled: it can belong to a person who has cut off the good roots (iv.79), but it can also belong to a person who is "detached."

Bodily action and vocal action are rūpa.

The quality of Prthagjana and bodily or vocal action are not contradictory to the Truths,—for the former 1. is not defiled by the defilements, and 2. is not a consciousness, a dharma which has an object. Thus neither are abandoned by the Seeing of the Truths.

Further, if the quality of Prthagjana were abandoned by Seeing, it would follow that it would exist in the first state of the Path of Seeing—which is incorrect. 171

40d. Nor that which has arisen from the non-sixth.

2. "Sixth" signifies the mental organ. "Arisen from the non-sixth" is what has arisen from an organ different from the sixth organ, that is to say, what has arisen from the five organs, the organ of sight, etc. This then refers to the visual consciousness, etc. These are also not abandoned by Seeing.

***

Among the eighteen dhātus, how many are "view," how many are not "view?"

41a. The organ of sight and part of the dharmadhātu are view.

How many [parts are there to the dharmadhātu]?

41b. Eight parts.

What are these eight parts of the dharmadhātu?

(1-5) The five false views, of which the first is belief in a self and mine; they will be defined in the Chapter on the Defilements (v.7). (6)
Worldly correct views, that is to say, prajñā (ii.24) associated with the mental consciousness, good but impure. (7-8) And the view of the Śaikṣas and the Aśaikṣas, that is to say, pure view which is proper to the Arhat (vi.50).

These eight dharmas, which form part of the dharmadhātu, are "views."

Comparison. In the manner in which visible matter is seen at night and in the daytime, on a cloudy day and on a clear day, in this same way the dharmas are seen (1) by defiled worldly views,—five false opinions; (2) by non-defiled worldly view or worldly correct views; (3) by Śaikṣi views; and (4) by non-Aśaikṣi views.

***

Why are correct worldly views understood solely as prajñā associated with the mental consciousness?

41c-d. The prajñā which arises with the five sense consciousnesses, is not "view" because it is not judgment after deliberation.¹⁷²

"View" is judgment that preceeds from the consideration of an object (upadhyāna, viii.1). Now the prajñā which arises with the five sense consciousnesses does not present this characteristic. Thus it is not "view." For the same reason, it happens that prajñā, even though mental, defiled or non-defiled, is not "view" when it is purely intuitive (vii.1).

***

But, one would say, the organ of sight does not possess "judgment which proceeds from a consideration of the object." How do you then say that it is "view?"

"View" is understood here as the seeing of visible matter.

42a. It is the organ of sight which sees visible matter.
i. A Vijñānavādin is a master who attributes sight, not to the organ of sight, but to visual consciousness. He says: If an organ sees, then the organ of a person occupied with hearing or touch consciousness, would see (i.6c-d).

42b. When it is sabhāga.

We do not say that all organs of sight see. The organ of sight sees when it is sabhāga (i.39), that is to say, when it is conjoined with visual consciousness.

42c. It is not the consciousness of which this organ is the point of support.

But then, that which sees is indeed the consciousness which is supported by the organ of sight.

42d. For obscured visible matter is not seen. Such is the opinion of the Vaibhaṣikas.¹⁷³

No, for visible matter, obscured by a wall or any other screen, is not seen. Now the consciousness is non-material, not capable of being repulsed (apratigha, i.29b). Thus, if the visual consciousness were to see, it would see even the visible matter obscured by a screen.

[The Vijñānavādin replies.] The visual consciousness does not arise with respect to obscured visible matter; not arising with respect to them, it does not see them.

But why does it not arise with respect to these visible things? For us, the Vaibhaṣikas, who attribute seeing to the organ and who admit that the organ, being sapratigha or capable of being arrested, does not exercise its activity with respect to obscured visible matter, we could easily explain how the visual consciousness does not arise with respect to obscured visible matter: the consciousness, in fact, exercises its activity on the same object that its point of support does. But if you believe that the consciousness sees, how would you explain the fact that it does not arise with respect to obscured visible matter?

2. The author takes into consideration the opinion of the Vijñānavādin and responds to the last reply of the Vaibhaṣika.
Do you maintain that an organ of sight sees its object by entering into a close relationship with its object, in the manner in which the organ of touch feels a tangible object (i.43c-d)? In this hypothesis I would understand that the organ of sight, being capable of being arrested, does not see obscured visible matter. But you maintain that the organ of sight sees at a distance: you do not then have the right to say that, being capable of being arrested, it does not see obscured visible matter. Moreover, one sees obscured visible matter through a glass, a cloud, a crystal and water: how would you explain this fact? I would say then that the visual consciousness sees, it arises with respect to obscured visible matter when the screen does not form an obstacle to light; it does not arise in the contrary case. 174

3. The Vaibhāṣikas make an appeal to Scripture. The Sūtra says, "Having seen visible matter through the organ of sight." 175 Thus the organ sees, not the visual consciousness.

We would reply that the Sūtra intends to say, "Having seen visible matter by means of the organ of sight as point of support." In fact, the same Sūtra says, "Having discerned the dharmas through the mental organ": now this organ, being past (i.17), does not discern; it is through the mental consciousness that one discerns; therefore, if the text says "through the mental organ," it means "by supporting itself on the mental organ, the point of support of mental consciousness." The same for sight and the organ of sight.

One can also admit that the Sūtra attributes to the point of support, to the organ, the action which belongs to that which grasps this point of support, that is to say, to the consciousness. It is said in the world "the benches cry out," whereas the benches are actually the persons seated on the benches.

This way of speaking is common to Scripture. We read that "agreeable and disagreeable visible matter is discerned by the organ of sight." Now you do not maintain that the organ of sight discerns. You attribute discernment to the consciousness of which organ of sight is the point of support.

The Sūtra (Saṁyuktā, TD 2, p. 64a10) also says "The organ of sight, Oh Brahmin, is the gate of the sight of visible matter." This text
proves that the visual consciousness sees by this gate which is the
organ of sight. You would not maintain that "gate" signifies "sight,"
for it would be absurd to say "The organ of sight is the sight of the
sight of visible matter."

4. [Objection of the Vaibhāṣikas.] If the visual consciousness sees,
what it is that discerns (i.48a)?

What is the difference between the two functions of seeing and
discerning which would account for a single dharma not seeing and
discerning at one and the same time? Is it not admitted that a certain
type of praśna (darsanātmika, vii.1) sees and comprehends? 176 In this
same way a certain consciousness, the visual consciousness, sees and
discerns. There is here only a single function designated by two names.

5. [Certain followers of the thesis "The visual consciousness sees,"
namely the Vatsīputrīyas, object:] If the organ of sight sees, what is
then the separately existing action of seeing that you attribute to this
organ, the agent of this action?

The objection cannot be made. In the same way that you would
have it that the consciousness discerns, without admitting any differ­
ence between the agent and the action, in that same way we hold that
an organ sees.

6. According to another opinion, [that of the Dharmaguptakas,] it
is the visual consciousness which sees; but, as the organ of sight is the
point of support of this consciousness, one says that it sees, the same
way one says that the bell rings, because it is the point of support of
the sound.

But, according to this principle, one should also say that the organ
of sight discerns, for it is the point of support of the visual
consciousness.

No. For in the world one agrees to give the name of "seeing" to the
visual consciousness; in fact, when this consciousness is produced, one
says "The color is seen;" one does not say that the color is discerned.
And the Vībhāṣā (TD 27, p. 489c19) confirms: "One terms 'seen' that
which is attained by the organ of sight, that which falls within its line
of vision and is perceived by the visual consciousness." One says then
in the world that the organ of sight sees, because it is the point of
support of the visual consciousness which sees; one does not say that it discerns, because the function attributed to the visual consciousness is seeing and not discernment. On the other hand, when one says that consciousness discerns, one does not mean that it discerns to the extent that it would be the point of support of a certain discernment, as one understands that the organ of sight sees because it is the point of support of the visual consciousness. One means that the consciousness discerns by itself, that it is in and of itself discernment, in the same way that one says that the sun creates the day.177

7. Opinion of the Sautrāntikas. What an empty discussion! The Sūtra teaches: "By reason of the organ of sight and of visible matter there arises the visual consciousness": there is not there either an organ that sees, or visible matter that is seen; there is not there any action of seeing, nor any agent that sees; this is only a play of cause and effect. In the light of practice, one speaks, metaphorically, of this process: "The eye sees, and the consciousness discerns." But one should not cling to these metaphors. The Blessed One has said that one should not take them in the manner of popular speech, that one should not seriously grasp an expression in use in the world.178

8. According to the system of the Vaibhāṣikas of Kaśmīr, the organ of sight sees, the organ of hearing hears, the organ of smell smells, the organ of taste tastes, the organ of touch touches, and the mental organ discerns.

***

Is visible matter seen by one eye or by both eyes?

43a-b. Visible matter is seen by the two eyes also, as the clarity of sight demonstrates.179

[There is no fixed rule: one sees by one eye; one also sees by two eyes.]

The Ābhidhārmikas say: "Seen also by the two eyes; the two eyes being open, sight is clearer." Furthermore,180 when one eye is covered and the other half closed, one perceives two moons; but not when one
completely closes or half closes that which was open, or when one opens or completely closes that which has been half closed.

One should not conclude that the visual consciousness is twofold from the fact that its point of support is twofold, for the consciousness is not material like rūpa; not having a mass it is not situated in a place.

***

We have said that the organ of sight sees, that the organs of hearing, smell, taste, and touch each perceive their objects; and that the mental organ discerns. Do these organs attain their object, [do they enter into a close physical relationship with their object]?

43c. The organ of sight, the organ of hearing, and the mental organ know their object without attaining it.181

i.1. The organ of sight sees visible matter at a distance: it does not see the eye-salve placed on the eye; the organ of hearing hears distant sounds.

The mental organ, being non-material, does not enter into a close physical relationship with its object.

2. If the organs of sight and hearing must necessarily enter into a close relationship with their object, then ascetics in dhyāna would not attain divine sight or divine hearing, in the same way that they do not attain a divine sense of smell (vii.42).

[Objection.] If the organ of sight sees an object with which it is not in a close relationship, why does it not see visible matter which is too distant or obscured?182

[Reply.] Why does a magnet not attract all iron? Moreover, the same difficulty remains even if you suppose that the organ enters into a close relationship with the object: why does the organ of sight not see the eye salve, the brush, and all the objects with which it is in close relationship? Or else, let us say that the same rule applies to the organ of sight and to the organs of smell and taste: the organ of smell senses only the smell with which it is in close relationship, but it does not sense the odor which constitutes the organ itself; in the same way, the
organ of sight sees only certain distant visible matter, but it does not see all distant visible matter.

According to certain masters, from the fact that one hears noise from the interior of the ear, one can conclude that the organ of hearing hears the sound with which it is in close relationship, as it also hears distant sound.\(^{183}\)

3. The other three organs, smell, taste, touch, perceive an object with which they are in close relationship. For smell, this results from the fact that in-breathing is necessary to the perception of the smell.\(^{184}\)

43d. For the other three organs, the opposite.

ii. What should one understand by the expression "to attain" (to enter into a close relationship)? What does one mean when one says that the nose "attains" its object, knows its object "after having attained it?"

To attain is "to arise in nirantarata, in a state of non-separation."\(^{185}\) The object, which renews itself from moment to moment (iv.2c-d), is found to be arisen in nirantarata with the organ and vice versa.

[What does nirantarata mean? According to the Bhadanta, immediate juxtaposition, absence of interval; according to the Vaibhāṣikas, immediate vicinity, absence of an interposed body].\(^{186}\)

iii. The question is therefore posed whether the atoms do or do not touch one another.

1. The Vaibhāṣikas of Kaśmīr (Vibhāṣā TD 27, p. 683a24) say that atoms do not touch one another; (1) if atoms touch one another in their totality, things, that is to say, the different atoms, would "mix with one another," that is, they would only occupy one place; and (2) if atoms touched each other in one spot, they would thus have parts: and atoms do not have any parts.\(^{187}\)

But, if there is no contact among the atoms, how is sound produced?

For the very reason that there is no contact, sound is possible: if atoms were to touch one another, a hand in collision with a hand would dissolve into it, a rock in collision with another rock would
dissolve into it, as gum dissolves into gum. And sound would not be produced.

But if atoms do not touch one another, why does an agglomeration of atoms not fall to pieces when it is struck?

Because the wind element holds it together. A certain wind element has dispersion for its function, for example the wind of the period of the destruction of the world; a certain wind element has concentration for its function, for example the wind at the period of creation (iii.91, 100). 189

2. [The Vaibhaṣikas continue the presentation of their doctrine].

One says that three organs attain their object, because their object is in a state of non-seperation from them. What does non-seperation consist of?

It consists of the fact that there is nothing which is in the interval between the two. This is also what is meant by "to attain."

Furthermore, as agglomerations have parts, there is no difficulty in agglomerations touching one another. And, from this point of view the definitions of the Vibhaṣā (TD 27, p. 684all; see also p. 380a19) are justified: "Does a thing-in-contact arise having for its cause a thing-in-contact, or does it arise having for its cause a thing-outside-of-contact?" Same question with respect to a thing-outside-of-contact.

"One cannot reply in an absolute manner. Sometimes a thing-outside-of-contact arises from a thing-in-contact, as when a thing-in-contact falls to pieces. Sometimes a thing-in-contact arises from a thing-outside-of-contact, as when a thing-outside-of-contact comes together. Sometimes a thing-in-contact arises from a thing-outside-of-contact, as when agglomerations come together. And sometimes a thing-outside-of-contact arises from a thing-outside-of-contact, for example the particles of dust suspended in the void of a window."

The Bhadanta Vasumitra says: "If atoms touched one another, they would therefore endure two moments." 189

iv. Opinions of Vasubandhu. 1. The Bhadanta says: "There is not, in reality, any contact. One says, metaphorically, that atoms touch one another when they are juxtaposed without interval." (Quoted in Vibhaṣā, TD 27, p. 684a2; see note 189, end).
This opinion is the correct one. In fact, if atoms were to allow an interval between themselves, since this interval would be empty, what would hinder the progress of atoms into this interval? For it is admitted that atoms are impenetrable.

2. Agglomerations are not anything other than atoms. They are the same atoms which, in a state of aggregation, are a "thing-in-contact," in the same way that they are rūpa (i.13). It is thus absurd to deny that atoms touch one another, and yet to admit that agglomerations touch one another.

3. If you admit spatial division to the atom, then an atom certainly has parts, whether it enters into contact or not. If you deny it, why would the atom, even if it enters into contact, have parts?

***

Should we think that the organs solely grasp an object of their dimension,—if one believes that one sees suddenly extended objects, a mountain for example, it is through illusion, it is because one rapidly sees parts of a mountain: it is evidently thus when one sees the circle of fire delineated by an ember;—or else do the organs indifferently grasp an object of their dimension and of a different dimension?

44a-b. The three organs of which the organ of smell is the first, grasp an object of their dimension.

A given number of atoms of an organ, attaining the same number of atoms of an object, produce consciousness. This also holds for smell, taste, and touch.

But there is no rule for seeing and hearing. Sometimes the object is smaller than the organ, as when one sees the end of a hair; sometimes equal to the organ, as when one sees a grape; and sometimes larger than the organ, when, the eye being hardly open, one sees a mountain. The same for sound; one hears the buzzing of a mosquito, the noise of thunder, etc.

The question does not arise for the mental organ which is non-material.
(Here are some problems relating to the organs.)

i. How are atoms of the different organs arranged?

The atoms of the organ of sight are arranged on the pupil like the flower of the cumin, that is to say, on the surface; they are covered again by a membrane, of translucent color, which prevents them from dispersing. According to another opinion, they are arranged in depth, like a pill; being translucent, like crystal, they do not obscure one another.¹⁹⁴

The atoms of the organ of hearing are arranged in the interior of the bhūrja, that type of birch leaf which is found within the ear.

The atoms of the organ of smell are arranged within the interior of the nostril.

These first three organs from a garland.¹⁹⁵

The atoms of the organ of taste are arranged on the upper surface of the tongue in the form of a half-moon. In the middle of the tongue a space the dimension of the end of a hair is not occupied by the atoms of the organ. Such is the opinion expressed in Scripture.¹⁹⁶

The atoms of the organ of touch have the shape of the body.

The atoms of the female organ are like a drum. The atoms of the male organ are like a thumb.

ii. The atoms of the organ of sight can be sabhāga (i.39) in their totality; tatsabhāga in their totality; some sabhāga, others tatsabhāga. The same for the organs of hearing, smell and taste. But, it does not occur that the atoms of the organ of touch are all sabhāga; even when the body is enveloped in the flames of Pratapana hell (iii.59), an infinite number of atoms are tatsabhāga; for, says the School, the body would fall to pieces if all the atoms of touch were to work at the same time.

iii. It does not occur that consciousness is produced by one atom of
organ, or by one atom of object. In fact the five categories of consciousness have agglomerations for their support and their object.

It results from this that atoms are not perceived; they are thus "imperceptible". (Compare i.20a-b, iv.4).

***

The object of the first five consciousnesses is simultaneous with them; the object of the sixth consciousness is either earlier than it, simultaneous with it, or later than it; in other words, it is past, present, or future (i.23). Does the same hold for the point of support of the consciousness?

No, it does not.

Why is this?

44c. Relative to consciousness, the point of support of the sixth consciousness is past.

The sole point of support of the mental consciousness is the mental organ, this is, the consciousness which has just perished (i.17).

44d. The point of support of the first five is also simultaneous.

The point of support of the five consciousnesses is also simultaneous with them: that is, it is both earlier than, and simultaneous to the consciousness. In fact, the point of support of these consciousnesses is twofold: 1. the sense organ, organ of sight, etc., which is simultaneous with consciousness; and 2. the mental organ, which is past at the moment when the consciousness arises.

The five consciousnesses thus have two points of support.

One poses the question: Is that which is the point of support of the visual consciousness at the same time the "immediately antecedent and parallel cause" (samanantarapratyaya, ii.62) of this consciousness? Four cases: 1. the organ of sight, which is solely a point of support; 2. the totality of mental states, sensation, etc. (ii.24) which have just perished: they are solely the immediately antecedent cause; 3. the
consciousness which has just perished, or mental organ, which is at one and the same time a point of support and an immediately antecedent cause; and 4. the other dharmas are neither one nor the other.

The same for the consciousness of hearing, smell, taste and touch.

With respect to mental consciousness, one replies by speaking of the first term of the question: that which is the point of support of mental consciousness is always the parallel and immediately antecedent cause of this consciousness, but items that have perished are not its point of support.

***

Visual consciousness depends on the organ of sight and on visible matter. Why is the organ considered as the point of support of consciousness, to the exclusion of the object?

45a-b. The point of support of a consciousness is its organ, for consciousness changes according to the modality of the organ.\(^\text{197}\)

When the organ of sight is the object of attention (employment of eye salve, etc.); when it is injured by dust, etc.; when it is alert; when it is sluggish and weak, consciousness reproduces modality: it is accompanied by pleasure or by pain, it is alert or weak. The object, on the contrary, has no influence on the modality of consciousness. Consequently, it is the organ, and not the object, which is the point of support of consciousness (ii.2a-b).

***

Consciousness knows the object. Why is it designated by the name of its organ “eye consciousness” . . . “manas consciousness” . . . “dharma consciousness?”

45c-d. For this reason, and also because it is “its own,” it is the organ which gives its name to the consciousness.
The consciousness takes the name of an organ because the organ is its point of support.

Because the organ is "its own:" the organ of a certain person is the point of support of the visual consciousness of this person alone. Visible matter, on the contrary, is general, for a certain visible thing is perceived by both the visual consciousness and the mental consciousness, by one person and by another person. The same observation holds for the organs of hearing, smell, taste, and touch, and for their objects, sounds, smells, tastes, and tangibles.

We conclude that the consciousness is named according to its organ because the organ is its point of support, and because the organ is its own thing. But the same does not hold for its object. One says in the world "sound of the drum," and not "sound of the stick;" "sprout of the wheat," and not "sprout of the field."

***

A being is born in a certain stage of the world, in Kāmādhātu, in the First Dhyāna, etc.; he is of this stage, and his body is also of this stage, and he sees, by the organ of sight, visible matter. Do the body, the organ of sight, visible matter and consciousness belong to the same stage or to different stages?

All can belong to different stages.

i. When a being born in Kāmādhātu sees, by means of an organ of sight of his stage, visible matter of his stage, then body, organ, visible matter and consciousness are in the same stage.

When this being sees visible matter of his stage, by means of an organ of sight of the First Dhyāna, then the body and visible matter are of Kāmādhātu, but his organ and consciousness are of the First Dhyāna; if he sees visible matter of the First Dhyāna by means of the same organ, then only the body is in Kāmādhātu; the other three are of the First Dhyāna.

When this being sees visible matter of Kāmādhātu by means of an organ of sight of the Second Dhyāna, then the body and visible matter are in Kāmādhātu, the organ is in the Second Dhyāna, and conscious-
ness is in the First Dhyāna; if he sees, by the same organ, visible matter of the Second Dhyāna, then the body is in Kāmadrātu, the organ and visible matter are in the Second Dhyāna, and consciousness is in the First Dhyāna. (viii.13a-c).

One would explain in the same way these cases where a being born in Kāmadrātu sees, by the organ of sight of the Third or Fourth Dhyāna, visible matter of these same stages or of a lower stage.

ii. When a being in the First Dhyāna sees visible matter of his stage by means of an organ of sight of his stage, then body, organ, visible matter and consciousness are of the same stage; if he sees visible matter of a lower stage by the same organ, then the body, organ, and consciousness are of his stage, the First Dhyāna.

When this being sees visible matter of his stage by means of an organ of sight of the Second Dhyāna, then three are of his stage (First Dhyāna), but the organ is in the Second Dhyāna; if he sees, by the same organ, visible matter of Kāmadrātu, then the body and consciousness are of his stage (First Dhyāna), visible matter is in a lower stage, and the organ is in the Second Dhyāna; if he sees visible matter of the Second Dhyāna by the same organ, then the body and consciousness are of his stage (First Dhyāna), but the organ and the visible matter are in the Second Dhyāna.

One would explain in the same way these cases where a being in the First Dhyāna sees, by means of an organ of sight of the Third or the Fourth Dhyāna, visible matter of these stages or of a lower stage.

iii. According to these same principles, we can explain those cases where a being in the Second, Third or Fourth Dhyāna, sees, by means of an organ of sight of his stage or of a different stage, visible matter of his stage or of a different stage.

The rule is the following:

46a. The organ of sight is not inferior to the body.

The body, the organ of sight, and visible matter can belong to five stages: Kāmadrātu, and the Four Dhyānas.

The consciousness of sight is of two stages only: Kāmadrātu and the First Dhyāna (viii.13a-c).
Thus stated, the organs of sight which a certain being uses can be of the stage to which the body of this being belongs, that is, of the stage where this being has arisen; it can be of a higher stage; but it can never be lower.

Visible matter and consciousness, through relationship to the organ, is either of the same stage or lower, but never of a higher stage.

46b. Visible matter is not higher than the organ.

Visible matter of a higher stage cannot be seen by an organ of sight of a lower stage.

46c. Nor consciousness.

A visual consciousness of a higher stage cannot arise from an organ of a lower stage.

46d. Visible matter, in relation to consciousness, and visible matter as well as consciousness, through relation to the body, is of all types.

Visible matter, through relationship with the visual consciousness, is either equal, or higher, or lower.

Visible matter and the visual consciousness, through relationship to the body, are as visible matter is through relationship to the consciousness, this is to say, equal, higher, or lower.

47a. The same holds for the organ of hearing.

The organ of hearing is not lower than the body, sound is not higher than the organ of hearing, nor is auditory consciousness; sound, through relationship to this latter, and sound and consciousness through relationship to the body, can be of all types.

47a-b. Three organs belong to their own stage.

With respect to the organs of smell, taste, and touch, the body, organ, object and consciousness belong exclusively to the stage where the being is born.

After having formulated this general rule, the author mentions one exception.
47c-d. The consciousness of touch is of its own stage or of a lower stage.

The body, the organ of touch and tangibles are always of the stage where the being is born. But the consciousness of touch (1) is of this stage, in the case of a being born in Kāmadrātu or in the First Dhyāna; or (2) is of a lower stage (First Dhyāna) in the case of a being born in the Second Dhyāna or above.

47d. There is no restriction with respect to the mental organ.

Sometimes the mental organ is of the same stage as the body, the dharmadhātu and the mental consciousness; sometimes it is lower or higher. If a body belongs to the first five stages—Kāmadrātu and the Four Dhyānas—, then the mental organ, the dharmadhātu, and the mental consciousness can be, in absorption or at conception, of any stage, all the stages not being moreover the same in each case. This will be explained in the Eighth Chapter which treats of the absorptions (viii.19c-d). We shall not speak here of this for the sake of brevity, the profit being small and the pains great.

***

There are eighteen dhātus and six consciousness. Which dhātu is discerned by which consciousness?

48a. Five external dhātus are discerned by two types of consciousness.

Visible matter, sounds, odors, tastes and tangibles are known respectively, by the consciousness of sight, hearing, smell, taste, and touch. They are all discerned by the mental consciousness. Each of these external dhātus is thus discerned by two consciousness.

The thirteen other dhātus, not being of the sphere of the sense consciousness, are discerned by a single mental consciousness.

***
How many of the dhātus are eternal?
No dhātu is totally eternal. But

48b. Unconditioned things are eternal.\textsuperscript{198}

Unconditioned things (i.5b) form part of the dharmadhātu (i.15c). Thus one part of the dharmadhātu is eternal.

***

How many of the dhātus are indriyas, that is to say, predominate (ii.1)?

48c-d. The twelve internal dhātus and one part of the dharmadhātu are indriyas.\textsuperscript{199}

A Sūtra\textsuperscript{200} enumerates twenty-two indriyas: 1. organ of sight, 2. organ of hearing, 3. organ of smell, 4. organ of taste, 5. organ of touch, 6. mental organ, 7. male organ, 8. female organ, 9. vital organ, 10. faculty of sensation of pleasure, or sensation of pleasure, 11. faculty of sensation of displeasure, or sensation of displeasure, 12. faculty of sensation of satisfaction, or sensation of satisfaction (saumanasyendriya), 13. faculty of sensation of dissatisfaction, or sensation of dissatisfaction, 14. faculty of sensation of indifference, or sensation of indifference, 15. faculty of faith, 16. faculty of energy, 17. faculty of memory, 18. faculty of absorption, 19. faculty of discernment of dharmas, or faculty of prajñā, 20. anājñātamājñāsyāṃindriya, 21. ājñendriya, and 22. ājñātāvindriya.

The Ābhidhārmikas (Prakaraṇapāda, fol. 31b) do not count the group that forms the six organs of consciousness (the āyatanas), i.e., the organs of sight, hearing, smell, taste, touch, and the mental organ. They do not place the mental organ after the organ of touch, but after the vital organ, for the reason that the mental organ, the same as the organs of sensation (10-14), also have an ālambana (i.29b-d) and not solely a visaya as do the organs of sense consciousness (1-5).\textsuperscript{201}

Among the twenty-two indriyas, eleven—namely the vital organ (9), the five faculties of sensation (10-14), the five moral faculties
(15-19)—and one part of the last three, form part of the dharmadhātu.\textsuperscript{202}

The twelve internal dhātuś are (1) the five organs of sense consciousness which form five dhātuś and five indriyas (1-5); (2) the mental organ (i.16c), that is to say, the sixth indriya, which make up seven dhātuś; and (3) one part of the last three indriyas.

The five remaining dhātuś and one part of the dharmadhātu are not indriyas.
Chapter One

1. The authors of the Vinayavibhāṣa say: (1) there is a Buddha who is not a Bhagavat, namely the Pratyekabuddha, because he is svayambhū, that is because he has obtained Bodhi by himself, because he has not fulfilled the task of dānapāramitā, etc. (vii.34); (2) there is a Bhagavat who is not a Buddha, namely the Bodhisattva in his last existence; (3) there is a Buddha Bhagavat; and (4) there are persons who are neither Buddha, nor Bhagavat (VṛkṣāKyā, 3.12). One can also say that the Śrāvakas, or Disciples, are Buddhas (Āryadeva, Sātaka, 270), for they have acquired Bodhi (vi.67).

2. Śāriputra did not know the five pure skandhas (the precepts, etc.) of the Tathāgata.

3. Maudgalyāyana did not see that his mother was reborn in Maricilokadhatu. Śāriputra did not discover the roots-of-good of a candidate for the state of Bhikṣu (see vii.30); but the Buddha declares:

   mokṣaśabājaṃ abham hy asya susūkṣmam upakṣaye /
   dbhātupāśānaśivāre nilinam īva kāñcanaṁ //

   Compare Huber, Sūtrālañākāra, p. 286.

4. As the stanza says:

   sarvākārānāṁ kāraṇam okasya mayāracondhākasyāpi nāsarvājñānair jñeyanāṁ sarvajñājñāna-balām hi tat.

5. The Pratyekabuddhas and the Śrāvakas have also abandoned (prabhiṇa) non-defiled ignorance (aktiṣṭam ajiññānam), in exactly the same way as they have abandoned the organ of sight, etc., that is, by abandoning all desire (cbandaraṅga) with respect to it. But this non-defiled ignorance remains active within them (samudācarati) even though it is abandoned, exactly like the organ of sight.

   Such is not the case for the Buddha: this is why the author says that he has destroyed (bata) obscurity in such a manner that it will not arise again.

6. "As much as possible," yathābhāvyam. This holds for oneself, as when one says, "He gives food for the Brahmins to eat."

7. We have the plural because the persons to be saved are numerous.

8. Expression of Āryadeva, Sātaka, 265.

9. First explanation: through the power of rddhi (vii.48), like Viṣṇu; through the power of giving, like Maheśvara. Second explanation: through rddhi, through giving, and through its prabhāva (vii.34).

   It is true that the Buddhas perform miracles (rddhiprātiḥbārya) in order to draw believers to themselves (āvarjananamātra); but it is through the miracle of the teaching (anusāsāni) that they save the world by destroying its defilements (vii.47a-b).

10. The dharmas are mixed, like flowers; one discerns them and places them in bouquets: these are pure, those are impure, etc.

   In this operation, a certain dharma associated with the mind (caitīya, caitasikā, ii.23), which is called prajñā, plays a primary role. As a consequence prajñā is defined as "discernment of the dharmas."

11. mala, stain, is a synonym for āsrava, vice. We translate āsrava by "pure." The āsravas are defined v.35. See below i.4.

12. The name "Abhidharma" signifies not only the pure consciousness which discerns the nature of things, but also all of the pure elements of the psychological moment in which this consciousness is produced: sensation, etc. (i.14c). One of these elements is material (rūpa) and is called "pure discipline" (āsrava samvarā, iv.13c).
13. Vyākhyā: paramārtha eva paramārthikah / paramārthe va bhavah paramārthikah / paramārthena vā divyāya carati paramārthikah

14. The Treatise is (1) an Abhidharma Sāstra or an Abhidharma Pīṭaka. In either case, some think that it should not be understood as "The Treatise, with its attendant works, receives the name of Abhidharma," for a book does not have any attendants; some believe that its attendants are made up of the lakṣaṇas (ii. 45c-d); (2) or the Jñānaprasthāna, considered as the body of the Abhidharma and having for its feet (and "attendants") the six books, Prakaraṇapāda, Vijnānakāya, Dharma-kāya, Prajñāpāttisāstra, Dvātukāya, and Samguptaryāya (Burnouf, Introduction, p. 448).

15. The first two lines are quoted, with the reading yad upapāntaye, in a commentary (the Amṛtakanikā) on the Nāmasamgīti, 130; the third is quoted in the Vyākhyā.

16. The word kīla shows that Vasubandhu presents here an opinion, the opinion of the Vaibhāsikas, that he does not accept. The Abhidharma treatises are not the word of the Master for the Sautrāntikas and for Vasubandhu The problem of the authenticity of the Abhidharma treatises is studied in the Introduction.

17. The Tibetan version of the Udaṇnavarga (Mdo XXVI) has been translated by W. Rockhill (London, 1883) and published by H. Beck (Berlin, 1911). A good part of the original has been discovered in Turkestan, JRAS, 1912, pp. 355–377; J. As. 1912, I,311, showing the correspondence with the Pali sources). S. Lévi, J. As. 1912, II,215–222.


19. The conditioned dharmas, with the exception of those which form part of the Path, are termed sāstra, "in a relationship with the defilements."

   How and why are they "in a relationship with the defilements?"

   1. One cannot say that they are "associated" (sāmprayukta) with the defilements, for only the mind and mental states which are defiled (kliṣṭa) are associated with the defilements (i.23).

   2. One cannot say that they coexist (sahotpada) with the defilements. In this hypothesis (1) neither the external (bāhya,i.39a) dharmas, (2) nor the five upādānaskandhas (i.8) of a person within whom the defilements are not presently active would be "in a relationship with the defilements."

   3. One cannot say that they are the support (āśraya) of the defilements, for only the six organs of consciousness are the support of the defilements.

   4. One cannot say that they are the object (ālambana) of the defilements: in this hypothesis, Nirvāṇa (=nirodhasatyā) would be "in a relationship with the defilements," for one can have false views with respect to Nirvāṇa; in this hypothesis too, a higher sphere would be "in a relationship with the defilements" through the fact of the defilements of a lower sphere which grasps them as its object (opinions condemned v.18).

   The author thus explains that a dharma is termed "in a relationship with the defilements" because the defilements adhere to it (anuferate), that is, grow in them (paśṭim labhante) or take their dwelling and support in them (praśīṭhā), as a foot can stand on the earth but not on red hot fire. The defilements (anuśaya) develop (saṁśīyante) taking their growth in or support from the dharmas which are "in a relationship with the defilements."

   According to another opinion, in the same way that one says "This food suits me" (mama anuṣete), meaning "This food is convenient to me, is favorable to me (anugunibhavai)," in this same way the defilements "come to these dharmas," "are favorable to these dharmas." One thus terms the dharmas to which the defilements are favorable, namely conditioned things with the exception of the Path, to be "in a relationship with the defilements;" in fact, conditioned things are created by action aroused by the defilements; the defilements are thus favorable to them.
The various schools are not in agreement on the question: Is the body of the Buddha "in a relationship with the defilements?" See i.31d.

20. The Truth of the Path is the totality of the dharmas which constitute Seeing and Meditation on the Truths (vi.25d, viii3b).

On the asamskṛtas, i.48b, ii.55c-d, and the Introduction.

21. Certain philosophers, namely the Vatsiputryas, say that there is only one asamskṛta, namely Nirvāṇa. The Vaiśeṣikas admit many asamskṛtas: the paramāṇus, etc. (Vyākhyā). Some admit three asamskṛtas; others consider the sānyatā which is tathātālakṣāṇā as an asamskṛta (Madhyamaka, vii.33, p. 176). Wassilief, p. 282. Kathāvatthu, ii.9, vii.3.

22. On the two nirodhas, i.6, ii.55c; on the five nirodhas, i.20a-b.

23. On the difference between space (ākāśa) and a void (ākāśadbhātu), see i.28; on the non-existence of an asamskṛta called "space" (a Sautrāntika theory), see ii.55c-d. Kathāvatthu, vi.6-7.

The opinion of the Madhyamikas on space and other unconditioned things, an opinion identical to that of the Sautrāntikas, is presented by Āryadeva, Śataka, ix.3 (Madhyamaka-vṛtti, 505; Catuḥśatikā, 202, As. Soc. of Bengal, iii, p. 483, 1914): "Where there is no matter (rupa), there is nothing which opposes the arising of material dharmas: the absence of matter receives the name ākāśa, because things shine brightly there (bhratam asyāntah kāśante bhadāḥ). The Vaibhasikas suppose, in the Abhidharmakośastra, that ākāśa is a reality (vastu), not seeing that Scripture must give a name to an unreal thing, to a pure negative (avastusato'kimcanasya) . . ."

The opinion of the Madhyamikas on space and other unconditioned things, an opinion identical to that of the Sautrāntikas, is presented by Āryadeva, Śataka, ix.3 (Madhyamaka-vṛtti, 505; Catuḥśatikā, 202, As. Soc. of Bengal, iii, p. 483, 1914): "Where there is no matter (rupa), there is nothing which opposes the arising of material dharmas: the absence of matter receives the name ākāśa, because things shine brightly there (bhratam asyāntah kāśante bhadāḥ). The Vaibhasikas suppose, in the Abhidharmakośastra, that ākāśa is a reality (vastu), not seeing that Scripture must give a name to an unreal thing, to a pure negative (avastusato'kimcanasya) . . ."

24. Compare the discussion Kathāvatthu, xix.3.

The Sarvāstivādins consider that "disjunction from a defilement," "the suppression of future defilement or suffering" (visāmyoga or nirodha) is a thing in and of itself, a real dharma, an entity (dravya). "Disjunction" is not produced by causes, and so is eternal. Through pratisamākhya (comprehension of the Truths) one obtains the acquisition (prāpti, ii.36b) of disjunction.

25. The Blessed One compared an impure (sāsrava) object to a post, that is to say, an object which the defilements, desire, hatred, etc. can adhere to; the defilements of bonds, saṁyojana, are a rope; the puḍgala is the animal. (Compare Samyutta, iv.282). A sāsrava object is a samyogavastu, the saṁn̄ojaṇya.

26. Dharmadinnā was questioned by her former spouse the householder Viśākha: kiṁsaṁbhāga ārya nirodhba? She answered: asabhāga āyuṣman viśākha. (Madhyamāgama, TD 1, p. 788c16, Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 162bl). Compare Majjhima, i.304: nibbānassa pan'aye kiṁ patighaḥ . . .

27. Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 164b13. The Kathāvatthu, ii.9, attributes to the Mahīrasaśasakas (Wassilief, p. 282) and the Andhakas the distinction between paṭisamākhya and appaṭisamākhya nirodha. Saṁkara discusses the two nirodhas ad ii.2, 22 (see Kern Album, iii) but he confuses apraṭisamākhya nirodha and anityatānirodha (i.20a-b).

28. This classification rests on two principles: 1. There can be paṭisamākhya nirodha, (disjunction, detachment) from impure dharmas, of any time period whether they have been, are now or are not now destined to arise. 2. There is apraṭisamākhya nirodha of all dharmas, pure or impure, which are not destined to arise: future dharmas exist: they will arise if the causes of arising cause them to pass from the future into the present; they will not arise if one obtains their apraṭisamākhya nirodha. For example, at a certain moment, a Saint obtains not being able to arise in an animal womb: he obtains apraṭisamākhya nirodha of the animal womb, which for him is henceforth "not destined to arise" (anupatīnirodha).

The Blessed One said of the Srotaāpanna, "He has surpressed (nirodha) the hells, the animal wombs, existences as a preta" (Comp. Samyutta, v.356, kiṁśañiyo kiṁmatiracchāñayoniko . . .)
Apratisamhyānirodha is a dharma in and of itself which makes absolutely impossible, in one who possesses (prāpti) it, the arising of a certain dharma. This absolute non-arising does not result from an insufficiency of causes, for, if the causes should present themselves someday, the dharma would arise: thus it is the possession of apratisamhyānirodha which makes the sufficient coming together of causes, and arising, definitely impossible.

See ii.55c-d and v.24.

29. The term skandha is explained i.20.


Compare Anguttara, i.197.

31. TD 26, p. 728a24: "The three paths, the three kathāvastus are embraced within eighteen dhātus, twelve āyatanas, and five skandhas; they are known by the nine knowledges, with the exception of nirodha-nāma; they are discerned by six consciousnesses; and they are affected by all the anusayas."

32. Why is not the unconditioned a "foundation of discourse?" Because it is not the cause of discourse (ii.55); because there is no history of an unconditioned thing, in the same way that one can say "Dipamkara was such . . . ; Maitreya will be . . . ; King Kapphina (?) is such." (Vyākhyā)

33. According to the Prakaraṇa, TD 26, p. 716b23, which can be reconstructed: *sānāsārā dharmah katame? sarve sānāsārā dharmah, one should "leave," not only the impure dharmas, but also the Path. The Vyākhyā quotes the text on abandoning the raft, Majjhima, i.135, Vajracchedikā, para. 6: *kolopamāni dharmaparyayam ajanadābhir dharmā api prabhātavyah prāg evādharmā iti* (Compare Bodhicaryāvatāra, ix.33; Katha, ii.14).

34. According to the Prakaraṇa, TD 26, p. 716a3: *savastukāh sapratyayā dharmah katame? sānāsārā dharmah.* See ii.55 end.

35. Vastu signifies hetu according to the etymology: *vasanty asmin prakāryām paścāt tata utpattah.*

The Vyākhyā quotes here a fragment of the Bbāṣya ad ii.55 on the five meanings of the word vastu in Scripture (Vibhāṣa TD 27, p. 980b12) For Vasubandhu savastu signifies "real": conditioned things are real; unconditioned things are unreal.

36. The Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 386c12 and foll., presents fourteen explanations of the term upādānaskandha. Vasubandhu quotes the first three.


37. On rana, sarana, aranā (vii.35c), see Muséon, 1914, p. 35; Walleser, Die Streitlosigkeit des Subhūti (Heidelberg, 1917).

38. asmin eva robita vyāyānamātre kalevare lokam praṅapayāmi lokasamudayaṁ ca (Anguttara ii.48: robītassādevaputta). The Blessed One further said: *luhīye praluhīye tasmāl lokāḥ* (Sānāyutta, iv.52). Aṣṭasāhasrikā, p. 256; Mahāvyutpatti, 154.16 (Wogihara, Bodhisattvabhumi, Leipzig 1908, p. 38). The root is *luji,* not *lokī.*


Hsüan-tsang translates, "They are the threefold existence."

Vasubandhu's source appears to be the Prakaraṇa, TD 26, p. 715a9: "Which dharmas are bhava? Impure dharmas. Which dharmas are not bhava? Pure dharmas."

40. Compare the Prakaraṇapāda, Chapter I, translated in the Introduction.
41. The five organs (*indriya*) are suprasensible (*atindriya*), transparent (*accha*), distinct from the object of the organs, distinct from visible things, from tangible things, etc. It is through reasoning or deduction that we cognize their existence. They have for their support (*adhisthāna*) what popular language calls the eye, etc. ([i.44a-b](#)).

On *pasādacakkhu, cakkhupasāda*, see *Dhammasaṅgāni*, 616, 628.

42. See the Sūtra quoted i.35. Compare *Vibhaṅga*, 122, *Psychology*, 173.

43. The first interpretation according to the *Vibhaṅga*, TD 27, p. 369b21.

44. *Vibhaṅga*, TD 27, p. 64a5: *Mahāvyutpatti*, 101; compare *Dhammasaṅgāni*, 617.

45. The Sautrāntikas deny that shape is anything other than color.


47. *Dhammasaṅgāni*, 636.


49. *Sattvākhyā* = *sattvam ācaṣṭe*, any dharma which denotes a living being is called *sattvākhyā*. When one understands the sound which constitute vocal action (*vāgvijñāṇa*, iv.3d), one knows "This is a living being." Any sound different from speech is *asattvākhyā*.

50. According to the *Dharmakandha*, TD 26, p. 500b24, it is of fourteen types. Compare *Dhammasaṅgāni*, 629.

51. *Dhammasaṅgāni*, 625.

52. *Vibhaṅga*, TD 27, p. 661c14 and foll., *Dhammasaṅgāni*, 648. See i.35.

53. *Dhammapada*, 194; *Udana-varga*, xxx.23. The appearance of the Buddhas is a cause of happiness, not happiness itself.

54. See i.30b.

55. According to *Vibhaṅga*, TD 27, p. 64all.

56. The *manovijñāna*, or mental consciousness, grasps the totality of the objects of the sense consciousnesses, visual consciousness (*caksurajñāna*), etc.; this is why one considers that it has *samānyalakṣaṇa* for its sphere; in other words, it is not specialized with respect to its object.

If, in the same way, one says that the visual consciousnesses bears on blue, yellow, red and white, we should say that it has the *samānyalakṣaṇa* for its sphere, because the characteristics of the "visible" *rupāyatana* are its object; the same for the auditory consciousness, the olfactory consciousness, etc. Now this is in opposition to Scripture.

Answer: When Scripture teaches that each one of the five sense consciousnesses has a *sva-lakṣaṇa* for its sphere, this refers to the unique or self (*sva*) characteristics (*lakṣaṇa*) of the *āyatana*, namely the quality of being *rupāyatana*, that is, the quality of being visible, the "quality of being cognizable by the visual consciousness," or the quality of being *sadbāyatana*, the "quality of being cognizable by the auditory consciousness," etc. Scripture does not refer to the unique characteristic of things, namely the "quality of having a blue aspect" or the "quality of being cognizable by a visual consciousness having a blue aspect," etc. It is not from the point of view of the unique characteristics of these objects that the five consciousnesses are said "to have *sva-lakṣaṇa* for their sphere," or in other words, are called "specialized with respect to their object."

57. *Avijñāṇa* will be described in detail iv.3d etc. This can be translated as "non-information" or "non-informative." This is an action which does not cause anything to be known to another, and
in this it resembles mental action; but it is matter (rupa), in that it resembles bodily and vocal action. We shall see that the Sautrantikas and Vasubandhu do not admit the existence of a specific dharma called the avijñapti.

Sarhghabhadra thinks that the definition of avijñapti, as formulated by Vasubandhu, does not conform to the Vaibhasika doctrine. His objections (in the Nyāyānusāra) are reproduced, and refuted, by Yaśomitra (Vvākhya, 31.16 -34.5). In the Samayaprudripikā, he substitutes a new kārikā for one by Vasubandhu, which Yaśomitra quotes:

krte'pi visabhāge'pi citte cittātyaye ca yat / vyākrtāpratigbham rūpaṁ śā by avijñaptir iṣyate //

58. Sarhghabhadra explains: Why are the mahābhūtas termed dhātu? Because they are the place of origin of all the rūpadharmas; the mahābhūtas themselves have their origins in the mahābhūtas. Now, in the world, a place of origin receive the name of dhātu: it is thus that gold mines, etc., are called dhātu of gold, etc. Or rather they are called dhātu because they are the place of origin of the variety of sufferings. Example as above. Some say that they are called dhātu because they bear the unique characteristics of both the mahābhūtas and derived rūpa (TD 29, p. 335c13-17).

The dhātu also bear the name of mahābhūta. Why bhūta? Why mahābhūta?

At the moment when the diverse types of derived rūpa (blue, etc.) arise, each one of them comes forth under different aspects: this is why they are called bhūta. According to other masters it is by reason of the predominating (adhipati) power of the action of living beings, in the course of eternal saṁsāra, that they always exist: this is why they are called bhūta. Or rather, the appearance (utpāda) of the dharmas is what is called bhava . . .

59. The etymological explanation of bhūtāni is bhūtam tānvanti.

60. Water (in the popular sense of the word) supports vessels: thus the earth element manifests its own, proper activity; it is warm, it moves, etc.

See ii.22; Dhammasaṅgāti, 962-966; Compendium, Appendix, p. 268.

61. Prakaraṇa, TD 26, p. 757a23. The Mahāvyutpattī (101) has khaṭṭhāṭatva, dravatva, uṣṇatva, and laghusamudiratvatva.

62. desantarotpādanavahēvā . . . īrāṇā, compare the source quoted in the Compendium: desantarupattibhāvāvā


64. The Sūtra in question (Sāmyukta-gama, TD 2, p. 72c, Vībhāṣā, TD 27, p. 388a18) is perhaps the Garbhāvakṛtāntisūtra (Majjhima, III.239, below note 120). In the redaction known through the Śikṣāsamuccaya (p. 244), there is (1) for earth kāṭṭhāṭatva kharagata (compare Mahāvastu, i.339, Divyāvadāna, 518.2; Dhammasaṅgāti, 648; Harṣacarita, JRAS. 1899, p. 494); (2) for water: āpas abgata apīva sneha snehagata snehatva dravatva; (3) for fire: tejas tejogata uṣṇatva; (4) for wind: vāyu vāyogata laghutva uṣṇatva.

65. This is to say: light (laghu) is derived rūpa; lightness (laghatva), which by its nature is movement (īrāṇa) is the wind element; the wind element is thus laghusamudiratvatva: that which produces lightness and motion.

66. Quoted in Vvākhya, viii.35.

67. It appears that the Tibetan and Chinese sources call for the translation: "What is it that is broken? By contact with the hand . . ."
Sānyutta, iii.86: ruppati kho bhikkhave tasmā rūpaṁ ti vuccati / kena ruppati / sūna . . . sirinsapaspamпassena ruppati. (See the interpretation of Shwe Zan Aung in the Compendium: "rupa means that which changes its form under the physical conditions of cold . . .").

The Mahāvyutpatti has: rūpaṇād rūpaṁ. (111.3, 245.1137, 1153, 1154).

There are two roots: (1) rup, which gives rūpa, form, color, beauty, rūpya, gold, etc.; and (2) rup, rumpere, in Vedic Sanskrit: ruppati, rōpaṇa, etc.; in Pāli: ruppati (= kuppata ghaṭṭiyati pūlyati domanassito boités); in Classical Sanskrit lulp, lumpati.

68. The Sarvāstivādins understand: "Useful Chapters;" the Pāli signifies "The Octades." (S. Lévi, J. As. 1915, i.412, 1916, ii.34).

Mahāniddesa, p. 5. Kern, Verspreide Geschriften, ii.261 (La Haye 1913) illustrates the meaning of rup by Jātaka iii, 368, Cariyapiṭaka, 3.6, etc.

69. Pratīghāta signifies svadeśe parasyotpatti pratibandha. See above p. 90.

Elsewhere, the thing which is sapratīgha, "impenetrable," is defined: yad desam āvṛṇoti, that which "covers" a place, that which is extended.

One shall see (i.43) the type of pratīghāta referred to in the Dhammasaṅgāni, 618-619.

70. There is a third definition of rūpaṇa, Madhyamakavṛtti, 456.9: tatredam ibāmuteti nirūpaṇād rūpaṁ = "This is called rūpa because one can indicate it as being here or there," and Vyākyād ad i.24 pānyādīṣāṁśparśair bādhanālakṣaṇaṇād rūpaṇāt / idam ibāmuteti desanādarśanarūpaṇaṁ ca. Compare Mahāvyutpatti, 245.1139, desanārūpaṇa.

We have thus: rūpa, that which is impenetrable, that which occupies a place; thus "physical matter."

Sāṅghabhadra also has another explanation: rūpa is so called because it indicates previous action as "This man has cultivated an action, anger, which has produced his bad appearance."

71. See i.43c-d and ii.22.

72. This formula has passed into the Mahāvyutpatti, 109.2. The Japanese editor refers to Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 390al.

The Vyākyād mentions that this second explanation is due to the Vyādhacaryya, or "former master," Vasubandhu.

On the Vasubandhu the teacher of Manoratha, in turn the teacher of Vasubandhu the author of the Kośa, see Bhāyam iii.27 and iv.3a, and the sources discussed in the Avant Propos to Cosmologie Bouddhique, p. viii (London,1918).

73. Sāṅghabhadra, in the Samayaprāsīpiṭkā, reads: ta evokta. Vasubandhu employs the expression īṣṭa, "is regarded by the Vaibhāṣikas," because, for him, the skandhas do not really exist (i.20).

74. Vedanānubusava, ii.7, 8, 24; iii.32; Sānyutta, iii.96; Dhammasaṅgāni, 3; Theorie des douze causes, p. 23.

75. Nimitt, characteristic, is understood as vāstuνvastubhāvīṣa, the diverse conditions or manners of being of the thing. Udryāhāṇa signifies pariccheda, determination or discernment.

The Vijñānakāya, TD 26, p. 559b27, quoted in the Nyayabindupārvapakṣasamikṣepa (Mdo, 111, fol. 108b) and in the Madhyamakavṛtti (p. 74), says that the visual consciousness knows blue (nilam jānāt), but does not know "This is blue" (no tu nilam īṭ). See the note ad i.33a-b. It is through saṃjñā that one gives a name to the visual impression, and to the external cause of the visual impression.

Objection: The consciousness (vijñāna) and ideas (saṃjñā) are always associated (ii.24); thus the visual consciousness will know the characteristics (nimitt) of the object. Answer: The saṃjñā which accompanies sense consciousness is weak and indistinct. Only the mental consciousness is
accompanied by an efficacious samjña, and only it is savikalpaka (i.32-33).

Compare Sanāyutta iii.86; Atthasāliṁi, 291; Milinda, 61.

76. On the Sanāskaras, Theorie des douze causes, p. 9-12.

77. Compare Sanāyutta, iii.60: katame ca bhikkhave samkhārā / chayime cetanākāyā / rūpasam-cetanā . . . dharmmasaṁcetanā; Vibhaṅga, p. 144; Sumangalavilāsīṁi, p. 64.

78. Votition is action (iv.1), the cause of upapatti, and by opposition to thirst, the cause of abbinivṛtti (vi.3).

79. This is to say: "because it conditions that which should be conditioned," as one says: "Cook the porridge that should be cooked."

80. a. Sanāyutta iii.67: samkhatam abhisamkharonti ti bhikkhave tasmā samkhārāti vuccanti / kiṁ ca samkhātam abhisamkharonti / rūpaṁ rūpattāya samkhātam abhisamkharonti / vedanaṁ vedanattāya . . .


c. abhisamkharanalaksanānāb samāhārāḥ (Madhyamakavṛtti 343.9); cītābhisaṁskāramanasaṁkāraṁ cetānā (ibid. 137.7, Mahāvastu, i. 26 and 391).

81. See ii.34.

82. The Vyākhyā explains upalaṁbdbyi by the gloss vastumātragrahabha, and adds vedanādayas tu caitasīkā viṣesagrhaṁbha (The text of the Bibliotheca Buddhica has wrongly: caitasīkaviṣeṣā-): "The consciousness (vijñāna) or mind (citta) apprehends (grahāṇa) only the thing itself (vastumātra); the 'mental states' (caitasika) or dharmas associated with the consciousness (ii.24), that is to say, sensation, etc. (vedanā samjña . . . ), apprehend particular characteristics, special conditions." For example, the consciousness of touch (kāyavijñāna) apprehends unevenness, softness, etc. (i.10d); it is associated with an agreeable sensation (vedanā) which apprehends a certain characteristic of unevenness or softness, the characteristic of being the cause of an agreeable sensation (sukhavedaniyata). The visual consciousness apprehends color (blue, etc.) and shape; it is associated with a certain "mental state" called samjña, an idea, which apprehends a certain characteristic of color and shape under consideration: "This is a man, this is a woman, etc." (i.14c-d).

This doctrine has been adopted by the School of Nāgārjuna. Madhyamakavṛtti, p. 65 cīttaṁ arthamātraṁgrhai caita viṣesāvasthāgrahihānāb sukhaṁdayaḥ; and by the School of Dignāga, Nyāyabindusthikā, p. 12, Tibetan version, p. 25.

The Japanese editor of the Kośa here quotes the Köki (=the Chi of P'u-kuang, TD 41, p. 26a14) and the Vibhaṅga which mentions four opinions on this problem.

83. According to Sarīghabhadrā: "Even though numerous material objects are present, visual consciousness solely grasps visible matter, not sound; it grasps the blue, etc., but does not say that it is blue, etc., or that it is agreeable, disagreeable, male, female, etc., a stump, etc. . . ." (TD 29, p. 342a15).

84. The consciousnesses (vijñāna) succeed one another; they can be visual . . . mental. The consciousness which disappears is the immediately antecedent cause (ii.62a), the support (āśraya) of the consciousness which immediately follows. Under this aspect it receives the name of manas, mana-ayatanā, manodhātu, and mana-indriya (ii.1). It is to the consciousness which follows what the organ of sight is to the visual consciousness.
85. See i.39a-b.

According to the Vyākhyā, the Yogacarins admit a manodhātu, a manas or mental organ, distinct from the six consciousnesses. The Tāmraparṇīyas, the masters of Taprobane, imagine (kalpayanti) a material organ, the heart (hrdayavastu), a support of the mental consciousness. This heart also exists in Aśrīpyadhātu, the non-material sphere: these masters admit in fact the existence of matter in this sphere (vii.3c); they explain the prefix a in the sense of "a little," as in āpiṅgala, "a little red."

The Patṭhama (quoted in Compendium of Philosophy, p. 276) assigns a material (rūpa) support to the mental consciousness, without giving the name of "heart" to this support, whereas it terms "eye" the support of the visual consciousness. But the later Abhidhamma (Visuddhi-magga, Abhidhammasaṅgaha) considers the heart as the organ of thought.

The teaching of the Vibhaṅga, p. 88, is less clear: "From the visual, auditory consciousness . . . tactile consciousness which has just perished there arises the mind, the manas, the mental organ (mānas = manas), the heart (= the mind), the manas, the manas organ . . ." (Atthasālīni, 343).

86. Avijñānti forms part of rūpaskandha and dharmadhātu.

87. The problem of inclusion (saṃgraha) is examined in the Dhātukathāpakarana, Kathāvatthu, vii.1, Dhātukāya, and Prakarana (see below i.20, note 105).

88. Dīgha, iii.232; Dharmasaṅgaha, 19; Mahāvyutpatti, 35, etc.

89. Great ugliness results from the faa of having only one eye, one ear, or one nostril. But many animals, camels, cats, owls, etc., are not beautiful for having two eyes! They are not beautiful in comparison with other species, but, among their species, individuals having only one eye, etc., are ugly.

Sarhghabhadra explains sōbbārthām in the sense of ādhipatyārthām, "with a view to its predominating factor" (see ii.1). He who possesses predominance is beautiful, and shines in the world. Individuals who only possess one eye do not possess "predominance," the capacity for clear vision; for sight is not as clear with one eye as with two eyes . . . (i.43).

90. Sarīryukta, TD 2, p. 14c4: yat kiṃcid rūpa atiśānāgamatapratiyutpannam ādhyātmikam vā bāhyam vā audārikam vā sākyam vā hiṃam vā prāṇitām vā ātām vā antikam vā tadv pakhyām abhitānksipīya ayam ucyate rūpaskandhāb.

Compare Vibhaṅga, p. 1.

The edition of the Vyākhyā has aikadhyām, but the Mahāvyutpatti 245, 243 has ekadhyām abhitānksipīya. Wogihara mentions ekadhyā in Divyu, 35.24, 40.22.

91. Anityatāniruddha: destroyed by impermanence which is one of the characteristics of conditioned things (ii.45c-d).

There are five types of nirodha: (1) laksananirodha (ii.45c-d) which is posed here, (2) samāpattinirodha (ii.41c), (3) upapattinirodha (=āsāniśīka, ii.41b), (4) pratimukhyānirodha (i.6a-b), and (5) a-pratimukhyānirodha (i.6c-d).

If the texts were to say, "In the past, rūpā is destroyed," one could understand that this refers to nirodhas two to five. Now nirodhas two and three are the destruction of future mind and mental states; nirodha four is the destruction of an impure mind and mental states; and nirodha five is the destruction of future dharmas not destined to arise (anupattidharmān).

92. Āryadeva, Sataka, 258, shows that this definition contradicts the thesis of the existence of the future.

93. Hsüan-tsang translates: The Bhadanta Dharmatrāta. But the Vyākhyā says: The Bhadanta is a Sautrāntika Sthavira, or a Sautrāntika Sthavira of this name. Bhagavadvīśeṣa thinks that this refers to the Sthavira Dharmatrāta.
We object to this: Dharmatrata is a follower of the teaching of the existence of the past and future, thus a Sarvāstivādin, and we are concerned here with a Sautrāntika, this is, a Dārṣṭāntika. But the Bhandanta Dharmatrata has a Sarvāstivādin theory presented later (v.25). The “Bhadanta” is a philosopher that the Vibhāṣa quotes under the simple name of Bhadanta, a philosopher who adhers to the Sautrāntika system (sautrāntika-darśanāvalambin), whereas the Vibhāṣa calls the Bhandanta Dharmatrata by his name. Thus we have here a certain Sautrāntika Sthavira Bhikṣu, who differs from Dharmatrata.

The Japanese editor refers to Vibhāṣa TD 27, p. 383b16, where it is said that Dharmatrata does not admit that the dharmāyatana is rūpa (see iv.4a-b).

94. Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 379a12, presents twenty opinions on the meaning of the term āyatana. The definition of the Kośa is reproduced in the Mahāvyutpatti, p. 552.

95. Vibhāṣa, TD p. 367c21, has eleven etymologies. We have here the first one.

96. Dhātu signifies “mine” in the expression suvarṇagotra, Asaṅga, Sūtrālamkāra, iii.9 and note of the translater.

97. The Vaibhāṣikas believe that the skandhas, the āyatanas and the dhātus really exist; the Sautrāntikas hold that the dhātus are real, the skandhas and the āyatanas only “nominally” so; Vasubandhu holds the skandhas to be “nominal,” whereas the āyatanas and the dhātus are real.

98. The doctrine of the pūḍḍala is discussed in a supplement, Chapter IX, of the Kośa, translated by Stcherbatsky, Académie de Petrograd, 1920.

99. Sarhghabhadra: “This objection does not hold. Skandha does not signify ‘mass,’ but ‘that which is susceptible of being collected together in a mass’...” (TD 29, p. 343c25).

100. In the way that, in the world, skandha signifies shoulder, nāmarūpa are the two shoulders which bear the sādāyatana (iii.21).

101. That part which is rūpa, that part which is sensation...

102. Paramārtha: “I shall return to you three skandhas.” Tibetan: dbul bar bya'i phyuñ po gsum dag tu dbul bar bya'o.

103. Utsāra: Mahābāṣya, i. p. 12; Kielhorn, JRAS, 1908, p. 501.

104. The Ābhidhārmikas are not always clearly distinguished from the Vaibhāṣikas. See Introduction.

105. Compare Prakaraṇapāda, Chapter VI (TD 26, p. 731c19): The caksurdhātu is embraced within one dhātu, one āyatana, and one skandha; it is known (jñeya) by seven jñānas (see Kośa, vii) with the exception of paracittajñāna, nirodhañjñāna, and mārgajñāna: it is discerned by one viññāna; it exists in Kāmadhātu and Rūpadhātu; it is affected by the anuṣayas to be abandoned through Meditation (see Kośa, v.).

Dhātukathāpakaraṇa (PTS ed. 1892) p. 6: cakkhabhātu ekena khandhena ekenāyatanaena ekāya dhātuyā samāgatā.


107. Teaching of the skandhas to persons of sharp faculties (prajñendriya). Example: yad bhikṣo na tvam sa te dharmah prabhātavyah /ajñātan bhagavan / katham asya bhikṣo samñāptenok-tārtham ajñānasi /rūpam bhadanta nāhan sa me dharmah prabhātavyah/

The three types of hearers—udgāñcikājñā, avīpañcikājñā, and padārpaṇa—correspond to the three types of faculties (Puggalapaññatti, p. 41; Sūtrālamkāra, trans. p. 145).
109. Six vivādamūlas in Dīgha, i.ii.246, etc.
110. Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 385b15.
111. According to Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 384b1-6.
112. The Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 399c4-7, enumerates eleven reasons which justify the terms rūpāyatana and dharmāyatana.
113. This is the opinion of Dharmatrata (see his Sāriyukta Abhidharmahrdaya, TD 28, p. 873a28-b2). i.17.
114. (1) According to the Sautrāntikas, the word of the Buddha (buddhavacana) is vāgviṣṇāpti (iv.3d); according to another school (nīkāyāntariya) it is nāman. The Vyākhyā quotes, on this point, the Jāanaprasthāna (See Cosmologie bouddhique, p. vii, note).
(2) In another canon, the Sūtra says that there are eighty-four thousand dhammaskandhas. The Sūtra has Ānanda saying, “I have learned from the Buddha more than eighty-four thousand dhammaskandhas: sātirekāni me’sātir dhammaskandhasahasrāni bhagavato’ntikāt sammukham ugrāhātāni (See Burnouf, Introduction, p. 34; Sumanagalañāśini, p. 24; Theragāthā, 1024; Prajñāpāramitā in the Akutobhaya of Nāgārjuna, i.8; Avadānaśataka, ii.155).
116. Eighty thousand dhammaskandhas have perished; a single dhammaskandha has been preserved (Vyākhyā).
117. This is the explanation of Buddhaghosa, Sumanagalañāśini, i.24.
118. The Vyākhyā quotes a Sūtra, a more developed form of Dīgha, iii.241 and Aṅguttara, iii.21.

Vimuktiyāyatana = vimukter ayādvāram.
119. These are opposed to the sixty-two drṣtis (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 376c6 and foll.). The Bānubhāṭuka (Madhyama, TD 1, p. 723c13, Dhammaskandha, Chapter XX) is closely related to Majjhima, iii.61 (41 dhātus). Compare Asanga, Sūtrakramāka, i.ii.2.
120. This refers to the Sūtra which explains the constituent elements of a person: saḍadhātūr ayam bhikṣo puruṣah. Vasubandhu quotes it (i.35) under the name of Garbhāvakraṇtisūtra (Vinayasamayuktakavastus, Sec. 11, TD 24, p. 253a21; and in the Ratnakūta, Chap. 14, TD 11, p. 326b). In the Majjhima, this Sūtra is called the Dhātuvibhāṅgasutta (iii.239); it constitutes one of the sources of the Pūjaputrasamāgama extracts of which are preserved in the Śikṣaśaśamuccaya, p. 244, Bodhicaryāvatāra, ix.88, Madhyamakāvatāra, p. 269.

See note 62, and note 143 and Prakaraṇapada quoted in the note ad ii.23c-d.
On the six dhātus, Aṅguttara, i.176, Vibhaṅga, p. 82-85, Abhidharmahrdaya, viii.7.
122. Pu-kuang says (TD 41, p. 32c28): “One says that ākāśadhātū is light and darkness in order to show that it is a type of color (varna) and a real thing. The author does not believe that ākāśadhātū is a real thing, and this is why he adds the word kīla.” For Vasubandhu and the Sautrāntikas, ākāśadhātū is solely the absence of a resistent body (sapratigṛhāvatva). See i.55c-d.

Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 388b19: What difference is there between akāśa and ākāśadhātū? The first
is non-material (arūpin), invisible (anidarśana), non-resistant (apraśīgha), pure (anāsrava), unconditioned (asaṁskṛta); the second is material . . .

123. One edition of the Vyākhyā reads āgha: āgham kila citastham rūpam iti citastham saṁghāṭastham /atyartham banti banyate cety āgham / . . . atyarthāśabdaryā akāraṇaḥ kṛto banteṣ ca ghūḍeṣaḥ. But the Burnouf MSS reads agham . . . akāraṇaḥ; we have, ad iii.72, agha = citastharūpa; Mahāvyutpatti, 245.162.

124. See above p. 70 and following.

125. The dharmaḥātu is apart from cause: it includes avijñapti which is material and non-susceptible to being struck.

126. See Kāramaprajñaptisāstra, analyzed in Cosmologie bouddhique, p. 339.

127. Compare Samyutta, iv.201: puthujjano cakkhusmiṁ baṭṭaṁ manāpanamāpehi rūpehi.

128. This means that the consciousness which arises having blue for its object (vīṣaya) and the eye for its support (āṣraya), can be hindered from arising through the interposition of a foreign body between the eye and the blue object: the eye and the blue are thus sapraśīgha. But neither the manodhātu, which functions as the organ of the mental consciousness (manovijñāna), nor the dharmaḥātu, which is the object proper of the mental consciousness (for example sensation), are not sapraśīgha: nothing can hinder, by making an "obstacle" or a "screen" (āvarana), the mental consciousness from arising from the mental organ (manodhātu) with respect to the dharmaḥātu.

129. See ii.9a; Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 263c12, p. 740b8.

130. The Mahāsāṅghikas believe that the first four consciousnesses are always neutral; the consciousness of touch and the mental consciousness are of the three types.

131. The dharmaṁ which do not belong to any sphere of existence, which are transcendent to existence (adhātyupatita, adhātvāpta, aparājaṁpanna) are unconditioned things.

132. The examination of this problem is taken up again ii.12.

133. Compare Kathāvatthu, viii.7.

134. Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 746a4: "Do the male and female organs exist in Rūpadhātu? Neither of the sexual organs exist there. First opinion: it is because one desires to abandon these organs that one cultivates the dhyāṇas and is reborn in Rūpadhātu. If beings in Rūpadhātu were to possess these organs, they would not desire to be reborn in this sphere. Second opinion: these organs are created by gross food (iii.39); the Sūtra (iii.98c) says in fact that human beings at the beginning of the cosmic age do not possess these organs, that they all have the same form; later, when they eat of the juice of the earth, the two organs arise, and the difference of male and female appear; in the absence of gross food, the two organs will be missing. Third opinion: the two organs have a use in Kāmadhātu, but they do not have a use in Rūpadhātu: thus they are missing in Rūpadhātu . . . On the gods of Kāmadhātu, see iii.70.

135. The Mahāsāṅghikas and the Sautrāntikas maintain that the body of the Buddha is pure (anāsrava) (see iv.4a-b, discussion of avijñapti) (Compare Kathāvatthu, iv.3, xiv.4). Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 229a17, p. 391c27: "Certain masters, the Mahāsāṅghikas, maintain that the body of the Buddha is pure. They say, 'Scripture says that the Tathāgata remains above the world, that he is not mundane, that he is not defiled; thus we know that the body of the Buddha is pure.' In order to refute this opinion, we show that the body of the Buddha is impure. To say that it is pure is to contradict the Sūtra."

The body of the Buddha is not pure (anāsrava), because it can be the occasion of the
defilement of another. Vibhāsā, TD 27, p. 871cll: The body of the Buddha is the result of ignorance and thirst; it is thus not pure. The Sūtra says that ten complete āyatanas (organ of sight . . ., visibles . . .), and two partial āyatanas (manaāyatana, dharmas) are impure . . . If the body of the Buddha were pure, women would not have affection for him; he would not produce, among others, any desire, hatred, confusion, or pride . . .

Compare Vyākhyā, p. 14; above p. 58.

136. Same question in Vibhaga, 97, 435. Vitarka and vicāra are defined ii.28, 33.

137. These are called avikalapaka by reason of the text: caksurūpānasamaṇaṇī nilām vijayāni no tu nilam iti (See above note 75).

138. Kila: this is an opinion of the Vaibhāśikas without support in the Sūtras.

The opinion of Vasubandhu is explained later, ii.33. For him as for the Sautrantikas, vitarka and vicāra are citta, manovijñāna.

139. Vibhāsā, TD 27, p. 219b7: svabhāvavikalpa is vitarka-vicāra;anusmaranavikalpa is the memory associated with mental consciousness; nirūpaṇavikalpa is non-absorbed prajñā of the sphere of the mental consciousness. In Kāmadhātu, the five consciousnesses have only the first type of vikalpa: they include memory, but not anusmaranaṇavikalpa, for they are not capable of recognition; they include prajñā, but not nirūpaṇavikalpa, for they are not capable of examination.

Nyāyānusāra (TD 29, p. 350bl): The nature of svabhāvavikalpa is vitarka.

140. Saṅghabhadra: Prajñā and memory are associated with the five sense consciousnesses, but their functions are reduced therein (TD 29, p. 350b17).

141. Prajñā which is mental (manasi), that is to say manasi bhavana, proceeds either from the hearing of Scripture or from reflection (frutacintāmanī), or is innate (upapatti-pratilambhikā); is dispersed (vyāgra), that is, non-concentrated prajñā, having different objects (agra), or "discrowned" (vigatapradhāna) by the fact that it successively grasps after different object.

Why give the name of abhinirūpaṇavikalpa to this prajñā?

Because it applies to a certain object in respect to its name (nāma-peksayā) and examines (abhinirūpaṇa): "this is rūpa, vedanā, anīya, dvekkha," etc. However, concentrated (samābhitā) prajñā, proceeding from absorption (bhāvanānīyā), is applied to an object without taking into consideration its name. Thus it is not abhinirūpaṇavikalpa.

All mental memory (smṛti), that is to say, the mental memory, is or is not concentrated. For, according to the School, the mental memory uniquely has for its object the thing previously experienced and does not take into consideration its name, according to the definition: "What is memory? Expression of the mind (cetaso'bhilapah)." The mode of existence of memory connected to the five consciousnesses is not an expression (abhilāpa) of a thing previously experienced. It is thus not anusmaranaṇavikalpa (Vyākhyā). See ii.24.

142. On the meaning of ilambana, i.29b.

Compare Vibhaṅga, p. 95.

143. The Abhidhamma (Vibhaṅga, p. 96, Dhammasaṅgāni, 653, 1211, 1534) understands upādinna in the same sense. The modern commentators of the Abhidhamma translate upādinna as "issue of grasping;" they do not see the upāda = upādayatarpa, bhavita, and so create a great confusion.

Moreover the Vibhaṅga does not classify the dhātus as does the Abhidharma. (See also Suttavibhaṅga, p. 113; Mahāvypatthā, 101.56; Divyāvadana, p. 54; Bodhicaryāvatāra, viii.97, 101). And there is some fluctuation even in Sanskrit sources. For example, Majjhima iii.240, reproduced in the Pitāputrasamāgam (see above p. 54, n. 1), gives the hair . . . excrements as ajjhattam paccattam kakkhalam upādinna. Now hair is not upādinna. A description of corporeal matter
Footnotes

(ādhyātmikā, see Majjhima, iii.90) has been confused with a description of organic matter (upāṭtā)

Upāṭtā matter, plus the manas, is called āśraya (see ii.5). This is the subtle bodies of the non-Buddhists.

144. Bhūta, mahābhūta; upādāya rūpa, bhautika; see i.22, 23-24, ii.12, 50a, 65. bhautika = bhūta bhava = derived from the bhūtas.


146. Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 661c14. There are two masters in this school, Buddhadeva and Dharmatrāṭa. Buddhadeva says: "Rūpa is solely the primary elements; the mental states (cātāya) are solely mind (cittā)." He says that upādāyarūpa, secondary matter, is a species of the primary elements (mahābhūtaṭvīteṣa), and that the mental states are a species of mind . . ." (Compare Kathāvatthu, vii.3). Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 383c24. The Sūtra says: "Rūpa is the four primary elements and that which derives from the four primary elements." Which opinion does the Sūtra intend to refute? It intends to refute the opinion of Buddhadeva. The Buddha sees that, in the future, there will be a master, Buddhadeva, who will say: "There is no derived, distinct rūpa apart from the primary elements." In order to refute this opinion, the Buddha says: "Rūpa is the four primary elements . . ." Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 730b26: "All conditioned things are either mahābhūta or cātā; there is no upādāyarūpa apart from the mahābhūtas; and there is no cātā (mental states) apart from the cātā (the mind).

On the mind and mental states, see below p. 101 and ii.23c.

Buddhadeva is perhaps the master named on the lion inscription of Mathura.

147. Thus (1) the organs are not primary matter, not being "solid," etc.; (2) tangible things include primary matter, since a solid is perceived by touch; and (3) secondary matter perceived by the other organs is not perceived by touch.

148. See ii.5. The first four dhātus (earth . . . wind) are "radical substances," because the organs arise from these dhātus; the viśjanadhātu or manodhātu is a "root," because it gives rise to manasṭsparśayatana. Or rather the first four dhātus are roots because they give rise to secondary matter; the viśjanadhātu is a root because it gives rise to mental states (cātā, cātāsīka).

149. Thus the first five "supports of contact," the five organs of sense consciousness, are "secondary matter:" otherwise, they would be included in the definition: "A person is made up of the six dhātus."

150. According to the Abhidhamma (Dhammasaṅgani, 647), derived rūpa is not tangible. Saṅghabhadra (TD 29, p. 352cl) refutes this opinion which he attributes to the Sthavira. On this subject see the Introduction for a discussion of the authenticity of the Sūtras.


152. Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 689c5 and foll.

153. This is the etymology vipacyata iti vipākaḥ; the vipāka is what has become ripe.

154. This is the etymology vipāka = vipakti.

155. It appears that this is the opinion of Dharmatrāṭa i.45 (TD 28, number 1552).

156. Let us consider one moment or state of existence of this subtle matter which is the organ of sight. One part of this matter is retribution of a former action; another part proceeds from food: all this matter is the outflowing result of a previous moment or state in the existence of the eye. But this previous moment or state is not, in and of itself, capable of generating the present moment: in fact, at death, the organ of sight ceases producing itself through outflowing. Thus by
definition the organ of sight is not an outflowing. But consider, on the contrary, the flesh that constitutes the body: it persists after death; it is thus an outflowing, the result, in each of the moments of its existence, of the previous moment.

The Kathāvatthu, xii.4, xvi.8, does not hold that matter is retribution.

157. Nine reasons are enumerated in Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 612c. Vasubandhu quotes the third.

158. The Vatsiputriyas and the Vibhajyavādins maintain that sound is retribution.

159. Compare Dīgha, iii.173, quoted by the Mahāsāṅghikas in the Kathāvatthu, xii.3: saddo vipāko.

160. See Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 823a20, p. 449a16, and Dharmaratā, TD 29, p. 396c20. These passages are discussed by Fa-pao in his Shu, TD 41, p. 502a18 and following.

161. Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 714a7 and foll. The difference between internal (ādhyātmika) dharmas and external (bāhya) dharmas is threefold: 1. difference from the point of view of the series (sāṁtāna): the dharmas that are to be found in the person himself (svātmabhava) are internal; those that are to be found within another, and also those which are not integral to living beings (asattvābhava, i.10b), are external; 2. difference from the point of view of the āyatana: the āyatana which are the support (āśraya) of the mind and mental states are internal; those which are objects (āśraya) are external; 3. difference from the point of view of living beings: the dharmas integral to living beings are internal; the others are external.

162. See Udānavarga, xxiii; Madhyamakavārtti, p. 354; Dhammapada, 160.


164. Vibhāṣa (TD 27, p. 368a21): The organ that has seen, now sees or shall see rūpa, and its tatsabdha (that is to say the organ which resembles this organ) is the caksurdhātu. The organ which has seen is past caksurdhātu; the organ which now sees is present caksurdhātu; and the organ that shall see is future caksurdhātu. As for tatsabdha, the masters of this land say that it is of four types: the past, present, and future tatsabdha eye is the caksurdhātu which has perished, is now perishing, or shall perish without having seen the rūpa; one should add, as a fourth, the caksurdhātu which absolutely will not arise.

Foreign (bahirdesaka) masters say that it is of five types: past, present, future, as above. Further, future caksurdhātu which absolutely will not arise, is of two types, accordingly as it is, or is not, associated with the consciousness.

165. Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 368b13. Three opinions. Can one see rūpa by means of the eye of another? Who maintains such an opinion? If one cannot see by means of the eye of another, how can the eye of a certain being be called sabdhga through relationship with other beings? Because the activity of the eye is definite: this activity consists of seeing. When the eye, after having been active, has perished, it is called sabdhga: neither for the person himself, nor for another, does this name sabdhga change. In this same way . . .

166. By explaining bhaga in the passive, bhajyata iti bhagaḥ.

167. The eye that perishes without having seen is similar to the eye that sees, etc.

The Madhyamikas (Vṛtti, p. 32 and the note that should be corrected) make the best of this theory: "In reality, the sabdhga eye does not see visible things, because it is an organ, exactly like tatsabdha:" na paramārthatah sabdhagam caksuḥ paśyati rūpāni, caksunidbhyavat, tadayaḥtatsabdhaḥgam.

168. Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 265cb. The same problem is examined in the Vibhaṅga, pp. 12, 16, 97, and the Dhammasaṅgani, 1002, 1007, 1008.
169. On the quality of *prthvajjana*, ii.40c, vi.26a, 28c-d. In *Vibhāṣa*, TD 27, p. 231c13-23, divergent explanations of Vasumitra, the Bhadanta, and Ghoṣaka.

170. See ii.13, iv.lla-b.

171. We shall see that the first stage is *ānantaryamārga*, "the path which destroys the defilements;" the second stage is *vimuktimārga*, "the path of deliverence," the path in which the defilements are destroyed (vi.28).

172. *Dbi* in place of *prajñā*, for prosodical reasons (ii.57d).

173. See *Nyāyabinduṭṭikāṭipatti*, p. 26; *Bodhicaryāvatārapañjikā*, p. 520; *Aṭṭhasālīni*, p. 400; Warren (Visuddhimagga), p. 207; *Buddhist Psychology*, p. 351, note; Spence Hardy, *Manual*, p. 419. Kathāvatthu, sviii.9, where the thesis "the eye sees" is attributed to the Mahāsāṃghikas. Compare *Samayabheda*, Wassilief, p. 262. Wassilief summarizes the discussion of the *Kośa*, p. 308 (Read: "das Auge nicht das Mass des Sichtbaren sieht," and not "*ist*.

*Vibhāṣa*, TD 27, p. 489b14: According to another opinion, all the *samskṛtas* are, by their nature, view (*dṛṣṭi*). View means the manifested characteristic of its manner of being (*pañcaprācāra*). All the *samskṛtas* possess this characteristic. Some others say that the consciousness of the supression of the defilements and non-production (*ksayānutpādajñāna*, vii.1) is view. *Vibhāṣa*, TD 27, p. 61c and foll.: Dharmatrata says that the visual consciousness (*caksurviṣṇuṇa*) sees visible things. Ghoṣaka says that the *prajñā* associated with visual consciousness sees visible things. The Dārṣṭāntikas say that the "complex" (*sāmagṛi*) sees visible things. The Viśṭasāṃghikas say that one eye alone sees visible things... If the visual consciousness sees visible things, then consciousness would have view for its characteristic; now this is not the case: thus this opinion is false. If the *prajñā* associated with visual consciousness sees visible things, then the *prajñā* associated with the consciousness of hearing would understand sounds; now *prajñā* does not have hearing for its characteristic: thus this opinion is false. If the "complex" sees visible things, then one would always see visible things, for the "complex" is always present. If one eye, not the two eyes, sees visible things, then parts of the body would not feel tangibles at one and the same time: in the same way that the two arms, however distant they may be from each other, can simultaneously feel tangible things and produce a single tactile consciousness, in this way what obstacle is there to the two eyes, however distant they may be from each other, simultaneously seeing and producing a single visual consciousness?

174. This is the thesis of the Bhadanta (*Vibhāṣa*, TD 27, p. 63b23, c12).

175. *caksuṣā rūpāṇi dṛṣṭa vā...* quoted iii.32d. *Samyukta*, TD 1, p. 87c26, p. 88a; *Vibhanga*, p. 381; *Madhyamakavṛtti*, p. 137; Dhammasaṅgani, 597. This is the argument of the Māhāsāṃghikas, *Kathāvatthu*, xviii.9.

176. Compare the formula: *tasyaivam jñāta evam pāṣyataḥ*.


178. Or rather: "One should not reject expressions in worldly use for the reason that they do not correspond to realities." *janapadani_tracker niḥbhinnavesata samjñāṇam, ca lokasya nātibhave*. (Madhyama TD 1, p. 703a2, Samyukta, 13.12). Compare Majjhima, iii.230: *janapadani_tracker niḥbhinniveseyya samajñānam nātibhaveyya; Samyutta, iv.230: yam ca sāmaṁ niṭṭham ca atidhāvanti, yam ca loke saccasammatam tam ca atidhāvanti. Itivuttaka, 49.

179. According to the *Jaṭānaprasthāna*, TD 26, p. 919c27; *Vibhāṣa*, TD 27, p. 62bl. Against the Viśṭasāṃghikas. See above note 173, at the end.
Chapter One


Vibhāṣā, *TD* 27, p. 63b14 and foll: One says that the object is attained (*prāpta*) in a twofold sense: either because it is "grasped as object" or "perceived;" or because there is a juxtaposition (nirantaratva) of the object and the organ. In the first sense, the six organs attain the object. In the second sense, only three organs—the organs of smell, taste and touch,—attain the object; but on the contrary, three organs, the organs of sight and hearing and the mental organ, perceive without attaining.

The organ of sight perceives visible things by reason of light; when a visible thing is close to the organ, it hinders the light: the organ does not see. The organ of hearing perceives sound by reason of space or the void; when a sound is close to the organ, it does not hinder the void: the organ hears . . . The organ of smell perceives by reason of the wind; the organ of taste, by reason of water; the organ of touch, by reason of the earth; and the mental organ, by reason of the act of attention (*manaskāra*).

Fa-pao (see *TD* 41, p. 508a19 and foll.) observes that the *rupa* of the moon does not leave the moon in order to juxtapose itself on the eye.


182. An objection of the Vaiśeṣika.

183. This doctrine is refuted by Saṅghabhadra (*TD* 29, p. 370b12 and foll.); Shen-t'ai attributes it to the Sāṁmitiyas; Fa-pao, to certain masters of the *Vibhāṣā* (*TD* 41, p. 508b17).

184. Saṅghabhadra discusses this thesis (*TD* 29, p. 370b23 and foll.).

185. Here and below (the definition of Bhadanta, p. 106), our Tibetan version translates nirantarata by 'dab chags pa. But the Tibetan Siddhantas analyzed by Wassilief (p. 307) oppose the nirantarata of the Bhadanta (*bar med pa*) to the nirantarata of the other masters (*'dab chags pa*).

According to the *Bodhicaryāvatāra*, p. 516, the organ and its object cannot be either separated (*savyavadhāna, sāntara*) or contiguous (nirantarata).

186. Saṅghabhadra (*TD* 29, p. 371c7): What is the meaning of “to attain?” When an object arises in proximity to an organ, this latter grasps it. Thus one can say that smell, taste, and touch grasp the objects that they attain; in the same way one says that the organ of sight does not see eyelids, eye-lashes and the other visible matter that it attains. The eyelid does not touch the organ of sight: one says nevertheless that the organ attains it. From the fact that the eyelid arises in proximity to the organ, one says that this latter attains it. As the organ of sight does not see the visible matter thus attained, one says that the organ of sight grasps without attaining, not by attaining; moreover it does not grasp a very distant object. In this same way, even though smell grasps the object that it attains, it does not grasp what is very close.

187. Compare the *Vimsaka* of Vasubandhu, 12-14; *Bodhicaryāvatāra*, p. 503; *Praśastapāda*, p. 43, etc.

188. According to *Vibhāṣā*, *TD* 27, p. 683c24: Do the atoms touch one another? They do not touch one another; if they touch one another, they touch one another in either their totality or partially. If they touch one another in their totality, they form but one single thing; if they partially touch one another they would thus have parts. And atoms do not have parts.

How is it that agglomerations, striking against one another, do not fall to pieces? They do not fall to pieces because *vāvyudhātu* holds them together.

But does not *vāvyudhātu* fall to pieces? Sometimes it falls to pieces, for example at the end of the cosmic period. Sometimes it holds together, for example at the beginning of the cosmic period.
If atoms do not touch one another, how can striking produce sound? Sound is produced for this very reason. For, if the atoms were to touch one another, how could there be the production of sound? If atoms touch one another, the hand and the body that it strikes would mix with one another, and there would be not free space, and how could sound arise? Vasumitra says: "Atoms do not touch one another: if they touch one another, they would thus last for a second moment." The Bhadanta says: There is no real contact; it is through acquiescence to popular truth that one say that there is contact when atoms arise in a union without interval (nirantara).

Does the thing in contact arise having for its case a thing in contact . . .

189. They should have arisen (first moment) in order to touch one another (second moment).
190. Vasubandhu believes that the Bhadanta understands "juxtaposition without interval" in the sense that atoms do not allow any intermediate space between them. Saṅghabhadra is of a different opinion.
191. For Vasubandhu, atoms are immediately juxtaposed; nevertheless they do not mix one with another, for being impenetrable, they remain distinct in spite of their contiguity. See p. 70.

Here are the essentials of Saṅghadra's explanations.

Nyāyānusāra, (TD 29, p. 372b12): The Bhadanta nevertheless says: "Atoms do not touch one another; but one says, by metaphor, that they touch one another, because they are juxtaposed without interval" (nirantara). The Sautrāntika (that is, Vasubandhu), indicating that that is the best theory, says: "This doctrine is the best; otherwise, the atoms would present some intermediate space (sāntara) between them; since these intermediate spaces are empty, what would hinder the atoms from going (one towards the other)? One admits that they are impenetrable (sapratigha)." This theory of the Bhadanta can neither be approved nor criticized; one should solely examine how there can be any absence of an intermediate space without there being contact: since this is not explicit, this theory is difficult to understand. If one says that atoms absolutely are without any intermediate space between them, and yet are not mixed one with another, they must have parts: a false opinion. Otherwise, if nirantara signifies "without interval" (anantara), how is it that the atoms do not touch one another? Consequently, the word nirantara signifies "close." The prefix nis signifies "certitude." As there is certainly an interval, the atoms are nirantara, "possessing intervals:" the same way as nirdahati, "he burns." Or rather the prefix nis signifies "absence." The atoms are called "without interposition" (nirantara), because there is not any rūpa of contact (sṛṣṭa) of the dimension of a atom between them. When the atoms of the primary elements arise close to one another, without "interposition," they are said, by metaphor, to touch one another. We approve the understanding of the Bhadanta thusly . . .

192. Saṅghabhadra (TD 29, p. 372c5) reproduces this paragraph (The Sautrāntika says: 'If you admit . . .'), and following: "This is not correct. 'To have parts' and 'to be spatially divided' are two expressions of the same idea. When one says that 'an atom does not have any parts,' one says in fact that it is foreign to all spatial division. How can you be in doubt with respect to this point and still say: 'If you admit spatial division . . .?' Since the atoms are foreign to this division, how can they touch one another? We have explained that contact can only be total or partial; thus the atom, foreign to any spatial division, cannot enter into contact. How can you thus say 'If you deny spatial division, there will be no difficulty in the atoms touching one another.' Thus the atoms are called nirantara, 'not separated;' because there is not any rūpa of contact of the dimension of an atom between them."

See ii.22 and the Introduction.

193. According to Vibhāṣa TD 27, p. 63c12.
194. The first opinion is that of the Sarvāstivādins.
195. mālāvad avasthita = mandalena samapanktyavasthita.
196. The text has *kila*. As a general rule, Vasubandhu uses the word *kila* when the opinion in question is a wrong opinion of the Vaibhāsikas; but here the *Vyākhyā* says: āgamasūcanārthabhi kilasabdabhi.

197. According to *Vibhāṣa* TD p. 369c10 and foll.

198. Unconditioned things are eternal because they do not go from one time period to another time period (*advasamārābhāvāta*, v.25). *Asamskṛta, nitya, dhruva*, (iv.9) and *dravya* (i.38) are synonyms.

199. According to another reading (*kecit paṭhanti*): dharmadṛṣṭom . . .

See *Dhammasaṅgani*, 661.

200. The *Vyākhyā* quotes the conversation of the Brahmin Jātisrona with the Blessed One: indriyāṇindriyāṇi bbo Gautama ucyante /kati bbo Gautama indriyāṇi /kiyatā cendriyāṇāṁ samgraho bhavati . . .

201. The order of the *indriyas* is justified ii.6. We have the order of our Sūtra in *Vibhaṅga*, p. 122, *Kathavatthu*, trans. p. 16, *Visuddhimagga*, xvi; and also in the *Indriyaskandhaka* (TD 26, p. 991b24), sixth book of the *Jñānaprabhāna* (Takakusu, "Abhidharma Literature," *JPTS*, 1905, p. 93).

The small treatise of Anuruddha (*Compendium*, p. 175) follows the same order as the *Prakaraṇapāda*.

The *Mahāvyutpatti* (108) places the vital organ at the end.

202. The last three *indriyas* are made up of (1-3) three sense faculties; (4-8) the five moral faculties; and (9) the mental organ (ii.4); 1-8 are *dharmanābha*. 
CHAPTER TWO

The Indriyas

Om. Homage to the Buddha.

We have enumerated the organs or indriyas with regard to the dhātu (i.48). What is the meaning of the word indriya?

The root idi signifies paramaśvarya or supreme authority (Dhātupāṭha, i.64). Whatever exercises supreme power or authority is called an indriya. Thus, in general, indriya signifies adhipati or ruler.¹

What is the object of the predominating influence of each indriya?

1a. According to the School, five are predominate with regard to things;²

i. Each of the five indriyas of which the organ of sight is the first—the five organs of sense consciousness—is a predominating influence (1) with regard to the beauty of the person; (2) with regard to the protection of the person; (3) with regard to the production of a consciousness and the mental states associated with this consciousness; and (4) with regard to their special mode of activity (Vibbāṣa, TD 27, p. 730a29).

The organs of seeing and hearing are predominating influences (1) with regard to beauty, for the body in which they are missing is not beautiful (i.19); (2) with regard to protection, for by seeing and hearing, a person avoids that which would destroy him; (3) with regard to the production of the seeing and hearing consciousnesses, and of the mental states associated with them; and (4) with regard to their special activities, i.e., seeing visible things and hearing sounds.

The organs of smell, taste, and sensation are predominating influences (1) with regard to beauty, as above; (2) with regard to protection, through the consumption of solid foods (kavaḍikārāhāra,
iii.39); (3) with regard to the production of their three consciousnesses; and (4) with regard to their special activities, i.e., perceiving smells, tasting tastes, and touching tangibles.

lb. Four predominate with regard to two things;

ii. Four indriyas, namely the two sexual organs, the vital organ, and the mental organ are each a predominating influence with regard to two things (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 731b12; see also b23, b5).

1. The sexual organs are the predominating influence (1) with regard to the distribution of living beings: it is by reason of these two that living beings form the categories of male and female; and (2) with regard to the differentiation of living beings: by reason of these two organs, there are, among the sexes, differences of physical form, voice, and manner of being.³

Some other masters⁴ do not admit this explanation. In fact there are sexual differences among the gods of Rūpadhātu who, however, do not possess sexual organs (i.30), and their distribution into sexes results from these differences. Thus, if the sexual organs are the predominating influences from two points of view, they are the predominating influences with regard to defilement and purification: in fact, the three types of eunuchs and bisexual beings are alien (1) to the dharmas of defilement, lack of discipline (iv.13b), mortal transgression (iv.103), the cutting off of the roots of good (iv.80); and (2) to the dharmas of purification, discipline (iv.13b), acquisition of the fruits (vi.51), and detachment (vairāgya, vi.45c) (see ii.19c-d).

2. The vital organ is the predominating influence (1) with regard to the "joining" of the nikāyasabbhāga (ii.41a), i.e., that which concerns the arising of an existing thing; and (2) with regard to "maintaining" this nikayāsabhāga, i.e., that which concerns the prolongation of an existing thing from its arising to its extinction.

3. The mental organ is predominate (1) with regard to rebirth, as the Sūtra explains, "Then there is produced among the Gandharvas, beings in the intermediate existence, one or the other of two minds, a mind of desire or a mind of hatred . . ." (iii.15); (2) with regard to domination: the world and the dharmas submit to the mind. As the
The Indriyas

The stanza says: "The world is lead by the mind, conducted by the mind: (all dharmas obey this one dharma, the mind.)"

iii. The five indriyas of sensation (i.e., the five sensations of pleasure, displeasure, satisfaction, dissatisfaction, and indifference; ii.7,) and the eight indriyas of faith, (force, memory, absorption and discernment (ii.24) and the three pure faculties, ii.10)

lc. Five and eight with regard to defilement and to purification.

are, respectively, predominant with regard to defilement and to purification.

The sensations are predominant with regard to defilement, for the defilements, lust, etc., attach themselves to the sensations, and take shelter therein. Faith and the seven other faculties are predominant with regard to purification, for it is by them that one obtains purity.

According to other masters (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 73b6), the sensations are also predominant with regard to purification, so that the Sūtra says: "sukhitasya cittaṁ samādhiyate, duḥkhopanisacchṛddhā san naiskramyāśritaḥ saumanasyādhayāḥ" ("There are, by reason of visible things, etc., six sensations of satisfaction, six sensations of dissatisfaction, six sensations of indifference, favorable to naiṣkramya.") Such is the explanation of the Vaibhāṣikas.

[The Sautrāntikas criticize this explanation:] (1) the sense organs, the eyes, etc., are not predominant with regard to the protection of the person. Here predominance belongs to the consciousnesses, visual consciousness, hearing consciousness, etc.; and it is after having distinguished that one has avoided anything harmful that one takes solid food. (2) That which you understand as the "proper activity of the organ," namely the seeing of visible things, etc., belongs to the consciousness (i.42) and not to the organ. The explanations relative to the predominance of the other indriyas are equally incorrect.

How then should one understand the predominance of the indriyas?

2a-b. By reason of their predominance (1) with regard to the perception of their special object, (2) with regard to all objects, six organs.
That is, by reason of their predominance through their affinity to the six consciousnesses. The five organs, the first of which is the organ of sight, are predominant through their affinity to the five sense consciousnesses, visual consciousness, etc., each one of which distinguishes its own object, visible things, etc. The mental organ is predominant with regard to the mental consciousness which distinguishes all objects. It is in this way that the six sense organs are predominant.

But, we might say, the sense objects, visibles, etc., are also predominant through their affinity to the consciousness, and as a consequence, should they not also be considered as indriyas?

They are not predominant merely by this. "Predominance" means "predominant power." The eye is predominant, for (1) it exercises this predominance with regard to the arising of the consciousness that knows visible things, being the common cause of all consciousnesses of visible things, whereas each visible thing merely aids the arising of but one consciousness; (2) the visual consciousness is clear or obscure, active or well, accordingly as the eye is active or weak: now visible things do not exercise a similar influence. The same holds for the other sense organs and their objects (i.45a-b).

2c-d. It is by reason of their predominance in masculinity and femininity that one must distinguish two sexual organs within the body.

There are two separate sexual organs within the kāyendriya, or the organ of touch. These two organs are not distinct from the kāyendriya: they too cognize tangible things. But there is a part of the kāyendriya that receives the name of male organ or female organ because this part exercises predominance over masculinity or femininity. Femininity is the physical form, the voice, the hearing, and the dispositions proper to women. The same for masculinity. Since the differences of these two natures are due to these parts of the body, we know that these two parts are predominant through their two natures. Hence they constitute indriyas.

3. It is by reason of their predominance with regard to the
duration of existence, to defilement, to purification, that one considers the vital organ, the sensations, and the five the first of which is faith, as *indriyas*.

1. The vital organ is predominant with regard to the prolongation of existence from birth to death, but not, [as the Vaibhāṣikas say,] with regard to the connection of one existence with another: this connection depends on the mind.

2. The five sensations are predominant with regard to defilement, for the Sūtra says, "Lust finds its shelter in the sensation of pleasure; hatred, in the sensation of displeasure; confusion, in the sensation of indifference." [On this point the Sautrāṇṭikas are in agreement with the Vaibhāṣikas.]

3. The five faculties,—faith, force, memory, absorption, and discernment—are predominant with regard to purification, for, through their power, the defilements are disturbed and the Path is brought about.

4. By reason of their predominance with regard to ascending acquisitions, with regard to Nirvāṇa, etc., the *anājñātamaṇḍyas-yāmindriya*, the *ajñendriya*, and the *ajñātavindriya*, are likewise.

"Likewise," that is, these three are, likewise, considered as predominating influences or *indriyas*. These are the three pure *indriyas*, which will be defined ii.10a-b.

1. The first is predominant through the acquisition of the second.
2. The second is predominant through the acquisition of the third.
3. The third is predominant through the acquisition of Nirvāṇa, or *nirupadhiṣeṣanirvāṇa*. For there is no Parinirvāṇa when the mind is not delivered.

2. The word "et cetera" indicates that there is another explanation:
1. The first is predominant with regard to the extinctions of the defilements which are abandoned through Seeing the Truths (v.4).
2. The second, with regard to the extinction of the defilements which are abandoned through Meditation on the Truths (v.5a).
3. The third, with regard to blessedness-in-this-life, that is, the
experience of the satisfaction (priti = saumanasya) and the well-being (sukha = prasrabhisukha, viii.9b) that comes from deliverance from the defilements. (See below note 22).

***

Why are there only twenty-two indriyas? If you regard a "predominating influence" as an indriya, ignorance and the other parts of pratityasamutpāda (iii.21) would be indriyas, for these causes (avidyā, etc.) are predominant with regard to their effects (the saṃskāras, etc.). In the same way, the voice, hands, feet, the anus, and the penis are predominant with regard to words, grasping, walking (vibarana= caṅkramaṇa), excretion, and pleasure.¹⁷

We would answer that there is no reason to add ignorance, etc., to the list proclaimed by the Blessed One.

In enumerating the indriyas, the Blessed One took into account the following characteristics:

5. The support of the mind; that which subdivides, prolongs, and defiles this support; that which prepares the purification and which does purify it: these are all the indriyas.¹⁸

1. The support of the mind consists of the six organs of consciousness, from the organ of sight to the mental organ. These are the six internal āyatanas (i.39, iii.22) which are the primary constituents of a living being.¹⁹

2. This sixfold support is differentiated by reason of the sexual organs.

3. It lasts for a time by reason of the vital organ.

4. It is defiled by reason of the five sensations.

5. Its purification is prepared by the five moral faculties, faith, etc.

6. It is purified by the three pure faculties.

The dharmas that possess the characteristic of being predominant with regard to the constitution, the subdivision, etc. of a living being are considered to be indriyas. This characteristic is missing in other dharmas, in voice, etc.
6. Or rather there are fourteen indriyas, support of transmigration, origin, duration, enjoyment of this support; the other indriyas have the same function with regard to Nirvāṇa.

The expression “or rather” introduces the explanation of other masters.

(1-6) The six organs (sādāyatana, iii.22), from the organ of sight to the mental organ, are the support, the raison d'être of samsāra.²⁰

(7-8) It is through the sexual organs that the sādāyatanas arise.²¹

(9) It is through the vital organ that the sādāyatanas last.

(10-14) It is through the five sensations that the sādāyatanas enjoy. On the other hand:

(15-19) The five faculties,—faith, force, memory, absorption, discernment,—are the support of Nirvāṇa.

(20) Nirvāṇa is generated, appears for the first time, through the first pure faculty, anājñātamaññāsyyāmīndriya.

(21) Nirvāṇa lasts, is developed, through the second pure faculty, ājñendriya.

(22) Nirvāṇa is “experienced” by the third pure faculty, ājñatā-vindriya, for, through this faculty, one experiences the satisfaction and well-being of deliverance (see above ii.4).

This determines the number of indriyas, as well as the order in which the Sūtra places them.

***

The voice, hands, feet, the anus, and the sexual parts are not indriyas.

1. The voice is not predominant with respect to words, for words suppose a certain instruction;²² 2-3. Hands and feet are not predominant with regard to grasping and walking, for grasping and walking are simply the hands and feet arising a second moment in another place and with a new figure (iv.2b-d). On the other hand, we
see that hands and feet are not indispensable for grasping and walking, for example with snakes. 

4. The anus is not predominant with regard to the expulsion of matter, for heavy things always fall in a void; further, wind pushes this matter and makes it go out; 5. The sexual parts are not predominant with regard to pleasure for pleasure is produced by the sexual organs.

If you consider the hands, the feet, etc., as indriyas, you must then place the throat, the teeth, the eyelids, and the joints, whose function it is to swallow, to chew, to open and close, to fold up and to extend the bones, among the indriyas. In this way, everything that is a cause, which exercises its action (purusakāra, ii.58) with regard to its effects, would be an indriya. But we must reserve the name of indriya to whatever possesses predominance.

***

We have defined the organs of consciousness and the sexual organs (i.9-44); the vital organ will be explained with the cittaviprayuktas (ii.35) among which it is placed; the five faculties,—faith, force, etc.,—being mental states, will be explained with the mental states (ii.24):

We shall examine here the organs of sensation and the pure faculties which are not found anywhere else.

7a-b. Disagreeable bodily sensation is the indriya of pain.

("Bodily" is "that which relates to the body," that which is associated with the five sense consciousnesses, visual consciousness, etc.) "Disagreeable" is that which does harm. Sensation in relation to the five organs of sense consciousness, and which does harm, is called duḥkhendriya.

7b-c. Agreeable is the indriya of pleasure.

"Agreeable" is that which does good, which comforts, is beneficent. Agreeable bodily sensation is termed sukhendriya.

7c-d. In the Third Dhyāna, agreeable mental sensation is also
an *indriya* of pleasure.

(Mental sensation is the sensation associated with mental consciousness.) Agreeable mental sensation of the Third Dhyāna is also called *sukhendriya*, an *indriya* of pleasure. This name, moreover, is reserved for agreeable bodily sensation; but in the Third Dhyāna, bodily sensation is absent because the five sense consciousnesses are not there. Then, when one speaks of the *sukha* or pleasure of the Third Dhyāna, one means agreeable mental sensation (see vii.9).

8a. Moreover, it is satisfaction.

"Moreover," that is, in the stages below the Third Dhyāna, in Kāmadhātu and in the first two Dhyānas, agreeable mental sensation is satisfaction or the *indriya* of satisfaction.

[Agreeable mental sensation is absent above the Third Dhyāna.]

In the Third Dhyāna, agreeable mental sensation is calm and tranquil, because the ascetic, in this Dhyāna, is detached from joy: hence it is pleasure and not satisfaction.27

[Below the Third Dhyāna, agreeable mental sensation is gross and agitated, because, in the stages below the Third Dhyāna, the ascetic is not detached from joy: hence it is "satisfaction." ] Joy, [which has a joyous exaltation for its characteristic,] is not distinct from satisfaction.

8b-c. Disagreeable mental sensation is dissatisfaction.

(Sensation associated with mental consciousness and which harms is dissatisfaction or the *indriya* of dissatisfaction.)

8c. Intermediate bodily or mental sensation is equanimity.

Intermediate sensation, which neither comforts nor harms, is the sensation “neither-pain-nor-pleasure.” This is what is termed the sensation or *indriya* of equanimity.

Is this sensation bodily or mental?

8d. It is both.

(Either bodily or mental, intermediate sensation is a sensation of equanimity.) The sensation of equanimity presents then a double
characteristic; consequently it constitutes only one \textit{indriya}, because there is no \textit{vikalpana} here.

8e. For it has no \textit{vikalpana}.

1. There is no \textit{vikalpana}, or intellectual operation. Either bodily or mental, the sensation of equanimity is equally free from any intellectual element (\textit{vikalpa=abhinirūpanāvikalpa}, i.33). As a general rule, agreeable or disagreeable mental sensation proceeds from a concept, from the concept of "dear" or "hateful," etc. Contrarily, bodily sensation is produced from an external object independent of psychological states: Arhats do not have sympathies and antipathies, they do not conceive of the idea of dear or the idea of hateful, and yet they are subject nevertheless to physical pain and pleasure. Then we should distinguish \textit{indriyas} relative to agreeable and disagreeable sensations accordingly as these sensation are bodily or mental.

But the sensation of equanimity is produced spontaneously, exactly like a physical sensation; it is produced in a person who does not form any concept: hence we recognize that there is but one \textit{indriya} for the two sensations of bodily and mental indifference.

2. There is no \textit{vikalpana} or difference. Accordingly as the agreeable or disagreeable sensations are bodily or mental, they do good or harm according to a mode of operation that is special to them, and they are not felt in the same way. The sensation of equanimity creates neither good or harm; it is not differentiated; mental or physical, it is felt in the same way.

9a-b. Nine \textit{indriyas}, in the Paths of Seeing, of Meditation and of the Āsāikṣa, constitute three \textit{indriyas}.

The mental organ, the sensation of pleasure, the sensation of satisfaction, the sensation of equanimity, and faith, force, memory, absorption and discernment constitute the \textit{anājñātāmājñāsyāmāndriya} for the saint who is on the Path of Seeing; \textit{ājñendriya} for the saint who is on the Path of Meditation on the Truths; and \textit{ājñātavāndriya} for the saint who is on the path of the Āsāikṣa (i.e., the Arhat).30

On the Path of Seeing, the saint is engaged in knowing that
which he does not know \( \text{anājñātam ājñātuṁ pravṛttam} \), namely the Four Truths: he thinks “I will know.” His indriya is then called the \( \text{anājñātamājñāsyāṁindriya} \).\(^{32}\)

On the Path of Meditation on the Truths,\(^ {33}\) the saint does not have anything new to know, he is a wise one or \( ājña \). But in order to cut off the defilements which remain in him, he newly knows and often repeats the Truths that he already knows. His indriya is called the ājñendriya, the indriya of the wise one, or the wise indriya.

On the Path of the Āsaikṣa, the ascetic becomes conscious that he knows: he obtains the knowledge (\( āva=avagama)\(^ {34}\) that the Truths are known (\( ājñātam iti\)). Possessing ājñāta-ava, he is an ājñātāvin, and his indriya is called the ājñātāvindriya.

Or rather, the saint who is an ājñātāvin is one who has for his characteristics or habit knowing that the Truth is known: in fact, when the saint has obtained ksaya-ajñāna and anutpādajñāna (vi.70), he knows in truth, “Pain is known; I have nothing more to know” and the rest.\(^ {35}\)

***

We have explained the specific characteristics of the indriyas. We must explain their different natures: are they pure (9b-d), from retribution (10-llb), good (llc-d)? To what sphere do they belong (12)? How are they abandoned (13)?

***

How many are impure? How many are pure?

9b. Three are clean;

i. The last three indriyas are exclusively clean or pure. Stain (mala) and vice (āsrava) are synonyms.\(^ {36}\)

9c. The material organs, the vital organ and the two painful sensations are impure;

The material organs are seven in number: the five organs, of
seeing, etc., plus the two sexual organs, for all these seven organs are included in rūpaskandha. Together with the vital organ, the sensation of pain, and the sensation of dissatisfaction, ten indriyas in all are exclusively impure.

9d. Nine are of two types.

The mental organ, the sensation of pleasure, the sensation of satisfaction, the sensation of equanimity, and the five moral faculties (faith, force, etc.) are nine indriyas that can be either pure or impure.

ii. According to other masters (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 7c3), the five moral faculties are solely pure, for the Blessed One said: "Whosoever is completely lacking, to whatever degree, any of these five indriyas, faith, etc., I declare him to be a person outside, one who belongs to the class of Prthagjanas." Hence anyone who possesses them, to whatever degree, is an Āryan; hence they are pure.

This text is not proof, for the Blessed One is speaking here of a person in whom the five pure moral faculties are absent. In fact, in the passage that precedes the quotation in question, the Blessed One defines the Āryapudgalas with reference to the five moral faculties. Hence he is referring to only the five moral faculties belonging to the Āryans, that is, pure. Whosoever is lacking them is evidently a Prthagjana.

Or rather, if this passage speaks of moral faculties in general, we would remark that there are two types of Prthagjana (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 8b3): those outside, and those inside; the first have cut off the roots of good (iv.79), whereas the second have not cut them off. It is with reference to the first that the Blessed One said: "I declare him to be a person outside, one who belongs to the class of Prthagjanas." On the other hand, according to the Sūtra, even before setting into motion the Wheel of the Dharma (vi.54), there were in the world persons of sharp, medium, and weak faculties. Hence the moral faculties of faith, etc., are not necessarily and exclusively pure.

Finally, the Blessed One said: "If I do not know truly the origin, the disappearance, the advantages, the disadvantages, the escape of the five faculties of faith, force, etc., I shall not be liberated, gone out,
disassociated, delivered from the world of gods, Māras, and Brahmās,
of a world wherein there are Brahmins and monks; I shall not reside
with a mind free from error . . .”

Now a similar description does not apply to pure dharma, which are free from advantages, from disadvantages, and from escape.

Hence the moral faculties of faith, force, etc., can be either pure or impure.

***

Among the indriyas, how many are retribution (vipāka, ii.57c-d),
and how many are not retribution?

10a. The vital organ is always retribution.

(Only the vital organ (ii.45a-b) is always retribution.)

i. [Objection.] The vital energies (ayuḥsamśkāra, see below) that a
Bhikṣu Arhat stabilizes or increases, are evidently the vital organ. Of
what action is the vital organ thus stabilized or prolonged the
retribution?

The Mulasāstra (the Jñānaprasthāna, TD 26, p. 981a12) says:
"How does a Bhikṣu stabilize the vital energies? An Arhat in
possession of supernormal power (ṛddhimān-prāptābhijñāḥ, vii.42), in
possession of the mastery of mind, i.e., one who is asamayavimuktā
(vi.56, 64), gives, either to the Saṅgha or to a person, things useful to
life, clothing, pots, etc.: after having given these things, he applies this
thought to his life; he then enters into the Fourth or prāntakoṣika
Dhyāna (vii.41); coming out of the absorption, he produces the
thought and pronounces the words: 'May this action which should
produce a retribution-in-joy be transformed and produce a retribution-
in-life!' Then the action (the gift and the absorption) which should
produce a retribution-in-joy produces a retribution-in-life."

According to other masters, the prolonged life of an Arhat is the
result of the retribution of a previous action. According to them, there
is a remnant of the result of retribution-in-life which should have
ripened in a previous life, but which was interrupted by death before
its time (ii.45). And it is the force of the absorption of the Fourth Dhyāna that attracts this remnant and makes this remnant ripen now.

[The Mulasāstra continues] "How does a Bhikṣu cast off the vital energies? An Arhat in possession of supernormal powers . . . enters into the Fourth Dhyāna . . . ; coming out of this absorption, he produces the thought and pronounces these words: 'May the action that should produce a retribution-in-life be transformed and produce a retribution-in-joy!' Then the action that should produce a retribution-in-life produces a retribution-in-joy."

The Bhadanta Ghoṣaka said: By the force of the prāntakoṭikā Dhyāna that this Arhat produced, the primary elements of Rūpadhātu are attracted and introduced into his body. These primary elements are favorable to, or contrary to, the vital energies. It is in this manner that the Arhat prologues or casts off his life.

Along with the Saurāntikas, we say that the Arhats, through their mastery in absorption, cause the projection of the constitutive primary elements of the organs for a certain period of duration, a projection due to previous actions, to cease; inversely, they produce a new projection, born of absorption. Thus the vital organ, in the case of the prolonged life of an Arhat, is not retribution. But in other cases, it is retribution.

ii. One question gives rise to another.

1. Why does the Arhat prologue his vital energies? For two reasons: with a view to the good of others, and with a view to the longer duration of the Dharma. He sees that his life is going to end; he sees that others are incapable of assuring these two ends.

2. Why does the Arhat cast off his vital energies?

For two reasons: he sees that his dwelling in this world has only a small utility for the good of others, and so sees himself tormented by sickness, etc. As the stanza says:

"If the religious life has been well practiced, and the Way well cultivated, at the end of his life, he is happy, as at the disappearance of sickness."

3. Who, and in what place, extends or casts off his life?
In the three Dvipas (iii.53), male or female, a asamayavimukta Arhat who possesses prântakoti Dhyâna (vi.56, 64): in fact, he possesses the mastery of absorption and he is free from the defilements. 48

4. According to the Sûtra, the Blessed One, after having extended the jîvita samîkâras, casts off the samîkâras of âyus 49

One asks 1.) what difference is there between the samîkâras of jîvita and of âyus; and 2.) what is the meaning of the plural “the samîkâras?” 50

On the first point: 51

a. According to certain masters, there is no difference. In fact, the Mûlaşästra (the Jñânapraṣṭhâna, TD 26, p. 993b2; see the Prakaraṇapâda TD 26, p. 694a23; see also the Vibhâsa, TD 27, p. 732b27) says: “What is the vital organ? It is the âyus in the Three Dhâtus.”

b. According to others 52 the expression âyuh-samîkâras designates life which is the result of actions in a previous life; the expression jîvita-samîkâras designates life which is the result of actions in this life (gifts to the Saṅgha, etc.).

c. According to other masters, 53 the âyuh-samîkâras are that by which existence lasts; the jîvita-samîkâras are that by which life is prolonged for a little while.

On the second point:

a. The Sûtra uses the plural because the Saint extends or casts off many samîkâras. There is no advantage, in fact, in extending a moment, or in casting off a moment: it is only by means of a series of moments that the Saint can procure the good of others; on the other hand, a moment cannot be a cause of suffering.

b. According to another opinion, the plural condemns the teaching according to which the jîvita or the âyus is an entity susceptible of duration. 54

c. According to another opinion, 55 the plural condemns the teaching of the Sarvâstivâdins that see an entity or dharma in the jîvita and âyus. The terms jîvita and âyus designate a number of samîkâras existing simultaneously and belonging either to four or five skandhas according to their sphere of existence. If it were otherwise, the Sûtra
would not use the expression “the jīvita-skandhas;” it would say “The Blessed One extends some jīvitas, and casts off some āyus.”

5. Why does the Blessed One cast off [death] and extend [life]?

With the aim of showing that he possesses mastery over death, he casts off death; with the aim of showing that he possesses mastery over life, he extends it. He extends it for a period of three months, no more, no less; after three months, there is nothing more to do for his followers, after his task is well achieved, for, short of three months, he would leave his task unachieved. 56

Or rather, 57 with the aim of realizing this vow: “Any Bhikṣu who has well cultivated the four supernormal powers (ṛddhipāda, vi.69b), can live, if he so desires, a kalpa or more.” 58

The Vaibhāṣikas 59 say: “The Blessed One casts off or extends with the aim of showing that he triumphs over the Māra who is the skandhas, and over the Māra who is death. In the first watch of the night, under the Bodhi Tree, he has already triumphed over the Māra who is a demon, and, in the third watch, over the Māra who is the defilements (Ekottarikā, TD 2, p. 760b17 and following).” 60

10a-b. Twelve are of two types.

Which twelve?

10b-c. With the exception of the last eight and dissatisfaction.

With the exception of the vital organ, which is always retribution, and of the nine that will be mentioned below (10b-c) which are never retribution, the remaining twelve are of two types, sometimes retribution, and sometimes non-retribution. This refers to the seven material organs, to the mental organ and to the four sensations, the sensation of dissatisfaction being excluded.

1. The seven material organs (organ of seeing, . . . male organ) are not retribution to the extent that they arise from accumulation (avacayika, i.37). In other cases, they are retribution.

2. The mental organ and the four organs of sensation are not retribution 1.) when they are good or soiled, for whatever is retribution is morally neutral (avyākṛta, ii.57); 2.) when, still being neutral, they
are, according to their type, either airyāpathika, śailpasthānika, or nairmāṇika (ii.72). In other cases, they are retribution.

3. The last eight, faith, etc., the anājñātamājñasyāmīndriya, etc., are good and consequently are not retribution.

4. But, we would say, how can one affirm that dissatisfaction is never retribution? In fact, the Sūtra says, “There is an action liable to result in satisfaction, there is an action liable to result in dissatisfaction, and there is an action liable to result in a sensation of equanimity.”

[According to the Vaibhāṣikas,] the expression daurmanasya-vedaniya should be understood not as “an action that should be experienced, resulting in a sensation of dissatisfaction,” but rather as “an action with which a sensation of dissatisfaction is associated.” In fact, the Sūtra says that contact is sukha-vedaniya: now pleasure (sukha) is not the retribution of contact. From all evidence, sukha-vedaniya contact is contact with which a sensation of pleasure is associated. Hence daurmanasya-vedaniya action is action with which a sensation of dissatisfaction is associated.

[We would answer:] You should explain the expressions saurmanasya-vedaniya and upeksa-vedaniya as you explain the expression daurmanasya-vedaniya, since the three expressions figure in the same context in the Sūtra. It follows that a saurmanasya-vedaniya action is an action “with which the sensation of satisfaction is associated,” not an action “liable to retribution in satisfaction;” and it follows that as a consequence, the sensation of satisfaction is not retribution.

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] We see no problem in explaining the expression saurmanasya-vedaniya either as “liable to retribution in satisfaction” or as “that with which satisfaction is associated.” But the second explanation of vedaniya is only valid for the expression daurmanasya-vedaniya. It refers to an action with which dissatisfaction is associated.

[We answer:] One could admit your interpretation of the Sūtra if there were no other issue, that is, if it had been rationally established that dissatisfaction is not retribution.

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] Dissatisfaction is produced by the imagination, when one thinks of something that he fears; he is assuaged in the same
way: when he thinks of something that he desires. Now such is not the case with retribution.

[But, we would say,] this is the case for satisfaction which will consequently not be retribution.

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] If, as you maintain, dissatisfaction is retribution, when a person has committed a serious transgression and then experiences, with regard to it, dissatisfaction and remorse (kaukṛtya, ii.29d), one could say that the transgression has already brought forth a ripened result—which is inadmissible (ii.56a).

But you admit that satisfaction is retribution, and we would reason as you have just done: when a person has accomplished a meritorious action and thereby experiences satisfaction, then this action immediately brings forth a result of retribution.

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] Persons detached from desire do not possess the indriya of dissatisfaction; now, they possess the indriyas which are retribution, the organ of seeing, etc.; hence the indriya of dissatisfaction is not retribution.

[But, we would say,] how could such detached persons possess a satisfaction which would be retribution by its nature? Without doubt, they possess a satisfaction that arises from absorption, but this satisfaction is good, and it is then not retribution. They do not possess any other.

The fact is that persons so detached possess the indriya of satisfaction, which can be the nature of this indriya, whether it be retribution or not, whereas dissatisfaction is never produced among them. Hence, the Vaibhāṣikas conclude, the indriya of dissatisfaction is not retribution.

5. Eight indriyas,—the five organs of sense consciousness, the vital organ, and the sexual organs,—are, in a good rebirth, the retribution of good action; in a bad rebirth, they are the retribution of bad action.

The mental organ, in a good rebirth or in a bad rebirth, is retribution for good action or for bad action.

The sensations of pleasure, of satisfaction, and of equanimity are retribution for good actions.

The sensation of dislike is the retribution for a bad action.
The material organs, in a good rebirth, are, we say, retribution for good actions. To an androgyne, in a good rebirth, both organs are the retribution for good action, but the quality of being an androgyne is obtained through bad action.\(^67\)

***

Among the twenty-two indriyas, how many “have retribution?” How many are “without retribution?”

10a. Only one (i.e., dissatisfaction) has retribution;\(^68\)

1. Dissatisfaction always has retribution, for, on the one hand, it is never neutral, being the result of a concept (vikalpavīśeṣa: the idea of a thing liked, or of a thing hated, etc., ii.8c); but, on the other hand, it is never pure, never being produced in a state of absorption.

10b. Ten (namely, the mental organ, the four sensations—with the exception of dissatisfaction—, and faith and its following) are twofold (i.e., admit of retribution, as well as being without retribution).

2. The first eight indriyas (organ of sight, etc.; vital organ, sexual organs) never have retribution, because they are neutral; the last three (anājñatamājñasyāmindaṇḍriya, etc.) never have retribution, because they are pure (anāśrava, iv.80).

lla-b. The mental organ (the four sensations, with the exception of dissatisfaction), and faith and its following;

3. As for the ten remaining indriyas:

The mental organ, the sensations of pleasure, satisfaction, and indifference, have retribution when they are bad or good-impure; they are without retribution when they are neutral or pure.

***

Among the twenty-two indriyas, how many are good, how many
are bad, and how many are neutral?

11c. Eight are good;\(^69\)

Eight, faith, etc., the \(anājñātamājñasyāmāndriya\), etc., are only good.\(^{10}\)

11d. Dissatisfaction is of two types;

Dissatisfaction is good or bad (ii.28).

11e. The mental organ, and the sensations,—with the excep-
tion of dissatisfaction,—are of three types.

The mental organ and the four sensations are good, bad, or neutral.

11f. The others, of one type.

The organ of sight, etc., the vital organ, and the sexual organs are neutral.

***

Among the twenty-two indriyas, how many belong to each of the three spheres of existence?

12. The pure indriyas are absent from Kāmadhātu;

1. All of the indriyas are in the sphere of Kāmadhātu, with the exception of the last three, the immaculate or pure indriyas: these are not connected with the spheres of existence, rather, they transcend the spheres of existence. Thus nineteen indriyas, excluding the last three, are in the sphere of Kāmadhātu.

12b-c. The sexual organs and the two disagreeable sensations are absent from Rūpadhātu.

2. Excluding furthermore the two sexual organs and the two disagreeable sensations, the sensation of suffering and dissatisfaction, there are fifteen indriyas remaining in Rūpadhātu that are common to the first two spheres of existence (viii.12a-b).
(a) The sexual organs are absent from Rūpadhātu 1.) because the beings who are born in this sphere have abandoned the desire for sexual union, and 2.) because these organs are ugly (i.30b-d).

Nevertheless the Sūtra says: “That a female being is Brahmā—such does not happen, that is impossible. That a male being is Brahmā—such happens, that is possible.” It appears that this Sūtra would pose difficulties.

No. Beings of Rūpadhātu are males without possessing the male organ. They possess the other aspects of masculinity that one sees among the males of Kāmadhātu, namely bodily form, sound of the voice, etc. (ii.2c-d).

(b). The sensation of suffering (duḥkha, physical suffering) is absent from Rūpadhātu (1) because of the “fluidity” or transparency of the body, from whence there is absence of pain produced by hurt; and (2) because of the absence of bad actions liable to retribution, from whence the absence of suffering “arisen from retribution.”

(c). The sensation of dissatisfaction is absent (1) because beings in Rūpadhātu are penetrated by calm; and (2) because all causes of irritation are absent.

12d. And all the material organs and the two agreeable sensations are absent from Ārūpyadhātu.

3. Excluding furthermore the material organs (eyes, etc, vii.3c), and the sensations of pleasure and satisfaction, there remains in Ārūpyadhātu the mental organ, the vital organ, the sensation of equanimity, and faith and its following (i.31).

***

Among the twenty-two indriyas, how many are abandoned through Seeing the Truths? How many through Meditation? How many are not abandoned?

13a. The mental organ and three sensations belong to three categories;
1. The mental organ, the sensations of pleasure, satisfaction and equanimity, are of three types.

13b. Dissatisfaction is abandoned (through Seeing and Meditation);

2. Dissatisfaction is abandoned through Seeing and through Meditation, for, never being pure, it is always an object of abandoning.

13c. Nine are abandoned through Meditation alone;

3. Nine indriyas, namely the five sense organs and the two sexual organs, the vital organ, and the sensation of dissatisfaction, are only of the class “abandoned through Mediation,” for (1) the first eight are not soiled; (2) the ninth does not arise from the mind (asahtha, 1.40); and (3) all are always impure.

13d. Five are either abandoned through Meditation or are not abandoned;

4. The five indriyas, the first of which is faith, (1) are not soiled, and hence are not abandoned through Seeing; (2) being able to be pure, they are able to be "not the object of abandoning."

13e. Three are not abandoned.

5. The last three (anajntamajnasyamindriya etc.) are not abandoned, (1) because they are pure, and (2) dharmas without defects are not to be rejected.

***

How many indriyas, having retribution for their nature, do beings in the different spheres of existence possess from their origins?

14a. In the Kāmas, beings possess from their origins two indriyas that are from retribution,73

The organ of touch and the vital organ.

14b. With the exception of apparitional beings.
1. In Kamadhatu, beings that are born from a womb, from eggs, and from perspiration (iii.8) possess from their origin, i.e., from their conception, two indriyas which are from retribution, namely the organ of touch and the vital organ. It is only gradually that the other indriyas appear among them.

Why is not the mental organ and the sensation of equanimity counted herein?

Because, at conception, both of these are always soiled; hence they are not from retribution, they are not retribution (iii.38).

How many do apparitional beings possess?

14c. Some possess six;

2. (Apparitional beings, iii.9, possess six, seven or eight indriyas.) Beings without sex, namely beings at the beginning of the cosmic age (iii.98), possess six: the five organs of sense consciousness, plus the vital organ.

14d. Or seven.

Beings with sex possess seven indriyas, like the gods.

14e. Or eight

Bisexual beings possess eight indriyas. But can apparitional beings be bisexual? Yes, in bad rebirths.

14f. In Rupadhatu, six;

Kamadhatu is called "the Kamas," because of the primary role that belongs, in this sphere, to the kāmagūnas or objects of desire (i.22b-d). Rupadhatu is called "the Rūpas," because of the primary role of the rūpas. The Sūtra employs this manner of speaking: "These calm deliverances, beyond the rūpas . . ." The Sūtra employs this manner of speaking: "These calm deliverances, beyond the rūpas . . ."

3. In Rupadhatu, beings, from their origins, possess six indriyas which are from retribution, like apparitional beings without sex in Kamadhatu.

14d. Above, one.
4. "Above" means in Ārūpyadhātu. This sphere of existence is not situated above Rūpadhātu (iii.3); but it is said to be above it because it is superior to Rūpadhātu from the point of view of absorption: the absorptions of Ārūpyadhātu are cultivated after those of Rūpadhātu; and because it outweights it from the point of view of its mode of existence, from the point of view of the duration of its existence.

In this sphere of existence, beings initially possess one *indriya* which is of retribution, the vital organ.

***

We have explained how many *indriyas*, of the nature of retribution, are obtained at conception. Now how many *indriyas* perish at death?

15a. In Ārūpyadhātu, dying destroys the vital organ, the mental organ, and the sensation of indifference; in Rūpadhātu, it destroys eight *indriyas*;

In Rūpadhātu one must add the five organs of sense consciousness, the organ of sight, etc. In fact, apparitional beings are born and die with all their organs.

15b. In Kāmadhātu, ten, nine, eight;

In Kāmadhātu, death takes place either at one stroke or gradually. In the first case, eight, nine or ten *indriyas* die, accordingly as the being is without sex, with sex, or bisexual.

16a. Or four when death is gradual.

In the second case four *indriyas* die lastly and together; the organ of touch, the vital organ, the mental organ and the organ of indifference. These four *indriyas* die at the same time.

The preceding concerns the case where the mind of the dying person is soiled or not-soiled-neutral.

16b. In the case of a good death, add all five *indriyas*.

If one's mind is good, one should, in the three spheres of existence,
add the five moral faculties, faith, etc.\textsuperscript{77}

A being in Arupadhatu, at death, abandons at the last moment the three \textit{indriyas} named in the Karika.

\textbf{***}

In the Teaching of the \textit{Indriyas}\textsuperscript{78} all of the characteristics of the \textit{indriyas} are examined, both their natures and their operations. We ask then how many \textit{indriyas} come into play in the acquisition of the results of the religious life (\textit{srāmānyaphala}, vi.52).

16c. One obtains the two highest results through nine \textit{indriyas};

The highest results are the results of Srotāpāpanna and Arhat, for these two results are the first and last. The intermediary fruits are found between the the first and the last.

1. The result of Srotāpāpanna (vi.35c) is obtained through nine \textit{indriyas}: the mental organ, equanimity,\textsuperscript{79} and the five moral faculties, faith, etc.; \textit{anājñātamaññāsyānindriya} and \textit{ājñendriya} (ii.10a-b).\textsuperscript{80}

\textit{Anājñātamaññāsyānindriya} constitutes \textit{ānantaryamārga} (vi.30c), and \textit{ājña} constitutes \textit{vimuktimārga}:\textsuperscript{81} it is through these two \textit{indriyas} that one obtains the result of Srotāpāpanna, for the first encourages the possession of disjunction from the defilements (\textit{visamīyoga}, ii.55d 1, vi.52); the second supports and makes firm this possession.\textsuperscript{82}

2. The result of Arhat (vi.45) is obtained through nine \textit{indriyas}: the mental organ, either satisfaction, pleasure or indifference, the five moral faculties, \textit{ājñendriya} and \textit{ājñātavindriya}.

Here \textit{ājñendriya} constitutes \textit{ānantaryamārga}, and \textit{ājñātavindriya} constitutes \textit{vimuktimārga}.\textsuperscript{83}

16d. The two intermediary results through seven, eight or nine.

3. The result of Sakṛdāgāmin (vi.36) is obtained either by an \textit{ānupūrvaka} (vi.33a)—an ascetic who, before pursuing the acquisition of the result of Sakṛdāgāmin, has obtained the result of Srotāpāpanna; or by a \textit{bhūyovitarāga} (vi.29c-d)—an ascetic who, before entering into the pure path, i.e., into the comprehension of the Truths, has freed
himself through the impure, worldly path, from the first six categories of defilements of Kāmadhātu: consequently, when he has achieved the Path of Seeing the Truths, he becomes a Sākṛdāgāmin without having been a Srotāpañña first.\textsuperscript{84}

The \textit{anupūrvaka}—a Srotāpañña—obtains the result of Sākṛdāgāmin either through a worldly path, which does not admit of Meditation on the Truths, or through the Pure Path. In the first case, he possesses seven \textit{indriyas}: the mental organ, indifference, and the five moral faculties; in the second case, eight \textit{indriyas}: the same plus ājñen\textit{driya}.

The \textit{bhūyovītarāga}—who is a Prthagjana—obtains the result of Sākṛdāgāmin by means of nine \textit{indriyas}. He realizes the comprehension of the Truths; he then realizes \textit{anājñatamājñāsyāmāndriya} and ājñen\textit{driya}, as in the acquisition of the result of Srotāpañña.

4. The result of Anāgāmin is obtained either by an \textit{anupūrvaka}—the ascetic who has already obtained the previous results,—or by a \textit{vītarāga}—the ascetic who, without having entered into the Pure Path, has freed himself from the nine categories of defilements of Kāmadhātu, or from the defilements of the higher stages, up to and including Ākiriñcanyāyatana.

The \textit{anupūrvaka} obtains the result of Anāgāmin through seven or eight \textit{indriyas}, according to whether he uses the worldly path or the Pure Path, as the above \textit{anupūrvaka} obtains the result of Sākṛdāgāmin.

The \textit{vītarāga} obtains the result of Anāgāmin through the comprehension of the truths, through nine \textit{indriyas}, as the above \textit{bhūyovītarāga} obtains the result of Sākṛdāgāmin.

These general definitions call for more precision.

1. The \textit{vītarāga} obtains the result of Anāgāmin by “understanding the Truths.” In order to understand the Truths, he places himself either in an absorption of the Third Dhyāna, an absorption of either the First or the Second Dhyāna, an absorption of \textit{anāgamyā} or \textit{dhyānāntara}, or of the Fourth Dhyāna: according to the case, his \textit{indriya} of sensation is the \textit{indriya} of pleasure, satisfaction, or equanimity.

Contrarily, the \textit{bhūyovītarāga} always obtains the result of Sākṛdāgāmin with the \textit{indriya} of indifference.
2. The ānupūrvaka who seeks for the result of Anāgāmin within the absorption of anāgamyā, can, when his moral faculties are strong, depart at the last moment (the ninth vimuktimārga) of the anāgamyā and enter into the First or Second Dhyana.

When he expels the defilements through the worldly path, it is then through eight, and not seven indriyas, that he obtains the result: in fact, the anāgamyā to which the next to last moment (ninth ānantaryamārga) belongs, admits of the sensation of equanimity, and the First or Second Dhyana, within which the last moment takes place, admits of the sensation of satisfaction. Disjunction from the defilements results then from equanimity and from satisfaction; in this same way we have seen that disjunction, in the case of the Srotaāpanna, results from ājnāsyāmindriya and ājnendriya.

When he expels the defilements through the pure path, that is, through Meditation on the Truths, one must add the ājnendriya as a ninth indriya. Ānantaryamārga and vimuktimārga are both two ājnendriyas.

---

We read in the Mūlaśāstra (Jñānaprasthāna, TD 26, p. 994cl): "Through how many indriyas is the quality of Arhat obtained? By eleven."

In fact, the quality of Arhat is obtained, as we have said, through nine indriyas. The Śāstra answers, "By eleven," for it does not speak with reference to the acquisition of the quality of Arhat, but with respect to the person who acquires this quality.

17a-b. It is said that the quality of Arhat is obtained through eleven indriyas, because a determined person can so obtain them.

A saint can fall many times from the quality of Arhat (vi.58) and reobtain it by means of diverse absorptions, sometimes with the indriyas of pleasure (Third Dhyāna), sometimes with that of satisfaction (First and Second Dhyāna), or sometimes with that of equanimity.
(anāgamyā, etc.). But the three indriyas never coexist.

But, one would say, why does the Sūtra not speak from this same point of view when it speaks of the quality of Anāgāmin?

The case is different. It does not hold that the saint, fallen from the result of Anāgāmin, gains it again by means of the indriya of pleasure. On the other hand, the vītarāga, the person detached from all the defilements of Kāmadhātu, and who has obtained the result of Anāgāmin cannot fall from this result, because his detachment is obtained through two paths: it is produced through the worldly path and confirmed through the Pure Path.

***

How many indriyas does the person possess who possesses such indriyas?

17c-d. He who possesses the mental organ or the vital organ or the organ of equanimity necessarily possesses three indriyas.

He who possesses one of these three organs necessarily possesses the other two: when one of them is absent, the other two are also absent.

The possession of the other indriyas is not so determined. He who possesses these three organs may or may not possess the others.

1. A being born in Ārūpyadhatu does not possess the organs of seeing, hearing, smelling, or taste. A being in Kāmadhātu does not possess these organs when he has not yet acquired them (beginning of embryonic life) or when he has lost them (through blindness, etc., or through gradual death).

2. A being born in Ārūpyadhātu does not possess the organ of touch.

3. A being born in Ārūpyadhātu or Rūpadhātu does not possess the female organ. A being born in Kāmadhātu cannot possess it when he had not acquired it or when he has lost it. The same for the male organ.

4. A Prthagjana born in the Fourth Dhyāna, in the Second
Dhyāna, or in the Ārūpyas, does not possess the organ of pleasure.

5. A Prthagjana born in the Fourth Dhyana, in the Third Dhyana, or in the Ārūpyas, does not possess the organ of satisfaction.

6. A being born in Rūpadhātu or in Ārūpyadhātu does not possess the organ of displeasure.

7. A detached person does not possess the organ of dissatisfaction.

8. A person who has cut off the roots of good (iv.79) does not possess the five moral faculties, faith, etc.

9. Neither a Prthagjana nor a Saint in possession of a result possesses anajñatamājnasyāmīndriya.

10. The Prthagjana, the Saint who is in the Path of the Seeing the Truths (vi.31a-b) and the Arhat do not possess ājnendriya.

11. The Prthagjana and the Śaiksas do not possess ājnātavindriya.

This enumeration permits us to establish those indriyas possessed by those categories of non-specified beings.

18a. He who possesses the organ of pleasure or the organ of touch certainly possesses four organs.

He who possesses the organ of pleasure also possesses the vital organ, the mental organ, and the organ of equanimity. He who possesses the organ of touch does possesses these same three indriyas.

18b. He who possesses one of the organs of sense consciousness necessarily possesses five organs.

He who possesses the organ of sight also possesses the vital organ, the mental organ, the organ of indifference and the organ of touch. The same for him who possesses the organ of hearing, etc.

18c. The same for him who possesses the organ of satisfaction.

He who possesses the organ of satisfaction also possesses the vital organ, the mental organ, the organ of equanimity and the organ of pleasure.

But, one would ask, what sort of organ of pleasure can a being possess who is born in the heaven of the Second Dhyāna and who does not therein cultivate the absorption of the Third Dhyāna?
He possesses the organ of defiled pleasure of the Third Dhyāna.

18. He who possesses the organ of displeasure certainly possesses seven organs.

This being evidently belongs to Kāmadhātu since he possesses the organ of displeasure. He necessarily possesses the vital organ, the mental organ, the organ of touch and four organs of sensation: the organ of dissatisfaction is not in him when he is detached.

18d-19a. Whoever possesses the female organ, etc., necessarily possesses eight organs.90

One should understand: Whoever possesses the female organ, or the male organ, or the organ of dissatisfaction, or one of the moral faculties,—faith, force, memory, absorption, and discernment.

He who possesses a sexual organ necessarily possesses, in addition to this organ, seven organs, which have been specified in 18c-d, for this being evidently belongs to Kāmadhātu.

He who possesses the organ of dissatisfaction necessarily possesses, in addition to this organ, these same seven organs.

He who possesses one of the moral faculties can be born in any of the three spheres of existence; he necessarily possesses the five moral faculties, which are seen together, plus the vital organ, the mental organ, and the organ of indifference.

19b. He who possesses ājnendriya or ājnātavindriya necessarily possesses eleven organs.

These are the vital organ, the mental organ, the organs of pleasure, satisfaction, and equanimity;91 the five moral faculties; and the eleventh, which is either ājnendriya or ājnātavindriya.

19c. He who possesses ājnāsyāmindriya necessarily possesses thirteen organs.

In fact, it is only in Kāmadhātu that one cultivates the Path of Seeing the Truths (vi.55). Thus the possessor of this āndriya is a being in Kāmadhātu. He necessarily possesses the vital organ, the mental
organ, the organ of touch, the four organs of sensation, the five moral faculties and ājñāsyāṃḍriya. He does not necessarily possess the organ of dissatisfaction, nor the organs of sight, etc.; in fact, he can be “detached,” in which case dissatisfaction is not in him; he can be blind, etc.92

***

What is the smallest number of organs it is possible for a being to possess? (Vibhāṣa TD 27, p. 767b5-11).

20a-b. A being who is lacking any good at all possesses a minimum of eight organs, the organ of touch, sensations, the vital organ, and the mental organ.

A being who is lacking good is one who has cut off the roots of good. He necessarily belongs to Kāmadhātu (iv.79); he cannot be “detached.” Thus he necessarily possesses the organs enumerated.

“Sensation” in the Kārikā is vid. That is, “one who feels” (vedayate) by understanding kartari kvip; or “sensation” (vedanā) (bhāvasādhana: avādikāḥ kvip).

20c. It is the same with an ignorant person who is born in Ārūpyadhātu;

The Prthagjana is termed ignorant (because he has not seen the Truths).

20d. He possesses eight organs, namely, equanimity, life, the mental organ, and the good organs.

The good organs are the moral faculties, faith, etc. Since it is a question of an ignorant person, and since the total is eight, the pure organs (ājñāsyāmi, etc.) are not alluded to here by the author.

***

What are the largest number of organs it is possible for a being to
possess?

21a-b. At the maximum, nineteen: [a bisexual being,] with the exception of the immaculate organs.

A bisexual being necessarily belongs to Kāmadhātu. He is not "detached;" he can possess the moral faculties; and he can possess all the organs of sense consciousness. But he is a Prthagjana: thus he necessarily lacks the pure organs (ājñāsyaāmi, etc.).

The pure organs are termed "immaculate" in the Kārikā. The ājñāsyaāmi, the ājñā and the ājñātāvin are pure because they are not in relation with the vices either in the quality of an object, or through association (v.17).

21c. The Āryan, not detached, can possess all the organs,

The Āryan who is not detached, and hence a Śaikṣa and not an Arhat, possesses at most nineteen organs.

21d. With the exception of a sexual organ and two pure organs.

One must exclude either the male organ, or the female organ; one must exclude the ājñātāvindriya in all cases; furthermore, one must exclude the ājñendriya when the Śaikṣa is in the path of Seeing the Truths, or the ājñāsyaāmāvindriya when the Śaikṣa is in the Path of Absorption in the Truths.93

***

[ii. Atoms or paramāṇus.]

The conditioned dharmas (i.7a) are, as we have seen, of different natures—physical matter, sensation, ideas, etc. One asks if, in the same way, they arise independently one from another; or rather if, in certain cases, they necessarily arise together.

Certain conditioned dharmas are divided into five categories: rūpa or physical matter; citta or the mind; caittas, mental states or dharmas associated with the mind (ii.23-34); cittaviprayuktas, i.e., saṁskāras not
associated with the mind (ii.35-48); and the *asamśkrta* or unconditioned *dharmas*. These last are unarisen (i.5, ii.58): we do not have to occupy ourselves with them here.

We shall first study the simultaneous arising of the material *dharmas*.

22. In Kāmadhātu, an atom into which there is no entry of sound, and into which there is no entry of any organ, is made up of eight substances;\(^94\)

By *paramānu*, we do not understand here a *paramānu* in its proper sense, a *dravyaparamānu*, an atom or monad which is a thing, a substance (*dravya*, i.13), but a *samghataparamānu*, a molecule, i.e., the most subtle among the aggregates of matter, for there is nothing, among the aggregates of matter, which is more subtle.\(^95\)

1. In Kāmadhātu, the molecule into which sound does not enter, and into which no organ enters, is made up of eight substances, but of no less than eight: namely the four primary elements (*mahābhūtas*, i.12c), and the four derived elements,—visibles (*rūpa*, i.10a), odors, tastes, and tangibles (ii.50c-d; 65a-b).

22b. When the organ of touch enters into it, it is made up of nine substances;

2. The molecule into which sound does not enter, but into which the organ of touch\(^96\) enters, admits of a ninth substance, the *dravya* which is the organ of touch.

22c. When any other organ enters into it, it is made up of ten substances.\(^97\)

3. The molecule into which sound does not enter, but into which all other organs other than the organ of touch (the organ of sight, *cakṣurindriya*, etc.) enter, consists of a tenth substance, the *dravya* that is this other organ (organ of sight, etc.): for the organs of seeing, hearing, etc. do not exist independently of the organ of touch nor do they constitute distinct *āyatanas*.

4. When sound enters into the aforementioned aggregates, the
total rises to nine, ten, or eleven substances: in fact, sound which is produced by the primary elements that form part of the organism (upātta, i.10b) does not exist independently of the organs.\textsuperscript{98}

5. If the four primary elements, earth element, etc., are never disassociated, but coexist in every aggregate or molecule, how is it that, in any given aggregate, one perceives either solidity, or viscosity, or heat, or movement, and not these four substances or characteristics at one given time?

One perceives in any given aggregate those substances (dravya, earth element, etc.) that are most active in it, and not the others. In the same way, when one touches a pile of pieces of plants and needles,\textsuperscript{99} one perceives the needles; when one eats some salted soup, one perceives the taste of salt.

How does one know that a given aggregate consists of the primary elements when their presence in it is not perceived?

All of the primary elements manifest their presence through their own actions, namely support (dṛṣṭi), cohesion (saṅgraha), maturing (pakti), and expansion (vyūhana) (i.12c).\textsuperscript{100}

According to another opinion, that of the Bhadanta Śrīlābha, the aggregates are made up of the four primary elements, since, given the action of certain causes, solid things become liquid, etc.\textsuperscript{101} The fire element exists in water, since this latter is more or less cold, a fact which is explained by the presence of the element of fire in a more or less great quantity.

But, we would say, whether cold is more or less active does not imply that there has been a mixture of a certain substance (dravya), the cold, with its opposite, heat. So too sound and sensation, even though homogeneous, vary in intensity.

According to another opinion, [that of the Sautrāntikas,] the primary elements which are not perceived in a given aggregate exist in the state of potentiality, and not in action, and not in and of themselves. Thus the Blessed One was able to say (Sarvāyuktāgama, TD 2, p., 129a3), "There are many dhātus or mineral substances in this piece of wood."\textsuperscript{102} The Blessed One meant that this piece of wood contained the seeds, the potentialities of many dhātus; for gold, silver,
etc., do not exist in the wood at the present time.

[The Sautrāntikas again object:] How does one prove the presence of color in wind?\textsuperscript{103}

[The Vaibhāṣikas answer:] This is an object of faith (\textit{sṛaddhanīya}), and not of reasoning (\textit{anumeya}). Or rather physical matter exists in the wind, since one perceives smell by reason of the contact of the wind with an object possessing an odor; now odor is never disassociated from physical matter.\textsuperscript{104}

6. We know that odor and taste are missing in Rūpadhātu (i.30); one must then reduce the number of molecules in Rūpadhātu. We will have six, seven, or eight substances, and when sound intervenes, seven, eight, or nine. We shall not explain this in detail.

7. (Objection. The Vaibhāṣikas say that molecules in Kāmadhātu consist of, at a minimum, eight \textit{dravyas}, eight things or substances.) Are we to understand \textit{dravyas} as individual substances, as things that have their own characteristics,\textsuperscript{105} or as \textit{āyatanas} that one can term \textit{dravyas}, substances, since they each possess distinctive general characteristics?\textsuperscript{106}

In the first hypothesis the numbers proposed are too few. A molecule, you say, consists of four “derived elements,” \textit{rupa} first: it will consist of, we would say, not only of the \textit{rupa} of color (\textit{varna}, blue or red \textit{dravya}, etc.) but also of the \textit{rupa} of figure (\textit{samsthāna}, i.10, iv.3c), since many atoms are agglomerated in these. It consists of the “derived matter” called “tangible:” it will be, we should say, heavy or light, hard or soft; it could be cold or hunger, or thirst; it then consists of the \textit{dravyas} that are either heaviness or lightness, softness or hardness, cold, hunger and thirst (i.10d). Hence the numbers proposed above are too few. But if, on the contrary, the Vaibhāṣikas mean to speak of \textit{dravyas} as \textit{āyatanas}, then the numbers are still too few, for the primary elements form part of the \textit{āyata} “tangible” (i.35a); one should then say that a molecule consists of four substances, visible, odor, taste, and touch.

[The Vaibhāṣikas answer.] Our definition of a molecule is the best one. The word \textit{dravya} is to be understood, in this case, as substances properly so-called, and as \textit{āyatanas}. Among the eight \textit{dravyas} of a
molecule, there are 1.) four substances properly so-called, the four primary elements, the supports and sources of derived matter; and 2.) four āyatanas, four types of derived matter, supported by the primary elements: visibles, odors, tastes and tangibles (abstractions created from the primary elements, and included within tangibles).

This answer is not good, for each of these four derived elements is supported by all four of the primary elements. The molecule will then consist of twenty dravyas.\(^{107}\)

No, [answer the Vaibhāśikas,] for we are speaking of the nature of the primary elements, solidity, etc. The nature of all four of the primary elements remains the same, in that they support the derived element of odor or the derived elements of visibles, tastes, and tangibles.

But why do you express yourself in an ambiguous manner and use the word dravya in two different meanings? Words are subject to caprice, but one must examine their meaning.

[iii. The mental states or caittas.]

23a. The mind and its mental states are necessarily generated together.\(^{108}\)

The mind and its mental states cannot be independently generated.

23d. All things are necessarily generated with their characteristics.

All conditioned dharmas, physical matter, the mind (ii.34), its mental states, and the samskāras disassociated from the mind (ii.35), are necessarily generated with their samskṛtalakṣaṇas—arising, duration, old age, and impermanence (ii.46a).

23c. Sometimes with possession.

Among the conditioned dharmas, those that are integral to living beings (sattvākhyā, i.10) are necessarily generated with the prāpti relative to each one of them (ii.37b). There is no prāpti for the others. That is why the Kārikā says “sometimes.”
What are the mental states?

23c-d. The mental states are of five types, mahābhūmikas, etc.

The mental states are the mahābhūmikas, those that accompany all minds; the kusalamahābhūmikas, those that accompany all good minds; the klesamahābhūmikas, those that accompany all defiled minds; the akusalamahābhūmikas, those that accompany all bad minds; and the parittaklesabhūmikas, those that have small defilements for their sphere.

Bhūmi or sphere signifies "place of origin." The place of origin of a dharma is the bhūmi of this dharma.

The "great sphere" or mahābhūmi is so called because it is the sphere, the place of origin, of great dharmas (that is, of dharmas of great extension, that are found everywhere). The dharmas that are inherent in the mahābhūmi are called mahābhūmika, that is, the dharmas that are always found in all minds.

What are the mahābhūmikas, the mental states found in all minds?

24. Sensation, volition, motion, desire for action, contact, discernment, memory, the act of attention, approval, and absorption or concentration coexist in every mind.

According to the School, all the ten dharmas exist in every moment of the mind.

1. Vedāna is the threefold sensation, pleasant, painful, and neither-painful-nor-pleasant. (i.14).

2. Cetāna is that which conditions, informs, and shapes the mind (cittābhissāmkāra, i.15; iv.1).

3. Samjña is samjñāna, that which grasps the marks (male, female, etc.) of an object (visayanimittodgrahana, i.14, ii.34b-d).
4. *Chanda* is the desire for action.\(^{113}\) 

5. *Sparśa* is the state of contact arisen out of the encounter of the organ, the object and the consciousness; in other words, the *dharma* by virtue of which the organ, the object, and the consciousness are as if they were touching one another (iii.30).

6. *Prajñā*, which the Kārikā designates under the name of *mati*, is discernment of the *dharmas* (i.2)\(^{114}\)

7. *Smṛti* is non-failing with regard to the object; a *dharma* by virtue of which the mind does not forget the object, by virtue of which it cherishes it in order to so express it (*abhilāṣatīva*).\(^{115}\)

8. *Manaskāra* is the modification (*ābhoga*)\(^{116}\) of the mind; in other words, "to bend" or "to apply" the mind towards an object. (*Manaskāra* is explained as *manasah kāraḥ* or *manah karoty āvarjyati*, ii.72).

9. *Adhimukti* is approval.\(^ {117}\)

10. *Samādhi* is the unity of the object with the mind (*cittaikāgratā*): (*agra* = *ālambana*, i.33); this is the *dharma* by virtue of which the mind, in an uninterrupted series, remains on an object (viii.1)\(^{118}\)

How do we know that these ten mental states, distinct in nature, coexist in one and the same mind?

Subtle, unquestionably, are the specific characteristics of the mind and its mental states. One discerns them only with difficulty even when one is content to consider each of the mental states as developing in a homogeneous series; how much more so when one envisions them in the (psychological) moment (*ksāna*) in which they all exist. If the differences of the taste of vegetables, tastes that we know through a material organ, are difficult to distinguish, how much more so is this true with non-material *dharmas* that are perceived through the mental consciousness.

***

The "sphere" of the good *dharmas* of great extension is termed *kusalamābhābhumī*. The mental states that arise from this sphere are termed *kusalamābhābhumikas*: the *dharmas* that are found in all good minds.
25. Faith, diligence, aptitude, indifference, respect, fear, two roots, non-violence, and energy are found only in a good mind, and are found in all good minds.\textsuperscript{119}

These ten \textit{dharmas} are always found in all good minds.

1. \textit{Sraddha} or faith is clarification of the mind.\textsuperscript{120} According to another opinion,\textsuperscript{121} it is adherence to the doctrine of the results of actions (vi.78b), to the Three Precious Ones (vi.73c), and to the Truths.

2. \textit{Apramāda} or diligence is \textit{bhāvanā}, that is, the taking possession of, and the cultivation of good \textit{dharmas}.\textsuperscript{122}

[Objection.] The taking possession of and the cultivation of good \textit{dharmas} is none other than the good \textit{dharmas} being grasped and cultivated. How can you make a partial mental \textit{dharma} of diligence?

Diligence is application to good \textit{dharmas}. One says, by metaphor, that it is \textit{bhāvanā} (cultivation). By this fact, it is the cause of \textit{bhāvanā}.

According to another school,\textsuperscript{123} diligence is the guarding of the mind.

3. \textit{Praśrabdhi} is the \textit{dharma} through which the mind is clever, light, and apt.\textsuperscript{124}

But, [the Sautrantikas observe,\textsuperscript{125}] does not the Sutra speak of the \textit{praśrabdhi} of the body?\textsuperscript{126}

The Sūtra speaks of the \textit{praśrabdhi} of the body as it speaks of bodily sensation. (All sensation is, in its nature, mental; sometimes the Sūtra terms the sensation that has for its support the five organs constituted of atoms a “bodily” sensation associated with the five sense consciousnesses [ii.7a]. In the same way that \textit{praśrabdhi} of the mind depends on the five organs, \textit{praśrabdhi} of the five sense consciousnesses is termed “\textit{praśrabdhi} of the body.”)

[The Sautrāntikas answer:] How can the \textit{praśrabdhi} of the body, thus understood, be counted among the parts of Bodhi (\textit{sanībodhyāṅga}, vi.68)? In fact, the five sense consciousnesses are of the sphere of Kāmadhātu, for they are not “absorbed,” that is, they are not produced in the state of absorption, whereas the parts of Bodhi are “absorbed” (vi.71a). Thus, in our opinion, in the Sūtra alluded to, \textit{praśrabdhi} of the body is aptitude of the body (\textit{kāyakarmanyātā}, viii.9).
Chapter Two

[The Sarvástivādins:] How can prasrabdhi of the body, thus understood, be a part of Bodhi? The aptitude of the body is, in fact, impure.

[The Sautrāntikas:] But it is propitious to prasrabdhi of the mind, which is a part of Bodhi; for this reason it receives the name “part of Bodhi.” The Sūtra often expresses itself in this manner. For example, it teaches that joy constitutes the part of Bodhi called joy (pritisam-bodhyāṅga, vi.71).

It teaches that hostility and the causes of hostility constitute the obstacle of wickedness (vyāpādanivarana, v.59). It teaches that insight, resolution, and effort constitute “the element of speculative consciousness” (prajñāskandha, vii.76): for neither resolution, which is by its nature discursive thought (vitarka), nor effort, which is by nature energy, are speculative consciousness; but they are favorable to this consciousness and are, consequently, considered as consciousness. Prasrabdhi of the body, being a condition of prasrabdhi of the mind, is placed, as are these, with these, among the parts of Bodhi.

4. Upeksā or equanimity, is mental indifference, the dharma by which the mind remains equal, even, free from modification.

[The Sautrāntikas:] If all minds are associated with attention, which is of the nature of “inflexion” or modification, how can all good minds be associated with equanimity, which is by its nature non-inflexion?

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] We have already remarked on this: the specific characteristics of the mind and its mental states are very difficult to know and determine.

[The Sautrāntikas:] This is not the point: it is quite inadmissible that the same mind be associated with mental states which repudiate both modification and non-modification, and both pleasure and displeasure.

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] There is modification towards a certain object, and non-modification with regard to another object: hence, there is no contradiction to the coexistence of modification and non-modification.
[The Sautrāntikas:] If this is so, then associated mental states cannot be on the same object, which is contradictory to your definition of associated dharmas (ii.34d). For us, the dharmas that are contradictory, here manaskāra and upkeśā and otherwise vitarka and vicāra (ii.33), do not exist simultaneously, but successively.

5-6. We shall explain respect and fear later (ii.32).

7-8. The two roots of good are absence-of-desire and absence-of-hatred (advesa, iv.8). Absence-of-error, the third root of good, is "discernment," prajñā, by nature: hence it is already named among the mahābhūmikas.\textsuperscript{133}

9. Non-violence is non-cruelty.\textsuperscript{134}

10. Energy is endurance of the mind.\textsuperscript{135}

Such are the mental states that are associated with all good minds.

***

The sphere of the mahākleśadharma is termed mahākleśabhūmi. The mental states that belong to this sphere, that is, the mental states that exist in all defiled minds, are kleśamahābhūmikas.

What are the defiled mental states?

26a-c. Error, non-diligence, idleness, disbelief, torpor, and dissipation are always and exclusively in soiled minds.

1. Error, moḥa is ignorance (avidyā, iii.29), non-knowledge, non-clarity.\textsuperscript{136}

2. Non-diligence, pramāda, the opposite of diligence, is the non-taking possession of and the non-cultivation of good dharmas.

3. Idleness, kausūḍya, is the opposite of energy.

4. Disbelief, āṣraddhya, is the opposite of faith.

5. Torpor, styāna, is the opposite of aptitude (vii.11d).

The Abhidharma (Jñānaprasthāna, TD 26, p. 925b10) says: "What is torpor? The weight of the body, the weight of the mind, inaptitude of the body, inaptitude of the mind. Torpor of the body and torpor of the mind are termed torpor."

Now torpor is a "mental state." How can one have torpor of the body?
In the same way that there is bodily sensation (as above, p. 191). 6. Dissipation, auddhatya, is non-calmness of the mind (vii.11d)

Only these six dharmas are kleśamahābhūmikas.

***

1. But the Mūla Abhidharma says, on the one hand that there are ten kleśamahābhūmikas, but on the other hand, it omits torpor from its enumeration. What are these ten?

They are disbelief (āsraddhya), idleness (kausādya), default of memory (muṣitasmṛtitā), distraction (vikṣepa), ignorance (avidyā), non-observation (asaṃprajānya), wrong judgment (ayonisomanaskāra), wrong resolution (mītyādhimokṣa), dissipation (auddhatya), and diligence (pramāda).

How foolish you are (devānāmpriyah), grasping the letter of the text and ignoring its intention (prāptijno na tv isticijāh).

What is its intention?

Five of the dharmas mentioned in the Abhidharma as kleśamahābhūmikas, namely default of memory, distraction, non-observation, wrong judgment, and wrong resolution, have already been mentioned as mahābhūmikas: there is no reason to name them again as kleśamahābhūmikas. The same for the root of good non-error: even though it is a kusalamahābhūmika, it is not catalogued as such, because, being prajña by nature, it is classed as a mahābhūmika (as above, note 114).

In fact default of memory is nothing other than defiled memory (smṛti). Distraction (iv.58) is defiled sāmādhi. Non-observation is defiled prajña. Wrong judgment is defiled judgment. And wrong resolution is defiled resolution.

This is why the Mūla Abhidharma lists ten kleśamahābhūmikas in admitting the state of mahābhūmikas to a state of defilement.

***

Is a mahābhūmika also a kleśamahābhūmika?
There are four alternatives: 1. sensation, ideas, volition, contact and desire (chanda) are only mahābhūmikas; 2. disbelief, idleness, ignorance, dissipation, and diligence are only klesamahābhūmikas; 3. memory, samādhi, prajñā, judgment, and resolution belong to both categories; and 4. the other dharmas (klesamahābhūmikas, etc.)

Certain Masters (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 220a22) maintain that distraction is not wrong samādhi: the alternatives then are differently established: distraction is added to the second category, and samādhi is put into the third.

2. As for the statement: “the Mūla Abhidharma omits torpor from its enumeration” of the klesamahābhūmika, it is admitted that torpor is associated with all defiled dharmas.

If torpor is omitted from the list, is this my fault or the fault of the author of the Abhidharma?

The Abhidhārmikas explain the omission: torpor should be named; but it is not named because it is favorable to samādhi. In fact, they claim, persons with a torpid disposition (styañacarita), or dull persons, realize meditation sooner than do dissipated persons.

But who is dull without being dissipated? Who is dissipated without being dull? Torpor and dissipation always go together.

Yes, torpor and dissipation go together. But the term carita indicates excess. The person in whom torpor dominates is called “dull,” even though he is also dissipated.

We know this as well as you do; but it is by reason of their nature that the dharmas are classified into different categories. It is then established that six dharmas are klesamahābhūmikas, because only they are produced in all defiled minds.

26c-d. Disrespect and the absence of fear are always and exclusively found in bad minds.

These two dharmas, which will be defined below (ii.32) are always found in bad minds. Consequently they are called akusalamabhūmikas.
27. Anger, enmity, dissimulation, jealousy, stubbornness, hypocrisy, greed, the spirit of deception, pride-intoxication, the spirit of violence, etc., are the parittaklesabhūmikas.\textsuperscript{144}

They are called this because they have parittaklesas for their spheres. Parittaklesa, "small defilement," means avidyā or ignorance (iii.28c-d) in an isolated state, not associated with lust, etc. (kevalā avenikī avidyā, v.14).

They are only associated with ignorance, with the ignorance that is cast off through the Path of Meditation, ignorance of the sphere of mental consciousness. This is why they are called parittaklesabhūmikas.\textsuperscript{145}

These will be studied in the Fifth Chapter (v.46 and following).

We have studied five categories of mental states. There are other mental states that are indeterminate, aniyata, which are sometimes associated with a good mind, and sometimes with a bad or a neutral mind: regret (kaukrtya, ii.28), apathy (middha, v.47, vii.11d), vitarka (ii.33), vicāra, etc.\textsuperscript{146}

How many mental states are necessarily produced with each mind of each class—with a good, bad, or neutral mind?

28a. The mind in Kāmadhātu, when it is good, always consists of twenty-two mental states, as it is always associated with vitarka and vicāra.

There are five classes of minds in Kāmadhātu: 1) the good mind constitutes one class; 2-3) the bad mind constitutes two classes,
accordingly as it is “independent,” that is, associated only with ignorance, or associated with the other defilements, lust, etc.; and 4-5) the neutral mind that is free of retribution constitutes two classes according as it is soiled, that is, associated with satkāyadrṣṭi or with antagrāhadrṣṭi\textsuperscript{147} (v.3), or not defiled, that is, “possessing retribution,” etc. (i.37, ii.71).

The mind in Kāmadhātu is always associated with vitarka and vicāra (ii.33a-b). This mind, when it is good, consists of twenty-two mental states: ten mahābhūmikas, ten kusalamahābhūmikas, plus two aniyatas, namely vitarka and vicāra.

When the good mind includes regret (kaukṛṭya), the total rises to twenty-three.

What does the word kaukṛṭya (regret) mean?\textsuperscript{148}

Kaukṛṭya is, properly, the nature of that which is wrongly done, but here kaukṛṭya means a mental state that has for its object kaukṛṭya in its literal sense, namely regret relative to an error. In the same way, vimokṣamukha which has śūnyatā or absence of ātman for its object is termed śūnyatā (viii.24-25); non-desire which has asubhā or the loathsome (vi.11c-d) for its object is called asubhā. In the same way, in the world, one says that the village, the town, the country, are all brought together, designating thus the inhabitants by the name of the location. Kaukṛṭya in its proper sense is the support, the raison d’être of regret; hence regret is termed kaukṛṭya. For the result receives the name of its cause, for example in the text: “The six sparsāyatanas are previous actions.”\textsuperscript{149}

But how can one designate “regret over errors,” regret relative to an action not done, by the name of kaukṛṭya?

Because one says “It is poorly done on my part not to have done this action,” thus designating an omission as “done” or “poorly done.”

When is regret good?

When it is relative to a good action omitted or to a bad action accomplished. It is bad when it is relative to a bad action omitted or to a good action accomplished.

These two types of regret bear on the two categories of action.
29a. A bad mind consists of twenty mental states when it is independent of, or associated with views (drṣṭī);

1. An independent mind is a mind associated with ignorance (avidyā, v.1), but not associated with other defilements, lust, etc.\(^{150}\)

A bad mind associated with views is a mind associated with mithyādrṣṭī, with drṣṭiparāmarśa, or with ṣilavrataparāmarśa (v.3); a mind associated with satkāyadrṣṭī and with antagrāhadrṣṭī is not bad, but defiled-neutral.

In these two cases, a bad mind consists of ten mahābhūmikas, six kleśamahabhūmikas, two akuṣalamahabhūmikas, plus two aniyatas, namely vitarka and vicāra.

View itself is not counted, for a view is a certain type of prajñā, and prajñā is a mahābhūmika.\(^ {151}\)

29b. Twenty-one, when it is associated with one of the four defilements, with anger, etc., with regret.

2. Associated with lust, hostility, pride, or doubt (rāga, pratigha, māna, vicikitsā, v.1), a bad mind consists of twenty-one mental states, the same as above, plus lust or hostility, etc.

Associated with anger, etc., that is, with one of the minor defilements (upakleśas) enumerated above, ii.27.-

30a. A neutral mind consists of eighteen mental states when it is defiled;

In Kāmadhātu, a neutral mind, that is, a mind free of retribution, is defiled, that is covered by defilement when it is associated with satkāyadrṣṭī or antagrāhadrṣṭī. This mind consists of ten mahābhūmikas, six kleśamahabhūmikas, plus vitarka and vicāra.

30b. In the contrary case, twelve.

Not defiled, a neutral mind consists of twelve mental states: the ten mahābhūmikas, vitarka, and vicāra.

The Foreigners believe that regret can be indefinite, for example, in a dream. An indefinite-non-defiled mind associated with indefinite regret would consist of thirteen mental states.
30c-d. Apathy is not in contradiction to any category; wherever it is found, it is added.

Apathy (middha, v.47, vii.1ld) can be good, bad, or neutral. The mind with which it is associated would then consist of twenty-three mental states instead of twenty-two, twenty-four instead of twenty-three, etc., accordingly as it is good and free from regret, or good and accompanied by regret, etc.

31a. The bad mental states, regret and apathy, are absent from the First Dhyâna.

In the First Dhyâna there is missing 1) hostility (pratigha, v.1), 2) the series anger, etc. (ii.27), with the exception of hypocrisy (sâthya), deception (mâyâ), and pride-intoxication (mada); 3) the two akuśala-mahâbhûmikas, disrespect and the absence of fear (ii.32); plus 4) regret, since dissatisfaction (ii.8b-c) is absent, and 5) laziness, since food through the mouth (iii.38d) is absent. The other mental states of Kâmadhâtu exist in the First Dhyâna.¹⁵²

31b. Further on, vitarka is also missing absent from the intermediate dhyâna.

Furthermore, vitarka is absent from the intermediate dhyâna.

31c. Further on, again, vicâra, etc.

In the Second Dhyâna and above, up to and including Ārupya-dhâtu, vicâra, hypocrisy, and deception are also absent.¹⁵³ Pride-intoxication exists in the three spheres of existence (v.53c-d).

According to the Sûtra,¹⁵⁴ hypocrisy and deception exist as far as the world of Brahmâ, but not above the heavens where beings are in assembly. Mahâbrahmâ, sitting in his assembly, was questioned by the Bhikṣu Aśvajit: "Where do the four primary elements completely disappear?" Incapable of responding, he boasted: "I am Brahmâ, great Brahmâ,¹⁵⁵ the Lord, the Creator, the Transformer, the Generator, the Nourisher, the Father of all." Finally, when Aśvajit was leaving the assembly, Brahmâ counselled him to return to the presence of the Master and ask him.¹⁵⁶
We have seen how many mental states are associated with each type of mind of the three spheres of existence. We have to define the mental states enumerated above.

What is the difference between disrespect (ahṛī) and absence of fear (anapatrāpya)?

32a. Disrespect is lack of veneration.¹⁵⁷

Lack of respect, that is, the lack of veneration,¹⁵⁸ the lack of fearful submission with regard to the qualities (maitrī, karunā, etc.) of oneself and others, and with regard to persons endowed with these qualities, is ṛkya; ahṛī is a mental dharma opposed to respect.

32b. Anapatrāpya or atrapā is the dharma that causes a person not to see the unpleasant consequences of his transgressions.¹⁵⁹

"Transgressions" are what are scorned by good persons.

"Unpleasant consequences" are called in the Kārikā bhaya or fear, because these unpleasant consequences engender fear.

The condition of the person who does not see the consequences of transgression—the dharma that produces this condition,—is anapatrāpya or atrapā.

[Objection:] What do you understand by the expression "does not see the unpleasant consequences" abhayadarsitva? Whether you interpret this phrase as abhayasya darsitvam, "he sees that there are no unpleasant consequences," or as bhayasya adarsitvam, "he does not see that there are unpleasant consequences," none of these explanations is satisfactory. In the first case, we have defiled prajñā, an inexact knowledge; in the second case, we simply have ignorance.

The expression abhayadarsitvam signifies neither "view" (defiled prajñā), nor "non-view" (ignorance). It describes a special dharma that is placed among the minor defilements (upaklesas, v.46), which has false views and ignorance for its cause, and which is termed anapatrāpya (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 180a17).
According to other Masters, \footnote{160} ābrikya is the absence of shame vis-a-vis oneself, in the commission of a transgression; anapatrāpya is the absence of shame vis-a-vis others. \footnote{161}

But cannot one consider oneself and others at the same time?

We do not say that the two forms of the absence of shame are simultaneous.

There is ābrikya, an outflowing of lust, when the person does not experience the shame of transgression when considering oneself; there is anapatrāpya, an outflowing from mental confusion, when he does not experience the shame of transgression when considering others.

Hri and apanatāpya are opposed to these two bad dhanna. Their definition, according to the first theory, is “respect, veneration, fearful submission,” or “fear of the consequence of transgression;” according to the second theory, “modesty,” “respect for humans.”

Some think that affection (preman) and respect (gaurava) are the same thing.

32c. Affection is faith. \footnote{162}

Affection is of two types, defiled and non-defiled (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 151a8).

The first is attachment; for example, affection for wife and sons. The second is faith; for example, affection for a master or for virtuous persons.

1. All faith is not affection, namely faith with regard to the Truths of Suffering and the Arising of Suffering.

2. All affection is not faith, namely defiled affection.

3. Faith can be affection, namely faith with regard to the Truths of the Extinction of Suffering and the Path.

4. The other mental states, the dharmas disassociated from the mind, etc., are neither faith nor affection.

According to another opinion,—ours,—faith is a belief in qualities: affection is produced from this belief. Affection is then not faith, but the result of faith.

32c. Respect is hri. \footnote{163}
As we have explained above (32a), respect is veneration, etc.

1. All hri is not respect, namely hri with respect to the Truths of Suffering and the Origin of Suffering.164

2. Hri with respect to the Truths of the Extinction of Suffering and the Path is also respect.

According to another opinion, respect is veneration; shame is born from respect and this shame is called hri. Hence respect, the cause of hri, is not hri.

There are four alternatives concerning affection and respect:

1. Affection which is not respect, namely affection with regard to wife, to children, to companions in the religious life, to pupils.

2. Respect which is not affection, namely respect with regard to someone else's master, to a person endowed with qualities, etc.

3. Respect which is affection, namely respect with regard to one's master, one's father, mother, etc.

4. Neither respect nor affection for other persons.

32d. Both exist in Kāmadhātu and Rūpadhātu.

Affection and respect do not exist in Ārūpyadhātu.

But you have said that affection is faith, and that respect is hri: now faith and hri are kusalamahābhūnikas (ii.25): hence affection and respect should exist in Ārūpyadhātu.

Affection and respect are of two types: relative to dharmas and relative to persons. The text refers to the second type; the first type does exist in all three spheres of existence.

33a-b. Vitarka and vicāra are grossness and subtlety of the mind.165

The grossness, that is, the gross state of the mind is termed vitarka; the subtlety, that is, the subtle state of the mind is termed vicāra. How can vitarka and vicāra be associated with the mind at one and the same time? Can the mind, at one and the same time, be both gross and subtle?

According to one opinion,166 we may compare vicāra to cold water, the mind to cheese which floats on the surface of this cold water, and
vitarka to the heat of the sun which operates on this cheese. By reason of the water and sun, the cheese is not too runny nor too hard. In this same way, vitarka and vicāra are associated with the mind: it is neither too subtle, by reason of vitarka, nor too gross, by reason of vicāra.

But, we would say, it follows from this explanation that vitarka and vicāra are not grossness and subtlety of mind, but the cause of its grossness and its subtlety: the cold water and the warm light of the sun are not the hard or the runny state of the cheese, but rather the cause of these states.

Other objections present themselves. Grossness and subtlety of mind are relative things. They admit of many degrees: a mind of the First Dhyāna is subtle in comparison with a mind in Kāmadhātu, but gross in comparison with a mind in the Second Dhyāna; the qualities and the defilements can be more or less gross or subtle in one and the same stage, for they are divided into nine categories. Thus, if vitarka and vicāra are grossness and subtlety of the mind, we would have to admit that they both exist up to the highest stage of Ārūpyadhātu. Now they cease at the Second Dhyāna, and adding to this the fact that no specific or generic differences can be established between grossness and subtlety, one then cannot differentiate vitarka and vicāra.

According to another opinion, [that of the Sautrāntikas,] vitarka and vicāra are the “factors of voice.” The Sūtra says in fact, “It is after having examined, after having judged (vitarkya, vicārya) that one speaks, not without having examined, not without having judged.” The factors of voice that are called gross are called vitarkas; those that are subtle are called vicāras. (According to this explanation, we should understand vitarka and vicāra not as two distinct dharmas, but rather a collection of mind and mental states which provoke speech, and which is sometimes gross, sometimes subtle.)

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] What contradiction is there in two dharmas, the first (vitarka) gross, and the second (vicāra) subtle, being associated with the same mind?

[The Sautrāntikas:] There would not be any contradiction if these two dharmas were specifically different; for example, sensations and ideas—although the first are gross and the second subtle (i.22)—can
coexist. But two states of the same species, one in a strong state and the other in a weak state, one gross and one subtle, cannot coexist.

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] But there is a specific difference between vitarka and vicāra.

[The Sautrāntikas:] What is this difference?

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] This difference is inexpressible; but it is manifested through the force or the weakness of the mind.\(^{170}\)

[The Sautrāntikas:] The force and the weakness of the mind do not demonstrate the presence of two specifically different dharmas, for the same species is sometimes strong, sometimes weak.

According to another opinion,—ours,—vitarka and vicāra are not associated with one and the same mind. They exist in turn.\(^{171}\) The Vaibhāṣikas would object that the First Dhyāna has five parts (viii.7) among which are vitarka and vicāra. We would answer that the First Dhyāna has five parts in the sense that five parts are possible in the First Dhyāna: but any given moment of the First Dhyāna possesses only four parts, namely prīti, sukha, and samādhi, plus vitarka or vicāra.

***

What difference is there between māna (pride) and mada (pride-intoxication) (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 223a6)?

33b. Māna, the error of pride, is arrogance. But mada, pride-intoxication, is the abolition of the mind of one who is enamoured with his own qualities.

It is arrogance of mind (cetasa unnatih) with respect to others. Measuring (mā) the superiority of qualities that one has, or that one believes to have over others, one becomes haughty and depreciates others.

Be reason of its attachment to its own qualities, the mind becomes puffed up, exhausts itself, and abolishes itself.\(^{172}\) According to other Masters, in the same way that wine produces a certain joyous excitation that is called intoxication, so too does the attachment that a person has
for his own qualities.\textsuperscript{173}

***

We have defined the mind (\textit{citta}, i.16) and its mental states. We have seen in what categories the mental states are placed, in what numbers they are generated together, and what their different characteristics are. The mind and its mental states receive, in the Scriptures, different names.

34a-b. The names mind (\textit{citta}), spirit (\textit{manas}), and consciousness (\textit{vijñāna}) designate the same thing.\textsuperscript{174}

The mind is termed \textit{citta} because it accumulates (\textit{cinoti});\textsuperscript{175} it is termed \textit{manas} because it knows (\textit{manute})\textsuperscript{176} and it is termed \textit{vijñāna} because it distinguishes its object (\textit{ālambanāṁ vijñānāti}).

Some say that the mind is termed \textit{citta} because it is spotted (\textit{citra}) by good and bad elements;\textsuperscript{177} to the extent that it is the support (\textit{āśrayabhūta}) of the mind that follows, it is \textit{manas} (i.17); and to the extent that it grasps the support through the organ and its object (\textit{āśritabhūta}), it is \textit{vijñāna}.

Hence these three names express different meanings, but they designate the same object; in this same way

34b-d. The mind and its mental states "have a support," "have an object," "have an aspect," and are "associated."

These four different names, "have a support," etc., designate the same object.

The mind and its mental states "have a support" because they rely on the organs (organ of sight, etc., mental organ); "have an object" (\textit{sālambana}, i.34) or "a subject of consciousness," because they grasp their "sphere;" "have an aspect," because they take form according to their object;\textsuperscript{178} and are "associated," that is, similar and united, because they are similar to one another and are not separated from each other.

How are they \textit{samprayukta} or associated, that is, "similar and united?"
34d. In five ways.

The mind and its mental states are associated by reason of five equalities or identities, identity of support (āśraya), of object (ālambana), of aspect (ākāra), of time (kāla), and equality in the number of dravyas. That is: the mental states (sensation, etc.) and the mind are associated (1-3) because they have the same support, the same object, and the same aspect; (4) because they are simultaneous; and (5) because, in this association, each type is represented by only one individual substance (dravya): in any given moment there can be only one mind produced; to this one, unique mind there is found associated one sensation, one idea, or one mental state of each type (see ii.53c-d).

We have explained the mind and its mental states, in full, with their characteristics. 179

***

[iv. The dharmas not associated with the mind]

What are the samśkaras not associated with the mind?

35-36a. The dharmas "not associated with the mind" are prāpti, aprāpti, sabhāgata, āsamjñika, and two absorptions, life, characteristics, nāmakāya, etc., and that which is of this type. 180

These dharmas are not associated with the mind; they are not of the nature of rūpa or physical matter; they are included within the samśkaraskandha (i.15): they are called the cittaviprayuktā samśkaras, (1) because they are disjoined from the mind, and (2) because, being non-material, they resemble the mind.

36b. Prāpti is acquisition and possession. 181

Prāpti is of two types: (1) acquisition of that which has not been obtained (prāpta) or of that which had been lost; and (2) possession of that which, having been obtained, has not been lost.

Aprāpti is the opposite.
36c. There is *prāpti* and *aprāpti* of dharmas that belong to the person himself.\(^{182}\)

1. When a conditioned *dharma* "falls into the personal series," there is *prāpti* or *aprāpti* of this *dharma*, but not if it falls into the series of another person, for no one possesses the dharmas of another; nor if it does not fall into any series, for no one possesses the dharmas "which are not of a living being" (asattvākhya, i.10b).\(^{183}\)

2. As for unconditioned dharmas, there is *prāpti* of *pratisamkhyāniruddha* and *apratisamkhyāniruddha* (i.6, ii.55).

36d. And of the two extinctions.

a. All beings possess the *apratisamkhyāniruddha* of the dharmas that do not arise without a cause.

b. The Abhidharma (Jñānapraśthāna, *TD* 26, p. 1022a) expresses itself in this way: "Who possesses pure dharmas? All beings possess *pratisamkhyāniruddha* with the exception of the sakalabandhana-ādikṣanasthas, that is, with the exception of the Āryans bound with all the bonds and who are found in the first moment of the Path, and with the exception of the Pṛthagjanas bound by all the bonds. The others, both Āryans and Pṛthagjanas, possess *pratisamkhyāniruddha*."\(^{184}\)

c. No one possesses space (ākāśa). Hence there is no *prāpti* of space.

[According to the Vaibhāṣikas,] *prāpti* and *aprāpti* are in opposition: everything that is susceptible of *prāpti* is also susceptible of *aprāpti*. As shall be explained, the stanza does not speak of this in a straightforward manner.

[The Sautrāntikas] deny the existence of a dharma called *prāpti* or possession.

[1. How do the Sarvāstivādin-Vaibhāṣikas prove the existence of a substance (dravyadharma)\(^{185}\) termed *prāpti*?]

[The Sarvāstivādins:] A Sūtra (*Madhyamgama, TD* 1, p. 735b29 and following?) says, "Through the production, the acquisition, and the possession of ten dharmas belonging to an Arhat, the Saint becomes a person 'having abandoned five things.'"\(^{186}\)

[The Sautrāntikas:] If you conclude from this text that *prāpti*
exists, we would remark that one "possesses" dharmas "that do not belong to living beings," and also dharmas that do belong to another. In fact, a Sūtra (=the Cakravartisūtra) says, "Know, Oh Bhiksus, that the Cakravartin King possesses seven jewels . . ."\(^{187}\) Now, among the jewels, there are the jewels of a wheel, a wife, etc.

[The Sarvāstivādins:] In this text, the expression "to possess" (samanvāgata) signifies "master of." One says that the Cakravartin King enjoys mastery over jewels, for they go as he wishes. But in the Sūtra on the Possession of the Ten Dharmas of an Arhat (Dasāṣaiksadharmasamanvāgamasūtra), the word "possession" designates a thing in and of itself.\(^{188}\)

2. [The Sautrāntikas:] If the word "possession" signifies "mastery" in the Cakravartisūtra, how do you ascertain that, in another Sūtra, this same word designates a supposed prāpti, a thing in and of itself? In fact 1.) this prāpti is not directly perceived, as is the case for color, sound, etc., and as is the case for lust, anger, etc.; 2.) one cannot conclude the existence of prāpti by reason of its effects, as is the case for the sense organs, the organ of sight, etc. (i.9): for a similar effect is not perceived.

[The Sarvāstivādins:] Error! Possession has an effect. It is the cause of the arising of the dharmas.\(^{189}\)

[The Sautrāntikas:] This answer is unfortunate. 1. You maintain that one can posses the two extinctions; now these, being unconditioned, do not arise: only conditioned things are "caused" (i.7d). 2. As for the conditioned dharmas, there is not now, in any given person, possession of the dharmas that he has not yet acquired,\(^{190}\) nor does he any longer possess the dharmas whose possession he has abandoned through his changing of his sphere of existence or through "detachment:"\(^{191}\) the possession of the first has never existed, and the possession of the second has perished. Hence how can these dharmas arise if the cause of their arising is prāpti?

[The Sarvāstivādins:] The arising of these dharmas has for its cause a prāpti which arises at the same time as they do.

[The Sautrāntikas:] An unfortunate answer! If the dharmas arise by virtue of prāpti, 1.) arising and the arising-of-arising (ii.45c) have
no use; 2.) the dharmas “that do not belong to living beings” do not arise; and 3.) how does one explain the difference in the degree of defilement,—weak, medium, and strong defilement,—among persons who are 'bound to all bonds'? all in fact possess the same prāptis of all the defilements of Kāmadhātu. Would you say that this difference proceeds from causes distinct from prāpti?

We would answer that these causes are the only cause of weak, medium, or strong defilements; why would one want to assign it to prāpti?

3. [The Sarvāstivādins:] Who maintains that prāpti is the cause of the arising of dharmas? Such is not the role that we attribute to it. For us, prāpti is the cause that determines the state or condition of beings. Let us explain. Let us suppose the non-existence of prāpti: what difference would there be between an Āryan at the moment in which he produces a mundane thought and a Prthagjana? Now the difference consists solely in that the Āryan, even when he has a worldly thought, is in possession (prāpti) of a certain number of pure dharmas.

[The Sautrāntikas]: For us, there is this difference that the first has abandoned certain defilements, while the second has not yet abandoned them.

[The Sarvāstivādins:] Without doubt; but if we suppose the non-existence of prāpti, how can we say that a defilement is abandoned or not abandoned? There can only be the abandoning of a defilement through the disappearance of the prāpti of this defilement; the defilement is not abandoned as long as its prāpti lasts.

4. [The Doctrine of the Sautrāntikas:] To us, the abandoning or the non-abandoning of a defilement consists of a certain condition of the person (āśraya, ii.5 and 6, 44d). The personality of the Āryan is modified, becoming different from what it was through the power of the Path (Seeing the Truths, Meditation). The defilement, once it has been destroyed through the force of the Path, cannot be manifested again. Like seed which is burned by fire and which becomes different from what it once was, and is no longer capable of germinating, we say that the Āryan has abandoned the defilement, because his person no longer maintains the seeds capable of producing a defilement. The
worldly path does not definitively destroy the defilement; it only damages it or disturbs it: one would say that a Prthagjana—who is able to practice only the worldly path—has abandoned the defilement when his person no longer contains even the seeds of defilement damaged by this path. Contrarily one says that a person has not abandoned defilement when the seeds are neither burnt nor damaged. One says that a person is in possession of the defilement when he has not "abandoned" them in the manner that we have just explained; we say that he is in non-possession of the defilements when he has not abandoned it. "Possession" and "non-possession" are not things in and of themselves, but designations.

This then concerns possession and non-possession of defilement. But concerning the possession and non-possession of good dharmas, we must distinguish 1.) the innate good dharmas, which do not entail any effort, and 2.) the good dharmas that are obtained through effort or cultivation (prayogika, ii.71b).

We say that a person possesses the first when his person possesses intact the quality of being a seed of these good dharmas. When this quality is damaged, we say that the person does not possess the good dharmas. In fact, while the seeds of defilement can be destroyed completely and definitively, as is the case among the Aryans, good dharmas never have their roots definitively cut off, with the restriction that one says of a person who has cut off the roots of good through false views (samucchinnakusalamula, iv.79c) that he has only abandoned these roots, because the quality of being a seed of these roots, a quality that belongs to his person, has been damaged through false views.

We say that a person possesses the second—the good dharmas produced through effort, through hearing, reflection, and meditation—when, these dharmas having arisen, his capacity to produce them [anew] is not damaged.

Hence what we understand by "possession" or the "fact of being endowed with" (samanvagama) is not a dharma constituting a separate thing in and of itself, namely the supposed präpti of the Sarvástivādins, but a certain condition of the person: 1. the seeds of
defilement have not been uprooted through the Path of the Saints; 2. the seeds of defilement have not been damaged by means of the worldly path; 3. the seeds of innate good have not been damaged through false views; and 4. the seeds of good “obtained through effort” are in good condition at the moment when one wants to produce this good. When the person is in such a condition, this is what we call “possession of defilements,” etc.

***

But what should we understand by “seeds” [ask the Sarvástivādins]? By seeds we understand nāmarūpa (iii.30), that is, the complex of the five skandhas, capable of generating a result, either immediately or mediately, by means of the parināma-visēṣa of its series.

The series is the saṁskāras of the past, the present and the future, in relation to causality, that constitutes an uninterrupted series. The parināma, or the evolution of the series, is the modification of this series, the fact that this series arises differently from itself at each moment.

The visēṣa, or culminating point of this evolution, is the moment of this series that possesses the capacity of immediately producing a result. 192

[The Vaibhāṣikas object:] The Sūtra says, “He who is in possession of greed is not capable of producing the foundations of mindfulness (smṛtyupasthānas, vi.14).”

[The Sautrāntikas:] In this text, we must understand by “possession” of greed the “consenting to greed,” or “not rejecting greed.” The Sūtra does not say that a person who has the seeds of greed in him is incapable of producing the foundations of mindfulness; it says rather that active greed renders this person presently incapable of producing these spiritual exercises.

In short, in whichever manner it is that we understand possession, either as “cause of the arising of the dharma,” or as “origin of the condition of beings,” or as “special state of the person,” or as
"consenting to," possession appears to us, not as an entity, a thing in and of itself, but as a "dharma of designation." This same holds for non-possession, which is purely and simply the negation of possession.

***

The Vaibhāṣikas say that prāpti and aprāpti are things in and of themselves.

Why?

Because this is our teaching.¹⁹³

37a. There is threefold prāpti of the dharmas of the three periods.

Past dharmas can be the object of a threefold prāpti, past, present, and future. The same for present and future dharmas.¹⁹⁴

37b. There is good prāpti, etc., of good dharmas, etc.

The prāpti of good, bad, or neutral dharmas is, respectively, good, bad, or neutral.

37c. The prāptis of the dharmas belonging to the spheres of existence are of their spheres.¹⁹⁵

The dharmas belonging to the spheres of existence are impure dharmas. The prāpti of a dharma in Kāmandaḥātu is, itself, in Kāmandaḥātu; and thus following.

37d. There is fourfold prāpti of the dharmas that do not belong to the spheres of existence.¹⁹⁶

In general, the prāpti of these dharmas—the pure dharmas—is fourfold: it belongs to the three spheres, and it is pure. But there are distinctions:

1. The prāpti of apratisamkhyānirodha (see ii.36c-d) is of the sphere to which the person who obtains it belongs.

2. The prāpti of pratisamkhyānirodha is of Rūpadhātu, of Ārūpya-
dhātu, and pure. 197

3. The *prāpti* of the Path (*mārgasatya*, vi.25d) is Śaikṣa; the *prāpti* of the Āśaikṣa *dharma* is Āśaikṣa. 198

But there is

38a. Threefold *prāpti* of the *dharma* which are neither Śaikṣa nor Āśaikṣa.

These *dharmas*—the *naivaśaikṣanāśaikṣas*, vi.45b—are the impure *dharmas* and the unconditioned *dharmas*; they are called this because they differ from the *dharmas* of the Śaikṣa and from the *dharmas* of the Āśaikṣa.

In general, the *prāpti* of these *dharmas* is threefold. Their distinctions are:

1. The *prāpti* of the impure *dharmas* is neither Śaikṣa-nor Āśaikṣa;
2. In this same way the *prāpti* of apratisamkhyānirdha and the *prāpti* of pratisamkhyānirdha are obtained by a non-Āryan; 199
3. The *prāpti* of pratisamkhyānirdha is Śaikṣa when this *nirdha* is obtained through the path of the Śaikṣas; it is Āśaikṣa when this *nirdha* is obtained through the path of the Āśaikṣas.

***

The *prāpti* of the *dharmas* to be abandoned either through Seeing, or through Meditation, is destroyed, respectively, either through Seeing or through Meditation; it belongs then, from the point of view of abandoning them, to the category of these *dharmas* (ii.33).

As for the *dharmas* which should not be abandoned, their *prāpti* presents difficulties:

38b. There is twofold *prāpti* of the *dharmas* that should not be abandoned.

These *dharmas* are the pure *dharmas* (i.40b, ii.13d).

The *prāpti* of apratisamkhyānirdha is abandoned through the Path of Meditation.
The same for the prāpti of pratisamkhyānirodha obtained by the non-Āryan.

But the prāpti of pratisamkhyānirodha obtained through the Path is pure and should not be abandoned. The same for the prāpti of the Path.  

We have established the general principal that the dharmas of the three periods are susceptible of a threefold prāpti (ii.37a). We must be more precise.

38c. The prāpti of a neutral dharma is simultaneous to it.

The prāpti of an undefiled-neutral dharma is simultaneous to this dharma: one possesses it when it is present, not when it is past or future. When it is past, the prāpti is past, and when it is future, the prāpti is future: this by reason of the weakness of this dharma.

38d. With the exception of the two supernormal faculties and apparition.

This rule does not apply to all undefiled-neutral dharmas. The supernormal faculties of seeing and hearing (cakṣurabhijñā, śrotra-bhijñā, vii.45) and the mind capable of creating apparitional beings (nirmanacitta, ii.72) are strong, for they are realized through a special effort; consequently one possesses them in the past, the present, and the future. Certain Masters maintain that the undefiled-neutral dharmas "of craftsmanship" and "of attitude" (airyāpathika, ii.72), when they have been the object of an intense practice are also possessed in the past and future.

39a. The same for the prāpti of defiled rūpa.

The prāpti of defiled-neutral rūpa is only simultaneous to this rūpa. This rūpa is bodily action and vocal action resulting from a defiled-neutral mind. This action, even through produced by a strong mind, is incapable, as is the mind itself, of creating avijñāpti (iv.7a); hence it is weak. Thus one possesses it in the present, but not in the past or the future.

***
Is the tritemporal character of the āprāpti of the good and the bad dharmas subject to any restriction, as is the case with the āprāpti of the neutral dharmas?

39b. The āprāpti of the rūpa of Kāmadhātu is not previous to this rūpa.

This rūpa, good or bad, for example the prātimokṣa-saṁvara (iv.19 and following), is not possessed previous to its being produced. The āprāpti is simultaneous and later, but not earlier.

***

Can non-possession be, like āprāpti, good, bad, or neutral?

39c. Āprāpti is undefiled-neutral.203

Āprāpti is always anivṛtāvyākṛta (ii.66).

39d. Āprāpti of the dharmas of the past or the future is threefold.

Āprāpti of past or future dharmas can be past, present, or future. But one necessarily possesses the present dharmas: hence the āprāpti of present dharmas can be only past or future.

40a. Āprāpti of the dharmas forming part of the spheres of existence, and of the immaculate dharmas, is threefold.

Āprāpti of the dharmas of the sphere of Kāmadhātu belong either to Kāmadhātu, Rūpadhātu, or Ārūpyadhātu accordingly as the person endowed with this āprāpti belongs to such a sphere of existence. The same for the āprāpti of pure dharmas.

In fact, āprāpti is never pure.

Why?

40b-c. According to the School, a Prthagjana is a person who has not acquired the Path.204

1. As it says in the Mūlaśāstra (Jñānaprasthāna, TD 26, p. 928c5;
Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 232b9), “What is the state of Prthagjana? The non-possession of the dharmas of the Āryans (āryadharmaṇāṁ alābhah).” Now the state of Prthagjana is not pure; hence their non-possession (aprāpti=alābha) is not pure.

Let us examine this definition. When the Śāstra says that the state of Prthagjana is the non-possession of the dharmas of the Āryans, which dharmas of the Āryans does it mean?

The dharmas beginning with duḥkhe dharmaṇānaksānti and including the whole pure path or the Path of the Āryans (vi.25).

[The Sarvāstivādins:] The Śāstra means all these dharmas, since it does not specify any.

Be careful! To believe you, a person in possession of duḥkhe ksānti would be a Prthagjana if he did not possess all of the other Āryan dharmas.

[The Sarvāstivādins:] The Śāstra means the non-possession that is not accompanied by possession: the person of whom you speak, although not possessing the other dharmas of the Āryans, is not a Prthagjana because the non-possession of these other dharmas is accompanied by the possession of the ksānti. This is quite evident, for, in the contrary interpretation, the Buddha the Blessed One, not possessing the dharmas of the “family” of the Śrāvakas and Pratyekabuddhas (vi.23), would be a Prthagjana.

Very well. But then the Śāstra would say “The state of Prthagjana is the absolute non-possession (alābha eva) of the Āryan dharmas” and not “… the non-possession (alābha) …”

[The Sarvāstivādins:] The Śāstra expresses itself very well, for the ekapadas (Nirukta, 2.2) permit a restrictive sense and the particle eva is not necessary: for example abbhakṣa signifies “that which lives solely on water,” and vāyubbakṣa, “that which lives solely on wind.”

2. According to another opinion,205 the state of Prthagjana is the non-possession of the first stage of the Path of Seeing, duḥkhe dharmaṇānaksānti and its concomitant dharmas (vi.25).

[Objection.] In this hypothesis, at the sixteenth moment (mārgeṇvayajñāna), the saint will be a Prthagjana and not an Āryan, for at this moment, the initial ksānti is lost.206
No, for the non-possession of the \textit{ks\=anti} which constitutes the state of Pr\=thagjana has been absolutely destroyed in the first stage.

[Objection.] The \textit{ks\=anti} in question is threefold: of the family of the \v{S}r\=avakas, of the family of the Pratyekabuddhas, and of the family of the Buddhas (vi.23). Of which of these three types are you speaking in your definition of the state of Pr\=thagjana?

We mean to speak of three types of \textit{ks\=anti}.

Be careful! The Buddha, not possessing the three types of \textit{ks\=anti}, would then be a Pr\=thagjana!

We intend to speak of the non-possession of the \textit{ks\=anti} which is not accompanied by possession . . . and thus following, as above, to the example “that which lives solely on water,” “that which lives solely on wind.”

Hence the effort attempted in order to avoid the objection: “Be careful! To believe you, a person in possession of \textit{duhbhe dharmaj\=naks\=anti} would be a Pr\=thagjana . . .” is in vain. The best explanation is that of the Sautr\=antikas. To them, the state of Pr\=thagjana is a series in which the \textit{dharmas} of the Āryans have not arisen.

***

How does non-possession perish?

40c-d. It is abandoned through acquisition (\textit{prāpti}), and through passing to another stage.

For example, the non-possession of the Path, which constitutes the state of Pr\=thagjana, is abandoned (1) when one acquires the Path,\textsuperscript{207} and (2) when one passes to another stage.\textsuperscript{208} The same holds for the non-possession of the other \textit{dharmas}.\textsuperscript{209}

[Objection:] Non-possession is abandoned (1) when one produces the non-possession of non-possession, that is to say, when, changing one’s stage of existence, one ceases to possess the state of Pr\=thagjana; and (2) when the possession of non-possession is cut off, that is to say, when, acquiring the Path, one cuts off the state of Pr\=thagjana.

Does this mean that there is possession of possession and non-
possession, and that there is non-possession of possession and non-possession?

Yes. There is possession and non-possession of possession and non-possession, which is called "secondary possession" (anuprāpti), or "secondary non-possession." One then distinguishes between mūla-prāti and anuprāpti or prāptiprāpti.

Doesn’t this doctrine lead to infinite progression?

No, for one possessess possession through the fact of possession of possession and vice versa. There is possession of the one through the fact of the other. Let us explain. When a certain dharma is produced in a given person, three dharmas arise together, namely: 1) this dharma itself, which is called the mūladharma; 2) the prāpti of this mūladharma; and 3) the prāpti of this prāpti. The person in question possesses the mūladharma and the prāpti of the prāpti by the fact of the arising of the prāpti; he possesses this prāpti by the fact of the arising of the prāpti. 210 Hence there is no infinite progression. When a good or a defiled 211 dharma arises, at this very moment three dharmas arise together, inclusive of this good or defiled dharma, namely: the mūladharma, its prāpti, and the prāpti of this prāpti 212 which is the prāpti of the prāptiprāpti of the first moment, plus three anuprāptis through the fact that one is in possession of the three aforementioned prāptis. In this third moment eighteen dharmas arise together, namely nine prāptis: the prāptis of the three dharmas produced in the first moment, prāptis of the six dharmas produced in the second moment, plus nine anuprāptis through the fact that one in in possession of the nine aforementioned prāptis.

Thus the prāptis continue increasing in number from moment to moment. 213 The prāptis of present and future defilements (kleśa and upakleśa), and of innate (upapattilābhika, ii.71b) good dharmas with the dharmas that are associated (sanprayuktā, ii.53c-d) and co-existent (sabhābhū, ii.50b) with them throughout beginningless and endless transmigration, arise, from moment to moment, in an infinite number. If one considers the series of one single being in the course of transmigration, those prāptis which arise at each moment are infinite in number. Considering all beings together, they (i.e., the prāptis) are
without measure, and without limit. Happily, they possess a great quality: they are non-material, and give way one to the other. If they were material, there could not be found enough room in the universe for the *prāptis* of one single being, and even less for the *prāptis* of two beings!

***

What is "genre" or sameness of class designation?  

41a. *Sabhāgata* is that which causes resemblance between living beings.  

1. There exists an entity called *sabhāgata*, a *dharma* by virtue of which living beings, as well as the *dharmanas* "that fall into the series of living beings" (*sattvasanākhyāta*, i.10), have resemblance between them (*Vibhaṣa*, *TD* 27, p. 138a9).

2. The Śāstra (*Jñānaprasthāna*, etc.) designates this entity by the name of *nikāyasabhāga*: the author uses the term *sabhāgata* for metric reasons.

3. *Sabhāgata* is of two types, general and particular. The first is found in all living beings: by virtue of it, there is resemblance of any living being with all other living beings. This is called *sattvasabhāgata*.

   The second has numerous subdivisions: each of these subdivisions is found only in certain beings. Living beings are differentienced according to their spheres of existence, the different stages of these spheres, their realm of rebirth (*gati*, iii.4), their wombs (iii.9), their caste (*jāti*, as Brahmins, etc.), their sex, the state of Upāsaka (iv.14), Bhikṣu, Śaikṣa, or Arhat, etc. This holds as well for *sabhāgataś*, by virtue of which each living being of a certain species resembles living beings of this same species.

4. There is, furthermore, *sabhāgata* of *dharmanas* that belong to living beings, *dharmanasabhāgata*, which in turn distinguishes the *skandhas*, the *āyatanas* and the *dhātus*: *skandhasabhāgata*, etc., *rupaskandhasabhāgata*, etc.
5. In the absence of a separate entity, namely sabhāgata, how does one explain general ideas (buddhi) and expressions (prajñāpāti), such as “living beings,” etc., applied to some beings that differ one from another? In this same way, it is solely by reason of dharmasabhāgata that the ideas and expressions, “skandha,” “dhātus,” etc., are justified.  

6. Do we conclude that one transmigrates, that one dies and is born without abandoning and without taking up a certain sattvasabhāgata (state of a human being, etc.)? There are four alternatives: 1. to die in a place (Kāmadhātu for example) and be reborn in the same place: the sabhāgata remains the same, regardless of transmigration; 2. to enter into one’s predetermined realm of rebirth (niyāmāvakṛanti, vi.26a): without there being transmigration, there is yet the abandoning of the sabhāgata of the Prthagjanas and the acquisition of the sabhāgata of the Saints; 3. to die in one realm of rebirth, the human realm of rebirth, etc., and to be reborn in another realm of rebirth; 4. all other cases.

[The Sautrāntikas do not admit the existence of a dharma called sabhāgata and present many objections to it.]

1. If a certain entity called “the genre of Prthagjana” exists, for what purpose do we imagine the state of Prthagjana consisting of the non-possession of the Āryadharmanas (ii.40c)? Someone will be a Prthagjana through the genre of Prthagjana in the way that someone is a human through the genre “human” for the Vaibhāṣikas do not imagine a state of human different from the genre “human.”  

2. Ordinary people do not recognize sabhāgata through the direct perception of the senses (pratyakṣa); they do not infer the existence of the sabhāgata through an operation of the intelligence (prajñā), for sabhāgata does not exercise any action by which one could know it: although people do not know anything of sattvasabhāgata they recognize the non-difference of the species of beings. Hence, what would be the use in supposing that a sabhāgata exists?  

3. Why does the School refuse sabhāgata to things that are not living beings, such as rice and corn, gold and iron, mango and breadfruit trees?  

4. The different sabhāgatas that the School recognizes, sabhāgatas
of living beings, of spheres, of realms of rebirth, etc., are distinct one from another. Yet one has, for all of them, common ideas and designations: all are *sabhāgatās*.

5. [The Sarvāstivādins are the proponents of the doctrine of the Vaiśeṣikas.] The Vaiśeṣikas admit a certain entity (*padārtha*) called "sameness" (*sāmānyā*), by virtue of which there is produced, with regard to things, similar ideas and designations; they believe also in another entity, called "difference" (*viśeṣa*), from whence proceeds specific ideas and designations with regard to different species.

The Vaibhāṣikas protest that their theory is not to be confused with that of the Vaiśeṣikas, who believe that genre or sameness (*sāmānyā*) a unique substance (*padārtha*), exists in a multitude of individuals. Hence even if they approve of the Vaiśeṣikas admitting genre (*sāmānyā*), they still condemn their interpretation of it. As for *sabhāgatā*, it exists in and of itself (as a *dravya*), for the Blessed One, speaking of a murderer who is reborn in hell, continues, saying, "If he is reborn here, if he obtains the *sabhāgatā* of humans . . ." 218

[The Sautrāntikas answer:] By expressing itself in this way, the Sūtra does not teach the existence of a thing in and of itself called *sabhāgatā*. What then does the Sūtra designate by the word *sabhāgatā*? By the expression *sabhāgatā* of humans," etc., the Sūtra means a similarity in the manner of being: in the same way, *sabhāgatā* of rice, corn, beans, etc.

This opinion is not admitted by the Vaibhāṣikas. 219

***

What is non-consciousness (*āsamjñīka*)?

41b-c. Non-consciousness is that which, among the Non-conscious Ones, arrests the mind and its mental states. 220

Among the beings who take birth among the Non-Conscious Ones, i.e., the non-conscious gods, there is a *dharma* that arrests the mind and its mental states, and which is called "non-consciousness." By this *dharma*, the mind and future *dharmanas* are, for a certain time,
hindered from being produced and do not have the power to arise. This dharma is similar to what arrests the water of a river, that is, to a dike.

This dharma is exclusively

41d. Retribution.

It is exclusively the retribution of non-conscious absorption (asamjnisamdpatti, ii.42a). Where do these non-conscious gods reside?

41d. They live in Brhatphala.

In the heaven of the Brhatphalas there is a raised place which is the dwelling of the Non-Conscious Ones, in the same way as the dhydnantarika, the dwelling of the Mahabrahma gods, is raised within the heaven of the Brahmapurohitas (iii.2c; VibhAsa, TD 27, p. 784b5).

Are the Non-Conscious Ones called this because they are always non-conscious, or are they sometimes conscious?

They are conscious at birth and at death (iii.42; VibhAsa, TD 27, p. 784c8); they are called non-conscious because their consciousness is suspended for a very long time. When, after this long time, they produce a consciousness again, they die. As it says in the Sutra “When they produce consciousness again, they die, like a person awakening after sleep.”

Dying in the non-conscious heaven, they are necessarily reborn in KâmadhÅtu and nowhere else. (1) In fact, the force of asamjnisamdpatti (ii.42a), by which these beings are born among the Non-Conscious Ones, is exhausted; they have not been in a position to practice asamjnisamdpatti: hence they die, as arrows fall to the ground when their impetus is spent. (2) On the other hand, beings who are reborn among the Non-Conscious Ones necessarily possess an action “retributive in KâmadhÅtu” and “retributive in the second existence” (iv.50b). In this same way beings who are reborn in Uttarakuru (iii.90c-d) necessarily possesses an action retributive in a heavenly realm of rebirth immediately after their existence in Uttarakuru.
The Mūlaśāstra says, "What are the two samapātis or absorptions? They are asamjñīsamāpatti, the non-conscious absorption, and nirodhasamāpatti, the absorption of extinction."

What is the non-conscious absorption?

In the same way that āsamjñīka is a dharma that arrests the mind and its mental states,

42a. The same for the non-conscious absorption.

The non-conscious absorption is an absorption in which the ascetic is non-conscious, or in an absorption free from consciousness.

The word "the same" shows that this absorption, like āsamjñīka, arrests the mind and its mental states.

To which bhūmi does it belong?

42b. In the Fourth Dhyāna.

In order to cultivate this absorption, the ascetic should have entered the Fourth Dhyāna.

Why does one cultivate it?

42c. Through desire for deliverance.

The ascetic falsely imagines that āsamjñīka, the non-consciousness that constitutes the result of the non-conscious absorption, is true deliverence.

Āsamjñīka, being retribution, is necessarily morally neutral. As for the non-conscious absorption, it is

42d. Good.

It produces as its retributive result the five skandhas of a non-conscious god, who, as we know, is conscious at birth and at death.

To what category does it belong from the point of view of retribution?

42e. Solely retribution in the next existence.
It is not "retributive in this life" or "retributive later;" it is no longer of "unnecessary retribution" (iv.50).

Without doubt, an ascetic can fall from this absorption after having produced it; but, [according to the Vaibhāṣikas,] he will produce it again and be reborn among the Non-Conscious Ones. This is to say that the ascetic who takes possession of this absorption will certainly not enter into a "predestined" realm of rebirth (vi.26a).²²⁶

This absorption is cultivated only by Prthagjanas.

42f. Not by Āryans.

The Āryans consider this absorption as a precipice, a calamity, and do not value entering it.

On the contrary, Prthagjanas identify non-consciousness (āsaṁ-jñīka) with true deliverance; they have no idea of "going out" with respect to it; hence they cultivate the absorption that leads to it. But Āryans know that the impure cannot be true deliverance. Hence they do not cultivate this absorption.

When Āryans enter into the Fourth Dhyāna, do they obtain the prāpti of this past and future absorption, the same as one obtains the prāpti of the Fourth Dhyāna of the past and the future as soon as one enters into the Fourth Dhyāna?²²⁷

Non-Āryans do not obtain the prāpti of the non-conscious absorption of the past and future.

Why?

Having cultivated it many time previously, this absorption can only be realized through great effort; as it is not mind,

42g. It is obtained in one time period.

One takes possession of this absorption, not in the past, not in the future, but in one time period, that is, in the present, as is also the case for the prātimokṣa discipline (iv.35). In the second moment of this absorption, and in all the moments that follow the obtaining of this absorption until the moment when it ends, one possesses it in the past and in the present. On the other hand, since this absorption is not mind, it is impossible for one to acquire a future prāpti of this absorption.²²⁸
What is *nirodhasamāpatti* or the “absorption of extinction?”

43a. In the same way, the absorption that bears the name of *nirodha* or “extinction.”

That is to say, the absorption of extinction is like *āsamjñika*, the non-conscious absorption: it is a *dharma* that arrests the mind and its mental states.

What are the differences between the non-conscious absorption and the absorption of extinction?

43b. It is viewed as tranquility;

1. Āryans cultivate this absorption because they consider it as the absorption of tranquility. One cultivates the non-conscious absorption because one regards non-consciousness as being deliverance (*niḥsaraṇa-mokṣa*).

43c. Arisen from Bhavāgra;

2. It belongs to the sphere of Bhavāgra, that is, one penetrates it upon leaving *naivasamjñānasamjñāyatana* absorption (viii.4), whereas the non-conscious absorption belongs to the sphere of the Fourth Dhyāna.

43d. Good;

3. It is good; it is not neutral or defiled, for its originating cause is good (iv.9b).

43e. Of two retributions and neutral;

4. It admits of two types of retribution, being either “retributive in the next existence,” or “retributive later” (*aparaparyāyavedanīya*, iv.50). Its retribution is also unnecessary, for the ascetic who has practiced it can obtain Nirvāṇa in the present existence.

Of what does its retribution consist?

This absorption produces the four *skandhas* of Bhavāgra, i.e., an existence in Bhavāgra (iii.3).
43f. Āryans

5. It is produced only by Āryans, not by Pṛthagjanas. These latter cannot produce it (1) because they fear annihilation, and (2) because this absorption can only be produced through the power of the Path: in fact, it is the ascetic who has seen Nirvāṇa who is determined to obtain it.

43g. It is obtained through effort.

6. Although obtained by the Āryans, it is not obtained merely through the fact of detachment. It is only realized through effort.

One does not possess this absorption in the past or in the future; this point has been explained in the matter of the non-conscious absorption.

44a. In that which concerns the Muni, it is obtained through Bodhi itself.

The Buddha obtains the absorption of extinction at the moment when he becomes a Buddha, that is, at the moment of kṣayajñāna (vi.67). No quality of the Buddha is obtained through effort; all of his qualities are acquired through the simple fact of detachment: as soon as he desires it, the mass of qualities arise at will.

How is it that the Blessed One, without having formerly produced this absorption (i.e., nirodhasamāpatti), would become, at the moment of Bodhi (kṣayajñāna), “twofold delivered,” that is, delivered from the obstacles of the defilements and delivered from the obstacles to absorption (samāpattiyāvarāṇa, vi.64)?

He becomes “twofold delivered” exactly as if he had previously produced this absorption, for he possesses the power of realizing this absorption whenever he wishes (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 780b26).

The Masters of the West (Pāscātya) maintain that the Bodhisattva first produced this absorption in the state of Śaiksā, and then obtained Bodhi. Why do we not adopt this opinion?

This would be to follow the Netrīpadasāstra of the Sthavira Upagupta, which says, "One who, after having produced the absorption of extinction, produces kṣayajñāna, should be called a Tathāgata."
44b. But not previously.

The Vaibhāṣikas of Kaśmīr deny that the Bodhisattva produces the absorption of extinction before producing kṣayajñāna.

44c. For the Muni conquers Bodhi in thirty-four moments.

The School admits in fact (Vībhāṣā TD 7, p. 780b10) that the Bodhisattva obtains Bodhi in thirty-four moments, namely sixteen moments that constitute the "comprehension of the Truths" (satyā-bhīsamāya, vi.27) and eighteen moments that constitute the abandoning of the defilements relative to Bhavāgra (=naivasamjñānāsamjñāyatana), i.e., nine ānantaryamārgas and nine vimuktimārgas (vi.44). The eighteenth moment is kṣayajñāna. These thirty-four moments suffice, for, before entering into the "comprehension of the Truths," the Bodhisattva, still a Prthagjana (iii.41), detaches himself through the worldly path from all spheres, with the exception of Bhavāgra. The eighteen moments form a path during the course of which the Saint does not produce a mind of a different nature, that is, a worldly, impure mind, for example the mind entering the absorption of extinction. Hence the Bodhisattva, in the stage of Śaikṣa, that is, before becoming an Arhat, enters the comprehension of the Truths and the eighteenth moment of the abandoning of Bhavāgra, but he does not produce the absorption of extinction.

The Foreigners (bahirdeśaka) say, "What harm is there in the Bodhisattva producing this impure mind?"

In this hypothesis, the Bodhisattva oversteps his resolution (vyut-thānāsayaḥ syāt); now the Bohisattva does not overstep his resolution.

This is true, he does not overstep his resolution; but this does not mean that he would not overstep the Pure Path in producing an impure mind.

How, in this hypothesis, would he not overstep his resolution?

He has taken upon himself the resolution (Madhyamāgama, TD 1, p. 777a12), "I shall not leave this sitting position before I obtain the destruction of all the defilements." Now he does not overstep this resolution, for it is in one "sitting" (āsana, vi.24a-b) that he realizes his
Although the two absorptions, the non-conscious absorption and the absorption of extinction, present many differences, they have this in common:

44d. But these two absorptions take place in persons in Kāmadhātu and Rūpadhātu.

To deny that the non-conscious absorption is produced in Rūpadhātu is to contradict the Mūlaśāstra, which says, "There is an existence in Rūpadhātu that does not admit of the five skandhas, namely (1) the existence of beings in Rūpadhātu who, conscious by nature, enter into the non-conscious absorption and into the absorption of extinction, and (2) the existence of beings in Rūpadhātu who are in possession of āsaṃjñīka, and who are born among the Non-Conscious Ones."

From this text it results that the two absorptions are cultivated by beings of Kāmadhātu and Rūpadhātu.

There is however this difference between the two absorptions:

44e. The absorption of extinction is, for the first time, among humans.

A person who has never produced the non-conscious absorption can produce this absorption either in Kāmadhātu or in Rūpadhātu; but it is necessary to be a human in order to produce the absorption of extinction for the first time. A human, an Āryan, who has produced this absorption can fall from it, and losing possession (prāpti) of it, can be reborn in Rūpadhātu and produce this absorption anew.

But the question is raised whether one can fall from the absorption of extinction, which is similar (sadrśa) to Nirvāṇa.

Yes, [answer the Vaibhāṣikas;] to deny falling is to contradict the Udāyi-sūtra, which says, "Brothers, a Bhikṣu is endowed with morality, with absorption, and with discernment. It is possible for him to enter many times into the absorption of extinction and leave it. If, in this life, he does not attain ājñā, nor attain it at the moment of his death; but after the destruction of his body, going beyond the gods of
gross eating, he is reborn in a heavenly mental body; and thus reborn it is possible for him to then enter many times into the absorption of extinction and leave it.”

This text shows in fact that one can fall from nirodhasamāpatti.

On the one hand the Buddha would have us understand that the mental body that Ṣāriputra speaks of belongs to Rūpadhātu. On the other hand, the absorption of extinction is of the realm of Bhavāgra, the highest state of Ārūpyadhātu. If a Bhikṣu who possesses it does not fall from it, and if he does not lose it, he will not be able to repeat his birth in Rūpadhātu.

According to another school, the absorption of extinction also belongs to the Fourth Dhyāna and is not subject to falling.

This opinion is not correct. This absorption does not belong to the Fourth Dhyāna, for the Sūtra teaches that one acquires nine absorptions one after the other.

How then do you explain the vyukrāntaka absorption (viii.18c) in which the ascetic passes over different stages of absorption?

The rule of the successive production of the absorptions concerns the beginner. He who has acquired mastery passes over the absorptions at will.

***

There are differences between these two absorptions:

1. from the point of view of their spheres: the first is of the Fourth Dhyāna, the second of Bhavāgra (naivasaṁjñānāsaṁjñāyatana)

2. from the point of view of their antecedents or preparations (prayoga): the first proceeds from the idea of deliverance falsely identified with non-consciousness; the second, from the idea of stillness;

3. from the point of view of the person (sāṁtāna): the first is produced in a Pṛthagjana; the second, in an Āryan;

4. from the point of view of the nature of their retribution: the first produces birth among the Non-Conscious Ones; the second, birth in Bhavāgra (Kathavatthu, xv.10);
5. from the point of view of the characteristic of their retribution. The retribution of the first is necessary, and takes place in the next existence; the retribution of the second is necessary in the case of an Anāgāmin, but not necessary in the case of an Arhat; and when it does take place, it takes place in the next existence or later;

6. from the point of view of its production for the first time. The first is indifferently produced within the two spheres of existence; the second, only among humans.

***

The characteristic common to these two absorptions is the arresting of the mind and its mental states.

Why is the first called “absorption free from ideas” (asamjñīsamāpatti) and the second “absorption of extinction of ideas and sensations” (samājñāveditanirodhasamāpatti)?

Because the preparation from the first merely opposes ideas, whereas preparation for the second opposes both ideas and sensations. In the same way paracittajñāna (vii.5b), "knowledge of the mind of another," bears on the mental states of someone else: it receives this restrictive name because its preparation alludes only to the mind of another.

***

In the two absorptions, the mind is interrupted for a long time. How, upon coming out of this absorption, can a new mind be born from a mind destroyed for a long time?

The Vaibhāṣikas find no difficulty in this: past dharmas exist (v.25). Consequently the mind previous to this absorption, the mind-in-absorption (samāpatticitta) or "the mind of entry into the absorption" is the similar and immediate cause (samanantarapratyaya, ii.62) of the mind after the absorption or the "mind-of-leaving" (vyticcchāna, Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 777b18).

[The Sautrantikas reason as follows:] When a person is born in
Arūpyadhatu, rūpa or matter is cut off for a long period of time (iii.81b): if this person is then reborn in Kāmadhatu or in Rūpadhatu, his new rūpa does not proceed from the series of rūpa previously interrupted for a long time, but rather, from the mind. In the same way, the mind of leaving the absorption does not have for its cause the mind previous to the absorption: it is born from "a body possessing organs". This is why the Ancient Masters said, "Two dharmas are the seed one of the other: these two dharmas are a mind and a body possessing organs."

Vasumitra says in the treatise entitled Pariprccha: "This difficulty, i.e., 'How is the mind reborn after absorption?', interests those who consider the absorption of extinction as free from mind. But I maintain that this absorption is accompanied by a subtle mind. The difficulty does not exist for me."

The Bhadanta Ghoṣaka regards this opinion as wrong. In fact, if any consciousness (vijñāna) resides in this absorption, there would be contact (sparśa) through the coming together of the three, consciousness, organ, and object; by reason of contact, there would be sensation (vedanā) and ideas (saṃjñā) (iii.30b). As the Blessed One teaches, "By reason of the mental organ and the dharmas, mental consciousness arises; by the coming together of these three, there is contact; sensation, ideas, and volition arise at the same time."

Hence, if one admits that the mind (vijñāna, citta) continues to exist in this absorption, sensation and ideas will not be arrested in it. Now this absorption is called the extinction of sensation and ideas (saṃjñāvedi- tanirodha).

[Vasumitra answers:] The Sūtra says, "By reason of sensation, there is thirst," and yet, although Arhats experience sensation, thirst does not arise in them. The same here: every contact is not a cause of sensation.

This reasoning is not conclusive. The Sūtra, in fact, specifies, "Thirst arises by reason of sensation born of contact which is accompanied by ignorance" (iii.27). Whereas it says, "Sensation arises by reason of contact." Hence, say the Vaibhāṣikas, the mind is interrupted in the absorption of extinction.
[Vasumitra asks:] If this absorption is completely free of mind, how is it an absorption (samāpatti)?

It is called an absorption because it puts the primary elements into a state of equilibrium contrary to the production of the mind; or rather because ascetics penetrate (samapadyante) it by the power of their minds: it is for this reason that the Dhyānas, etc., are called samāpattis.

***

Should one consider the two absorptions as existing in and of themselves (dravyatas)?

Yes, [answer the Sarvāstivādins,] for they thwart the arising of the mind.

No, [answer the Sautrāntikas,] it is not what you term "absorption" that hinders the arising of the mind; rather, it is the "mind in absorption" (samāpatticitta), the mind that preceeds the state of absorption: this mind, being opposed to the arising of the mind, causes other minds to not arise for a certain time. The mind of absorption renders the person or series contrary to, and unfitted to the arising of the mind. What is called "absorption" is simply the non-existence of the mind for a certain period of time; not a thing in and of itself (dravyadharma), but a "thing of designation" (prajñaptidharma).

[The Sarvāstivādins:] How can an absorption be conditioned (samskṛta) if it is not a thing in and of itself?

This "non-existence of the mind" was not realized before the mind of absorption; it ceases when the ascetic produces anew the mind (vyutthāna-citta: the mind leaving the absorption). One can then, in a manner of speaking, designate it as being "conditioned," since it begins and ends. Or rather, what we call "absorption" is the condition of the person, a condition that results from the mind of absorption.

The same holds for non-consciousness (āsamjñika, ii.41b-c). Āsamjñika is not a thing in and of itself that hinders the arising of the mind; but we designate by this term the state of non-consciousness of the Non-Conscious gods, a state that results from a certain mind.
The Vaibhāṣikas do not agree with this opinion; they maintain that āsammjñika and the two absorptions are things in and of themselves.\(^{262}\)

***

What is the vital organ?

45a. Jīvita is life (āyus).\(^{263}\)

In fact, the Abhidharma\(^{264}\) says, "What is the jīvitendriya? The āyus of the three spheres of existence."

What sort of dharma is the āyus?

45b. The support of warmth and consciousness.

For the Blessed One said, "When life, warmth and consciousness leave the body, the body lies abandoned, like wood, lacking feeling.\(^{265}\)

There exists then a distinct dharma, a support of warmth and of consciousness, a cause of the duration of the series, named āyus.\(^{266}\)

***

[The Sautrāntikas deny that the vital organ exists in and of itself.]

[1. The Sautrāntikas:] If the āyus supports warmth and consciousness, what supports it?

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] It is supported by warmth and consciousness.

[The Sautrāntikas:] If these three dharmas,—life, warmth, and consciousness,—mutually support one another and continue to exist by means of this mutual support, how do they come to an end? Which perishes first, the destruction of which entails the destruction of the others? For if one of them does not perish first, then these three dharmas will be eternal and will not perish.

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] The āyus is supported by means of actions; the āyus has been projected through actions and continues to exist as long as the projection of action allows it to do so.

[The Sautrāntikas:] If this is so, why admit that warmth and consciousness are supported by actions? What do we have to do with
the āyus?

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] That which is supported by action is, in its nature, retribution. If the consciousness were supported by action, all consciousness from the womb to death, would be retribution: and this is false. Hence the necessity of the āyus, supported by action, the support of warmth and consciousness.

[The Sautrāntikas:] You say then that action supports warmth and that warmth supports consciousness. Then the āyus is useless.

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] The āyus is necessary, for warmth is absent in Ārūpyadhātu. What is the support of consciousness in Ārūpyadhātu if the āyus does not exist?

[The Sautrāntikas:] In Ārūpyadhātu, consciousness is supported by action.

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] Do you have the right to change your mind? Sometimes you maintain that the consciousness is supported by warmth, and sometimes you maintain that it is supported by actions. But on the other hand, you have admitted that one should avoid the conclusion that all consciousnesses, from the womb to death, are retribution. Consequently the āyus exists, and it is the support of warmth and consciousness.

[2. The Sautrāntikas:] We do not deny the existence of the āyus. We only say that the āyus is not a thing in and of itself.

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] Then what is the dhāma that you call āyus?

[The Sautrāntikas:] It is a certain power that the action of a previous existence places in a being at the moment of its conception, a power through which the skandhas renew themselves for a determined length of time in this homogeneous series that constitutes an existence (nikāyasabhāga, ii.41), in the same way a seed places a certain power in the sprout by which the plant develops to maturity. In this same way too a shot arrow has a certain power which causes it to travel for a certain period of time.

[The Vaibhāṣikas believe that] a certain sort of guna or "quality," called saṁskāra or vega (impetus) arises in the arrow. By the force of this guna, the arrow travels without stopping until the moment it falls.
The _sāṃskāra_ is unique; on the one hand, the arrow does not encounter any obstacle: hence no difference is possible in the speed of the arrow. On the other hand, the arrow will not fall. Would you say the the “wind” creates an obstacle to the _sāṃskāra_? The “wind” which creates an obstacle is the same either far or near, and so the arrow would either fall at first, or it will never fall.

The Vaibhāṣikas maintain that the _āyus_ is a thing in and of itself.²⁶⁹

[ii. How Death takes Place.]

Does death take place solely through the exhaustion of life?

The _Prajñaptisāstra_²⁷⁰ says, “It happens that one dies through the exhaustion of life without one dying through the exhaustion of merit. Four alternatives: 1. death through exhaustion of action that ripened in life; 2. death through the exhaustion of actions that ripened in objects of enjoyment;²⁷¹ 3. death through the exhaustion of these two types of actions; and 4. death through the fact of not avoiding causes that harm, for example, excess of food.”

We must add death due to the abandoning of the _āyuḥ-sāṃskāra_ (ii.10).²⁷²

When life is exhausted, the exhaustion of actions that ripen in the objects of enjoyment has no efficacy for death; and vice versa. Consequently the third alternative should be understood as “death because the two types of actions are exhausted.”

[iii. Death before its proper time (akālamaraṇa, iii.85c).]

The _Jñānaprasthāna_ (TD 26, p. 997b28) says, “Should one say of the _āyus_ that it is ‘dependent on the series,’ or that ‘it lasts once it has arisen?’ The _āyus_ is of the first category for beings in Kāmadhātu who are not in one of the two absorptions (asamjñīsamāpatti and nirodhasamāpatti); but it is of the second category for beings in Kāmadhātu who are in the two absorptions, and for beings in Rūpadhātu and Ārūpyadhātu.”

What is the meaning of this passage?

If the _āyus_ is killed when the body is killed, then the _āyus_ is “bound to the body-series.” If the body cannot be damaged, then the _āyus_ lasts all the time for which it has been produced, and one says that the _āyus_
lasts once it has arisen. 273

The Masters of Kaśmir say that the first type of āyus is "subject to obstruction," but that the second is not subject to obstruction. 274

Thus there is premature death. 274

According to the Sūtra, there are four modes of existence: 275
everything can be destroyed by oneself and not by another, etc. 276

Four alternatives: 1. existence destroyed by oneself: certain beings in Kāmadhātu, namely the Kṛḍāpradūṣika gods and the Manaḥpradūṣika gods 276 destroy their own existence through their excess of joy or anger; we must also add the Buddhas who enter into Nirvāṇa; 2. existences destroyed by others: beings in the womb and in eggs; 3. existences destroyed by oneself and by others: beings in Kāmadhātu in general; we must exclude beings in hell, beings in the intermediate state (iii.12), etc.; 4. existences that are neither destroyed by oneself nor by others: beings in the intermediate state, all beings in Rūpadhātu and Ārūpyadhātu, and a part of the beings in Kāmadhātu: beings in hell (iii.82), the inhabitants of Uttarakuru (iii.78c), persons in the absorption of kindness (vii.29), the Rājarṣi, that is, the Cakravartin who has left the householders' life; a messenger of the Buddha; 278 persons whom the Buddha prophesized would live a certain length of time: 279

Dharmila, Uttara, Gaṅgila, 280 the son of the merchant Yaśas, Kumāra, Jīvaka, etc.; the Bodhisattva in his last existence; the mother of the Bodhisattva pregnant with the Bodhisattva; the Cakravartin; the mother of the Cakravartin pregnant with the Cakravartin.

[Objection:] The Sūtra tells us of a question by Śāriputra and the Blessed One's answer to it: "'Lord, What are the beings whose existence cannot be destroyed either by themselves, or by others?' 'Śāriputra, beings who are born in Naivasamjñānasamjñayatana . . . '" that is, in the highest sphere of Ārūpyadhātu, Bhaṭavāra. How can you say, in the light of this passage, that the existence of all beings in Rūpadhātu and Ārūpyadhātu is protected from all destruction, either by themselves or others?

The School (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 772a29) explains, "Beings in Rūpadhātu and the first three stages of Ārūpyadhātu can destroy their
existence 'by themselves,'" that is, by a course of action within their own realm, and 'by others,' namely by a course of action belonging to the preliminary stages of a higher stage (vi.48, viii.22). But in the last stage of Ārūpyadhātu a course of action belonging to this stage and also of actions of a superior stage are both absent; hence the existence of beings who reside therein cannot be modified either by themselves or by others.

This answer appears weak to us; in fact, one can, in the last stage of Ārūpyadhātu practice a course of action belonging to the immediately lower stage (akīncañyāyatana, viii.20). One must then admit another explanation (Vibhāṣa, ibid.). In his response to Śāriputa, the Buddha, by naming the beings of Naivasamjñānāsamjñāyatana, intends to designate all beings in Rūpadhātu and Ārūpyadhātu, for in naming the last one designates the first. We can demonstrate that such is the usage. Sometimes Scripture names the first term of a list the totality of which is alluded to, for example, "The first sukhopapatti (iii.72), namely (tadyathā) the Brahmakāyika gods." We should then also understand, "the Brahmakāyikas, the Brahmapurohitas, and the Mahābrahmās." Sometimes Scripture names the last term, "The second sukhopapatti, namely the Ābhāsvara gods." We should then understand, "the Parītābhas, the Apramāṇābhas, and the Ābhāsvaras."

But one can contest this explanation. In the two passages given above the word tadyathā is used to introduce an example. We must translate tadyathā not as "namely" but as "for example." It is a rule concerning examples that when one names one case one designates all similar cases. And we admit that, in the two above passages on the sukhopapattis, the Scripture designated all the terms of the list by naming only the first and the last. However the answer of the Blessed One to Śāriputra does not contain the word tadyathā.

We would say that this explanation does not introduce an example, for we find it in Sūtras that give a complete enumeration, "Material beings, diverse of body, diverse of ideas, namely (tadyathā) human beings and part of the gods ..." (iii.6). Thus the word tadyathā introduces a definition (upadarśanañātha). Hence the Blessed One, in his answer to Śāriputra, designates the beginning by naming the end,
that is, he is speaking of the totality of the two higher spheres.  

***

What are the characteristics of conditioned dharmas?

45c-d. Their characteristics are arising, old age, duration, and impermanence.

These four dharmas, arising, old age, duration, and impermanence, are the characteristics of conditioned things. A dharma in which these characteristics are found is conditioned; a dharma in which they are not found is unconditioned.

Arising produces or causes to produce conditioned things; duration stabilizes them or causes them to last; old age makes them deteriorate; and impermanence destroys them.

Does not the Sūtra teach the existence of some three "conditioned characteristics" of conditioned things? The Sūtra says, in fact, "There are, oh Bhiksus, three characteristics of conditioned things, which are themselves conditioned. What are these three? The production or origin of conditioned things is an object of consciousness; its disappearance and also its duration-modification is an object of consciousness."

[The Vaibhāṣikas:] The Sūtra should enumerate four characteristics. The characteristic that it omits is the characteristic of duration or sthiti. Truth to tell, it does use sthiti in the compound, sthityanyathātva, "duration-modification," but sthityanyathātva is an expression that signifies "old age." As the Sūtra says "production" (utpāda) in place of "arising" (jāti) and "disappearance" (vyaya) in place of "impermanence" (anityatā), in this same way it also says sthityanyathātva in place of "old age" (jara).

If the Sūtra specifies only three characteristics, it is because, with a view to rousing disgust among believers, it points out as the characteristics of conditioned things those dharmas which cause conditioned things to pass through the three time periods: the power
of its arising causes it to pass from the future into the present; old age and impermanence cause it to pass from the present into the past, and, after old age has weakened it, impermanence finishes it. The School gives a comparision (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 201b7): Suppose there is a man in a dark forest, and there are three enemies there who wish to kill him. The first causes this man to leave the forest; the second weakens him, and the third destroys his vital principle. Such is the role of the three characteristics with regard to conditioned things. 285 Duration, on the contrary, sustains conditioned things and causes them to last; this is why the Sūtra does not count it among the characteristics. Further, the unconditioned lasts eternally in its own nature: the characteristic of duration is not without resemblance to the persistence of the unconditioned. So in order to avoid any confusion, the Sūtra does not indicate duration as a characteristic of conditioned things.

[The Sautrāntikas think that] the Sūtra does name duration; it names it by associating it with old age: sāhītyanyathātva, that is to say, “sthīti and anyathātva.”

What advantage is there, would you say, in making one single characteristic out of these two characteristics?

Persons are attracted to duration: in order to incite disgust with respect to duration, the Sūtra names it together with old age, like prosperity associated with black ears. 286

Conclusion: there are four characteristics.

***

The arising, duration, etc., of any sort of dharma is also conditioned. They should also arise, last, grow old, and perish; they should then, in their turn, possess four characteristics: arising-of-arising, etc., which will be the secondary characteristics (anulaksana) of the dharma under consideration. These secondary characteristics, being conditioned, have in their turn four characteristics, and so we have infinite progression.

There is no infinite progression.
46a. They have in their turn characteristics termed arising-of-arising, duration-of-duration, etc.;

Four primary characteristics are as described above.
The four secondary characteristics (*anulaksana*) are arising-of-arising, duration-of-duration, old age-of-old age, and impermanence-of-impermanence.

All conditioned things are conditioned by these primary characteristics; these, in their turn, are conditioned by the four secondary characteristics.

You say that each of the primary characteristics should have, exactly as the *dharma* that it characterizes, four characteristics, and thus following: you do not understand that these are the activity, the operation (*vṛtti=dharma-kāritra=purusākāra*, iv.58) of the different characteristics.

46b. The primary characteristic refers to eight *dharms*, the secondary characteristic to one *dharma*.\(^{287}\)

When a *dharma* arises—which we will term the principle *dharma* or *mūladharma*, a mind or a mental state—nine *dharms*, including it, arise together: the principal *dharma*, four primary characteristics, and four secondary characteristics. The first primary characteristic, primary arising causes the principle *dharma*, plus three primary characteristics (duration, old age, and impermanence), plus the four secondary characteristics to arise: in all eight *dharms*. It does not cause itself to be produced: it arises through the secondary characteristic arising-of-arising (*jāti-jāti*). In the same way a hen lays many eggs and each egg causes the birth of only one other chicken (*Vibhāṣā, TD* 27, p. 200c19); in the same way primary arising causes eight *dharms* to arise, whereas arising-of-arising causes only one dharma to arise, namely primary arising.

It is the same for the other primary and secondary characteristics. Duration-of-duration causes primary duration to last, which in turn causes the principal *dharma* to last, as well as the three primary characteristics and the four secondary characteristics comprising duration-of-duration. The same for primary old age and imperma-
nence which causes eight dharmas to age and to perish, and which age and perish themselves through the secondary characteristics which correspond to them, old age-of-old age and impermanence-of-impermanence.

Hence the characteristics themselves have characteristics called anulaksana; they are four in number and not sixteen, and there is no infinite progression.

***

The Sautrāntikas say:

i. All this is to analyze emptiness! Arising, duration, etc., are not entities, separate things in and of themselves. We know things either through direct perception, through inference, or through the testimony of Scripture: these three means of correct knowledge (pramāṇa) are missing with respect to these characteristics.

But, [reply the Sarvāstivādins,] the Sūtra says “The production of conditioned things is an object of consciousness . . .”

Ignorant! You are attached to the words and err with regard to their meaning. The Blessed One however said that it is the meaning, and not the letter, that is the recourse. As for the sense of this Sūtra, it is obvious.

Blinded by ignorance, foolish persons imagine that the series of conditioned phenomena (sāṃskāras) is a “self” or belongs to a “self,” and, as a consequence, they are attached to this series. The Blessed One wanted to put an end to this erroneous imagination and to the attachment which results from it: he wanted to show that the series is conditioned, that is to say, “produced through successive causes” (pratītyasamutpanna); and he taught the three marks of that which is produced through successive causes, saying that “Three sāṃskṛtalaksanās of the sāṃskṛta are the object of consciousness.” It is the series that the Blessed One means to designate as conditioned, for, quite clearly, he does not attribute the three marks to each moment of the series, since he says that these marks are the object of consciousness: in fact, the production of the moment, its aging, and its disappearance,
are not the objects of consciousness; whatever is not the object of consciousness cannot be a mark.

If the Sūtra uses the word saṁskṛta twice, "There are three saṁskṛtalaksanās of the saṁskṛta," this is in order that one should know that these three marks are not marks showing the presence of the saṁskṛtas, as herons indicate the nearness of water; nor are they qualitative signs of the saṁskṛta, as the marks of a young girl permit one to say that she is good or bad; no, when these marks are found on a thing, they show that this thing is a saṁskṛta. [Hence we would translate this canonical text as "Conditioned things possess three visible marks which show that it is conditioned, that is, produced through successive causes. These marks are its arising, its duration-modification, and its impermanence."

ii. According to us, what one should understand by production or arising is the fact that the series begins; disappearance or impermanence is the end or cessation of the series; duration is the series continuing from its beginning until its end; evolution or old age is the modification of the continuous series, the difference between its successive states. It is from this point of view—that is, by considering arising, enduring, prolonging itself, and modifying itself—that the Blessed One says to Sundarananda, who is perpetually attentive to his states of mind, "Fine, my man! You know that your sensations arise, last, end, and disappear." 291

We would then say, 292

"Arising is the beginning of the series, disappearance is its rupture; duration is the series itself; evolution is the difference between its successive states."

And again,

"Arising is existence following upon non-existence; duration is the series; impermanence is the rupture of the series; and evolution is supposed to be the difference between the successive states of the series."

"Since the dharmas are momentary, would you say that the dharmas will perish [immediately] if duration is lacking? But [if the dharmas are momentary], they perish spontaneously: in vain you
attribute duration to a momentary dharma." 293

Consequently it is the series that the Sūtra refers to when it speaks of duration, and the definition of the Abhidharma (Prakaraṇapāda, TD, p. 694a26) is justified, "What is duration? The samskāras arisen and not destroyed." The nature of the "moment" (kṣanadharma) cannot be "arisen and not be destroyed."

Yet the Jñānaprasthāna (TD 26, p. 926b21) says, "Relative to one mind, what is production? It is arising. What is disappearance? It is death. What is evolution? It is old age."

But this passage of the Śāstra does not refer to a moment of the mind, but to the mind of a homogeneous existence (nikāyasabbāgacitta). [In a homogeneous existence (ii.41) the minds are multiple, but this multiplicity can be designated as being one mind.]

iii. However, since one cannot consider characteristics as things in and of themselves, one can say that each moment taken separately possesses the four characteristics.

In fact, (1) each moment exists after having been non-existent: its existence, following upon its non-existence, is its arising; (2) after having existed, it does not exist anymore: this is its disappearance; (3) the duration of the moment is the concatenation or the process of successive moments: in fact, if the subsequent moment resembles the previous moment, it is then its substitute: the previous moment still exists or still lasts. Thus the subsequent moment can be considered as the duration of the previous moment; (4) the dissimilitude of duration is its transformation.

Would you say that there is no dissimilitude when the successive moments are similar (sadṛśa)?

There is dissimilitude, as this results from the difference in time of the slower or faster falling of a vajra that is or is not projected, and which is projected with or without force: difference due in each case to a transformation or a difference of the primary elements of the vajra. When the dharmas succeed themselves in a homogeneous series, the difference is small; that is why, although they differ, they are considered as similar.

[The Sarvāstivādins object:] Your definition of characteristics does
not hold for all conditioned dharmas. In fact, your definition of
duration supposes a subsequent moment: but such a moment does not
exist for the last moment of the mind of an Arhat. Hence the last
moment of a sound, a flame, or an Arhat, has neither duration nor
transformation.

We do not attribute duration to all conditioned dharmas! We say
rather, that all duration is subject to transformation. The Blessed One
teaches three characteristics, because, in certain cases, there are three
characteristics. But, for the last moment of a flame, there is only
production and disappearance, and no duration or transformation.

In short, conditioned dharmas exist after having existed; after
having existed, they no longer exist; the series of dharmas is their
duration; dissimilarity of the series is their transformation. Such is the
teaching that the Blessed One gives in the Sūtra of the Three
Characteristics. This has nothing to do with things in and of
themselves, arising, etc.

[v. The Vaibhāṣikas object:] According to you, arising is the
dharma itself in so far as it exists after having been non-existent. The
dharma which is the "thing characterized" (laksya), would then be the
characteristic (laksana) also.

What is wrong with that? The marks of a Mahāpuruṣa are not
different or distinct from the Mahāpuruṣa himself. The horns, the
hump, the fetlock, the hoof, and the tail of a cow, which are its marks,
are not different from the cow. The primary elements do not exist
apart from their individual characteristics, solidity, etc. (i.12d). In this
same way, for the Vaibhāṣikas who affirm the "momentariness" of the
dharmas, the rising of smoke is none other than the smoke itself294

Let us look at this a bit closer. Although I grasp the individual
nature of visible things, etc., which are conditioned, yet as long as I do
not know the fact that they did not exist previously, that they will not
exist later, and that their series transforms itself, then I shall not know
their quality of being conditioned. Consequently, the quality of being
conditioned does not have for a mark the quality of being conditioned,
but rather previous non-existence, etc.295 And there do not exist
characteristics, things in and of themselves, distinct from visible things
and other conditioned things.

v. If we admit the reality of characteristics, then since they are given as simultaneous, we would have to admit that one dharma arises, lasts, grows old and perishes at one and the same time.

It is in vain that the Sarvāstivādins pretend that the characteristics do not exercise their activity at one and the same time; that arising engenders before being born itself, being still in a future state, and that once it is born it does not engender any longer; that duration, old age, and impermanence exercise their activity when they are present and not in a future state; and that, consequently, the last three characteristics are active in a moment when the first is no longer active, so the four characteristics can be simultaneous without contradiction.

Let us first consider arising which, being future, engenders. One must examine whether a future dharma, supposing that it does exist, can be active. If future arising produces the operation of engendering, how can one say that it is future? In fact, according to the Vaibhāṣikas, a future dharma is one that does not exercise its activity. You would have to define future. On the other hand, when a dharma has arisen, has been engendered, and the operation of arising is past, how can you say that arising is then of the present? You would have to define present.

And either the activity of the other characteristics is exercised simultaneously, or their activity is exercised in succession. In the first hypothesis, whereas duration makes a dharma last, old age makes it age and impermanence destroys it: the dharma lasts, ages and perishes at the same time. As for the second hypothesis, to admit that the activity of these characteristics is not simultaneous is to admit three moments, and this is to renounce the doctrine of momentariness.

[The Vaibhāṣikas answer:] For us, the ksana or moment is the time during which the characteristics have achieved their operation.

Then explain why, in this hypothesis, duration, arising at the same time as old age and impermanence, accomplishes its operation of "making last that which should last" before old age and impermanence accomplish their operation of making things age and destroying them. If you answer that duration, being stronger, accomplishes its operation
first, then we would ask how duration is weakened later in such a manner that, encountering old age and impermanence, it ages and perishes, not alone, but with the dhārma that it should have made last.

You say perhaps that duration, having achieved its task, cannot perform it again, in the same way that arising, having engendered something, engenders no more. The comparison is not legitimate. The operation of arising consists of attracting the dhārma that it should engender from the future and causing it to enter into the present; once the dhārma has entered into the present, arising is incapable of making it enter therein again. But the operation of duration is to make the dhārma “which should be made to last” last, of hindering the dhārma which makes old age and perishing last. Duration is capable of making that which lasts last indefinitely. Consequently, duration is capable of repeating its operation.

By reason of what obstacle or from what adverse forces would the activity of duration cease once it has begun? Would these forces be old age and impermanence, old age weakening duration which impermanence then kills? Since, in this hypothesis, old age and impermanence are stronger than duration, it is proper then that they exercise their activity first. Further, according to your conception of duration and its role, it is through the activity of duration that, not only the principal dhārma, but also old age and impermanence, last. Hence, when the activity of duration ends, the principal dhārma, as well as old age and impermanence, cease their duration. We ask how, and with regard to what object, old age and impermanence exercise their activity of aging and causing to perish?

We do not see what it is that old age and impermanence have to do. It is through duration that one dhārma, once it arises, does not perish for a certain time, does not perish as soon as it arises. If duration, its task completed, neglects the dhārma, it will quite certainly not last any longer; that is to say, it perishes in and of itself.

We well understand the duration and impermanence of the dhārma, “A dhārma, after having arisen, does not perish,” “A dhārma, after having lasted, perishes.” But how can one attribute old age to a dhārma? Old age is a transformation, a dissimilarity between two
states. Now, can one say of a single dharma that it becomes different from itself?

"If it remains this, it is not that; if it is transformed, it is no longer this. Hence the transformation of a dharma is impossible."

According to another School, it is with the cooperation of external causes of destruction, fire or a hammer, etc., that the characteristics of impermanence causes certain dharmas to perish, as wood or a pot.

This is a theory as absurd as a sick person, who, after having taken a medicine, begs the gods to render it efficacious! In the logic of this system, it is the external causes of destruction which destroy, and the characteristic of impermanence serves no function.

The same School admits that the mind and its mental states, like sound or a flame, perish immediately, without any foreign causes intervening, through the characteristic of impermanence. Impermanence and duration accomplish their operation at one and the same time: a dharma lasts and perishes at the same time. This is inadmissable.

We conclude that it is with regard to the series that the Blessed One teaches the characteristics of conditioned things. Thus understood, the Sutra does not invite criticism, "There are three characteristics that show that the conditioned is conditioned, that it is produced through successive causes . . ." 299

***

If arising engenders, in a future state, the dharma that it should engender, why do not all future dharmas arise at one and the same time? 300

46c-d. Arising engenders the dharma that it should engender, but not without the cooperation of causes and conditions. 301

Isolated arising does not have the force of engendering the dharma that it should engender independent of the cooperation of causes and conditions.

[1. Objection of the Sautrāntikas:] If this is the case, we rather
believe that it is the cause that engenders, and not arising; this characteristic accompanies the dharma since the beginning of time and causes the dharma to arise when, finally, the cause of this dharma encounters another! When the causes are completed, the dharma arises; when they are not completed, it does not arise: what efficacy can we attribute to arising? 

[2. The Sarvástivādins answer:] Do you pretend to know all the dharmas that exist? The nature of dharmas is subtle! Even though one sees them, one does not know their nature.

Moreover, in the absence of the characteristic “arising,” the idea of “birth” (jatabuddhi = jata iti) would be absent. And if arising is nothing other than the dharma itself existing after having been non-existent, the genitive “the arising of warmth” or “the arising of sensation” would not be justified; for this amounts to saying “the warmth of warmth” or “the sensation of sensation.” This is the same for duration, old age, and extinction.

[3. Reply of the Sautrāntikas:] This theory leads you very far afield: in order to justify the idea of empty (śūnya), or the idea of the impersonal, you would admit the existence of an entity called “emptiness” or the existence of an entity called “non-self.” And again, in order to justify the ideas of one and two, large and small, separate, associated and disassociated, this and that, existant, etc., you would admit, in agreement with the Vaiśeṣikas, a long series of entities: number, extension, individuality, conjunction, disjunction, quality of being that, quality of being this, existence, etc. It obliges you to create a “pot-ness” in order to justify the idea of a pot.

As for the genitive, you do not admit that the individual nature of warmth and warmth are different things, and yet you speak of the individual nature of warmth.

Hence you have not proven that “arising” is a thing in and of itself; you have not proven that this is not merely a designation of a dharma in so far as it exists after having been non-existent.

When I want to teach someone that a certain dharma exists which formerly did not exist, I say to him, “This dharma has arisen,” and I designate this dharma as being born. Many dharmas,—warmth,
sensation, etc.,—arise, that is to say, "exist after having been non-existent." Hence there are many arisings, that is, many dharmas arising. Since arising is multiple, in order to distinguish it from other arisings, so that my questioner knows that it refers to an arising having the name "warmth" and not to an arising having the name "sensation," I will employ the genitive, "the arising of warmth," or "the arising of sensation," although the arising of warmth is only the warmth arising. In the same way one says, in the world, "the odor of sandalwood," although sandalwood is only odor, or "the body of the bust," although a bust is only its body.305

[4. The Sarvāstivādins answer:] We hold to the existence of the characteristic "arising," which belongs to conditioned things and does not belong to unconditioned things, and we can easily explain this by virtue of the fact that unconditioned things do not arise. But if conditioned things arise without "arising," why do unconditioned things, space, etc., not arise?

We say that conditioned things arise, for they exist after having been non-existent. But how can unconditioned things arise, since they are eternal? You explain that certain dharmas,—the unconditioned dharmas,—are devoid of the characteristic "arising," because, you say, such is the nature of things (dharmatā): we say, rather, that by virtue of the nature of things, none of the dharmas are susceptible of arising. Moreover, according to you, all conditioned things equally possess the characteristic "arising" that you refuse to unconditioned things: yet you admit that certain causes are capable of producing warmth but incapable of producing sensation. In the same way, according to you, since conditioned and unconditioned things are equally devoid of the characteristic of "arising," all causes that produce conditioned things are ineffacacious with regard to unconditioned things.

[5. The Vaibhāṣikas say that] the four characteristics, arising, etc., are things in and of themselves.306

Why?307 Should we abandon the Āgamas308 for the sole reason that there are persons who object to them? One does not renounce sowing for fear of deer, and one does not renounce eating dainties because of flies.309 One must refute objections and adhere to the
Doctrine.

***

What is namakāya, padakāya, and vyañjanakāya?

47a-b. Nāmakāya, etc., are collections of sarīnijās, vākyas, and aksaras.\(^{310}\)

1. Nāman, "name" or "word" is understood as "that which causes ideas to arise,"\(^{311}\) for example the words "warmth," "sound," "odor," etc.

2. Pada or "phrase" is understood as vākyā, a discourse, a phrase allowing the development necessary for a complete sentence,\(^{312}\) for example the stanza, "Impermanent are the sāṃskāras . . ." and the rest.\(^{313}\) Or rather, one should understand pada as that which causes one to comprehend the different modalities of activity, quality, and time which concern a certain person: for example, he cooks, he reads, he goes; it is black, yellow, or red;\(^{314}\) he cooks, he will cook, or he cooked.\(^{315}\)

3. Vyañjana is understood as aksara or phoneme (varṇa), vowels and consonents, for example, a, ā, [i, ī] etc.

But are not the aksaras the names of the letters?

One does not make or one does not pronounce phonemes with a view to designating, or of giving an idea of the letters; but one makes or one writes the letters with a view to giving an idea of the phonemes, so that, when one does not understand them, one still has an idea of them through writing. Consequently the phonemes are not the names of letters.

4. Kāya or "body" means "collection;" samukti, in fact, has the sense of samavāya according to the Dvātupātha, iv.114.

Hence we have: nāmakāya = color, sound, odor, etc.; padakāya = "The sāṃskāras are impermanent, the dharmas are impersonal; Nirvana is tranquil . . ." etc.; and vyañjanakāya = ka, kha, ga, gha . . .

***
[1. Objection of the Sautrāntikas:] Are not words, phrases, and phonemes (nāman, pada, vyanjana) “voice” (vāc) by nature, and consequently “sound” (sabda)? Hence they form part of the rūpaskandha; they are not saṁskāras disassociated from the mind as the Sarvāstivādins believe.

[The Sarvāstivādins:] They are not “voice.” Voice is “vocal sound,” and a vocal sound only; for example, a cry does not cause one to attain to or comprehend an object. But a word (nāman) which moreover is a function of vocal sound, illumines, causes one to attain to, or signifies the object.

[The Sautrāntikas:] What I call “voice” is not merely vocal sound, but a vocal sound that causes one to attain to an object, that is, a vocal sound with regard to which persons who are speaking are in agreement as to what a certain thing signifies. It is thus that the Ancients have invested the sound go with the power to signify nine things: “The sages have established the sound go in nine things, that is, cardinal region, cattle, land, a beam of light, a word, a diamond, an eye, a haven, and water.” The philosopher for whom “it is the word (nāman) which illumines the object” should admit that the sound go has been endowed by convention with these different meanings. Then if a given object is signified to the hearer by a certain word, it is indeed vocal sound and nothing else, that signifies it. What advantage is there in supposing the existence of an entity you call “word?”

[2. The Sautrāntikas continue:] A word is either produced by the voice or revealed by the voice.

a. In the first hypothesis, since voice is vocal sound by nature, any vocal sound whatsoever, even the cry of an animal, would produce a word. If you answer that a word is produced solely through a vocal sound of a certain nature—the articulation of sound, varnātmaka—we would say that this sort of vocal sound which is capable of producing a word would be quite capable of designating an object also.

In the second hypothesis, this same criticism holds by replacing the verb “to produce” with the verb “to manifest.”

b. But it is absurd to suppose that the voice produces a word. In fact, sounds do not exist at the same time—one has, for example,
r-ū-p-a—whereas the word, which you define as a dharma, an entity, cannot arise in parts. Then how can the voice, when it produces a word, produce it? You say that the case is analogous to that of avijñāpti (iv.3d): the last moment of the vijñāpti, a corporeal or vocal act, creates avijñāpti by reason of its previous moments. But, we would say, if the last moment of the sound of the voice creates the word, it would suffice to understand the last sound in order to attain or comprehend the object.

It is not an evasion to suppose that voice engenders the phoneme (vyañjana), that a phoneme engenders a word, and that a word causes comprehension of objects. In fact, the same objection is present, "The phonemes do not exist at the same time, etc."

For these same reasons, it is absurd to suppose that the voice manifests a word. [Sounds do not exist at the same time, and a dharma, one entity, such as a word, cannot be mainfested in parts . . . and following].

c. [The hypothesis that "voice" engenders a phoneme—a hypothesis that we have previously tolerated—calls moreover for some new remarks]. Experts vainly apply their minds but do not discover a phoneme distinct from the voice. Moreover, the voice neither engenders nor manifests the phoneme, for the same reasons that allow that the voice neither engenders nor manifests a word. [Since the "voice" is vocal sound by nature, all vocal sound would engender or manifest phonemes. If you reply that phonemes are only engendered or manifested by the vocal sound of a certain nature . . . as above ad 2a2.]

[3. But the Sarvāstivādins may suppose that] a word arises with its object, like the characteristic "arising." The question of knowing whether it is produced or manifested by the voice, disappears.

In this hypothesis, no present word would designate a past or future thing. Moreover, a father, a mother, or other persons arbitrarily fix the word that is the proper name of a son, etc.: how can you admit that the word, like the characteristic "arising," arises simultaneously with the object? Finally, unconditioned things would not have any name, since they do not arise: a consequence that the Sarvāstivādins
cannot admit.

[4. But the Sarvāstivādins are warranted by a text.] The Blessed One said, "A stanza (gāthā) depends on words, and a poem depends on stanzas." 319

[The Sautrāntikas answer that] word (nāman) is a sound (sabda) upon which persons have come to an agreement that it signifies a certain thing. 320 A stanza (gāthā) is a certain arrangement of words: it is in this sense that it, according to the Blessed One, depends on words. To admit an entity in and of itself called pada, is a very superfluous hypothesis. You might as well maintain that there exists, distinct from ants and minds, things in and of themselves termed "a row of ants" or "a succession of minds." 321 Recognize then that only the phonemes (aṁśaras), which are sounds, exist in and of themselves.

The Vaibhāṣikas admit nāmakāya, padakāya, and vyañjanakāya, as saṁskāras disassociated from the mind, for, they say, none of these dharmas serve as a gate of understanding. 322

***

We ask: (1) to which sphere of existence do the phonemes, words, and phrases belong? (2) Do they belong to living beings (sattvākhyā, i.10b)? (3) Are they of retribution, of accumulation or of out-flowing (i.37)? and (4) Are they good, bad, or neutral?

47c-d. They exist in Kāmadhātu and Rūpadhātu; they belong to living beings; they are out-flowing; and they are neutral. 323

The phonemes, etc., belong to two spheres of existence. According to one opinion, they also exist in Ārūpyadhātu, but there they are "unpronounceable." 324

They belong to living beings, being produced through the efforts of living beings and consisting of articulated sounds (vṛṇa), etc. In fact, they belong to the person who speaks, not to the things that they designate.

They are an out-flowing, being produced through saṁbhāgahetu
(ii.52); they are not of retribution, since they proceed from the desire of the person who speaks; they are not of accumulation, since they are not material.

They are non-defiled-neutral (anivrāvyākṛta, ii.28).\textsuperscript{325}

***

We shall briefly explain the characteristics, not as yet mentioned, of the other dharmas disassociated from the mind (ii.35).

47d-48b. The same for "genre," (sabhāgata) which is also from retribution, and which belongs to the three spheres of existence.

"The same for," that is to say, like phonemes, words, and phrases, sabhāgata is of the first two spheres of existence; it belongs to living beings; it is from out-flowing; and it is non-defiled-neutral.

But sabhāgata is not only from out-flowing: it is also of retribution; it not only belongs to the first two spheres of existence, it also belongs to the third.

48b. Possession (prāpti) is of two types.\textsuperscript{326}

It is of out-flowing and of retribution.

48c. Its characteristics also.

Its characteristics, arising, etc., are of two types, like possession.

48c-d. The absorptions and non-possession (aprāpti) are of out-flowing.

The two absorptions and non-possession are only out-flowings.

As for their spheres, their relationship with living beings, their moral qualifications (good, etc.), the explanations have been given above. The characteristics belong to all conditioned things, hence they belong to living beings and to non-living beings. For the āsamjñīka and the āyus, see ii.41d and 45a.

***
We have seen (9ii.47c-d) that arising, in order to engender the dharmas that it should engender, needs the cooperation of hetus or causes, and pratayyas or conditions. What are the hetus, and what are the pratayyas?\(^{327}\)

49. The hetus are sixfold: kāraṇahetu, sahabhū, sabbhāga, samprayutaka, sarvatraga, and vipāka.\(^{328}\)

Kāraṇahetu is reason for existence; sahabhūhetu is coexistent cause; sabbhāgahetu is parallel cause; samprayuktakahetu is associated cause; sarvatragahetu is universal cause, and vipākahetu is retributive cause: such are the six types of causes that the Ābhidhārmikas (Jñānaprasthāna, TD p. 920c5) recognize.\(^{329}\)

50a. All dharmas are kāraṇahetu with regard to all, with the exception of themselves.

A dharma is not a kāraṇahetu of itself.

With this exception, that all of the dharmas are kāraṇahetu with regard to all other conditioned dharmas, because no dharma constitutes an obstacle to the arising of the dharmas susceptible of arising.

It results from this definition that the dharmas that are sahabhūhetu, etc., are also kāraṇahetu: all other hetus are included within kāraṇahetu. The betu that does not receive a special name, which is simply kāraṇa, "reason for existence," without any other qualification is kāraṇahetu: it receives as its particular name the name that suits all the betus. Compare this with the name of the rūpāyatana (i.24).

***

Kāraṇahetu calls for the following observations:

1. Vices are produced among the ignorant; once the Truths are known, they are not produced, as the stars are not visible when the sun shines. Hence the consciousness of the Truths, or the sun, causes an obstacle to the vices, or to the stars. Then it is false to say that all conditioned dharmas are kāraṇahetu because they create no obstacle to arising.
We understand that the consciousness of the Truths and the clarity of the sun create no obstacle to the arising of the dharma which is "arising" (utpadyamāna), that is to say of the dharma, which, its causes being completed, continues to exist.

2. What is called cause or reason for existence, may be what is capable of causing, or of not causing, an obstacle! In fact, when their lord does not oppress them, villagers say, "We are fortunate through the actions of our master." But can one call cause that which, being incapable of causing an obstacle, does not cause an obstacle? Nirvāṇa is incapable of creating any obstacle to the arising of any conditioned thing: such too are future dharmas with regard to past dharmas, or creatures of hell or animals with regard to beings in Ārūpyadhātu: Nirvāṇa, future dharmas, or creatures in hell are as if they did not exist with regard to their being an obstacle to the arising of the conditioned things in question. Can one consider them as causes?

They are causes; for, even when the lord is incapable of harming them, the villagers express themselves as we have said; but not about a non-existent lord.

3. The definition that we have given of kāraṇahetu is a general definition and includes that which is kāraṇahetu par excellence and that which is simply kāraṇahetu. Kāraṇahetu par excellence is the generating cause: in this sense, eye and color are the kāraṇahetu of the consciousness of sight; as food is with regard to the body, the seeds, etc., with regard to the sprout, etc. (see ii.56b).

[4. Objection.] If all the dharmas are the causes of other dharmas because they do not cause any obstacle, why do not all the dharmas arise together? Why, when one murder is committed, are not all creatures, like the murderer himself, guilty of the crime of murder?

This objection is useless. In fact, all the dharmas receive the name of kāraṇahetu because they do not create any obstacle: it is not that they are all agents.

5. According to other masters, all kāraṇahetus possess a real efficacy with regard to all dharmas. For example Nirvāṇa and the consciousness of sight: a mental consciousness, good or bad, arises having Nirvāṇa as its object (ālambana, ii.62c-d); from this mental
consciousness there later arises a consciousness of sight; then Nirvāṇa has efficacy, albeit mediately, with regard to the consciousness of sight. The same argument applies to future dharmas, to beings in hell, etc.

***

50c-d. Sahabhūbetu, coexistent causes, namely the elements (bhūta), the mind and the companions of the mind, characteristics and the thing characterized, are the dharmas that are causes one of the other.334

11. The dharmas that are causes (purusakāraphala, ii.58) one of the other, are called sahabhūbetu.335

For example, the primary elements (mahābhūta)336 are, among themselves, sahabhūbetu. The same for the mind and its companions (ii.51); the same for the characteristics, arising, etc. (ii.45b), and the dharmas that they characterize.

In the category of sahabhūbetu are then included all conditioned dharmas which are in a mutual relationship of causality.337

2. We have reason not to complete the above definition. A dharma is a sahabhūbetu of its secondary characteristics (anulakṣaṇa, ii.45) without being in a mutual relationship of causality with them: for the secondary characteristics are not the sahabhūbetu of their dharma. This is a case to be added to the definition.338

***

What dharmas are called “the companions of the mind?”

51a-c. The companions of the mind are: the mental states; the two disciplines (samvara); and the characteristics (lakṣaṇas) of the mental states, the two disciplines and the mind.

These are all the dharmas associated with the mind (cittasaṁprayukta, ii.24), the discipline of absorption and pure discipline.
(iv.17d), and the characteristics, arising, etc. (ii.45b) of all these, and also of the mind.

[Why are they termed “companions of the mind”?]  

51d. From the point of view of time, of result, etc., and of goodness, etc.

The companions are associated with the mind:

1. In regard to time: they have the same arising, the same duration, and the same destruction as does the mind; they are of the same time period as the mind.

When we say “the same arising . . . ,” we understand the word “same” in the sense of concomitance: the companions arise, last, and perish at the same time as does the mind; but their arising is distinct. The minds that are not destined to arise do not arise, nor last, nor perish: the same for their companions. This is why the phrase, “The companions are of the same time period as the mind” is added. [The mind which should arise is future until the moment when it arises if it is to arise: its companions are hence future; it is past after the moment when it shall perish if it arose: its companions are then past.]  

2. In regard to the result, etc. Result means *purusakārāphala* (ii.58a-b) and *visamyogaphala* (ii.57d); and “et cetera” refers to *vipākaphala* (ii.57) and *nisyandaphala* (ii.57c).

The companions have the same result, the same vipāka, and the same nisyanda as the mind: “same” indicates identity.

3. In regard to goodness, etc. The companions are good, bad, or neutral, like the mind which they accompany.

There are then ten reasons why the companions are termed companions.  

***

The mind having the least number of companions is a *sahabhūhetu* of fifty-eight dharmas: namely 1) the ten *mahābhūmikas* (ii.23) with the four characteristics of each of them; and 2) the four characteristics and the four secondary characteristics (*anulākṣāṇa,*
ii.46).

If, from these fifty-eight dharmas, the four secondary characteristics of the mind—which have no effect upon it—are set aside, then we have fifty-four dharmas that are sahabhūhetu of the same mind.

According to another opinion, only fourteen dharmas are sahabhūhetu of this mind, namely its four characteristics and the ten mahābhūunikas. As the secondary characteristics have no effect on the mind, the characteristics of the mahābhūunikas likewise have no effect on the mind.

The Vaibhāṣikas reject this opinion—that the forty characteristics of the mahābhūunikas are not sahabhūhetu of the mind,—as contradictory to the doctrine of the Prakārana-granṭha according to which "the four characteristics,—arising, duration, old age, and impermanence,—of the belief in self (satkāyadṛśṭi) . . . and in the dharmas associated with this belief (comprising the mahābhūunikas), are at the same time a result and a cause of the belief in self." 

Certain Masters, in their reading of the Prakārana-granṭha, omit the words, "and of the dharmas associated with this belief." According to the Vaibhāṣikas of Kāśmīr, these words figure in the text; or, if they are missing, the context indicates that one should supply them and that the passage as it stands is incomplete.

***

Any dharma that is a sahabhūhetu cause is a sahabhū or a coexistent item. But there are some coexistent items that are not sahabhūhetu:

1. the secondary characteristics of the principal dharma (mūla-dharma) are not a sahabhūhetu regarding this dharma (ii.46a-b);
2. these same are not sahabhūhetu among themselves;
3. the secondary characteristics of the companions of the mind are not a sahabhūhetu regarding the mind;
4. these same are not a sahabhūhetu among themselves;
5. derived matter, blue, etc., susceptible of resistance and which has also arisen together, are not a sahabhūhetu among themselves;
6. a part of derived matter not susceptible to resistance and also arisen together with them, is not a sahabbūheta; with the exception of the two disciplines (see I.136);
7. no derived matter, even though arisen with the elements, is a sahabbūheta with the elements;
8. possession (prāpti), even when it arises with the dharma to which it is related, is not a sahabbūheta to it.

The dharmas of these eight categories are coexistent (sahabhū), but are not sahabbūheta, because their results, vipāka or nisyanda, are not identical (see p. 259). As for possession, it does not always accompany the dharma: it arises either before the dharma, or after it, or at the same time as it (ii.37-38).

***

[The Sautrāntikas criticize the doctrine of coexistent causes.]

All this may be right, that is, "what is a sahabbūheta cause, a mutually coexistent cause, is a coexistent item," and the rest. Nevertheless, in the world, the relationship of cause to effect is well proven in certain cases: the cause is previous to the effect. It is in this way that a seed is the cause of the sprout, the sprout of the stalk, etc. But one does not prove a similar relationship between simultaneous things. You should then demonstrate that dharmas arisen together can be in a cause and effect relationship.

[The Sarvāstivādins supply two examples.] The lamp arises with its light; the sprout, growing in the light, arises with its shadow. Now a lamp is the cause of its light and a sprout is the cause of its shadow. Thus cause and effect can be simultaneous.

[The Sautrāntikas:] These examples are not proven. We must examine whether a lamp is the cause of its light, or if, as we think, a lamp with its light are both the effect of a complex of previous causes and conditions, oil, wick, etc. In the same way, a complex of previous causes (seed, light) is the cause of the sprout and its shadow, of the sprout with its shadow.

[The Sarvāstivādins:] The relationship of cause and effect is
proven by the existence and the non-existence of what is called effect, similar to the existence and the non-existence of what is called cause. The definition of the Logicians (hetukas) is very good: "When A is or is not, and when B is or is not, then A is considered as cause, and B is considered as effect." Granted this, if we examine the dharma that we have defined as mutually coexistent and sahabhāhetu, we see that they all exist when one of them exists, and that none exist when one of them is absent.\textsuperscript{344} They are then in a relationship of mutual cause and effect.

[The Sautrāntikas:] Admitting that among the simultaneous dharma, one dharma can be the cause of another dharma, then the organ of sight is the cause of visual consciousness.\textsuperscript{345} But how many simultaneous dharma are the cause and effect of one another?

[The Sarvāstivādins:] Mutual causality is proven by the definition that we have given of causality. When the mind exists, its mental states exist, and vice versa.

[The Sautrāntikas:] Very well, but then the Sarvāstivādins should revise their system. In fact, they have denied mutual causality to derived matter (physical matter, taste, etc.) although physical matter never exists without taste (ii.22); they have denied mutual causality to derived matter and to the primary elements, and mutual causality to secondary characteristics and the mind.

[The Sarvāstivādins:] In the same way that three staffs stand up supported one on the other, the causal relationship of simultaneous things, the mind and its mental states, etc., is proven.

[The Sautrāntikas:] This new example should be examined. We ask whether the three staffs stand up together through the force that the three staffs possess through arising together, or rather, if the force of the complex of previous causes which caused them to arise together does not now also cause them to arise supported one on the other. Further, there are things here other than the mutual force of support: there is a rope and a hook, and there is the ground.

But, [reply the Sarvāstivādins,] mutually coexistent items have causes other than the sahabhāhetu, namely sabbāgahetu, sarvatragahetu, and vipākahetu, which have a role analogous to that of the
cord, etc. Sahabhūhetu is then proven.

***

52a. Similar dharmas are sabhāgahetu or similar causes.346

Similars (sabhāga) are sabhāgahetu of similars.

1. The five good skandhas are sabhāgahetu of the five good skandhas. When they are defiled, that is to say, bad, and defiled-neutral, they are sabhāgahetu of defiled ones. Neutral, that is, undefiled-neutral, they are sabhāgahetu of neutral ones.

Nevertheless, different masters are not in agreement on this last point. According to some, neutral rūpa is sabhāgahetu of the five neutral skandhas, but the four skandhas,—sensation, etc.—are not sabhāgahetu of rūpa.347

According to others, four skandhas are sabhāghetu of the five; but rūpa is not sabhāgahetu of the four.

And according to others, rūpa is not sabhāgahetu of the four, and vice versa.

2. From the point of view of one existence, the first embryonic state is the similar cause of ten states: these are the five embryonic states, kalala, arbuda, pesin, ghana, and praṣākhā; and the five post-embryonic states, bāla, kumāra, yuvan, madhya and vṛddha. The second embryonic state is the sabhāgahetu of nine states (arbuda to vāṛddha), and thus following. A previous moment of each state is the similar cause of the later moments of that same state (compare iv.53).

From the point of view of the states of existence followed by the same species, each of the states of the previous existence is the similar cause of the ten states.

The same holds for external things, corn, rice, etc., that is, the quality of sabhāgahetu remains confined in each series: corn is a similar cause of corn, not of rice.

[3. The Dārṣṭāntikas deny that] physical matter (rūpa) is a similar cause of matter; but this contradicts the Book (Jñānapraṭsthāṇa, TD 26, p. 985b14), which says, "Past primary elements are the hetu and the
adhipati of future primary elements.” Adhipati means adhipati-pratyaya (predominating conditions, ii.62d); and hetu means sabbā-gabetu, for the hetus are here evidently apart from cause.

***

Are all similar dharmas similar causes of similar dharmas? No. Similar causes are the similar dharmas which

52b. Belong to the same category (nikāya) and the same stage (bhū).

This means that the dharmas belonging to a certain category and to a certain stage (bhūmi) are a similar cause of dharmas of the same category and the same stage.

The dharmas are classed into five categories accordingly as they are susceptible of being abandoned through Seeing each of the Four Truths, or through Meditation (i.40).

The dharmas belong to nine stages: they are either in Kāmadhātu, or in one of the Four Dhyānas, or in one of the Four Ārūpyas.

A dharma susceptible of being abandoned through Seeing the Truth of Suffering is a similar cause of another dharma susceptible of being abandoned through Seeing the Truth of Suffering, and not of the dharmas belonging to the other four categories; and thus following.

***

Sabhāgabetu has not yet been exactly defined. In fact, only those dharmas are similar causes which have

52b. Arisen previously.

An arisen dharma, that is to say, any previously past or present dharma is a similar cause of a later similar dharma, arisen or not arisen. A future dharma cannot be a similar cause.348

1. On what authority does this definition rest?
It rests on the Mūlaśāstra, for the Jñānaprasthāna (TD 26, p.
920c15) says, "What is similar cause (sabhāgabetu)? The root of good, arisen and previous, is a cause in the quality of a similar cause with regard to the later root of good and of the dharmas associated with it, of the same category and stage. In that way, the roots of good of the past are a similar cause with regard to past and present roots of good; past and present roots of good are similar causes with regard to future roots of good."

2. [Objection:] A future dharma is a similar cause, for we read in this same Jñānaprasthāna, "[Question:] Is there a period when the dharma which is the cause of a certain dharma is not a cause? [Answer:] There is never a time when this dharma is not a cause."

[The Vaibhāsikas:] This text does not contradict the first; for the Jñānaprasthāna does not refer to that which is a cause in the quality of a similar cause (sabhāgabetu), but rather that which is a cause in the qualities of sababbhābetu, samprayuktakabetu, or vipākabetu.

According to another opinion, that of the "followers of the last place" (paramāvasthvāvādin), the answer of the Jñānaprasthāna, "There is never a time when this dharma is not a cause" refers to sabhāgabetu, and they justify themselves as follows: A future dharma, in an arising state, is certainly sabhāgabetu. Hence, taking into account a future dharma in its last place, the Jñānaprasthāna can say that there is never a time when the dharma is not a cause, that it is always a cause, since, at a certain moment in the future, it is a cause.

This explanation does not resolve the difficulty. In fact, if a future dharma, after not having been a cause becomes a cause by arriving at a state of arising, then it has not always been a cause: but now the Jñānaprasthāna says absolutely that there is never a time when it is not a cause.

Furthermore, this explanation cannot be reconciled with the answer that the Jñānaprasthāna (p. 1026b19; Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 87a2) gives to another question, "Is there a period in which the dharma that is an immediately antecedent condition (samanantara, ii.62a-b) of a certain dharma is not samanantara? Yes, when it has not yet arisen." Now the case of samanantara is analogous to that of sabhāgabetu: future samanantara, arriving at a state of arising, is samanantara.
Hence if the interpretation of the answer, "There is never a time when this dharma is not a cause," in the sense of "In the future, in an arising state, it is sabbāgahetu" is correct, then the Jñānaprasthāna, dealing with samanantara, should answer as for sabbāgahetu, "This dharma is never samanantara." Now the Jñānaprasthāna answers, "It is not samanantara when it has not arisen." Hence the word "cause" in the first answer should not be understood as sabbāgahetu.

The "followers of the last place" say that the Jñānaprasthāna answers the first question by saying, "There is never a time when it is not a cause," and the second by saying, "It is not a cause when it has not arisen," in order to show that one can answer in these two ways in order to express the same sense. One can answer the first question as the second, and the second as the first.

What a singular process of explanation! The author of the Śāstra would then be totally useless! Hence the first explanation proposed is the best explanation.

3. If a future dharma is not a similar cause (sabbāgahetu), why does the Prakaraṇapāda teach that future satkāyaadṛṣṭi has satkāyaadṛṣṭi as its cause, and is in turn the cause of satkāyaadṛṣṭi? We read, in fact (in the text quoted in note 342, para. Bl(b)), "with the exception of future satkāyaadṛṣṭi and the Truth of Suffering which is associated with it" (anāgataṃ satkāyaadṛṣṭi tatsamprayuktam ca duḥkhasatyam sthapayitvā). 349

This reading, [answer the Vaibhāṣikas,] is corrupted. It should read, "with the exception of the Truth of Suffering associated with future satkāyaadṛṣṭi (anāgataṣatkāyaadṛṣṭisamprayuktam). If we were to suppose that your reading is authentic, we must, because of the sense that the text expresses, consider it as without authority (na tantram), and as having been determined by the context of discourse (that is, through imitation of the preceding phrase).

4. If a future dharma is not sabbāgahetu, how do you explain the following bhāsyam of the Prajñāpti? 350 This Treatise says in fact, "All the dharmas are determined from a fourfold point of view: cause, result, support (āśraya), and object (ālambana)." 351

[The Vaibhāṣikas answer:] When it says, "This dharma is never
the cause of that dharma,” the Treatise does not mean to speak of all
types of causes. By cause, we must understand samprayuktakahetu and
sabhāhetu; by result, adhipatiphala and purusakāraphala (ii.58); by
support, the six organs (organ of sight, etc.); and by object, the six
spheres (visaya), visible things, etc.

5. If a future dharma is not sabhāgabeta, then sabhāgabetu did not
exist at first, but then does exist.

But this is precisely what the Vaibhāṣikas affirm! The condition
(avasthā) of sabhāgabetu of the sabhāgabetu is new, that is, it exists
after having been non-existent; but the thing itself, the dravya which is
a certain sabhāgabetu, is not new. A future dharma is not sabhāgabetu,
but once it has arisen, it becomes sabhāgabetu. In fact, the result of the
complex of causes, is the condition of a thing and not the thing itself
(dravya), the dharma. (A future dharma exists as a thing, dravyatas;
the complex of causes causes it to pass from the future into the
present, endows it with the condition of the present, and endows it, by
this fact, with the quality of sabhāgabetu; see v.25.)

6. What harm do you see in this future dharma being a similar
cause (sabhāgabetu) in the same way that it is a retributive cause
(vipākahetu, ii.54)?

It it were sabhāgabetu, it would be mentioned as such in the
Jñānaprasthāna (see above p. 263 line 27); now the Jñānaprasthāna,
answering the question, “What is sabhāgabetu?” does not say that
future roots of good are sabhāgabetu of future roots of good.

We do not think that the omission of future dharma from this text
creates an argument against us. This text, in fact mentions only the
sabhāgabetus that are capable of “grasping” and of “giving forth” a
result (phaladānagrahaṇasamaṁtha, ii.59).

No, for the result of sabhāgabetu is an "out-flowing result of
out-flowing," a result similar to its cause (nisyandaphala, ii.57c), and
this type of result does not suit a future dharma, because, in the future,
there is no anteriority and posteriority. One cannot, on the other hand,
adm it that a past or present dharma already arisen is an out-flowing of
a future dharma, in the same way that a past dharma is not an
out-flowing of a present dharma, for a result is not anterior to its cause.
Hence a future *dharma* is not a similar cause.

7. If this is the case, then a future *dharma* would no longer be a *vipākahetu*, a retributive cause (ii.54c), for 1) a retributive result (*vipākaphala*, ii.56a) cannot be either simultaneous or anterior to its cause; and 2) because future *dharmas* have no earlier or later periods of time.

[The Vaibhāṣikas answer that] the cause is not the same. A similar cause (*sabhāgahetu*) and its out-flowing (*nisyanda*) result are similar *dharmas*. Now this is to suppose that they exist in the future, that they lack anteriority and posteriority, and that they are the mutual cause of one another, and as a consequences the results of one another: now it is not admissable that two *dharmas* are an out-flowing of one another. On the contrary, a retributive cause and a retributive result are dissimilar. Even if the anteriority and the posteriority were absent, a cause remains only a cause, and a result remains only a result. The quality of *sabhāgahetu* results from a condition or state (*avasthā*): a future *dharma* is not *sabhāgahetu*; but when it enters into a present or a past condition, it becomes *sabhāgahetu*. Its quality of retributive cause results from the nature of the *dharma* itself.

***

We have said that a *dharma* is a similar cause (*sabhāgahetu*) of only those *dharmas* that belong to its stage. Does this restriction apply to all the *dharmas*?

It applies only to impure *dharmas*, not to pure *dharmas*:

52c-d. But the Path is *sabhāgahetu* to the Path, without distinguishing the nine stages.

The Path is of nine stages or spheres—the *anāgamya*, the *dhyānāntara*, the Four primary (*mūla*) Dhyānas, and the three inferior, primary Ārūpyas (vi.20c)—in the sense that an ascetic, abiding in these nine states of absorption, can cultivate the Path.

The *dharmas* that constitute the Path are similar causes of the *dharmas* that constitute the Path, from stage to stage. In fact, the Path
resides in the different stages as a visitor, without forming part of the spheres of existence to which these stages belong: the desire of Kāmaddhatu, of Rūpadhatu, of Arūpyadhatu, are not on the Path. The Path, whatever be the stage upon which the ascetic relies in order to cultivate it, stays of the same nature; the Path is hence a similar cause of the Path.

Nevertheless, the complete Path is not a similar cause of the complete Path. One does not have to take into account the stage in which it is cultivated, but rather the characteristics proper to the Path itself.

52d. The Path is sabhāgahetu to an equal or superior Path.

Not of an inferior Path, because the Path is always acquired through effort.

Let us define the terms, "inferior," "equal," and "superior Path."

1. When past or present duḥkhe dharmajñānakṣānti (the first moment of the Path of Seeing, darsanamārga, vi.25d) is a similar cause of this same kṣānti of the future, the caused Path is equal to the causing Path.

When this kṣānti is a similar cause of duḥkhe dharmajñāna (the second moment of the Path of Seeing, darsanamārga, vi.26a) the caused Path is superior to the causing Path.

And thus following up to anutpādaṣaṇā (vi.50) which, not having a superior, can only be the similar cause of an equal Path, namely a future anutpādaṣaṇā.

To state it more precisely, the Path of Seeing (darsanamārga) is a similar cause of the Path of Seeing, the Path of Meditation (bhāvanāmārga), and the Path of the Āśaiksas (āśaiksamārga); the Path of Meditation is a similar cause of the Path of Meditation and the Path of the Āśaiks; and the Path of the Āśaiks is a similar cause of an equal or superior Path of the Āśaiks.

3. Any Path can be cultivated by an ascetic of weak faculties or active faculties: a Path of weak faculties is the similar cause of the same Path of weak faculties and of active faculties; a Path of active faculties is the similar cause of the same Path of active faculties. Consequently
the Paths of śraddhānusārin (vi.29), śraddhādhimukta (vi.31) and samayavimukta (vi.56-7) are, respectively, the similar causes of six, four, and two Paths; the Paths of dharmānusārin (vi.29), drṣṭiprāpti (vi.31) and asamayavimukta (vi.56-7) are, respectively, the similar causes of three, two, and one Path.

When a Path cultivated in a higher stage is the similar cause of a Path cultivated in a lower stage, how can it be the cause of an equal or higher Path?

The Path cultivated in a lower stage can be equal or higher 1) from the point of view of the faculties (indriyas) which can be weak or active in any stage, or 2) from the point of view of the accumulation of causes.354

It does not follow that the same person successively grasps śraddhānusārin and dharmānusārin Paths; yet the first, in the past or present, is a similar cause of the second, the later one.355

***

Does the rule of equal or higher results apply only to the pure dharmas, that is, to the dharmas that form part of the Path?

53a. The dharmas acquired through cultivation are sabhāgabhetu of the same two classes, the equal and the higher.

Worldly dharmas acquired through effort or exercise are similar causes of equal or higher dharmas, but not of inferior dharmas.

What are the dharmas acquired through effort?

53b. Those which arise through hearing, through reflection, etc.

The dharmas "acquired through effort" are the opposite of the "innate" dharmas. These former dharmas are qualities (guna) proceeding from hearing (sruta), that is, from the Word of the Buddha, from reflection (cintā), and from meditation (bhāvanā).

Since they are acquired through effort, they are the similar cause of greater or of equal, but not of lesser, good.
The dharmas of hearing in Kāmadrātātu are similar causes of the dharmas of hearing and reflection in Kāmadrātātu; but not of the dharmas of meditation, because these dharmas do not exist in Kāmadrātātu, and because a dharma is a similar cause of dharmas of the same sphere of existence.

The dharmas of hearing in Rūpadrātātu are similar causes of the dharmas of hearing and meditation in Rūpadrātātu; but not of the dharmas of reflection, because these dharmas do not exist in this sphere of existence: in Rūpadrātātu, as soon as one begins to reflect, one immediately enters into absorption (samādhi).

The dharmas of meditation in Rūpadrātātu are similar causes of the dharmas of meditation in Rūpadrātātu, but not of the dharmas of hearing in Rūpadrātātu, because these are less good.

The dharmas of meditation in Ārūpyadrātātu are the similar causes of the dharmas of meditation in Ārūpyadrātātu. The dharmas of hearing and of reflection do not exist in this sphere of existence.

Furthermore, one must consider that the dharmas acquired through effort are of nine classes: weak-weak, medium-weak, etc. The weak-weak are the similar causes of dharmas of nine classes; the medium-weak, of dharmas of eight classes, with the exception of the weak-weak; and thus following.

The nine classes of the "innate" good dharmas are similar cause of one another. The same holds for the defiled dharmas.

The undefiled-neutral dharmas are of four categories (ii.72), the following being "better" than the preceding: dharmas arisen from retribution (vipākaj, i.37); dharmas relative to lying down, to sitting attitudes, etc.; dharmas relative to professional work; and the mind that can create fictive beings (nirmāṇacitta, vii.48). These four categories are, respectively, the similar cause of four, three, two, and one category.

Furthermore, as a mind capable of creating fictive beings of the sphere of Kāmadrātātu can be the result of each of the Four Dhyānas (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 89a12), there is reason to establish here the same distinctions: the minds capable of creating fictive beings constitute four classes, and are, according to their class, similar causes of four, three,
two, or one mind capable of creating fictive beings. In fact, since it is a result of a higher Dhyāna, the mind capable of creating fictive beings is not the similar cause of a mind capable of creating fictive beings which is the result of a lower Dhyāna: from one similar cause (a mind capable of creating fictive beings) realized with the greatest effort, there cannot proceed a dharma less good, realized with less effort.

***

Once these principles have been established, the following questions are stated and resolved:\textsuperscript{356}

1. Is there a pure dharma, already arisen, which is not the cause of a pure dharma not destined to arise?

   Yes. Duḥkhe dharmaṁ already arisen is a cause of duḥkhe dharmaṁanaksānti not destined to arise. Furthermore, a better good is not the cause of lesser good.

2. Is there, in a series, a pure dharma, previously acquired (of which one has first obtained the prāpti), which is not the cause of a pure dharma arisen later?

   Yes. Future duḥkhe dharmaṁanaksānti [whose possession (prāpti) has been obtained in the first moment of the Path] are not the cause of duḥkhe dharmaṁ already arisen. This is because a result cannot be anterior to its cause, and because a future dharma is not a similar cause.

3. Is there a pure dharma, arisen previously, which is not the cause of a pure dharma arisen later?

   Yes. The best is not the cause of less good. For example, when one realizes an inferior result after having fallen from a superior result, the superior result was not the cause of this inferior result. Furthermore, possession of duḥkhe dharmaṁ which has previously arisen is not a cause of the possession of the dharmaṁanaksānti which will arise in the following moments (duḥkhe'nvayajñanaksāntikṣape, etc.), because these new possessions are less good.

***
53c-d. The mind and its mental states are only samprayuktakahetu, causes through association.\textsuperscript{357}

Mind and mental states are samprayuktakahetu.

Is this to say that minds and mental states, arisen at different moments and in different series, are among themselves samprayuktakahetu?

No.

Would you then say that the mind and mental states of the same aspect, that is, having the same aspect of blue, etc., and of the same object (ekålambana), that is, having for their object the same blue, etc., are samprayuktakahetu?

No. This definition gives rise to the same criticism: minds and mental states of different time periods and of different series can have the same aspect and the same object.

Would you say that the mind and mental states of the same aspect and the same object, can be, furthermore, of the same time period?

This still does not suffice: for many persons can see a new moon at one and the same time.

Consequently, the author adds

53d. Which has the same support.

The mind and mental states which have the same support are, among themselves, samprayuktakahetu.

"Same" signifies single or undivided.\textsuperscript{358}

For example, a given moment (ksåna) of the organ of sight is the support 1) of a visual consciousness, and 2) of the sensation (vedanå) and the other mental states which are associated with this consciousness. And the same for the other organs until manas: a certain moment of the mental organ (manas) is the support of a mental consciousness and of the mental states associated with this consciousness.

Whatever is samprayuktakahetu is also sahabhåhetu. What is the difference between these two causes?\textsuperscript{359}

Some dharmas are called sahabhåhetu because they are mutually the results of one another. As companions in a caravan travel thanks to
the support that they give one another, in this same way the mind is the result of mental states, and the mental states are the result of the mind.

Some dharmas are called samprayuktakabetu, mutual cause through association, because they function identically, that is, because there is among them the five similarities or identities defined above ii.34. The travel of the companions in a caravan is assured by the mutual support that they give one another; furthermore, they use the same food, the same drinks, etc. In this same way, the mind and its mental states use the same support, have the same aspect, etc.: if one of these five identities is missing, they no longer function in the same way and are not associated.

***

54a-b. Former universals are sarvatragabetu or universal causes of the defiled dharmas of their own stage.

Universals, which we shall study in the Chapter on the Defilements (v.12), arisen previously, that is, of the past or present, and belonging to a certain stage (bhūmi), are the universal cause of later defiled dharmas, of the same stage, which are defiled by nature, either through association or through their origin (iv.9c).

Universals are only the cause of defiled dharmas; they are the cause of defiled dharmas in their own category and in other categories (nikāya, ii.52b): it is through their power that there arises, with their following, defilements belonging to categories different from them. They then constitute a cause different from sabhāgabetu.

Then would the defiled dharmas of an Āryan (rāga or lust, etc.) have the universals for their cause? Yet the Āryan has abandoned all universals, for these are abandoned by Seeing the Truths.

The Vaibhāsikas of Kaśmīr admit that all defiled dharmas have the dharmas abandoned through Seeing the Truths for their cause. For the Prakaranapāda expresses itself in these terms: "What dharmas have for a cause the dharmas abandoned through Seeing the Truths? Defiled dharmas and the retribution of the dharmas abandoned through
Seeing the Truths.

"What dharmas have for a cause neutral (avyākṛta) [dharmas]? Neutral conditioned dharmas and bad dharmas.

"Is there a duḥkhasatya which has for its cause a belief in self (satkāyadṛṣṭi) and which is not in turn the cause of a belief in self? . . ." and the rest to: "with the exception of the arising-old age-duration-impermanence of the belief in a future self and its following, and of all other defiled duḥkhasatya."

[Objection:] If some bad dharmas have for their causes not only some bad dharmas but some neutral dharmas as well, how should one explain this bhāṣyaṃ of the Prajñāpti, "Is there a bad dharma which has only a bad dharma for its cause? Yes; the first defiled volition (cetanā) that an Āryan produces upon falling from detachment."

[Answer:] The neutral dharmas, which are abandoned through Seeing the Truths, are the cause (i.e., sarvatragabhetu) of this bad volition. If the Prajñāpti does not mention it, it is because it intends to name only the causes that have not been abandoned.

***

54c-d. Bad dharmas and impure good dharmas are retributive causes.

1. Bad dharmas—which are all impure—and impure good dharmas are only retributive causes, because their nature is to ripen.

Neutral dharmas are not retributive causes, because they are weak: as rotten seeds, even though moistened, do not grow.

Pure dharmas are not retributive causes because they are not moistened through desire (trṣṇā): as intact seeds, not moistened, do not grow.

Furthermore, pure dharmas are not bound to any sphere of existence: thus to which sphere could the result of retribution that they would produce belong?

The dharmas that are neither neutral nor pure possess the two qualities necessary for retribution, the proper force, and the moisten-
ing of thirst, the same as intact and moistened seeds.

2. [Objection:] What is the meaning of the expression *vipākahetu*? You have a choice between two interpretations of this compound: *vipākahetu* signifies either “cause of *vipāka*” or “cause which is *vipāka*.”

In the first case, the suffix *a* (*ghan*) marks the state (*bhāva*): the *vipāka* (=*vipakti*) is the result of the operation indicated by the root *vi-pac*.

In the second case, the suffix *a* marks the operation (*karman*): the *vipāka* is that which become ripe (*vipacyate*), that is to say, the action arrives at the moment when it gives forth a result.

To which of these two interpretations do you hold? If you accept the first, how would you justify the text (*Jñānaprayoga, TD* 26, p. 974a26), “The eye arises from *vipāka*?” If you accept the second, how would you justify the expression, “*vipāka* of action?”

[Answer:] We have shown (i.37) that both explanations of the word *vipāka* are correct. When one examines results, one must understand the word *vipāka* according to the first explanation; the meaning is result of retribution. The text, “The eye arises from *vipāka*” should be understood as “The eye arises from the cause of *vipāka*.”

3. What is the meaning of the compound *vi-pāka*?

The prefix *vi* indicates difference. *Vipāka* is a *pāka* or result dissimilar from its cause.\(^{370}\)

How is that?

In Kamadhatu, 1) a retributive cause (*vipākahetu*) consisting of only one *skandha* can produce a single result: possession (*prāpti*, ii.36b) with its characteristics (*lakṣanas*, ii.45c); 2) a retributive cause consisting of two *skandhas* can produce a single result: bodily and vocal action with its characteristics; 3) a retributive cause consisting of four *skandhas* can produce a single result: the mind and its mental states, good and bad, with their *lakṣanas*.

In Rūpadhatu, 1) a retributive cause consisting of a single *skandha* can produce a single result: possession with its characteristics, that is, *asamjñīsamāpatti* (ii.42a) with its characteristics; 2) a retributive cause consisting of two *skandhas* can produce a single result: *vijñāpti* (iv.2)
of the First Dhyāna with its characteristics; 3) a retributive cause consisting of four skandhas can produce a single result: a good mind, not of absorption (for the mind of absorption always consists of rūpa and discipline, iv.13, and is thus five skandhas), with its characteristics; 4) a retributive cause consisting of five skandhas can produce a single result: the mind of absorption with its characteristics.

In Ārūpyadhatu, 1) a retributive cause consisting of a single skandha can produce a single result: possession, nirodhasamāpatti (ii.43), with their respective characteristics; 2) a retributive cause consisting of four skandhas can produce a single result: the mind and its mental states with their characteristics.

4. There is action the retribution of which is included in a single āyatana, in a single dharmāyatana (i.15): action that has for its retribution the vital organ (jīvitendriya, ii.45a).371

In fact, action that has the vital organ for its retribution necessarily has the vital organ and its characteristics (ii.45c) for its retribution; both form part of the dharmāyatana.

Action that has the mental organ (manas) for its retribution necessarily has two āyatanas for its retribution, namely the mana-āyatana (i.16b) and the dharmāyatana (which embraces sensations, etc., and the characteristics which necessarily accompany the mental organ).

Action that has tangible things (sprastavyāyatana, i.10d) for its retribution necessarily has two āyatanas for its retribution, namely the tangible things and the dharmāyatana (which includes the characteristics of tangible things).

Action that has the organ of touch (kāyāyatana, i.9a) for its retribution necessarily has three āyatanas for its retribution, the organ of touch, tangibles (namely the four primary elements that support the organ of touch), and the dharmāyatana (which includes its characteristics).

In the same way, action which has either physical matter (rupāyatana), odors (gandhāyatana), or taste (rasāyatana) for its retribution, necessarily has three āyatanas for its retribution: tangible things and the dharmāyatana as above, plus, according to the cause, the
āyatana of physical matter, odor, or taste.

Action which has either the eye, the ear, the nose, or the tongue for its retribution, necessarily has four āyatanas for its retribution: 1) one of the four organs, 2) the organ of touch, 3) tangible things, and 4) the dharmāyatana.

An action can have five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, or eleven āyatanas for its retribution.\(^{372}\)

Action, in fact, is of two types: of varied result and of non-varied result. The same holds for seeds: lotus, pomegranate, fig, millet, corn, etc.

5. The retribution of an action can belong to a single time period or to three time periods;\(^{373}\) but the reverse is not true,\(^{374}\) for a result cannot be inferior to its cause. The retribution from an action lasting an instant can last numerous instants; but the reverse is not true, for the same reason (Vibbāṣa, TD 27, p. 98a7).

Retribution is not simultaneous to the action which produces it, for a retributive result is not experienced at the moment when the action is accomplished. Retribution does not immediately follow an action, for it is the immediately antecedent condition (samanantarapratyaya, ii.63b) that attracts the moment that immediately follows the action: in fact, the retributive cause depends on the development of the series for the realization of its result.

***

To which time period should a dharma belong in order that it might be each of these six causes? We have implicitly stated this rule, but we have not yet taught it in the Kārikā:

55a-b. Sarvatragahe and sabhāgahetu are of two time periods; three causes are of three time periods.\(^{375}\)

A past and present dharma can be sarvatraga and sabhāgahetu (ii.52b). Past, present, and future dharmas can be samprayuktaka, sahabhū, and vipākahetu. The Kārikā does not speak of kāraṇahetu (ii.50a)): the conditioned dharmas of the three time periods are
kāraṇahetu; the unconditioned dharmas are outside of time.

***

Which causes correspond to which results? By reason of which results are they recognized as causes?

55c-d. Conditioned things and disconnection are results.\(^{376}\)

The Mūlaśāstra says, "What dharmas are results? Conditioned things and pratisamākhyaṇānirodha."\(^{377}\)

[Objection:] If the unconditioned is a result, it should have a cause, from which cause one could say that it is the result. Furthermore, since you maintain that it is a cause (kāraṇahetu, ii.50a), it should have a result, from which result one could say that it is a cause.

Only conditioned things, [the Sarvāstivādins answer,] have cause and result.

55d. The unconditioned has neither cause nor result.\(^{378}\)

For we cannot attribute to it any of the six causes, nor any of the five results.

i. 1. Why not admit that the part of the Path which is called ānantaryamārga\(^{379}\) is the kāraṇahetu of the result of disconnection (visāmyogaphala, ii.57d)?

We have seen that kāraṇahetu is a cause that does not create any obstacles to arising; but disconnection, being unconditioned, does not arise. Thus one cannot attribute a kāraṇahetu to it.

2. Then how is disconnection a result? Of what is it the result?

It is the result of the Path, for it is obtained due to the force of the Path (vi.51): in other words, it is through the Path that an ascetic obtains possession (prāpti, ii.36c-d) of disconnection.

3. Hence it is the obtaining or the possession of disconnection which is the result of the Path, and not disconnection itself: for the Path is efficacious with regard to the obtaining of disconnection, but not with regard to disconnection.

Wrong! The efficacy of the Path possesses diversity with regard to
both obtaining and disconnection.

The Path produces obtaining; the Path causes one to obtain disconnection. Hence, although the Path is not the cause of disconnection (=pratīṣṭhānakhyaṇīnirodha), one can say that it is the result of the Path.\[380\]

4. Since no unconditioned thing has adhipatiphala (ii.58d), how can one define it as kāraṇabhetu?

Any unconditioned thing is kāraṇabhetu, for it does not create an obstacle to the arising of any dharma; but it does not have any result, for, being outside of time, it can neither project nor produce a result (ii.59a-b).

[5. The Sautrāntikas deny that] an unconditioned thing is a cause. In fact, the Sūtra does not say that a cause can be unconditioned; it says that a cause is only conditioned, "All the hetus, all the pratyayas which have for a result the production of physical matter . . . of the consciousness, are also impermanent."\[381\] Produced by impermanent hetus and pratyayas, how can physical matter . . . and consciousness be permanent?"

[The Sarvāstivādins answer:] If a permanent thing, that is, an unconditioned thing is not a cause, it will not be "an object as condition" (ālambana-pratyaya, ii.63) of the consciousness that it refers to.

[The Sautrāntikas:] The Sūtra declares that the hetus and the pratyayas which are capable of producing are impermanent. It does not say that all conditions (pratyayas) of the consciousness are impermanent. An unconditioned thing could then be "an object as condition" of the consciousness; for "an object as condition" is not itself productive.

[The Sarvāstivādins:] The Sūtra says that productive causes are impermanent: hence the Sūtra does not deny that an unconditioned thing is kāraṇabhetu, that is, "a cause that does not create an obstacle."

[The Sautrāntikas:] The Sūtra admits the existence of "an object as a condition" (ii.61c); but it does not speak of a kāraṇabhetu, "a cause that does not create an obstacle." It is not proven that an unconditioned thing is a cause.

[The Sarvāstivādins:] In fact, the Sūtra does not say that that
which does not create an obstacle is a cause; but it does not contradict this. Many Sūtras have disappeared. How can you be sure that some Sūtra does not attribute the quality of kāraṇahetu to unconditioned things?

***

[ii. The Sautrāntikas:] What is the dharma that is called visamyoga or disconnection?

[The Sarvāstivādins: The Mūlaśāstra (Jñānaprasthāna, TD 26, p. 923b6) says that] disconnection is pratisamkhyānirodha (ii.57d).

[The Sautrāntikas:] When I asked you (i.6) what pratisamkhyānirodha is, you answered, “It is disconnection;” I asked you what disconnection is, and you answered, “It is pratisamkhyānirodha!” The two answers are circular and do not explain the nature of the dharma, the unconditioned, to which they refer. You owe us another explanation.

[The Sarvāstivādins:] This dharma, in its nature, is real, but indescribable; only the Āryans “realize” it internally, each for himself. It is only possible to indicate its general characteristics, by saying that there is a real entity (dravya), distinct from others, which is good and eternal, and which receives the name of pratisamkhyānirodha, and which is also called disconnection or visamyoga.

***

iii. The Sautrāntikas affirm that the three types of unconditioned things (i.5b) are not real. The three dharmas that it refers to are not distinct and real entities like color, sensation, etc.³⁸²

1. What is called “space” (ākāśa) is solely the absence of any tangible thing, that is, the absence of a resistant body. Persons say, in their obscurity, that there is space when they do not encounter any obstacle.

2. What is called pratisamkhyānirodha or Nirvāṇa is—when both the defilements already produced and the existence already produced
are destroyed—the absence of any other defilements or any other existence, and that by reason of the force of the consciousness (pratisamākhyā=prajñā).\(^{383}\)

3. When, independent of the force of consciousness (pratisamākhyā) and by reason of the mere absence of causes there is an absence of arising dharmas, this is what is called apratisamākhyānirodha. For example, when premature death interrupts existence (nikāyasabhāga, ii.10, 14), there is apratisamākhyānirodha of the dharmas which would have arisen in the course of this existence if it had continued.

4. According to another school,\(^{384}\) pratisamākhyānirodha is the future non-arising of the defilements by reason of consciousness (prajñā); apratisamākhyānirodha is the future non-arising of suffering, that is, of existence, by reason of the disappearance of the defilements, and not directly by reason of consciousness. (The first would then be sopadhīśesa nirvāṇadhātu, and the second would be nirupadhīśesa nirvāṇadhātu).

But, [the Sautrāntikas remark,] the future non-arising of suffering supposes consciousness (pratisamākhyā); it is then included within pratisamākhyānirodha.

***

5. Another School\(^ {385}\) defines apratisamākhyānirodha as "later non-existence of the dharmas which have arisen" by virtue of their spontaneous destruction.\(^ {386}\)

In this hypothesis, apratisamākhyānirodha would not be eternal, since it is non-existent as long as the dharma as cause (i.e., the defilement) has not perished.

But does not pratisamākhyānirodha have a certain consciousness, the pratisamākhyā, for its antecedent? Consequently it too would not be eternal, for, if its antecedent were absent, its consequence would also be absent.

You cannot say that pratisamākhyānirodha is not eternal because its antecedent is pratisamākhyā: in fact, it does not have pratisamākhyā for its antecedent. One cannot say that pratisamākhyā is earlier, or that the
"non-arising of the non-arisen dharmas" is later. Let us explain. Non-arising always exists in and of itself. If pratisamkhyā is absent, the dharmas would arise; but if pratisamkhyā arises, the dharmas would absolutely not arise. The efficacy of pratisamkhyā with regard to their non-arising consists in this: 1) that before pratisamkhyā, there is no obstacle to their arising; 2) but given pratisamkhyā, the dharmas, the arising of which has not been previously hindered, do not arise.

***

[iv. The Sarvāstivādins refute the Sautrāntikas.] If Nirvāṇa is simply non-arising (anutpāda), how does one explain the Sūtra (Sāṃyuktagama, TD 2, p. 182b15) which says, "The cultivation of the five faculties,—faith, etc.,—has for its result the abandoning of past, present, and future suffering"? In fact, this abandoning is nothing other than Nirvāṇa, and there can only be non-arising of a future dharma, not of a past or present dharma.

[1. The Sautrāntikas:] This Sūtra does not contradict our definition of Nirvāṇa. In fact, "the abandoning of past and present suffering" means the abandoning of the defilements bearing past and present suffering. Our interpretation is justified by another text (Sāṃyukta, TD 2, p.19a8?) which says, "Abandon desire (chandarāga) relative to rūpa, to sensation . . . and to consciousness. When desire is abandoned, rūpa, . . . and consciousness will be abandoned and comprehended by you." It is in this manner that we should understand "the abandoning of past and present suffering" of which the Sūtra speaks when it speaks of the faculties.

If one adopts another reading of this Sūtra on the faculties, to wit, "The cultivation of the faculties . . . has for its result the abandoning of past, present, and future defilements," the explanation is the same.

Or rather, past defilement is the defilement of a previous existence; present defilement is the defilement of the present existence; these do not refer to the defilement of a given past or present moment. The same for the eighteen tṛṣṇāvicaritas (Anguttara, ii.212) or "modes of thirst": the modes (vicaritas) that are related to a past
existence are called past modes, those that are related to a present existence are called present modes, and those that are related to a future existence are called future modes.

Past defilements and present defilements place in the present series seeds that bring forth the arising of future defilement: when these seeds are abandoned, past and present defilement is abandoned: in the same way as one says that an action is exhausted when its retribution is exhausted.

The "abandoning" of future suffering and future defilement is the fact that they absolutely do not arise, given the absence of seeds.

How does one otherwise understand the abandoning of past or present suffering? There is no good reason to make an effort to destroy that which has perished or that which is perishing.

[2. The Sarvāstivādins:] If unconditioned things do not exist, how can the Sutra say "Detachment (virāga) is the best of all conditioned and unconditioned dharmas?" How can a dharma which does not exist be the best among the dharmas which do not exist? 390

[The Saumāntikas:] We do not say that unconditioned things do not exist. They exist in fact in the manner in which we say that they exist. Let us explain. Before sound is produced, we say "There is non-existence (of sound) prior to the sound;" after the sound has perished, we say "There is non-existence (of sound) after the sound," and yet it had not been proven that non-existence exists: 391 the same holds for unconditioned things.

Although it is non-existent, one unconditioned thing merits being praised, namely detachment (virāga), the absolute future non-existence of any wrong. This non-existent thing is the most distinguished of all non-existent things. The Sūtra praises it by saying that it is the best, so that believers shall conceive joy and affection with regard to it.

[3. The Sarvāstivādins:] If pratisamkhyānirodha or Nirvāṇa is non-existent, how can it be one of the Truths. How can it be the Third Noble Truth?

What should we understand by "Noble Truth" or ārayasatya? Without doubt the sense of satya (Truth) is "not incorrect." The
Āryans see that which exists and that which does not exist in a not incorrect manner: in that which is suffering, they see only suffering, and in the non-existence of suffering, they see the non-existence of suffering. What contradiction do you find between the non-existence of suffering and pratisamkhyānirodha being a Truth?

And this non-existence is the Third Truth, because the Āryans see it and proclaim it immediately after the Second Truth.

[4. The Sarvāstivādins:] But if unconditioned things are non-existent, the consciousness that has space and the two 'extinctions' for its object would have a non-thing for its object.

We do not see any inconvenience in this, as we shall explain in the discussion on the past and future (v.25).

[5. The Sarvāstivādins:] What harm do you see in maintaining that unconditioned things really exist? What advantage do you see in this?

This advantage that the Vaibhāṣika doctrine is found to be safeguarded.

May the gods be charged with defending this doctrine, if they judge that it is possible! But to maintain the existence of unconditioned things in and of themselves is to affirm a non-existent thing to be real. In fact, unconditioned things are not known through direct perception (pratyakṣa), as is the case for physical matter, sensation, etc.; and they are not known through inference (anumāna), by reason of their activity, as is the case for the sense organs.

6. Furthermore, if nirodha or extinction is a thing in and of itself, how do you justify the genitive, duḥkhasya nirodhah, "the extinction of suffering," as the extinction of the defilement, or the extinction of the object of defilement? In our system, the extinction of a thing is simply the non-existence of this thing. "Extinction of suffering" means that "suffering will not exist any more." But we cannot conceive of any cause and effect relationship, of any effect and cause relationship, of a relationship of the whole to the part, etc., between the things, that is to say, the defilements, and its extinction conceived of as an entity in itself, which would justify the genitive.

We affirm, [answer the Sarvāstivādins,] that extinction is a thing in and of itself. Yet we can specify extinction as being in a relationship
with such things (extinction of lust, etc.), for one takes possession (prāpti, ii.37b) of extinction at the moment when one cuts off the possession of a certain thing.

But, we would answer, what is it that determines or specifies the taking of possession of extinction? 392

[7. The Sarvastivadins:] The Sutra speaks of the Bhikṣu who has obtained Nirvāṇa in this life. 393 If Nirvana is non-existence, how could he obtain it?

[The Sautrāntikas:] The Bhikṣu, through the possession of the adverse force of the antidote, that is, through the possession of the Path, has obtained a personality (āśraya) contrary to the defilements, and contrary to a new existence. This is why the Sūtra says that he has obtained Nirvāṇa.

8. Moreover we have a text that shows that Nirvāṇa is pure non-existence. The Sūtra (Samyukta, TD 2, p. 88a7) says, “The complete abandoning, the purification, the exhausting, the detachment, the extinction, the abatement, the definitive passing away of this suffering; and the non-rebirth, the non-grasping, the non-appearance of another suffering—this is calm, this is excellent, namely the rejection of all upadhi, the exhausting of thirst, detachment, extinction, Nirvana.”

[The Sarvāstivādins:] When the Sūtra says that Nirvāṇa is the non-appearance of a new suffering, the Sūtra means that there is no appearance of suffering in Nirvāṇa.

[The Sautrāntikas:] I do not see that the locative “in Nirvāṇa” has any force to establish that Nirvāṇa is a thing. In what sense do you understand the locative asmin? If this means asmin sati, “if Nirvāṇa exists, there is no appearance of suffering,” then suffering would never appear, since Nirvāṇa is eternal. If this means asmin prāptas, “if Nirvāṇa has been obtained,” you would have to admit that future suffering will not appear while the Path—by virtue of which you suppose that Nirvāṇa is obtained—either is, or rather has been obtained.

9. Consequently the comparison of the Sūtra is excellent, “The deliverance of his mind is like the Nirvāṇa of a flame.” 397 That is to
say, as the extinction of a flame is only the "passing away" of the flame and not a certain thing in and of itself, so too is the deliverance of the mind of the Blessed One.

[10. The Sautrāntikas] are still warranted by the authority of the Abhidharma wherein we read, "What are the avastuka dharmas? They are the unconditioned things." The term avastuka signifies "unreal," "without self-nature."

[The Vaibhāṣikas do not accept this interpretation.] The term vastu, in fact, is used in five different meanings: 1. vastu in the sense of a thing in and of itself, for example, "When one has obtained this vastu (aśubhā, vi.11), one is in possession of the vastu" (Jñānapрастhāna, TD 26, p. 1026c1l; Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 985a22); 2. vastu in the sense of any object of consciousness, for example "All the dharmas are known through different knowledges, each knowing its own object" (Prakarana, TD 26, p. 713c20); 3. vastu in the sense of "bond of attachment," for example, "Is the person who is bound to a vastu through the bond of affection, bound to this same vastu through the bond of hostility?" (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 298b-c); 4. vastu in the sense of cause, for example, "What are the dharmas possessing a cause? The conditioned dharmas" (Prakarana, TD 26, p. 716a4); 5. vastu in the sense of "act of appropriating to oneself", for example, "vastu of fields, vastu of a house, vastu of a shop, vastu of riches: abandoning the act of appropriating these to himself, he renounces them" (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 288b5).

The Vaibhāṣikas conclude: In the passage that concerns us, vastu has the meaning of cause; avastuka signifies "that which has no cause." Unconditioned things, although real, always lack activity, have no cause which produces them, and produce no effects.

***

We must explain what type of result proceeds from each type of cause.

56a. Retribution is the result of the last cause.
The last cause is the retributive cause, *vipākabetu*, because the retributive cause is named last in this list. The first result, *vipākaphala* (iii.57), is the result of this cause.

56b. The predominating result is the result of the first.402

The first cause is *kāraṇabetu* or reason for being; the last result proceeds from it.

This result is called *adhipaja*, arisen from predominence, or *adhipata*, belonging to predominance, because it is the result of the predominating cause (*adhipatiphala*, ii.58c-d). The *kāraṇabetu* is considered as playing the role of a master (*adhipati*).

But, we say, the quality of not creating an obstacle (*anāvaraṇa­bhāvamātrāvasthāna*, ii.50a) suffices to constitute *kāraṇabetu*. How can one regard it as a "predominating cause?"

*Kāraṇabetu* is either a "non-efficacious cause" and one then regards it as predominant because it creates no obstacle; or an "efficacious cause," and one then regards it as predominant because it possesses mastery, a predominating and generating activity. For example, the ten *āyatanas* (form and the organ of sight, etc.) are predominant with regard to the five sense consciousnesses; the collective action of living beings is predominant with regard to the physical world.403 The organ of hearing exercises an indirect predominence (*ādhipatya*) with regard to the visual consciousness, for, after having understood, a person experiences the desire to see. And thus following. (See ii.50a).

56c-d. Outflowing is the result of the similar cause and the universal cause.

An outflowing result (*nisyandaphala*) proceeds from *sabhāgabetu* (ii.52) and from *sarvatragabetu* (ii.54): for the result of these two causes is similar to its causes (ii.57c; iv.85).

56d. The *pauruṣa* or virile result, is the result of two causes.

The result of *sabhāgabetu* (ii.59) and *samprayuktakabetu* (ii.53c) is
called prauroṣa or virile, that is, the result of puruṣakāra or virile activity.

Puruṣakāra or virile activity is not distinct from the person himself, for action is not distinct from him who accomplished the action. The result of virile activity (puruṣakāraphala) can thus be termed the virile (pauruṣa) result.

What do we understand by “virile activity?”

The activity of a dharma is termed its virile activity (puruṣakāra), because it is similar to the activity of a person (puruṣakāra). In the same way, in the world, a certain plant is called kākajāṅghā, because it resembles the foot of a crow; heroes are called māṭabhāstin, because they resemble an enraged elephant.

Are samprayuktahetu and sahabhūhetu the only causes that result in virile activity?

According to one opinion, all other causes have this type of result, with the exception of retributive causes (vipākabhetu). This result is, in fact, either simultaneous to, or immediately following its cause; but such is not the case with a retributive result.

According to other Masters, a retributive cause also distantly results in virile activity, for example the fruits reaped by a laborer.

(Hence a dharma is 1) nisyandaphala, because it arises similar to its cause, 2) puruṣakāraphala, because it arises through the force of its cause, and 3) adhipatiphala, because it arises by reason of the “non-obstacle” of its cause.)

What are the characteristics of the different results?

57a. Retribution is a neutral dharma.

Retribution (vipāka) is an undefiled, neutral (anivṛtāvyākṛta) dharma.

Among the undefiled, neutral dharmas, some belong to living beings, while others do not belong to living beings. Consequently the author specifies
57b. Belonging to living beings.

that is, they arise in the series of living beings.

Some of those dharmas belonging to living beings are said to be of accumulation (aupacayika, having come from food, etc., i.37) and some are said to be of an outflowing (naisyandika, coming from a cause which is similar to them, i.37, ii.57c). Consequently the author specifies

57c. They arise later than a non-neutral dharma.

A non-neutral action is called this because it produces retribution; non-neutral actions are bad actions and good-impure (kusalasāsrava, ii.54c-d) actions. From actions of this nature there arises later,—not at the same time, and not immediately afterwards,—the result that one terms "retributive result" or "matured result" (vipākaphala).

Why not consider the dharmas that do not form part of living beings,—mountains, rivers, etc.,—as retributive results? Do they not arise from good or bad actions?

The dharmas that do not form part of living beings are, by nature, common in that everyone may partake of them. Now retributive results, by definition, are unique: another person never experiences the retributive results of actions that I accomplish. Action produces a "predominating result" (adhipatiphala) in addition to a retributive result: all beings experience this result in common, because the collectivity of their actions cooperate in their creation (see above, note 403).

57d. A result that resembles its cause is called outflowing.

A dharma resembling its cause is an outflowing result (nisyandaphala). Two causes, the similar cause and the universal cause (sabhāgahetu, ii.52, and sarvatragahetu, ii.54a-b) produce an outflowing result.

If the result of the universal cause is an outflowing result, a result similar to its cause, why not give the universal cause the name of similar cause?

A result of a universal cause is always similar to its cause 1) from
the point of view of the stage: like it, it belongs to Kāmadhātu, etc.; and 2) from the point of view of its moral character: like it, it is defiled.

But it can belong to a different category than the category of its cause. "Category" means the method of abandoning: it is susceptible of being abandoned by Seeing the Truth of Suffering, etc. (ii.52b). When there is a similarity between a cause and its result from this last point of view, the universal cause is at one and the same time a similar cause.

Four alternative cases present themselves:
1. A similar cause which is not a universal cause: for example, a non-universal defilement (rāga, etc.) related to the defilements of their own category;
2. A universal cause which is not a similar cause: the universal defilements related to a defilement of another category;
3. A universal cause which is also a similar cause: the universal defilements related to a defilement of their own category;
4. All other dharmas are neither similar causes nor universal causes.406

57e. Extinction through intelligence is disconnection.

Disconnection (visāmyyoga) or visāmyogaphala, "result that consists of disconnection" is extinction (kṣaya=nirodha) obtained by the speculative consciousness (dhī=prajñā). Visāmyogaphala is hence pratisamkhyānirodha. (See above p. 280).

58a-b. A dharma is the result of the virile activity of the dharma through the force by which it arises.

This refers to a conditioned dharma.

Examples: the absorption of the First Dhyāna is the result of the virile activity of a mind in Kāmadhātu which instigates it or prepares it; the absorption of the Second Dhyāna is the result of the virile activity of a mind in the First Dhyāna.

A pure dharma can be the result of the virile activity of an impure dharma (the laukikāgradharmas have duḥkhe dharmajñānaksānti for their result, vi.25c-d).
A mind that can create fictive beings (nirmāṇacitta) is the result of the virile activity of a mind in a Dhyāna (vii.48). And thus following.  

Pratisamkhyaṇirodha or Nirvāṇa is considered to be a “result of virile activity;” now the definition given in Karikā 58a-b does not apply to nirodha which, being eternal, does not arise. We say then that it is the result of the virile activity of the dharma by the force of which one obtains possession of it.

58c-d. Any conditioned dharma is the predominating result (adhipatiphala) of conditioned dharmas, with the exception of the dharmas that are later than it.  

What difference is there between the result of virile activity and a predominating result?

The first refers to the agent; the second refers to both the agent and the non-agent. For example, a created thing is the result of the virile activity and the predominating result of the artisan who created it; it is only the predominating result of what is not the artisan.

***

In what condition (avastha)—the past, present, or future—is each of the causes (hetu) found when they grasp and when they produce their result?

[59. Five causes grasp their results in the present; two produce it in the present; two produce it in both past and present; and one produces it in the past.  

What is understood by “grasping a result” and “producing a result?”

A dharma grasps a result when it become its seed.  

A dharma produces a result at the moment when it gives this result the power of arising, that is, at the moment when, the future result being turned towards arising or is ready to arise, this dharma gives it the power that causes it to enter into the present.]
59a-b. Five causes grasp their result in the present.

Five causes grasp their results only when they are in the present: in the past, they have already grasped their results; in the future, they have no activity (v.25).

The same holds for kāraṇahetu; but the stanza does not mention it, because kāraṇahetu does not necessarily have a result.

59b. Two produce their result in the present.

The mutually coexistent cause (sahabhū) and the associated cause (samprayuktaka) produce their results only when they are in the present: these two causes in fact grasp and produce their results at the same time.

59c. Two produce their results in both the past and the present.

The similar cause (sabhāga) and the universal cause (sarvatraga) produce their results both when they are in the present and when they are in the past.

How can they produce their outflowing results (nisyanda, ii.56c) when they are in the present? We have seen (ii.52b, 54a) that they are earlier than their results.

One says that they produce their results in the present, because they produce them immediately. When their result has arisen, they are past: they have already produced it; they do not produce the same result twice. 412

***

i. It happens that, at a given moment, a good similar cause (sabhāgahetu) grasps a result but does not produce a result. Four alternatives: to grasp, to produce, to grasp and to produce, and to neither grasp nor to produce. 413

1. The possession of the roots of good that the person who has cut off the roots of good (iv.80a) abandons at the last moment, grasps a result, but does not produce a result. 414
2. The possession of the roots of good that the person who again takes up the roots of good (iv.80c) acquires in the first moment, produces a result, but does not grasp a result.

We must say: 415 This same possession,—the possession abandoned at the last moment by the person who has cut off the roots of good,—produces its result, but does not grasp it at the moment when this person again takes up the roots of good.

3. The possession of the person whose roots of good are not cut off—with the exception of the two proceeding cases: that of the person who has achieved cutting them off, and that of the person who again takes up the roots of good—both grasp and produce.

4. In all other cases, possession neither grasps nor produces: for example, the possession of the roots of good of a person whose roots of good are cut off; the possession of the roots of good of a superior stage by a person who has fallen from this stage: these possessions have already grasped their result, and hence do not grasp it any more; they do not produce it, since the person cannot have possession of these roots at the present time.

ii. The Vibhāṣā establishes the same alternatives with respect to bad similar causes:

1. The possession of the bad dharmas that a person who obtains detachment from desire abandons at the last moment.

2. The possession that a person who fell from detachment acquires in the first moment.

We must say: These same possessions, when a person falls from detachment.

3. The possession of a person who is not detached, with the exception of the two preceding cases.

4. Possession in all other cases: for example the possession of a person detached and not subject to falling.

iii. There are also four alternatives regarding defiled-neutral similar causes:

1. The last possession of defiled-neutral dharmas that the saint who becomes an Arhat abandons.

2. The first possession that a fallen Arhat acquires.
Or better: the aforementioned possession of an Arhat who has fallen.

3. The possession of a non-detached person in Bhavāgra, the two preceding cases being excluded.

4. Possession in all other cases: the possession of an Arhat.

iv. When an undefiled-neutral similar cause produces its result, it grasps it (for the undefiled-neutral lasts until Nirvāṇa), but it can grasp its result without producing it: for example, in the case of the last \textit{skandhas} of an Arhat which have no outflowing (\textit{nisyanda}).

v. We have up to now considered the dharmas that are not "subject to consciousness" (\textit{sālambana}). If we consider the mind and its mental states in their successive moments, we can establish the four following alternatives for good similar causes:

1. It grasps but does not produce. When a good mind is immediately followed by a defiled or undefiled-neutral mind, this good mind, as a similar cause, grasps, that is, projects an outflowing result, namely a good future mind, which is or is not destined to arise; it does not produce an outflowing result, since the mind that follows it, defiled or undefiled-neutral, is not the outflowing of a good mind.

2. It produces but does not grasp. When a good mind immediately follows a defiled or undefiled-neutral mind, a good earlier mind produces an outflowing result, namely the good mind that we have just considered; this earlier mind does not grasp a result, since it grasped it formerly.

3. It grasps and it produces. Two good minds follow one another, the first grasping and producing an outflowing result, which is the second mind.

4. It neither grasps nor produces. When defiled or undefiled-neutral minds succeed one another, the earlier good mind, as a similar cause, formerly grasped its result and shall later produce its result; but for an instant it neither grasps nor produces.

We can in like manner establish the alternatives regarding bad similar causes.

59d. One cause produces its result in the past.
The retributive cause produces its result when it is in the past, for this result is not simultaneous to, nor immediately following its cause.

***

Some other Masters, [the scholars of the West (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 630b15)] say that there are four results different from the five results that we have just mentioned. These four are:

1. *pratisthāphala*, a base result: a circle of water is the result of the circle of wind (iii.45) and thus following to plants, which are the result of earth;

2. *prayogaphala*, a result of preparatory exercise: anutpādajñāna, etc. (vi.50) is the result of ābha, etc. (vi.11);

3. *sāmagrīphala*, a result of a complex: the visual consciousness is the result of the organ of sight, of a visible thing, of light and of an act of attention (*Madhyamakavrtti*, 454);

4. *bhāvanāphala*, a result of meditation: a mind capable of creating fictive beings (vii.48) is the result of a Dhyāna.

[According to the Sarvāstivādins,] the first of these four results is included in the category of the predominant result; the other three are included in the category of virile result.

***

We have explained causes and results. We must now examine how many causes produce the different *dharmas*.

From this point of view, the *dharmas* are ranged into four categories: 1. defiled *dharmas*, that is, the defilements, the *dharmas* associated with a defilement, and the *dharmas* having their origins in a defilement (iv.8); 2. retributive *dharmas* or *dharmas* arisen from a retributive cause (*vipākaḥetu*, ii.54c); 3. the first pure *dharmas*, that is, *duḥkhe dharmajñānakṣānti* (i.38b, vi.27) and the *dharmas* coexistent with this *kṣānti*; and 4. the other *dharmas*, that is, the neutral *dharmas*, with the exception of the *dharmas* of retribution, and the good *dharmas*, with the exception of the first pure *dharmas*.
60-61b. The mind and its mental states are: 1) defiled; 2) arisen from a retributive cause; 3) others; and 4) pure for the first time, arising from causes that remain when one excludes, in this order, 1) the retributive cause, 2) the universal cause, 3) these two causes, 4) these two causes plus the similar cause. The associated cause is further excluded with respect to the dharma that are not mind or mental states. 416

The mind and its mental states, 1) when they are defiled, arise from five causes excluding the retributive cause; 2) when they are retributive, they arise from five causes with the exclusion of the universal cause; 3) when they are different from these two categories and from the fourth, they arise from four causes, with the exclusion of the retributive cause and the universal cause; 4) when they are pure for the first time, they arise from three causes, with the exclusion of the aforementioned two causes and the similar cause.

The dharma that are not mind or mental states, namely the material dharma and the samskāras not associated with the mind (ii.35), accordingly as they fall into one of four categories, arising from causes proper to this category with the exclusion of the associated causes are: defiled and retributive, four causes; different, three causes; pure for the first time (anāsravasariṇīvara, iv.13), two causes.

These is no dharma that comes from a single cause: the reason for being and the mutually coexistant cause are never absent.

***

We have explained causes (hetu). What are conditions (pratyaya)?

61c. The pratyayas are said to be four. 417

Where is this said?

In the Sūtra, it says "There are four conditions (pratyayas), namely causes as a condition (hetupratyayata), an equal and immediately antecedent condition (samanantarapratyayata), an object as condition (ālambanapratyayata), and a predominating influence as condition (adhipatipratyayata)."
Pratyayatā means “a type of pratyaya.”

***

What is “cause as a condition”?

61d. The pratyaya that bears the name of hetu is five betus.

Excepting kāraṇabetu, the five remaining betus constitute betu-pratyayatā, causes as condition.

***

What is “an equal and immediately antecedent condition”?

62a-b. The mind and its mental states that have arisen, with the exception of the last ones, are an equal and immediately antecedent condition.

If one excepts the last mind and the last mental states of the Arhat at the moment of Nirvāṇa, all minds and mental states which have arisen are an equal and immediately antecedent condition.

i. Only mind and mental states are equal and immediately antecedent conditions. Of what dharmas are they the equal and immediately antecedent conditions?

1. This type of condition is called samanantara (equal and immediately antecedent) because it produces equal (sama) and immediate (anantara) dharmas. The prefix sam is understood in the sense of equality.

Consequently only minds and their mental states are equal and immediately antecedent conditions, for there is no equality between a cause and its result with respect to the other dharmas, for example the material dharmas. In fact, after a rūpa of the sphere of Kāmadhātu, there can arise at the same time two rūpas, one of Kāmadhātu, the other from Rūpadhātu, or two rūpas, one from Kāmadhātu, the other pure; whereas one mind in Kāmadhātu and one mind in Rūpadhātu can never arise at the same time after a mind in
Kāmadhātu. The appearance of the rūpas is confused: now an equal and immediately antecedent condition does not produce confused results; hence material dharmas are not equal and immediately antecedent conditions.

Vasumitra says: A second rūpa of accumulation can arise in the same body, without which the series of a rūpa of accumulation would be broken; hence rūpa is not an equal and immediately antecedent condition.422

The Bhadanta423 says: A rūpa dharma is immediately followed by more or by less. Hence it is not an equal and immediately antecedent condition. Less arises from more: as when a great mass of straw, burned, becomes ash. More arises from less: as when a small seed produces the roots of a fig tree, its trunk, its branches, and its leaves.

2. [Objection:] When minds immediately succeed one another, do they always admit the same number of types of associated mental states? No. The earlier mind admits of a larger number of types of mental states, and the following mind, a lesser number; and vice versa. Minds, good, bad, or neutral, succeed one another; but they do not admit of the same number of associated mental states (ii.28-30); the absorptions, which succeed one another, admit of or do not admit of vitarka and vicāra (viii.7). Hence there is no equality for the mental states as well as for the material dharmas (Vibhāsā, TD 27, p. 52a21).

That is true: there is a succession from less to more, and vice versa (second opinion of the Vibhāsā); but only by the accumulation or the diminution of the number of types of mental states (Vibhāsā, TD 27, p. 50c5). There is never any inequality with respect to a determined type: more numerous sensations never arise after less numerous sensations, nor vice versa; this means that a mind accompanied by a single sensation is never followed by a mind associated with two or three sensations. The same for ideas (saṁjñā) and the other mental states.

Thus is it only in relation to its own type that an earlier mental state is an equal and immediately antecedent condition of a later mental state? Is sensation then the equal and immediately antecedent condition of a single sensation?
No. In a general way the earlier mental states are equal and immediately antecedent conditions of the mental states that follow, and only of the mental states of their type. But there is no succession from less to more with respect to one type, and vice versa: this justifies the expression *samanantara*, "equal and immediate."

3. The Abhidhārmikas who take the name of Sāntānasabhāgikas (*Vibhāṣa*, *TD* 27, p. 50c5) maintain on the contrary that a dharma of a certain type is only an equal and immediately antecedent condition of a dharma of that same type: mind arises from mind, sensation arises from sensation, etc.

[Objection:] In this hypothesis, when a defiled (*kliṣṭa*-acusala or *nivṛtavyākṛta*) dharma arises after an undefiled dharma, this defiled dharma does not proceed from an equal and immediately antecedent condition.

It is a previously destroyed defilement that is the equal and immediately antecedent condition of the defilement that defiles this second dharma. The previous defilement is considered as immediately preceding the later defilement, even though it is separated by an undefiled dharma, separation by a dharma of a different nature does not constitute separation, as the leaving-mind of the absorption of extinction (*niruddhasamāpatti*, ii43a) has for its equal and immediately antecedent condition the mind-of-entry-into-absorption which was previously destroyed: absorption does not constitute a separation.

We think that the theory of the Sāntānasabhāgikas is inadmissible, for, in this theory, a pure mind produced for the first time (i.38b) would not have any equal and immediately antecedent condition.

4. The *samskāras* dissociated from the mind (*viprayukta*, ii.35), like the material dharmas, are produced disparately: hence they are not equal and immediately antecedent conditions. In fact after possession in the sphere of Kāmadhātu, possession relative to the dharmas of the three spheres of existence and to pure dharmas etc., can be produced at the same time.

ii. Why deny that the future dharmas are equal and immediately antecedent conditions?

Future dharmas are disparate: there is not, among them, any early
and later (see p. 266). 425

A. Then how does the Blessed One know that such and such a future dharma will arise first, and that such and such a dharma will arise later? He knows the order of the arising of all that arises until the end of time.

1. First answer. 426 His consciousness results from an inference (anumāna) drawn from the past and the present. He sees the past: 427 "From such a type of action such a retributive result arises; such a dharma proceeds from such a dharma;" and he sees the present: "Here is such a type of action: such a retributive result shall arise in the future from this action; here is such a dharma: such a dharma shall proceed from this dharma."

However the consciousness of the Blessed One is called pranidhi-jñāna (vii.37), and is not a consciousness from inference. By means of inferences drawn from the past and from the present, the Blessed One immediately sees the dharma that resides, disparately, in the future, and he produces the consciousness, "This man, having accomplished such an action, shall certainly receive such a future retribution." 428

To believe you, if the Blessed One does not consider the past, then he does not know the future. Hence he is not omniscient.

2. According to other Masters, 429 there is in the series of beings a certain dharma which is the indication of the results which will arise in the future, namely a certain sāriṅskāra disassociated from the mind. The Blessed One contemplates it, 430 and he knows future results without his having cultivated the Dhyānas and the Abhijñās (vii.42; cyutypapādajñāna) for it.

The Sautrāntikas: If this is the case, then the Blessed One would be an interpreter of signs; 431 he would not be a "seer."

3. Consequently the Blessed One knows immediately and at his will all things, not be inference, and not by divination. This is the opinion of the Sautrāntikas, justified by the word of the Blessed One (Ekottara, TD 2, p.640a4; comp. Dīgha, i.31), "The qualities of the Buddhas, the spheres of the Buddhas, are incomprehensible."

B. If the future does not have any earlier or later division of time, how can one say, "Only duḥkhe dharma jñānakṣānti arises immediately
after the *laukika agradharmas*, and not any other *dharma*" (vi.27) and thus following until “*Kṣayajñāna* arises immediately after *vajropamāsamādhi* (vi.46c)?”

[The Vaibhāṣikas (*Vibhāṣā, TD* 27, p. 51bl) answer:] If the arising of this *dharma* is bound to that *dharma*, then immediately after that, this arises, as a bud arises after the seed without any equal and immediately antecedent condition intervening.

iii. Why are the last mind and the last mental states of the Arhat equal and immediately antecedent conditions (*Vibhāṣā, TD* 27, 50a22)?

Because no mind or mental states arise after them.

But you have said (i.17) that the *manas* is the mind that is disappearing and which serves as the support of the following mind. Since no mind follows the last mind of an Arhat, this last mind should not receive either the name of *manas*, or the name of equal and immediately antecedent condition; and yet you consider it as being *manas*.

The case is not the same. That which constitutes the *manas* is not its activity, the fact of supporting the susequent mind; rather, it is the quality of being a support (*āśraya*) for this mind; whether his (latter mind) arises or does not arise is of little importance. The last mind of an Arhat is “support:” if a subsequent mind, which would be supported by this support, does not arise, it is through the lack of other causes necessary to its arising. On the contrary, what constitutes an equal and immediately antecedent condition is its activity. Once this condition has grasped or projected a result, nothing in the world can hinder this result from arising. Hence the last mind of an Arhat is justly called *manas*, but not an equal and immediately antecedent condition.

iv. Does a *dharma* which is *cittasamanantara*, that is, which has a certain mind (*cittanirantarā*) for its equal and immediate antecedent condition, immediately follow this mind? 432

There are four alternatives:

1. The mind and the mental states of leaving of the two absorptions free from mind (ii.41), and all the moments of these two absorptions with the exception of the first, have the mind entering into absorption for their equal and immediately antecedent condition,
but they do not immediately follow this mind (ii.64b).

2. The characteristics (lakṣāṇas, ii.45c) 1) of the first moment of the two absorptions, and 2) of all minds and all mental states of a conscious state, immediately follow a mind, but do not have any equal and immediately antecedent condition.

3. The first moment of the two absorptions, and all minds and mental states of a conscious state, have the mind that they immediately follow for their equal and immediately antecedent condition.

4. The characteristics 1) of all the moments of the two absorptions with the exception of the first, and 2) of the mind and the mental states of leaving these two absorptions, have no equal and immediately antecedent condition, for they are dharmas disassociated from the mind (viprayuktā, ii.35); and they do not immediately follow a mind.

***

What is an object as condition?

62c. All dharmas are the objects of consciousness.

All the dharmas, conditioned as well as unconditioned, are "objects of consciousness" of the mind and its mental states, but not indiscriminately so. For example, the visual consciousness and the mental states, sensation, etc., which are associated with it, have all visible things for their object; the hearing consciousness, sounds; the smelling consciousness, odors; and the touch consciousness, tangible things. The mental consciousness and the mental states that are associated with it have all the dharmas for their objects. (Kārikā 62c is then understood literally with respect to the manas).

When a dharma is the object of a mind, it is not possible that this dharma, at any moment, is not the object of this mind. This means that even if a visible object is not grasped as an object by the visual consciousness, it is an object, for, whether it is grasped or not grasped as an object, its nature remains the same, as fuel is combustible, even when it is not on fire.

We can establish a threefold determination in considering the
problem from the point of view of the mind that grasps a dharma as its object. The mind is determined 1) with regard to its āyatana: for example, a visual consciousness is supported only on a visible thing (rupa-āyatana); 2) with regard to the dravya or substantial thing: a certain visual consciousness, the consciousness of blue, of red, etc., is supported by blue, red, etc. (see i.10); and 3) with regard to a moment (ksāna): a certain visual consciousness is supported in a certain moment of blue.

Is the mind determined in the same way with regard to its support (āśraya), that is, its organ, the organ of sight, etc.?

The response is affirmative. However, in the present, the mind is bound to its support; but in the past and the future, it is separated from it.

According to others, it is bound to its support in both the past and the present.

***

What is a predominating condition?

62d. The cause termed kāraṇa is called adhipati, predominant.

Adhipatipratyayatā or predominating condition is kāraṇahetu, the “reason for being” cause (ii.50a), for kāraṇahetu is a “predominating condition” (adhipatipratyaya).

This name is justified from two points of view. The predominating condition is that which belongs to the greatest number of dharmas, and which is exercised with respect to the greatest number of dharmas.

1. All the dharmas are “an object as condition” of the mental consciousness. However the dharmas coexisting with a certain mind are not the object of this mind, whereas they are kāraṇahetu of it. Thus the dharmas, without exception, are “predominating conditions” as kāraṇahetu, not as “an object as condition.”

2. Every dharma has all dharmas for its kāraṇahetu, with the exception of itself.

No dharma of any type is a condition of itself. And a conditioned
dharma is not a condition of an unconditioned dharma, and vice versa.

***

In what state (avasthā), past, present, or future, are the dharmas found with regard to which the diverse conditions exercise their activity?

Let us first examine cause as condition, that is, as five causes, with the exclusion of kāraṇahetu.

63a-b. Two causes exercise their activity with regard to a perishing dharma.435

"Perishing" means "of the present." A present dharma is called "perishing," "in the act of perishing," because, having arisen, it is turned towards its destruction.

Sahabhūhetu (ii.50b) and samprayuktakhetu (53c) operate with regard to a present dharma, because they operate with regard to a dharma that arises at the same time as they do.436

63b-c. Three, with regard to an arising dharma.

"An arising dharma" means a future dharma, because a future dharma, not having arisen, is turned towards arising.

The three causes in question are sabhāgahetu (ii.52a), sarvatra-gahetu (54a), and vipākahetu (54c).

Concerning the other conditions:

63c-d. Two other conditions, in reverse order.

First in the list of conditions there comes the equal and immediately antecedent condition: it exercises it activity as do the three causes, namely with regard to an arising dharma, for the minds and mental states of a given moment cede their place to the mind and mental states which are arising.

Next in the list there comes an object as condition: it exercises its activity as do the two causes, namely with regard to a perishing dharma: this perishing dharma is mind and mental states, the "subjects
of the consciousness” (ālambaka), which, perishing,—that is, of the present,—grasp a present object.

The activity of predominant influence as a condition only consists in not creating any obstacle either to a past, present, or future dharma.

***

The different types of dharma arise by reason of how many conditions?

64a. The mind and its mental states arise by reason of four conditions.\(^{437}\)

1. Causes as conditions: the five causes; 2. equal and immediately antecedent condition: the earlier mind and mental states, which have arisen not separated by other minds or mental states; 3. an object as condition: the five objects of which physical matter is the first, or, in the case of the mental consciousness, all the dharmas; and 4. a predominating influence as condition: all the dharmas, except the mind and its mental states whose arising is under consideration.

64b. The two absorptions, by reason of three.

One must exclude the object as condition, because the absorption of non-consciousness (ii.42) and the absorption of extinction (ii.43) do not grasp an object. We have: 1. causes as conditions: two causes, sahabhūhetu (the laksāṇas, arising, etc. ii.45c, of the absorption), and sabbhāgahetu (the good former dharmas, already arisen, belonging to the stage of absorption, that is, to the Fourth Dhyāna or to Bhavāgra, according to the case); 2. an equal and immediately antecedent condition, the mind of entry into the absorption and the mental states that are associated with this mind; the mind of entry is not separated by any mind of any of the moments of the absorption; and 3. the predominating influence as condition, as above.

These two absorptions arise from an application, from an inflection of the mind: they then have the mind as an equal and immediately antecedent condition. They hinder the arising of the mind: thus they
are not equal and immediately antecedent conditions of the mind leaving the absorption, even though they are immediately contiguous to it (nirantar, see p. 301).

64c. The other dharmas, by reason of two.

The other dharmas, namely the other samskāras disassociated form the mind and the material dharmas, arise by reason of the causes as conditions and the predominating influence as condition (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 702b21).

***

All the dharmas that arise arise by reason of the five causes and the four conditions that we have just explained. The world does not proceed from a single cause that is called God, or Puruṣa, or Pradhāna, or any other name.438

How do you prove this thesis?

If you think that the thesis is proven through arguments, you betray your doctrine that the world arises from a single cause.

64d. Not from God or from any other cause, since there is a succession, etc.439

That things are produced by a single cause, by God, Mahadeva, or Vāsudeva, is inadmissable for many reasons.

1. If things were produced by a single cause, they would arise all at the same time: now each of us knows that they arise successively.

[The Theist:] They arise successively by virtue of the desires of God, who says, "May this arise now! May this perish now! May this arise and perish later!"

If this were the case, then things do not arise from a single cause, since the desires (of God) are multiple. Moreover these multiple desires would have to be simultaneous, since God, the cause of these desires, is not multiple, and things would all arise at the same time.

a. [The Theist:] The desires of God are not simultaneous, because God, in order to produce his desires, takes into account other causes.
If this were so, then God is not the single unique cause of all things. And the causes that God takes into account are produced successively: they depend then on causes which are themselves dependent on other causes: an infinite regression.

[The Theist:] It is admitted that the series of causes has no beginning.

This would admit that samśāra does not have an origin. You then abandon the doctrine of a single cause and return to the Buddhist theory of causes (hetus) and conditions (pratyaya).

b. [The Theist:] The desires of God are simultaneous, but things do not arise at the same time because they arise as God wishes them to arise, that is, in succession.

This is inadmissible. The desires of God remain what they are. Let us explain. Suppose that God desires "May this arise now! May that arise later!" We do not see why the second desire, at first non-efficacious, will be efficacious later; why, if it is efficacious later, it will not be so initially.

What advantage does God obtain from this great effort by which he produces the world?

[The Theist:] God produces the world for his own satisfaction (prāti).

He is then not God, the Sovereign (īśvara), in what concerns his own satisfaction, since he cannot realize it without a means (upāya). And if he is not sovereign with regard to his own satisfaction, how can he be sovereign with regard to the world? Further, do you say that God finds satisfaction in seeing the creatures that he has created in the prey of all the sufferings of existence, including the tortures of the hells? Homage to this God! Well said, in truth, is the popular stanza, "He is called Rudra because he burns, because he is excited, ferocious, terrible, an eater of flesh, blood, and marrow." 440

3. The followers of God, the single cause of the world, deny visible causes,—causes and conditions,—the efficacy of the seed with regard to the sprout, etc. If, modifying their position, they admit the existence of these causes, and pretend that these causes serve God as auxiliaries, this then is no more that a pious affirmation, for we do not maintain
any activity of a cause besides the activity of the so-called secondary causes. Furthermore, God would not be sovereign with regard to auxiliary causes, since these cooperate in the production of the effect through their own efficacy. Perhaps, in order to avoid the negation of causes, which are visible, and in order to avoid the affirmation of present action by God, which is not visible, the Theist would say that the work of God is creation: but creation, dependent only on God, would never have a beginning, like God himself, and this is a consequence that the Theist rejects.

We would refute the doctrine of Puruṣa, of Pradhāna, etc., as we have refuted the theist doctrine, *mutatis mutandis*. Thus, no dharma arises from a single cause.

Alas, persons are unclear! Like the birds and the animals, truly worth of pity, they go from existence to existence, accomplishing diverse actions; they experience the results of these actions and falsely believe that God is the cause of these results. (We must explain the Truth in order to put an end to this false conception.)

***

We have seen (ii.64c) that the material dharma arises by reason of two conditions, causes as conditions and predominating influences as conditions. We must specify and see how the primary elements (*bhūtas* or *mahābhūtas*), and the dharma of derived matter (*upādāyarūpa* or *bhautilkas*), are causes as conditions, either among themselves, or one from the other.

65a. The primary elements are the cause of the derived elements in two ways.

The four primary elements of earth, etc., are causes of the four primary elements in the quality of similar causes (*sabhāgabetu*), and of mutually coexistent causes (*sabhābūbetu*).

65b. And of the derived elements, in five ways.

The four primary elements are causes of the derived elements—
color, taste, etc.—in five ways, in the quality of \(\text{janana}, \text{nişraya}, \text{pratiṣṭhā}, \text{upastambha}, \text{and upārśṝpañahetu.}\)\(^{444}\)

\(\text{Jananahetu}\) or generating cause, because the derived elements arise from them, like a child from his parents.\(^{445}\)

\(\text{Nişrayahetu}\) or tutelage cause, because the \(\text{bhautikas},\) once arisen, submerge their influence, as a monk is under the tutelage of his Ācārya and his Upādhyāya.

\(\text{Pratiṣṭhāhetu}\) or supporting cause, because the derived elements are supported by them, as a picture is supported by a wall.\(^{446}\)

\(\text{Upastambhahetu}\) or maintaining cause, because the primary elements are the cause of the non-interruption of the derived elements.

\(\text{Upārśṝpañahetu}\) or growth cause, because the primary elements are the cause of the development of the derived elements.

This means that the primary elements (\(\text{bhutas}\)) are, with regard to the derived elements (\(\text{bhautikas}\)), the cause of arising (\(\text{janmahetu}\)), the cause of transformation (\(\text{vikārabhetu}\)), the supporting cause (\(\text{ādhāra-bhetu}\)), the cause of duration (\(\text{sthiti-bhetu}\)), and the cause of development (\(\text{vṛddhibhetu}\)).

65c. Derived elements are the cause of the derived elements in three ways.

In the quality of \(\text{sahabhū, sahāga}\) and \(\text{vipāka-bhetu}.\) We do not mention \(\text{kāraṇahetu},\) for any \(\text{dharma}\) is a \(\text{kāraṇahetu}\) of any other \(\text{dharma}.\)

1. The actions of the body and voice of the category described in ii.51a (i.e., the two disciplines), which are derived elements, are \(\text{sahabbūhetu}.\)

2. All the derived elements which have arisen, are, with regard to similar (\(\text{sahāga}\)) derived elements, \(\text{sahāgahetu}.\)

3. The actions of the body and voice are \(\text{vipākahetu}:\) the eye is produced through retribution of action, etc.

65d. And the cause of the primary elements, in one way.

The actions of the body and voice produce the primary elements as a retributive result: they are then \(\text{vipākahetu}.\)
We have seen that antecedent minds and mental states are the equal and immediately antecedent condition of subsequent minds and mental states. But we have not explained how many types of mind arise immediately after each type of mind.

In order to define its role, we must first establish a classification of the mind.

First, we must distinguish twelve categories.

66a. Good, bad, defiled-neutral, undefiled-neutral minds in Kāmadhātu.447

Four types of minds belong to Kāmadhātu: good, bad, defiled-neutral, and undefiled-neutral.

66b. Good defiled-neutral, undefiled-neutral minds in Rūpadhātu and in Ārūpyadhātu.

Three types of minds are in the two higher spheres: all of the above, excluding the bad mind.

66c. And two pure minds.

The two pure minds are those of the Śaikṣa and the Arhat or Aśaikṣa. In all, these constitute twelve minds.

[These twelve minds do not indiscriminately arise one after the other:]

67a. Nine types of minds can arise after a good mind in Kāmadhātu.448

1. Immediately after a good mind in Kāmadhātu there can arise nine minds, namely: (1-4) the four minds in Kāmadhātu; (5-6) two minds in Rūpadhātu: good, when a ascetic enters into absorption, and defiled-neutral, when a person who dies in Kāmadhātu with a good mind passes into the intermediate existence of Rūpadhātu (iii.38); (7) a mind in Ārūpyadhātu, a defiled-neutral mind, when one dying in Kāmadhātu is reborn in Ārūpyadhātu; not good, for, since Ārūpya-
dhātu is estranged from Kāmadhātu by four estrangements, one cannot pass directly from Kāmadhātu into an absorption of Ārūpaddhātu; (8-9) the two pure minds, of Śaikṣa or of Āśaikṣa, at entry into the Understanding of the Truths (vi.27).

67b. Such a [good] mind can arise after eight types of minds.

2. A good mind can arise immediately after eight minds, namely: (1-4) the four minds in Kāmadhātu, (5-6) two minds in Rūpadhātu, good and defiled-neutral minds, upon leaving an absorption. It happens in fact that an ascetic, bothered by a defiled (kliṣṭa) absorption, leaves this absorption: after the defiled (kliṣṭa-nivrta) mind, which is this absorption, he produces a good mind of a lower stage (viii.14); and (7-8) two pure minds, of Śaikṣa or Āśaikṣa, upon leaving the Understanding of the Truths.

67c. A bad mind can arise after ten types of minds.

3. A kliṣṭa mind, that is to say, a bad and a defiled-neutral mind can arise after ten minds—excluding the two pure minds, for a mind of rebirth into Kāmadhātu is defiled (ii.14, iii.38) and can follow any kind of mind belonging to the three spheres of existence.

67d. Four types of minds can arise after such a (= bad) mind.

4. Four minds can arise after a kliṣṭa mind, namely the four minds of Kāmadhātu.

67e. The same for a defiled-neutral mind.

5. An undefiled-neutral mind can arise after five minds.

68a. An undefiled-neutral mind can arise after five types of mind.

Namely the four minds in Kāmadhātu, plus a good mind in Rūpadhātu: for a mind capable of creating fictive beings (nirmāṇacittā) in Kāmadhātu, a mind that has for its object the creation of an object of Kāmadhātu, follows a good mind in Rūpadhātu.
68b. Seven types of mind can arise after an undefiled-neutral mind.

6. After an undefiled-neutral mind there can arise seven minds, namely: (1-4) the four minds in Kāmadhātu, (5-6) two minds in Rūpadhātu, good minds, for, after the aforementioned mind of creation, a good mind reappears in Rūpadhātu, and a defiled-neutral mind, when a person, dying with this mind, is reborn in Rūpadhātu the first mind of which is necessarily a defiled-neutral mind (iii.38); (7) a mind of Ārūpyadhātu, a defiled-neutral mind, when a person, dying with this mind, is reborn in Ārūpyadhātu.

68c. In Rūpadhātu eleven types of minds can arise after a good mind.

1. Eleven minds, excluding an undefiled-neutral mind in Rūpadhātu, can arise immediately after a good mind in Rūpadhātu.

68d. A good mind can arise after nine types of minds.

2. A good mind can arise after nine minds, excluding the two defiled minds in Kāmadhātu (bad and defiled-neutral) and an undefiled-neutral mind in Ārūpyadhātu.

69a. A defiled-neutral mind can arise after eight types of minds.

3. A defiled-neutral mind can arise after eight minds, excluding the two defiled minds in Kāmadhātu and the two pure minds.

69b. Six types of minds can arise after a defiled-neutral mind.

4. Six minds can arise after a defiled-neutral mind, namely the three minds in Rūpadhātu, and the good, bad, and defiled-neutral minds in Kāmadhātu.

69c. An undefiled-neutral mind can arise after three types of mind.

5. An undefiled-neutral mind can arise after the three minds in Rūpadhātu.
69d. Six types of mind can arise after such a (defiled-neutral) mind.

6. Six minds can arise after an undefiled-neutral mind, namely: (1-3) the three minds in Rūpadhātu, (4-5) the two defiled minds in Kāmadhātu (bad and defiled-neutral), and (6) the defiled mind in Arupyadhatu (defiled-neutral).

69e. As above, so too in Ārūpyadhātu, for these (undefiled-neutral minds).

1. An undefiled-neutral mind in Ārūpyadhātu can arise after the three minds of this sphere.

2. Six minds can arise after an undefiled-neutral mind in Ārūpyadhātu, namely: (1-3) the three minds of this sphere, and (4-6) the defiled minds in Kāmadhātu (two) and Rūpadhātu (one).

70a. Nine types of minds can arise after a good mind.

3. Nine minds can arise after a good mind, with the exception of a good mind in Kāmadhātu and an undefiled-neutral mind in Kāmadhātu and Rūpadhātu.

70b. Such a (good mind) can arise after six types of mind.

4. A good mind can arise after six minds, namely (1-3) the three minds in Ārūpyadhātu, (4) a good mind in Rūpadhātu, and (5-6) the two pure minds.

70c. Seven types of minds can arise after a defiled-neutral mind.

5. Seven minds can arise after a defiled-neutral mind, namely (1-3) the three minds in Ārūpyadhātu, (4) a good mind in Rūpadhātu, (5-6) two defiled minds in Kāmadhātu, and (7) a defiled mind in Rūpadhātu.

70d. And the same for it.

6. A defiled-neutral mind can arise after seven minds, with the exception of the two defiled minds in Kāmadhātu, a defiled mind in Rūpadhātu and the two pure minds.
70e. A Śaikṣa mind can arise after four types of minds.

A Śaikṣa mind, the mind belonging to the saint who is not an Arhat, can arise after four minds, namely a Śaikṣa mind and a good mind in each of the three spheres.

70f. But five types of minds can arise after such (a Śaikṣa mind).

Five minds can arise after a Śaikṣa mind, namely the four that have just been named and an Aśaikṣa mind.

70g. An Aśaikṣa mind can arise after five types of minds.

An Aśaikṣa mind can arise after five minds, namely after a Śaikṣa mind, an Aśaikṣa mind, and a good mind of each of the three spheres.

71a. Four types of minds can arise after such (an Aśaikṣa mind).

Four minds can arise after an Aśaikṣa mind, namely an Aśaikṣa mind and a good mind of each of three spheres.

The twelve types of mind succeed one another in conformity with these rules.

And again,

71b. The twelve types of mind make twenty.

How is this?

71c. By dividing the good mind of the three Dhātus into two, the acquired and the innate minds.

1. A good mind of each of the three spheres is divided into two categories, 1.) that acquired through effort, \(^{450}\) and 2.) that acquired by birth. \(^{451}\) [We then have six types of good mind corresponding to three types of the first list.]

72a. By dividing an undefiled-neutral mind in Kāmadhātu into four: the retributive mind, the mind of attitude, the mind of application, and a mind that can create fictive beings.
An undefiled-neutral mind of Kāmadhātu is divided into four categories: a.) arisen from a retributive cause (vipākaja, ii.57); b.) relative to attitudes (airyāpathika), walking, standing, sitting, lying down; c.) relative to the arts (sailpasthānika); and c.) relative to fictive creations: the mind by which a possessor of supernatural power creates visible things, etc., is called the result of abhijñā (abhijnāphala, vii.49) (see above p. 270).

72b. By excluding the undefiled-neutral mind of application in Rūpadhātu.

An undefiled-neutral mind in Rūpadhātu is divided into only three categories, for sailpasthānika does not exist in this sphere.

[There is no reason to divide the undefiled-neutral mind of Ārūpyadhātu, for it is exclusively arisen from a retributive cause.]

We then have seven types of undefiled-neutral minds corresponding to the two undefiled-neutral minds of the first list. By taking into account the good minds, we obtain a total of twenty.

Three undefiled-neutral minds, the airyāpathika mind and following, have visible things, odors, taste, and tangible things for their object. The sailpasthānika mind, furthermore, has sound for its object.

These three undefiled-neutral minds are solely mental consciousnesses. However the five sense consciousnesses precede and prepare the airyāpathika and sailpasthānika minds.

According to another opinion, there is a mental consciousness produced by the airyāpathika mind, which has the twelves āyatanas, from the organ of sight to the dharmāyatana, for its object.

2. Twenty minds arise one after another, in conformity with the following rules:

i. Kāmadhātu: eight types of mind of the sphere of Kāmadhātu, namely two good minds, two klīṣta (bad, defiled-neutral) minds, and four undefiled-neutral minds.

1. Good Acquired through Effort.

Followed by ten: (1-7) seven minds of the same sphere, with the exception of abhijnāphala (nirmāṇacitta); (8) a mind of Rūpadhātu
acquired through effort; and (9-10) a Śāikṣa mind and an Āśāikṣa mind.

It follows seven: (1-4) four minds of the same sphere, the two good minds and the two kliśta minds; (5-6) a mind acquired through effort and an undefiled mind of Rūpadhātu; (7-8) a Śāikṣa mind and an Āśāikṣa mind.

2. Good Acquired through Birth.

Followed by ten: (1-7) seven minds of the same sphere, with the exception of abhijnāphala; (8-9) undefiled-neutral minds of Rūpadhātu and Arūpyadhātu.

It follows eleven: (1-7) seven minds of the same sphere, with the exception of abhijnāphala; (8-9) a mind acquired through effort and an undefiled-neutral mind of Rūpadhātu; (10-11) a Śāikṣa mind and an Āśāikṣa mind.

3-4. Bad and defiled-neutral.

Followed by seven minds of the same sphere, with the exception of abhijnāphala.

They follow fourteen: ((1-7) seven minds of the same sphere, with the exception of abhijnāphala; (8-11) four minds of Rūpadhātu, with the exception of a mind acquired through effort and abhijnāphala; (12-14) three minds of Arūpyadhātu, with the exception of a mind acquired through effort.

5-6. Vyākṣa and airīyapathika.

Followed by eight: (1-6) six minds of the same sphere, with the exception of a mind acquired through effort and abhijnāphala; (7-8) an undefiled-neutral mind of Rūpadhātu and of Arūpyadhātu.

They follow seven minds of the same sphere follow, with the exception of abhijnāphala.

7. Sāipathānīka.

Followed by six minds of the same sphere, with the exception of a mind acquired through effort and abhijnāphala.

They follow seven minds of the same sphere, with the exception of abhijnāphala.


Followed by two minds, abhijnāphala of the same sphere and a
mind acquired through effort in Rūpadhātu.

It follows two: the same.

***

ii. Rūpadhātu: six types of mind of the sphere of Rūpadhātu, namely two good minds, one kliṣṭa (defiled-neutral) mind, and three undefiled-neutral minds.

1. Good Acquired through Effort.

Followed by twelve: (1-6) six of the same sphere, (7-9) three of Kāmadhātu: good acquired through effort, good acquired through birth; and abhijñāphala; 10) a mind of Arūpyadhātu acquired through effort; and (11-12) a Śaikṣa mind and an Aśaikṣa mind.

If follows ten: (1-4) four of the same sphere, excepting airyāpatha and vipākaja, (5-6) two of Kāmadhātu, acquired through effort and abhijñāphala; (7-8) two of Arūpyadhātu, acquired through effort and defiled-neutral; and (9-10) a Śaikṣa mind and an Aśaikṣa mind.

2. Good Acquired through Birth.

Followed by eight: (1-5) five of the same sphere, except abhijñāphala; (6-7) two of Kāmadhātu, bad and defiled-neutral; and (8) a defiled-neutral mind of Arūpyadhātu.

It follows five of the same sphere, except abhijñāphala.

3. Defiled-neutral minds.

Followed by nine minds: (1-5) five minds of the same sphere, with the exception of an abhijñāphala mind; (6-9) four minds of Kāmadhātu, two good minds and two kliṣṭa minds.

They follow eleven minds: (1-5) five minds of the same sphere, with the exception of an abhijñāphala mind; (6-8) three minds of Kāmadhātu, an mind acquired through birth, an airyāpatha mind, and a vipākaja mind; (9-11) three minds of Arūpyadhātu, with the exception of a mind acquired though effort.

4-5. Vipākaja and airyāpatha minds.

Followed by seven minds: (1-4) four minds of the same sphere, with the exception of a mind acquired through effort and an abhijñāphala mind; (5-6) two minds of Kāmadhātu, a bad mind and a
defiled-neutral mind; (7) one mind of Ārūpyadhātu, a defiled-neutral mind.

They follow five minds of the same sphere, with the exception of an abhijñāphala mind.

6. Abhijñāphala.

Followed by two minds of the same sphere, a mind acquired through effort and an abhijñāphala mind.

It follows two minds: the same.

***

iii. Ārūpyadhātu: four types of mind of the sphere of Ārūpyadhātu, namely two good minds, a defiled-neutral mind and a vipākaja mind.

1. Good Acquired through Effort.

Followed by seven mind: (1-4) four minds of the same sphere; (5) a mind of Rūpadhātu acquired through effort; and (6-7) a Śaikṣa mind and an Aśaikṣa mind.

2. Good Acquired through Birth.

Followed by seven minds: (1-4) four minds of the same sphere; (5) a defiled-neutral mind of Rūpadhātu; (6-7) a bad mind and a defiled-neutral mind of Kāmadhātu.

It follows four minds of the same sphere.

3. Defiled-neutral.

Followed by eight minds: (1-4) four minds of the same sphere; (5-6) a mind acquired through effort and a defiled-neutral mind of Rūpadhātu; (7-8) a bad mind and a defiled-neutral mind of Kāmadhātu.

It follows ten minds: (1-4) four minds of the same sphere; (5-10) a mind acquired through birth, an airyāpathika mind, and an vipākaja mind of Rūpadhātu and Kāmadhātu.

4. Vipākaja.

Followed by six minds: (1-3) three minds of the same sphere, with the exception of a mind acquired through effort; (4) a defiled-neutral mind of Rūpadhātu; (5-6) a bad mind and a defiled-neutral mind of Kāmadhātu. Four minds follow, of this same sphere.
v. The two pure minds:
1. Śāikṣa.
   Followed by six minds: (1-3) a mind acquired through effort of the three spheres; (4) an mind acquired through effort of Kāmadhātu; and (5-6) a Śāikṣa mind and an Āśāikṣa mind.
   It follows four minds: (1-3) a mind acquired through effort of the three spheres; (4) a Śāikṣa mind.
2. Āśāikṣa.
   Followed by five minds: the six minds which follow Śāikṣa with the exception of the Śāikṣa mind.
   It follows five minds: (1-3) a mind acquired through effort of the three spheres, (4-5) a Śāikṣa mind and an Āśāikṣa mind.

3. Remarks.
   a. Vipākaja, airyāpathika and sailpasthānika minds arise immediately after a mind in Kāmadhātu acquired through effort. For what reason is this not reciprocally true?
      A vipākaja mind is not favorable to a mind acquired through effort, because it is weak, and because it develops spontaneously.
      Airyāpathika and sailpasthānika minds are not favorable to a mind acquired through effort because their reason for being is the creation of an attitude or a created thing.
      Contrarily, the nīskramaṇacitta or the mind of leaving,—that is, any mind, a vipākaja mind, etc., by which a Yogin leaves the series of minds acquired through effort, such as reading, philosophical reflection, etc.—develops spontaneously. The mind of leaving can then immediately follow a mind acquired through effort.
   b. Objection: If a mind acquired through effort does not arise immediately after the vipākaja, etc., because these are not favorable to it, still less will it arise after a defiled (kliṣṭa) mind which is contrary to it.
A defiled mind is contrary to a mind acquired through effort. Yet, when an ascetic is exhausted from the activity of the defilements, a mind acquired through effort arises from the fact that the ascetic lays hold of a perfect consciousness (parijñāna) of this activity.

c. The innate good mind of Kāmadhātu is sharp; hence it can arise after the two pure minds and also after a mind in Rūpadhātu acquired through effort, but, as it develops spontaneously, it is not followed by these same minds.

An innate good mind of Kāmadhātu, being sharp, can arise after a defiled mind of Rūpadhātu; but an innate good mind of Rūpadhātu, not being sharp, cannot arise after a defiled mind of Arūpyadhātu.

[4. The minds arise immediately one after another, and they arise by reason of an act of attention. We must then study the act of attention.]

i. We can distinguish three acts of attention:

1. Svalakṣaṇamanaskāra, an act of attention to specific characteristics, for example the judgements "Rūpa has rūpana for its characteristic . . . vijñāna has prativijñāpti for its characteristic" (i.13, 16).

2. Sāmānyalakṣaṇamanaskāra, an act of attention to common or general characteristics, to the sixteen aspects of the Truths, impermanence, etc., and "The conditioned dharmas are impermanent" (see vii.10).

3. Adhimuktimanaskāra: this act of attention is not, like the first two, directed to that which exists; rather, it proceeds from adhimukti, that is, from constructive imagination (adhimuktyā . . . manaskāraḥ, see p. 190); it presides over the contemplations of asubhā (vi.9), the apramāṇas (viii.29), the vimokṣas (viii.32) the abhibhvāyatanas (viii.34) the kṛtsnāyatanas (viii.35), etc.

[c. The innate good mind of Kāmadhātu is sharp; hence it can arise after the two pure minds and also after a mind in Rūpadhātu acquired through effort, but, as it develops spontaneously, it is not followed by these same minds.

An innate good mind of Kāmadhātu, being sharp, can arise after a defiled mind of Rūpadhātu; but an innate good mind of Rūpadhātu, not being sharp, cannot arise after a defiled mind of Ārūpyadhātu.]
[According to the first Master quoted by the Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 53a19] one can realize the Path after these three acts of attention, and, inversely, one can produce these three acts of attention immediately after the Path. This opinion is supported by the text, "He produces the part of Bodhi called memory in company with (that is, after) the contemplation of repulsive things (aśubhā)."

[According to the third Master quoted in the Vibhāṣa) it is solely after an act of attention to general characteristics that one can realize the Path; after the Path, one can produce the three acts of attention. As for the text quoted by the first Master, it should be understood in the sense that, after having subdued his mind by means of the contemplation of repulsive things, an ascetic is capable of producing an act of attention to general characteristics, after which he realizes the Path. The text refers to this indirect action of the contemplation of repulsive things and so says, "aśubbāsahagatam . . ."

[According to the fourth Master of the Vibhāṣa,) it is only after an act of attention to general characteristics that an ascetic can realize the Path; furthermore, after the Path, he can only produce acts of attention to general characteristics.

The author refutes the third Master: Certainly, we indeed see that an ascetic who has entered into samyaktvaniyāma, onto the Path (see iv.27) by relying on one of the three lower stages (i.e., anāgamyā, First Dhyāna, dhyānāntara), can produce, upon coming out of the Path, an act of attention to general characteristics in Kāmadhātu and can be established in hearing or in reflection, because the stages in question are near; but, when an ascetic has entered samyaktvaniyāma by relying on the Second, Third, or Fourth Dhyāna, to which stage could the act of attention to general characteristics belong that he produces upon coming out of the Path?

He will produce an act of attention to general characteristics in Kāmadhātu, because Kāmadhātu is too estranged from the higher Dhyānas. He will not produce an act of attention to general characteristics of the sphere of one of the three higher Dhyānas, because he has not previously obtained conscious acts of attention, except in the course of the practice of the nirvedhabhāgīyas (vi.17: contemplations pre-
liminary to entry onto the Path): now an Āryan cannot again realize the *nirvedhābhāgīyas*, for we cannot admit that he would for a second time realize the preparatory path, since he already possesses its result.

But, we would say, there exists other acts of attention to general characteristics (*sāmānyamanaskāras*) which have been cultivated at the same time as the *nirvedhābhāgīyas* (as they refer to the Truths, but which differ by not referring to all their sixteen aspects): for example, seeing that "all *samāskāras* are impermanent," "all *dharmas* are impersonal," "Nirvāṇa is tranquil" (a general or *sāmānya* judgement, since it refers to any Nirvāṇa). It is this other type of *sāmānyamanaskāra* that an ascetic brings forth upon leaving the Path.

The Vaibhāṣikas do not accept this opinion, because it is illogical. [In fact, the cultivation of the *manaskāras* of this type is bound to the *nirvedhābhāgīyas*]. (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 53b3).

(The correct doctrine is that the Path can be followed by the three categories of the act of attention.) When one obtains the result of Arhat based on Anāgāmya (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 53b25), the mind leaving the absorption is either of this stage (Anāgāmya) or of the sphere of Kāmadhātu. When one obtains the same result based on Ākiñcanya, the mind of leaving is either of this same stage (Ākiñcanya), or of *naivasamjñānasamjñāyatana* (Bhāvāgra). When one obtains the same result by relying on any other stage, the mind of leaving is solely of this other stage.

ii. There are four types of acts of attention: 1.) an innate or natural act of attention, *upapati-pratilambhika*, 2.) attention produced from the teaching, *srutamaya*, 3.) from reflection, *cintāmaya*, and 4.) from meditation, *bhāvanāmaya*. Three are possible in Kāmadhātu, the first, the second, and the third, for meditation is not of Kāmadhātu. Three are possible in Rūpadhātu, the first, the second, and the fourth, for, in this sphere, as soon as one meditates or reflects (*cintā*), one enters into absorption. Two are possible in Ārūpyadhātu, the first and the fourth. There are then eight acts of attention, three, three and two (Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 53b14).

The Path is never produced after an act of innate attention, to whichever sphere it may belong, for the Path requires effort. The Path
is hence produced after five acts of attention, two of Kāmādhatu, two of Rūpadhātu, and one of Ārūpyadhātu. But, after the Path, an act of innate attention of Kāmādhatu can arise, because it is sharp.

***

How many minds are acquired when one manifests each of the twelve types of minds?

73a-b. With the defiled mind of each of the three spheres, there is obtaining of six, of six, and of two minds respectively.

"Obtaining" means taking possession of what one did not previously possess.

i. Obtaining the six minds with a defiled mind of Kāmādhatu.

a. One obtains a good mind of Kāmādhatu (1) when one again takes up the roots of good with a mind of doubt, which is defiled (iv.80c); or (2) when one returns to Kāmādhatu by falling from the higher spheres. The mind of conception is necessarily defiled (iii.38); with this mind one takes possession of a good mind of Kāmādhatu, for one did not previously possess it.461

b-c. One obtains a bad mind and defiled-neutral mind of Kāmādhatu (1) when one returns to Kāmādhatu by falling from the higher spheres: for then one takes possession of whichever of these two minds manifests itself; or (2) when one falls from the detachment of Kāmādhatu.

d. One obtains a defiled-neutral mind of Rūpadhātu when one falls from Ārūpyadhātu into Kāmādhatu. One in fact takes possession of a defiled-neutral mind of Rūpadhātu with a defiled mind of conception in Kāmādhatu.

e-f. One obtains a defiled-neutral mind of Ārūpyadhātu and a Śaiksā mind when one falls from the quality of an Arhat through the mind of Kāmādhatu.

ii. Obtaining the six minds with a defiled mind of Rūpadhātu.

One obtains one undefiled-neutral mind of Kāmādhatu (the mind capable of creating fictive beings, nirmāṇacitata) and the three minds
of Rūpadhātu when one falls from Ārūpyadhatu into Rūpadhātu.

One obtains a defiled-neutral mind of Ārūpyadhatu and a Śaikṣa mind when one falls from the quality of an Arhat through a mind of Rūpadhātu.

iii. One obtains a defiled-neutral mind of Ārūpyadhatu and a Śaikṣa mind with the defiled mind of Arūpyadhatu when one falls from the quality of Arhat through a mind of Arūpyadhatu.

73b-c. There is the obtaining of three with a good mind of Rūpadhātu.

One obtains three minds with a good mind of Rūpadhātu: this mind itself, and the undefiled-neutral minds of Kāmadhatu and Rūpadhātu, that is, the minds capable of creating fictive beings relative to these two spheres.

73c-d. There is an obtaining of four with a Śaikṣa mind.

When one realizes the first Śaikṣa mind, namely duḥkhe dharmajñānakṣaṇī (vi.25d), one obtains four minds: (1) the Śaikṣa mind itself, (2-3) two undefiled-neutral minds, one of Kāmadhatu and one of Rūpadhātu (the mind capable of creating fictive beings), and (4) a good mind of Ārūpyadhatu: there is, by virtue of the Path, entry into the Path (niyāmāvakṛanti, vi.26a) and detachment from Kāmadhatu and Ārūpyadhatu.

73d. One obtains these same minds with the other minds.

One obtains the minds not specified above only when they manifest themselves.

According to another opinion, without making any distinction among the spheres, it is said that “The wise say that, with a defiled mind, one obtains nine minds; with a good mind one obtains six; and with a neutral mind one obtains a neutral mind.”

Concerning the good mind, one should correct this passage so that it reads “one obtains seven.” When a person again takes up the roots of good by means of Right View (samyagdṛṣṭi, iv.80), he obtains a good mind of Kāmadhatu; when he detaches himself from Kāma-
dhātu, he obtains the minds capable of creating fictive beings of Kāmadhātu and Rūpadhātu, which are two undefiled-neutral minds; when he takes up the absorptions of Rūpadhātu and Ārūpyadhātu, he obtains the good minds of these two spheres; upon entry onto the Path, he obtains a Śaikṣa mind; upon his entry into the result of Arhatship, he obtains an Aśaikṣa mind.

For the two other minds, the reckoning of the minds obtained is established according to the explanation that we have given. Here is a stanza which serves as a memory-aide:

"At conception, in absorption, in detachment, in falling, and in the taking up again of the roots of good, one obtains minds that one did not possess."
1. Below ad ii.2a, ādhīpatay = ādhikaprabhūṭva, sovereignty or predominating power. See Siddhāntakaumudi quoted in Dict. de Saint-Petersbourg; Garbe, Sāmkhya-Philosophie, 257. Compare the explanation of the indriyas in the Atthasarīlī, 304, etc.

2. Kārikā ii.1, in the Samaya-pradīpikā, omits the word kīla by which Vasubandhu indicates that he does not share this doctrine of the School. Kārikā ii.2-4, where Vasubandhu presents the teaching of the Sautrāntikas, are omitted in the Samaya-pradīpikā.

3. Buddhaghosa explains in Atthasarīlī (641) that boys’ games are not the same as girls’ games.

4. According to the Vyākyā, Ancient Masters (pārvācāra).


6. Hsüan-tsang: “for all the pure dharmas arise and develop following them.”

7. “The mind of one who experiences agreeable sensation is recollected.” An extract from the Sūtra on the Vimuktiyāvanas, quoted in Āṅguttara, p. 56 ad i.27; Mahāvijñāpatti, 81.

8. “Faith arises from suffering,” Sāmyutta, ii.31. For this sense of the word upaṇiṣad, “cause,” see below ii.49 (note on hetu and pratitya), Āṅguttara, iv.351 = Sattamīśā (Dvaya-tanupasaṇasutta) (ka upaniṣad savanāya), Śūrālāṅkāra, xi.9 (yogopaniṣad = having effort for its cause). In the sense of “comparision,” “to being together,” Pāṇini i.4.79, Vajracchedikā, 35.10, 42.7 and Hoernle, Manuscript Remains, i. p. 192 (upaniṣāṁ na khyāte), Sūkhavatīvyāha, 31.9, Mahāvijñāpatti, 223.15 (where the Tibetan has rgya). In the sense of upāma, “secret,” Yaśomitra (ad ii.49) mentions Dīgha, ii.259 (sūryopaniṣado devāḥ = sūryassūpiṣadda devāḥ); upaniṣadchabdas tu kadācid upāmaśau kadācī prāmukhyā tadyathā sūryopaniṣado devā ity upāmauprayoga upaniṣatprayoga iti. (E. Leumann, ZDMG, 62, p. 101 supposes upaniṣā = upaniṣadda = Grundlage, Nabe, from whence the adjective upaniṣadda). See Minaev, Zatspiki, ii.3, 277); Wogihara, ZDMG, 58, 454 (dānapaniṣadā śiloṣaniṣadā ... praṇāya) and Asanga’s Bodhisattvaabhumi, p. 21; S. Lévi, Śūrālāṅkāra, ad xi.9.

9. The Sūtra says: caksuruvijñeyāni rūpāṇi pratītyotpadya saumanasayāṃ naįskramyāśrīram / ... manāḥ pratītya dharmāṁ cōtpadya saumanasayāṃ / ... daurmanasayāṃ upekoṣā. Naįskramya = “pure or impure path,” or rather “departure (naįskramaṇa) or detachment from one sphere of existence (dīhū) or from samāśā.” See also iv.77b-c. Arītā = “having for its object,” or rather “favorable to.”

We have then: “There is, by reason of visible things, etc., six sensations of satisfaction, six sensations of dissatisfaction, and six sensations of equanimity, favorable to nāsikramyā.” Compare Majjhima, iii.218, Sāmyutta, iv.232, Majjhima, iii.217, Milinda, 45 (nekkhānmasīta).

10. Vasubandhu says: “Some other masters . . .”


13. Sensation-of-pleasure (sukhā) also means sensation-of-satisfaction (saumanasya); see ii.7. Compare v.23 and 54; also Yogācāra, ii.7-8: sukhānusayī rāgāḥ /duḥkhānusayī dvēṣāḥ.

14. In the worldly (laukika) path faith and the other moral faculties disturb the defilements; in the nirvedhābhāgīyas (vi.45c), they "lead to" the Path; pure, they constitute anājñātāmahājñāyāmi, etc. (ii.9b, vi.68).
15. Paramārtha and Hsüan-tsang translate the first line: "By reason of their predominence with respect to the acquisition of higher and higher paths, of Nirvāna, etc."

_Dhammasangani_, 286, 505, 553; _Nettipakarana_ 15, 60; _Compendium_, p. 177.

16. Ājñātāvindriya is confused with the quality of Arhat; it includes ksayaājñāna and anutpādajñāna: knowledge that the defilements are destroyed and will no more arise, etc. (vi.45, _Nettipakarana_, p. 15); he is "delivered" (vimukta) through deliverance from the defilements (klesavimukti) and through deliverence from existence (saṁtānāvimukti): it is thus predominant in relation to parinirvāna or nirupadhisamānirvāna.

17. Objection of the Sāṅkhya. _Sāṅkhya āraṇīka_, 34.

18. This kārikā becomes kārikā 2 in the _Samayapradīpikā_.

19. We encounter this expression i.35 (see also note 20). The six supports of the organs (indriyādbhīṣṭāna), that is to say the visible eye, etc., and the six consciousnesses (sād viṣṇāṇakāyaḥ) are also sattvadravya, constituents of the living being, but not primary (maula) constituents, for they depend on the predominating quality of the six organs.

20. Saṁyātana is essentially the living being who is said to transmigrate: it is thus the support of transmigration.

21. Only two āyatana, kāya and manas, exist from conception (ii.14).

22. The newborn infant can see, but cannot speak. Words are action (karman) of the tongue which is the support (adbhistha) of the organ of taste (jīvendriya). For the Sāṅkhya, the organs of action (karmendriya) are, like the organs of consciousness, suprasensible substances (aśīndriya). "Voice" is the power to speak, "hand" is the power to grasp, etc.

23. You affirm that snakes possess subtle (suksma) hands and feet, but you must prove it.

24. Upastha is conceived as distinct from the male or female organ, which is one part, one place, of the organ of touch (kāyendriya). Saṁsāra is the power of touch (samcayatā). "Pleasure" (ānanda) is kliṣṭa saukhya.

25. Compare the definitions of the _Vibhaṅga_, p. 123.

26. The body is the organ of sight and the four other organs of sense consciousness: these organs, in fact, are collections (kāya) or accumulations (saṁcaya) of atoms. Sensation which is produced in a "body," or which accompanies a "body" upon which they are supported, is called bodily. (See ii.25, or bodily prātrabdhī).

27. Sukha is sāta, the agreeable, that which does good (sattatvād hi sukham ucyate); in addition, satisfaction supposes joy (prīti).

This problem is taken up again viii.9b.

28. One should make an exception of agreeable mental sensation which proceeds from absorption (samādhi) or which is the result of retribution (vipākabhala) (ii.57).

29. It is solely vipākabhala and naisyandiki (ii.57c).

30. In fact, the group (kalāpa) which is made up of the three pure indriyas includes only seven indriyas, for the three sensations never coexist. When an ascetic, in order to cultivate the Path, abides in the first two Dhyānas, he possesses a single sensation of satisfaction (saunmanas-

vendriya); he possesses a single sensation of pleasure (sukhendriya) when he cultivates the Path in the third Dhyāna; and he possesses a single sensation of indifference (upekṣendriya) when he cultivates the Path in the other stages (anāgamyas, dhyānāntara, Fourth Dhyāna, first three Ārāpyas). See ii.16c-17b.
31. Darṣanamārga includes the first fifteen moments of the comprehension of the Truths (abhisamaya), moments in the course of which one sees that which one has not previously seen (vi.28c-d). It is exclusively pure, anāsrava, vi.1.

32. In the Abhidhamma, we have anāśādhaṇḍassāmāṃḍriya (Vibhāṅga, p. 124).

33. The term bhāvana has many meanings. In the expression bhāvanāmāya, it is synonymous with samādhi or absorption. Some other meanings are studied vii.27 (compare ii.25.2). In the expression bhāvanāmārga, "Path of Meditation," bhāvana signifies "repeated view, meditation."

There are two bhāvanāmārgas:

a. Pure (anāsrava) or supermundane (lokottara) bhāvanāmārga, which is under consideration here: this is a meditation on the Truths which have already been seen in darṣanamārga. This path begins with the sixteenth moment of the comprehension of the Truths (vi.28c-d) and terminates with the acquisition of the quality of Arhat.

b. Impure (sārava) or worldly (laukika) bhāvanāmārga; it does not have the Truths for its object (vi.49); it disturbs (vīśkambha) the defilements without uprooting them; it can precede and follow darṣanamārga.

34. Dhātupāṭha, i.631.

35. Paramārtha differs from Hsiian-tsang.

36. The Japanese editor quotes on this subject Harivarman’s Ch’eng-shih lun, TD 32, p. 282a18.

37. According to the Japanese editor, the Mahāsāsakas; the Hetuvādins and the Mahābhūtasakas in Kathāvatthu, xix.8. Compare ibid. iii.6.

38. Sāriyutta, vi.204: yassa kho bhikkhave imāni paścinindriyāni sabbena sabbāni sabbathā sabbāni nattbhī taṁ abhiṁ bābīro puthujjana-pakkhe ṭhito ti vadāmi. See ii.40b-c.

39. This text is quoted in the Vījñānakāya, TD 26, p. 535b29 and foll. with some elaboration.

40. Compare Suanjgalavālamī, p. 59, on the two types of prthagjana, the andha and the kalyāṇa.

41. Dīgha, ii.38, Majjhima, i.169. The Kathāvatthu quotes Dīgha, ii.38 ( . . . tikkhindriya mudindriye . . . ).


43. Compare Vibhāṅga, p. 125; Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 741b19.

44. On life and death, see ii.45.


46. Vyākyā: The Buddha for the good of others, the Śrīvaka for the duration of the Law. See Lévi and Chavannes, "Les seize Arhats protecteurs de la Loi," J.As. 1916, ii.9 and following.

47. One should understand roga, ganda, and śalya, corresponding to the three sufferings, vi.3.

48. Literally: “his series is not supported by the defilements.” These are the kleśas which support and make the series last. A samayavimukta Arhat is free from the defilements, but does not have mastery of absorption; a dṛṣṭiprāpta Arhat possesses this mastery, but he is not free from the defilements (vi.56).

49. Compare Divyāvadāna, 203; atha Bhagavāṁs taṇāpāṁ śaṁābhīṁ śaṁāpanno yathā saṁabhīte citte āvītasamāśāraṇa adhiṣṭhāya āyuḥsaṁśāraṇaṁ uṣṭraṣṭum ārabdhah. We have the singular in the Mahāvastu, i.125.19.

50. The Pali has the plural in other contexts, Majjhima, i.295 (ānī āyusānākhārā ānī āvadaniyā dhāmmana), Jātaka, iv.215 (āyusānākhārā khīyanti).

51. Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 657c10 and foll., enumerates fourteen opinions on this point.

52. Eleventh opinion in the Vibhāṣā.

53. Sixth opinion in the Vibhāṣā.

54. Doctrine of the Sāṁmitiyas, according to the Japanese editor.

55. Opinion of the Sautrāntikas.

56. According to the Japanese editor, this is the opinion of the author.

57. Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 657c5, the fifth of the six opinions.

58. According to the very clear version of Paramārtha, ”a kalpa or more than a kalpa,” but customarily translated as ”a kalpa or the rest of the kalpa” (Windisch, Rhys Davids, O. Franke). Dīgha, ii.103, iii.77; Divya, 201. Kathavattu, xi.5.

59. They adopt the sixth opinion of the Vibhāṣā.

60. Dharmasatirgraha, bxx; Mahāvastu, iii.273, 281; Śīkṣāsamuccaya, 198.10; Madhyamakavrtti, 49 n. 4, xxii, 10; Bodhicaryāvatāra, ix.36 (The Blessed One is a jīna because he has conquered the four Māras); Yu-chia chhi-ti lun, xxix, translated by S. Lévi, Seize Arhats, p. 7 (J.As. 1916, ii). In iconography (Foucher, École des Hautes Études, XIII, ii.19), the Buddha is flanked by four Māras, blue, yellow, red and green. The list of the four Māras in word-lists, Zachariae, Gel. Gott. Anz. 1888, p. 853. See also the lists of Childers (five Māras with the addition of abhisamāskāramāra). The Nettippakaraṇa distinguishes kilesamāra and sattamāra (=devaputra).

61. The sensation of suffering (duḥkha) is never airyaśāpati, etc.

62. Ekottaraśāman, TD 2, p. 602b13. The Tipitaka speaks of sukhabhedaniya karman,”which is retributed in pleasure” (Anguttara iv.382, etc.) (see iv.45); sukhabhedaniya, daurmanasayavedaniya sparśa (Samyutta, v.211, etc.). See iv.57d.

63. According to the etymology of the author, saumanasayavedaniya signifies “action allowing satisfaction to be experienced by right of retribution (saumanasayam vipākatvena vedaniyam asya). According to the Vaibhāṣikas,”action in which satisfaction should be experienced” (saumanasayam vedaniyam asmin): this is samprayogavedaniyata (iv.49).

64. According to the Sūtra, those “non-detached” have two thorns, physical suffering (kāyika duḥkha) and mental suffering (caitasika daurmanasya); those “detached” are free from mental suffering.

65. Thus persons who are detached do not possess all the indriyas which are retribution.

66. Omitted by Hsüan-tsang.

67. The quality of an androgyne, that is the possession (pratilambha) of the two organs, is a dharma disassociated (viprayukta) from the mind, ii.35.

68. This is to implicitly say that the first eight indriyas, as well as the last three, are always without retribution. Hsüan-tsang completes the kārikā in order to explicitly fix this point.
Chapter Two

The karikā has tat tv ekam savipākam: tu in the sense of eva, and out of place; the meaning would appear to call for: tad ekam savipākam eva = only dissatisfaction exclusively "possesses retribution."

69. Hsiian-tsang: The last eight are solely good; dissatisfaction is good or evil; the mind and the other sensations are of three types; the first eight are solely neutral.

Compare Vibhaṅga, p. 125.

70. See the definition of the Tathāgatabalas in Vibhaṅga, p. 336: āṭṭhānam etam anavakāso yam iṭṭhi sakkattāṁ kāreyya mārattāṁ kāreyya brahmaṁ kāreyya n’etam thānāṁ vijjati.

71. Dīgha, iii.262, Āṅguttara, iv.408, v.150.

72. Compare i.40; Vibhaṅga, p. 133.


74. Which we should understand as, "because the rūpas are luminous (acca = bhāsvara) there," or rather "because the rūpas, not the kāmaguṇas, are important there." See i.22a-b, no. 4, a different doctrine.

75. Compare Samyutta, ii.123.

76. Compare Abhidhammasañgaga, Compendium, p. 166.

77. On the psychological state at death, see iii.42-43b. In what part of the body the mental consciousness is destroyed, iii.43c-44a. How the vital parts perish, iii.44b.

78. Indriyaprakarane. Some understand: "in the exposition that we give here of the indriyas;" other understand: "in the Indriyaskandhaka," the sixth book of the Jñānaprasthāna (Takakusu, Abhidharma Literature, p. 93).

79. For, at the moment when he obtains the fruit of Srotāpanna, the ascetic is always in the state of anāgamyā absorption (vi.48), which includes the sensation of indifference.

80. The fruit of Srotāpanna is obtained in the sixteenth moment of the comprehension of the Truths; the first fifteen are ājñāsyāmi, the sixteenth ājña.

81. The first moment is ānantaryāmārga; the second, vimuktiśāmārga; and thus following. But one can consider all the moments which precede the sixteenth moment as ānantaryamārga in relationship to this moment.

82. Ānantaryamārga destroys the defilements and leads to the possession of disjunction from defilement: it drives out the thief. Vimuktiśāmārga closes the door. The Japanese editor here quotes the Vibhāṣā TD 27, p. 465c9, where the masters of the West, followers of a non-Kaśmīrean doctrine, are quoted.

83. The fruit of Arhat is obtained at the moment of vajropamasamādhi (vi.44c-d), or ānantaryamārga, which is ājñedriya. Thus ājñendriya is actually present. Kṣayajñāna, or vimuktiśāmārga, which is ājñatāvindriya, is in the process of arising (upadābhimukha). Sensation of satisfaction, etc. according to the nature of the absorption in which the ascetic realizes vajropamasamādhi.

84. This doctrine of the worldly path is condemned in the Kathāvatthu, i.5 and xviii.5. Buddhaghosa attributes it to the Sarhmitiyas.

85. Only the ānupūrvaka changes from absorption, not the viṭarāga. This later, in fact, if he begins the comprehension of the Truths (satyābhisamaya) in the absorption of anāgamyā, will not pass to the sixteenth moment in the First Dhyāna. What interests him is the comprehension of the
Truths, not the Dhyāna with which he is familiar. On the contrary, the ānapūrvaka is interested in dhyāna which is new to him.

86. The Anāgāmin who falls from the detachment of the higher spheres, up to and including the Second Dhyāna, will not fall because of this from the result of Anāgāmin: he remains an Anāgāmin when he falls from the detachment of the First Dhyāna: having thus fallen, he cannot reobtain the result by the indriya of pleasure, for this indriya is of the Third Dhyāna, and the Third Dhyāna is beyond his scope.

Would one say that he can reobtain this result through the indriya of satisfaction? He would be able to if, setting out again to obtain this result in the absorption of anāgamyā, he would be capable of passing, in the last moment, into the First Dhyāna. But he does not lose it: only an ascetic whose mental faculties are active can carry out this passage, and the ascetic that is under consideration here is of weak mental faculties, since he has fallen. Only ascetics of weak faculties fall from a result.

Would one say that, having fallen, an ascetic can carry out the transformation of his faculties (indriyasamnīcāra, vi.41c-61b) and make them active? Without doubt, and he will obtain the result with eight or nine indriyas accordingly as his path is worldly or pure, as we have said, for, in no case will he reobtain this result with the indriya of pleasure.

87. The Āryan possesses the “pure” organ of pleasure, for he does not lose this organ by changing his sphere (see note 93).

88. Omitted by Hsian-tsang. See viii.12a-b.

89. There is, in Kāmadhātu, an organ of pleasure in relation to the five sense consciousnesses; in the First Dhyāna, an organ of pleasure in relation to three sense consciousnesses (smell and taste being excluded, i.306); in the Second Dhyāna, there is no organ of pleasure (viii.12); and in the Third Dhyāna, there is an organ of pleasure related to the mental consciousness (ii.7c-d). Thus a being born in the heaven of the Second Dhyāna, if he does not practice the absorption of the Third Dhyāna, he will not possess the organ of pleasure, for, by being reborn in the Second Dhyāna, he has lost the organ of pleasure in the lower spheres. Response: according to the Vaibhāṣika doctrine (siddhānta) every being born in a lower sphere possesses the defiled (kīṣṭa) organ of the higher spheres if he has not abandoned it.

90. See iv.80a which quotes the Jñānaprasthāna, TD 26, p. 997a16 and 1000c3. Ad iv.79d, the number of the organs in the first Dvipas.

91. How is a possessor of ajñendriya,—which means a Saikṣa,—necessarily in possession of the organs of pleasure and satisfaction? He can in fact be found in the heaven of the Fourth Dhyāna or in Ārūpyadhātu.

An Āryan necessarily obtains the organ of satisfaction when he is detached from Kāmadhātu; he necessarily obtains the organ of pleasure when he is detached from the Second Dhyāna; even when he transmigrates (bhūmisamāvacā), he does not lose the good (fubha) that he has obtained (according to iv.40); he loses the good obtained (iv.40), but this is in order to obtain the same type of good of a superior quality.

92. But can he be without sex? This is a difficulty, for we have seen (p. 154) that beings without sex cannot obtain either the discipline, nor a result, nor detachment.

According to one opinion, the person who has obtained the discipline can obtain a result; now this person preserves the discipline even though he loses his sex, for the Abhidharma specifies that he loses the discipline by becoming an androgyne (iv.38c) and it does not specify that he loses it by losing his sex. One can again envision gradual death: a person who has practiced the nirvedhabhāgīyas (vi.17) could, after the loss of the sexual organ, see the Truths at the moment of his death.
Second opinion. The possessor of ājñātyāmāndriya is never without sex. But he does not possess the female organ when he is a male, and she does not possess the male organ when she is a female. Thus one cannot say that one necessarily possesses the one or the other.

93. See i.48c.

94. On the meaning of this term, see below page 187.

95. According to Sarīghabhadrā (TD 29, p. 799a24-29): Among the rūpas "susceptible of resistance" (sapraśīgha), the most subtle part, which is not susceptible of being divided again, is called paramāṇu; that is to say: the paramāṇu is not susceptible of being divided into many parts by another rūpa, or by the mind. This is what is called the smallest rūpa; as it has no parts, it is called the "smallest." In the same way a ksana is called the smallest amount of time and cannot be divided in half-ksanas (iii.86).

An agglomeration of these anu, which is not susceptible of disaggregation, is called saṃghāṭānu.

In Kāmādhātu, a minimum of eight things (dravya) arise together in order to constitute a saṃghāṭānu which is not sound, nor an organ. What are these things? Four mahabhūtas and four upādāyas, namely, rūpa, rasa, gandha, and sprastavya.

96. The molecules into which the organ of touch, the organ of sight, etc., enter, are not the "atoms" which are mentioned i.44a-b.

97. Vasubandhu follows Dharmottara, Abhidharmahrdaya, TD 28, p. 811b5, Upaśānta, Abhidharmahrdaya, TD 28, p. 837c15, and Dharmatrata, Abhidharmahrdaya, TD 28, p. 882b4: "The atoms which reside in four organs are of ten types; in the organ of touch, of nine types; elsewhere, of eight types, when there is smell (that is to say: in Kāmādhātu)." Upaśānta: "... external, of eight types: in a stage where there is smell."

An analogous doctrine is the Abhidhamma of Buddhaghosa (Atthasaṅkhi, 634) and the Compendium (p. 164). See below i.13, 43c and Th. Stcherbatiski, The Soul Theory of the Buddhists, p. 953.

98. One molecule of sound produced by the hands is made up of the four primary elements, the four derived matters, sound, and the organ of touch: or of ten substances; produced by the tongue, eleven substances, with the addition of the organ of taste whose invisible atoms are arranged over the tongue (Note of de La Vallée Poussin).

99. See J. Bloch, Formation de la langue marathe, p. 42: sīṅka (sikya), "a cord to suspend objects."

100. Elemental water (abdhātū) exists in wood (dāru): it is elemental water which holds things together (saṃgraha) and which prevents them from dispersing. Elemental fire (tejas) matures (pakti) and rots wood. And it is by elemental wind that wood moves (vyāhana, prasarpana). Elemental earth exists within water, since water supports (dhrṣṭī) ships, etc. See i.12c-d, Vyākhyā, p. 34.

101. Fire creates by reason of its heat, and so contains elemental water; water becomes solid by cold, and so contains elemental earth; solid bodies, rubbed one against the other, become hot; thus they contain elemental fire, etc.

102. One the meaning of dhātū, i.20.

103. A presence which results from the definition, "The molecule includes eight substances."

104. See also i.13c-d.

105. Blue is a dravya.
106. *Rūpa* possesses the characteristic of "resistance" (*rupyate*) which is common to color and shape, to blue, etc.

107. We have seen (i.13) that an atom or monad never exists in an isolated state. The Japanese editor quotes on this point the six chapter *Commentary* of Hui-hui. Pelliot discovered this quotation in T'ao 83.5, for. 414 (=vol. 83, p. 414 recto b of the *Zoku zōkyō*), where it is accompanied by a gloss that justifies the number of 1,379 atoms in one molecule of a visible thing, etc.

Here, barring error, is the meaning of this gloss:

An atom never exists in an isolated state. We have, at a minimum, groups—or molecules—of seven atoms: four faces, top and bottom: six sides; plus the center; thus seven. A molecule of derived matter (*mahābhūtāny upādāya rūpam, bhautikam rūpam*), for example a molecule of "visible matter" (*rūpa*) or of smell (*gandha*), consists of seven atoms of visible matter and of smell.

Each of these seven atoms is supported by complexes of seven atoms, seven atoms having for their natures the four primary elements, seven atoms where the four great elements are present.

Each of these seven atoms included four atoms, atoms of earth, water, fire, and wind: the atoms of earth includes seven atoms of earth, etc.

Thus we have (1) seven atoms of earth, water, fire, and wind,—in all twenty-eight atoms,—which constitute an atom of four-primary-elements.

(2) An atom of four-primary-elements does not exist in an isolated state: seven are grouped together (7 x 28 = 196 atoms) in order to support one atom of derived matter.

(3) The atoms of derived matter, with its supports, atoms of four-primary-elements (1 x 197 = 197 atoms), form a group with six other similar atoms: each atom of derived matter is thus made up of 1,379 atoms (7 x 197).

(But all derived matter possesses visibility, smell, taste, and tangibility. Thus this number should be multiplied by four in order to obtain the smallest part of matter existing in an isolated state.)

108. *Citta* = *manas* = *vijnāṇa; caitta* = *caitasa* = *caitasika* = *cittasamprayukta*.

109. A. Theory of *caittas* according to Vasubandhu, and according to the Sautrāntikas.

B. *Prakaranapāda* and *Dhātukāya*.

C. The Abhidhamma.

A. The commentary of the *Vijñaptimātrastra* says that the Sautrāntikas have two systems. One, the Dārśāntikas, maintain that only the mind exists, that mental states do not exist, in agreement with Buddhadeva (see i.35 note); others admit the existence of mental states and are divided into many opinions: there are three mental states: *vedāna, samājñā, cetāṇā*; that there are four (with the addition of *sparsa*), ten (the ten *mahābhūmikas*), fourteen (with the addition of *lobha, dveṣa, mohā, māna*); furthermore certain Sautrāntikas admit all the mental states of the Sarvāstivādins. (The references of Wassilief, p. 309, differ; read "the Bhadanta Sautrāntika" instead of Bhattopama).

See ii.26c-d; iii.32a-b.

Vasubandhu presents his doctrine of the mental states in his *Pañcaskandhaprakaraṇa*, TD 31, p. 848c3-9: "What are the *caittas*? The dharmas associated (*samprayukta*) with the mind, namely (1) five universals (*sarvaga*): *sparsa, manaskāra, vedāna, samājñā, and cetāṇā*; (2) five particulars (*pratimayatvisaya*): *chanda, abhimuktī, smṛti, samādhi, and prajñā*; (3) eleven good: *śraddhā, bṛi, aparāpya, alohbha kuśalamāla, adveṣa kuśalamāla, amobha kuśalamāla, virya, prāṣṭabdhi, aparāmāda, upākṛṣṭa, and abhimāṇa*; (4) six defilements (*kleśa*): *rāga, pratiggha, māna, avidyā, dṛṣṭi, and viciktā*; (5) the others (*śeṣa*) are *upakleśa: krodha, upānāba, mrakṣā, praddhā, irṣyā, mātsarya, māyā, śāttya, mada, vihismitā, ābhikāya, anapratipiyata, styāṇa, audhhatya, āśraddhāya, kausūḍya,
a. The mind is great; these ten dharmas are its bhumis, the locus of the origin of the mind; being the bhumis of the "great," they are called mahabhumi. Being mahabhumi and dharmas, they are mahabhumikadharman.

b. Some say: The mind is great, due to the superiority of its nature and its activity; it is great and it is bhumis and it is called mahabhumi, because it is the locus which serves as the support of the caittas. Because one encounters the ten dharmas, vedana, etc., throughout the mahabhumi, they are called the mahabhumikadharman.

c. Some say: The ten dharmas, vedana, etc., are found everywhere with the mind, and so are

---

Chapter Two

According to the Prakarana-pada (TD 26, p. 692b20):

There are five dharmas: 1. rupa, 2. citta, 3. caittadharmas, 4. caittaviprayukta-samkhaya, 5. asamskertha. What is citta? Citta is manas, vijnana, that is to say the six categories of vijnana, consciousness of sight, etc. What are the caittas? All the dharmas associated with the mind. What are these dharmas? They are vijna, samsh, cetana, sparsha, manasikara, chanda, adhimukti, smrti, samadhi, prajna, sraddha, virya, vitarka, vicara, pramada, apramada, kusalamulma, akusalamulma, avakartramulma, all the samyojanas, anusayas, upaklefas, paryavasthans (v.47), all knowledge (ijnana, vi.1), all opinion (dristi), all comprehension (abhisaamaya, vi.27); furthermore all dharmas of this type, associated with the mind, are caitta.

Later on (p. 698b2: see also Dhatuskaya, TD 26, p. 614b10): "There are 18 dhatus, 12 ayatanas, 5 skandhas, 5 upadana-skandhas, 6 dhatus, 10 mahabhumi, 10 kusalamabhumika, 10 klesmahbhumi, 10 parittaklesabhumi, 5 klesas, 5 samsparsas, 5 drstis, 5 indriyas, 5 dharmas, 6 vijnanakayas, 6 sparshakayas, 6 vijna, 6 vedanakayas, 6 samaynakayas, 6 cetanakayas, 6 trSnakayas, What are the 18 dhatus? The primary element of earth ... (Kosa, i.28). What are the ten mahabhumi? Vedenara ... prajna. What are the ten kusalamabhumika? Sraddha, virya, brihat, aparapraha, aloha, advesha, prasarabha, upakesha, apramada, abhimna. What are the ten klesmahbhumi? Afradhyara ... pramada (list quoted above ii.26a-c). What are the ten parittaklesabhumi? Krodha, upanaha, mraka, pradasa, irsya, mastara, sathyra, maya, mada, vibhima. What are the five klesas? Karaga, rupariga, arpariga, prajta, vicikita (vi.1). What are the five drstis? Satkadyaritsi, antagradhitisri, mithyadrishti, drstipardmasa, silovratapardmarus (v.3) What are the five samsparsas? Pratighasa parisa, adhivedanasamparsa, vidyasamparsa, avidyasamparsa, naivavidyasevidyasamparsa (iii.30c-31a). What are the five indriyas? Sukhindriya, duhkhdhriya, saumamaenderi, daurnanayendriya, upekshendriya (i.7). What are the five dharmas? Vittara, vicara, vijnana, abhikya, anapatrapya. (In the Kosa, ii.27, vitarka and vicara are classified as aniyata; ii.26d, abhikya and anapatrapya are classified as akusalamabhumika, a category conceived later, see iii.32a-b; the vijnana referred to here in the Prakarana and the Dhatukaya, without doubt refers to the six vijnanakayas). What are the six vijnanakayas? Caksurajvijnana ... manovijna. What are the six samsparsakayas? Caksusamparsa ... manusamparsa (iii.30b). What are the six vijna? Caksusamparsajavanan ... (iii.32a). What are the six samaynakayas? Caksusamparsajasamayna ... . What are the six cetanakayas? Caksusamparsajacetan ... What are the six trSnakayas? Caksusamparsajatrapya. The Dhatukaya proceeds by explaining the mahabhumi: "What is vedana?" (See ii.24, note IIIB).
called "great;" the mind, being their bhūmi, is called mahābhūmi; vedanā, etc., being inherent in the mahābhūmi, are called mahābhūmikadharmas.

Vasubandhu reproduces the third etymology.

We shall see (iii.32a-b) that Śrīlābha does not admit this definition of the term mahābhūmika.

111. A. Hsuan-tsang corrects: Vedanā, samjñā, cetanā, sparsā, chandra, prajñā, smṛti, manaskāra, adhimukti, and samādhi.

The order of the Abhidharma (Prakaraṇapāda, Dhātukāya) is: adhimukti, smṛti, samādhi, and prajñā. Vasubandhu (Pañcasāndhāka) distinguishes five universals (sarvāga): sparsā, manaskāra, vedanā, samjñā, and cetanā, and five particulars (pratimāyataviṣaya): chandra, adhimukti, smṛti, samādhi, and prajñā.

The order of Mahāvyutpatti 104 (which reads adhimokṣa) differs from other sources.

B. The Dhātukāya (TD 26, p. 614c22) gives some definitions which are completely in the style of the Abhidharmma. For example, samādhi is defined: "The sthiti of the mind, samasthiti (teng-chu ṣādhetu), abhisphiti (hsien-chu), upasthiti (chin-chu), avikṣepa (puluān), ṣaṭṭhāṇa (pu-san), Mahāvyutpatti, 245.226) samadhāna (ṣbred-ch'ih 攇持), samathva, samādhi, and cittasaikāgrata, is what is called samādhi." (Vibhaṅga, p. 217, Dhammasamgani, 11).

In the same way vedanā is vedanā, saṃvedanā, pratisamvedanā, vedita, that which feels, that which is included within vedanā. Smṛti is smṛti, anusmṛti, pratismṛti, smarana, asampramousāta... cetaso'bhilāpa.

112. The word kila shows that the author is presenting the opinion of the School. He explains his own doctrine in the Pañcasāndhāka (Vyākhyā).

113. Compare Atthasadālinī, 329: kattukamyatā. According to the Pañcasāndhāka: abhiprete vastuny abhibhāṣah. (See ii.55c-d, iii.1, where chanda is defined as anāgate prātibhāna).

114. Pañcasāndhāka: upapariksye vastuny pravacyayo yogāyogavibhātīyaṁ ca.

115. Pañcasāndhāka: saṁstute vastuny asampramousāḥ / cetaso' bhilāpanaṁ. See i.33.

116. On ābhoga, S. Lévi ad Sutrālāmikā, i.16, and Muséon, 1914.

117. This term presents a difficulty. Vyākhyā: adhimuktiṣadālambanasya gunatovadhārānāda (ṇam?) rucir iti anye / yathāniṣcayam dhāraneti yogācārācittāḥ: "Adhimukti is the consideration of the object from the point of view of its qualities; according to others, complaisance; according to the Ascetics (the Yogācārins), the contemplation of the object in conformity with the decision taken." (This last point is explained ad ii.72, adhimuktiṣamākāra).

According to the the Pañcasāndhāka, adhimokṣa is nācīte vastuny avadhāroṇam.

See the Prakaraṇapāda, TD 26, p. 693a17.

Paramārtha translates: "Adhimukti (bsiang liao 相了) is a dharma which makes the mind lively (ming liao 明了, paṭu) with respect to the characteristic of the object." This is a gloss, not a translation.

Hsiian-tsang translates: "Adhimukti, that is neng yē ching yin-kō 業於境印可." We can translate: "that which makes a sign of approbation with respect to the object." The expression yin (=mudrā) kō (possible) is mentioned by Rosenberg in many word lists. A. Waley, who has consulted the Japanese glosses, translates: "the sign of approval given to a disciple who has understood what has been taught him." We would thus have kō = kō-i = "this is allowable" (A. Debesse). Adhimukti is the approbation of the object, the dharma by reason of which one grasps the object under consideration; it marks the first stage of the act of attention. See the note of Shwe Zan Aung, Compendium, p. 17 and 241, on adhimokkha: "... the settled state of a mind...; it is deciding to attend to this, not that irrespective of more complicated procedure as to what 'this' or 'that' appears to be."
Chapter Two

Saṅghabhadra (TD 29, p. 384b9): Approbation (yin-k’ō) with respect to an object is called adhimukti. According to other masters, adhi signifies "superiority, sovereignty;" mukti signifies vimokṣa. Adhimukti is a dharma by virtue of which the mind exercises its sovereignty over an object without any obstacle; like adhisāla. Adhimukti is a separate object, for the Śūtra says: "The mind, by reason of adhimukti, approves of (yin-k’ō) the object." When the mental states arise, all approve (yin) the object; as a consequence adhimukti is a mahābhāmika. Nevertheless the Sthavira says: "It is not proven that adhimukti is a separate thing, for we see that its characteristic is not distinguished from that of knowledge (jñāna): the characteristic of adhimukti is that the mind is determined with respect to its object. But this is not different from the characteristic of knowledge (jñāna). Consequently adhimukti is not a separate thing." This is not correct, for approbation (yin-k’ō) brings about determination.

Some say: "Adhimukti is determination (avadhāraṇa, niṣīcaya)." This is to give the cause of determination (namely adhimukti) the name of its effect. If this is the case, then adhimukti and determination would not be simultaneous. No: for these two mutually condition one another: by reason of discernment (pratisamkhyā) there arise approbation, and by reason of approbation there arises determination (niṣīcaya). There is no contradiction: thus there is no obstacle to their being simultaneous. If all thought include these two, then all the categories of mind will be approbation and determination. This objection is worthless, for it happens that their activity is damaged when they are dominated by dharmas: even if there is approbation (yin) and determination, they are small and recognized only with difficulty.

118. Pañcaskandhaka: upaparikṣaye vastuni caitasyāṅgatā.

119. According to the Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 220b2, and the Prakaraṇa: śraddhā, vīrya, bṛī, aputraṇā, aloha, adveṣa, praśrābdhi, upeksā, apramāda, avibhimsā. The Mahāvyutpatti (104) lists the third root (amoha) and places vīrya after the roots. The Pañcaskandhaka also lists the third root and has the same order as the Mahāvyutpatti with the exception that it places apramāda before upeksā.

120. In other words, śraddhā is the dharma by which (yadyogata) the mind, troubled by the kleśas and the upaklesas, becomes clear, as troubled water becomes clear by the presence of a gem which purifies water (udakaprasādakamani). Same example in Asthasalini, 304.

121. Explanation adopted by Vasubandhu in the Pañcaskandhaka.

122. Bhāvanā signifies "taking possession," "frequentation" (pratilambha, niṣevaṇa) according to vii.27.

123. The Mahāsāṅghikas. Diligence holds the mind safe from the dharmas of defilement (sāṃkleśika).

124. The Abhidhamma distinguishes passaddhi and labutā (Dhammasaṅgani, 40-43) which the Abhidharma appears to identify. Praśrābdhi in the dhyānas is analyzed viii.9.

125. According to the Japanese editor. Pañcaskandhaka: "Praśrābdhi is an attitude of the mind and body, a dharma opposed to dausthulya" (S. Lévi, Sārīśāṃkāra, vi.2, Wogihara, p. 29).

126. Praśrābdhisambodhyaṅga is twofold, cittapraśrābdhi and kāyaṃpraśrābdhi (Prakaraṇapāda, TD 26, p. 700a16). Sānyuktāgama, TD 2, p. 191c5: ... tatra yāpi kāyaṃpraśrābdhis tad api praśrābdhisambodhyaṅgam abhiśīṣyatī saṁbodhay asaṁvartate / yāpi cittapraśrābdhis tad api saṁbodhyaṅgam ... A shorter recension in Sānyutta, v.111. In the presence of this text, say the Sautrāntikas, how can you define praśrābdhi as solely "an attitude of the mind?"


128. The Blessed One said that the nine āgāhāvatāstus (Aṅguttara, iv.408) are vyāpādanīvaraṇa.
129. When the Path is made up of three elements, śīlakāndha, samābhīskāndha, and 
prajñāskāndha, resolution and effort are placed within the prajñāskāndha with Seeing which, 
alone, is prajñā by its nature. We read in the Prajñāskāndhānirdeśa: prajñāskandhāḥ katamah / 
samyagārṣṭāḥ samyaksamānkalpāḥ samyagvyāyāmah.

130. This saṃskāroppekṣa is to be distinguished from vedanopekṣa (i.14, ii.8c-d) and from 
apramāṇopekṣa (viii.29). The Atthasālīmi (397) lists ten upekṣas: here we have a definition of 
jañupekkhā: majjhatalakkhāṇṇa anābhogarasā avyāpārapaccupāṭhānā . . . (p. 174.2).

131. Literally: There are some things difficult to know that one can know. But it is quite difficult 
to know (or to admit) that there is no contradiction (opposition, impossibility of coexistence) 
between contradictory dharmas: asti hi nāma durjñānam api jñāyate / idam tu khalu 
atidurjñānam yad virodho 'py avirodhaḥ.

132. According to Hsüan-tsang and the glosses of the Japanese editor: 
The Vaibhāṣikas. What contradiction is there in that attention is flexion of the mind, and that 
indifference is non-flexion of the mind? In fact, we consider attention and indifference to be 
distinct dharmas.

The Sautrāntikas. Then attention and indifference will not have the same object; or rather 
one should admit that all mental states (greed, hatred, etc.) are associated.

We encounter other dharmas (vītarka, vīcāra) which present the same characteristics of 
opposition . . .

133. The Pañcaskandhābaka places amoha among the kuśalamabhābhūmakas (by the fact that prajñā 
can be "erroneous"). Aloha is the opposite of lobha, udvega and an-upādāna (?). Adveṣa is the 
opposite of dveṣa, namely goodwill (maitiṛi, viii.29). Amoha is the opposite of moha, 
samyaksamkalpa (vi.69).

134. Pañcaskandhābaka: "Avibhimsā is compassion (karuna, viii.29), the opposite of vibhimsā."

135. Endurance is good action (kuśalakriyā); for endurance in evil action is not vīrya, but kauśīḍya. 
The Blessed One said: "The vīrya of persons foreign to this religion (itobāhyaka) is kauśīḍya" 
(ii.26a). Pañcaskandhābaka: "Vīrya is the endurance of the mind in good, the opposite of kauśīḍya."

136. According to the gloss of the Japanese editor, the Path of Seeing expells avidyā, the Path of 
Mediation expells ajñāna, and the Path of Āsaikṣa expells non-clearness.

137. Compare Dhammāsāṅgāni, 429.

138. See above note 109.

139. Ko'yam devānāṁpriyo nāma / rjukajātiyo devānāṁpriya īty ēke vyačaksate /asaṭho bi 
devasanāṁ priyo bhavati /mārko bh devānāṁpriya īty āpare /yo hīsvarāṇām iṣṭaḥ sa na tādānena 
śikṣata iti mārko bhavati (Vyākhyā). The Japanese editor quotes numerous glosses.

140. Pāṭhaprāmāṇyamātreṇa daśa klesamabhābhūmakā prāptā īty etām eva prāptim jānīte 
(Vyākhyā). 
Vasubandhu reproduces the formula of the Mahābāhūya ad ii.4.56 (the story of the 
Grammarian and the Cow-herder).

See S. Lévi, J.AS. 1891, ii.549 ("Notes de chronologie indienne. Devānāṁpriya, Ačoka et 
Kātyāyana"). According to Kern, Manual, 133, the meaning of "idiot" derives from the sense of 
"harmless, pious": this appears to be somewhat possible. See de La Vallée Poussin’s note in the 
Bulletin de l'Academie de Bruxelles, 1923.

141. Vyākhyā: abhidhārmikāḥ. 
Perhaps by the plural (ābuḥ) Vasubandhu is designating Dharmatrāta, the author of
Chapter Two

Samyukta-Abhidharmahrdaya, TD 28, number 1551, and his followers. This appears to result from the passages which follow (TD 28, p. 881b17):

"... The klesamahābhūmikas are: mithyādhimokṣa, asamprakṣaṇa, avonīśomanaskāra, anrajāśya, kaṇṭāśya, viśeṣa, avidyā, auddhatya, and pramāda.

"Mithyādhimokṣa consists of the ten klesamahābhūmikas which are found in all defiled minds. Abhī and aṭarāpā are called akuṣalamahābhūmikas.

"The ten klesamahābhūmikas are found in all defiled minds. The ten dharmas the first of which is mithyādhimokṣa, accompany all defiled minds, sense consciousnesses or mental consciousnesses, of Kāmadhatu, Rūpadhatu, and Ārūpyadhatu. They are thus klesamahābhūmikas. Question: Styāna is found in all defiled minds; why is it not counted among the klesamahābhūmikas? Answer: Because it is favorable to samādhi. This is why styāna is not counted in the list. Is a dharma which is a mahābhūmika also a klesamahābhūmika? Four alternatives: 1. mahābhūmikas without being klesamahābhūmikas ...

142. The author does not admit this opinion. Torpor (styāna, laya) and dissipation, which are defiled dharmas, are opposed to the "white" dharmas, like samādhi.

143. According to the Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 220b4, there are five akuṣalamahābhūmikas: avidyā, styāna, auddhatya, abhī, and anaparatapya. See iii.32a-b and above note 102.

144. Hsuan-tsang translates: "... the dharmas of this nature (=āti) are termed parittakleśabhūmikas."

Sahīghabhaddra: The text says "the dharmas of this nature," in order to include aksānti, arati āghāta, etc. (TD 29, p. 392a6).

145. Dharmaratā: Because they are abandoned through Meditation and not through the Seeing of the Truths, because they are associated with the mental consciousness and not with the five other consciousnesses, and because they do not arise with all minds and exist separately, they are parittakleśabhūmika.

146. According to the Chinese. The Japanese editor explains the final et cetera by rāga (v.2), pratīgha, māna (v.10), and vicīkītā.

The Vyaṅgīya reads: "kaukṛtya, māḍha, etc." and explains "etc." by arati, viṣṇubbhūtā, tendri, bhakte samāta, etc. It continues: The klesas, rāga, etc., are also indeterminate, for they are not classified in any of the five categories: they are not mahābhūmikas, because they are not found in any minds; they are not kusā Jamahābhūmikas, because they are repugnant to the good; they are not klesamahābhūmikas, because they are not found in any defiled mind: for there is no rāga or lust in a mind full of hatred (sapratīgha).

The Ācārya Vasumitra has written a summary, mnemonic śloka: "The tradition (smṛta) is that there are eight aniyatās, namely vitarka, vicāra, kaukṛtya, māḍha, pratīgha, sakti (=rāga), māna, and vicīkītā". But we do not admit this number of eight. Why are the dṛṣṭis (v.3a) not aniyata? There is no mithyādṛṣṭi in a mind full of hatred or scepticism.

147. Compare Kathavatthu, xiv.8.

148. Dhammasaṅgani, 1161, Atthasaṅgiti, 784-787.

149. Compare i.37.

150. Āvēnīka = rāgāśīpabbbhūta.

151. All dṛṣṭi is saṃsūkīra prajñā (i.41c-d, vii.1).

152. The mind of the First Dhyāṇa, when it is good, contains twenty-two mental states; defiled-neutral, it contains eighteen mental states whether it is independent of, or associated with dṛṣṭi, nineteen when it is associated with rāga, māna or vicīkītā . . .
153. Literally: The word "also" (api) shows that in addition to vicāra, one should exclude sāñhyā and māyā.


155. By adding: "I am the great Brahmā", he distinguishes himself from the other Brahmās.

156. Compare Dīgha, i.219, and below iv.8a, v.53a-b.

157. Jñānapraśṭhāna, i. Para. 5 (according to Takakusu, p. 87). See TD 26, p. 924c26 and following.

158. Praśīla = guru, because śiyam praśītabh.

159. Compare the definition of adhisīla: . . . anumātrey savadyesu bhavadarśi . . .

160. These masters observes that the two roots hri and trap (Dhātupāta, iii.3 and i.399) are synonyms and signify shame (lañjā): from whence one cannot see how abhi would be disrespect and atrapa the absence of fear in the commission of transgressions.

161. Vasubandhu, in the Pañcaskandhaka, adopts this definition.

162. Jñānapraśṭhāna, i. Para. 4 (according to Takakusu, p. 87). See TD 26, p. 923a13 and following.

163. Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 151a15.

164. For one cannot have respect for impure (sāsrava) dharman. (Note of the Japanese editor).

165. This definition comes from a Sūtra which is not designated in our sources. See i.33.

166. Seventh opinion of the Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 219b3.

167. Argument presented in the Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 269b10, and attributed to the Daśṭāntikas.

168. That is, "it makes the voice surge forth," vākṣamuttāpaka.

169. Compare Majjhima i.301, Sānāyutta ov.293: pubbe kho . . . vitakketvā vicāretvā pacchā vācāṃ bhimati. On the other hand, Vibhanga, 135: vācāsamcetanā = vācāsamkhāro.

170. Samghabhadra says that vitarka and vicāra are associated with each thought; but these two dharman do not enter into activity, do not reveal themselves by their action (udbhutavṛtti) at one and the same time: the mind and mental states are grosser when vitarka, which is always present, enters into activity . . . In the same way rāga and moha are coexistent: but a person is termed rāgacarita, acting though rāga, when rāga manifests itself . . .

171. Vitarka and vicāra do not exist simultaneously, but successively (paryāyena). What is the difference between vitarka and vicāra? The ancient masters (purvācarya) say: "What is vitarka? A mental conversation (manojalpa) of inquiry (paryesaka), which has for its support volition (cetanā) or the speculative consciousness (praśīda) depending on whether it does or does not contain deduction (abhyyāna). This is the grosser state of mind. What is vicāra? A mental conversation of appreciation, of judgment (pratyavesaka), which has for its support volition . . ." According to this theory, vitarka and vicāra constitute almost two identical psychological complexes: they differ in that the first includes "inquiry" and the second "judgment." Some give an example: Someone feels numerous pots in order to know which one is well baked, and which one is soft: this inquiry (śīha) is vitarka; finally, this person arrives at the conclusion, "There are such a number of each category:" this is vicāra.

The Vyākhyā, ad i.37, quotes Vasubandhu's Pañcaskandhaka which is very close to the opinion
of some ancient masters: vitarka\ katamaḥ / paryēsako manojalpaḥ cetanāprajñāvīśeṣaḥ / yā cittaśyaudārikata / vicāraḥ katamaḥ / pratyaveksako manojalpaḥ cetanāprajñāvīśeṣaḥ / yā cittaśya sūkṣmatā. // The Vyākyā adds: anabhīyāvatvāsthyāṃ cetanā abhīyāvatvāsthyāṃ prajñeti vyavasthyāye.

See Dhammasaṅgani, 7-8, Compendium, p. 10-11, Milinda, 62-63. Atthasālīni, 296-297 defines vitarka as ēśa and gives it as olarika, whereas vicāra is sūkṣma. Vyāsa ad Yogasūtra, i.17: vitarkaś cittaśyālambamabhā śāla ēbhogaḥ / sūkṣmo vicāraḥ; i.42-44.

172. Paryādīyate = sarviniṇuḥyate; see Śikṣāsamuccaya, 177.15, Divya, Sūtrālamkāra, i.12.

Saṅghabhadra’s definition: yāḥ svadārmaśeṣa eva raktasya darpaḥ cetasaḥ paryādānaṃ kuḍālānyakriyābhīyupapattisamābāro madaḥ.

173. Madā is sensation, “defiled satisfaction” (kliṣṭa saumanasya). The Vaibhāṣikas do not admit this explanation: in fact, satisfaction does not exist beyond the Second Dhyāna: but, according to v.53c, madā exists in the three spheres of existence.

174. Compare Dīgha, i.21, Sarīyutta, i.94.

175. Its meaning is that it accumulates good and evil (Vyākyā). Tibetan: 'byed pas: because it distinguishes. Atthasālīni, 293: ālāmbanāṃ cintotī ciśam.

176. Dhātupāṭha, 4.67.

177. The Vyākyā adds: bhāvanāsaṃvinivesayogena sautrāntikamatana yogācāramatena vā.

Paramārtha reads: citāṃ bhāṣabhair dhātubhīś tāṃ vā cintotī ciśam. The Tibetan translates in the same way: “because it is charged (bsags-pas) with good and evil dhātus.”

178. The consciousness (vījñāna) discerns a blue object, etc.; sensation feels it as agreeable, etc.; ideas grasp its characteristics, etc. Or rather: consciousness perceives the object, in a general manner, as a perceptible (upalabhāyatārūpam gṛhnāti); the mental states perceive its specific characteristics (vīśeṣarūpena): sensation is susceptible of being agreeably experienced (anubhāvanīyatārūpam); ideas are susceptible of being defined (paricchedyatārūpam), etc. (i.16a).

179. That is to say sāha vistaraṇprabhedābhīyāṃ or aha vistaraṇprabhedena.

180. The iṣi indicates that one should add other viprayuktas like saṃghabhedā (iv.99), etc. to this list. The Prakāśana says: ye’py evamījāyakākāḥ: “The dharmas which are of this type are also citta-viprayukta.” Same formula in the Skandhapāñcaka.

According to the Prakāśana, the saṃskāras disassociated from the mind are: prāpti, asaṃjñāsamapatti, nirodhasamapatti, āsāṃjñāka, jīvītendriya, nīkāyasabbhaṅga, āsrayaprāpti, dravya-prāpti (?), āyatana-prāpti, jāti, jāra, sthīti, anityatā nāmākāya, and vyaṇjanakāya and all the other dharmas of this type disassociated from the mind.

Prāpti is defined as dharmānāṃ prāptih; āsrayaprāpti is āsrayāyatana-prāpti; dravyaprāpti (?) is skandhānāṃ prāptih; āyatana-prāpti is ādhyātmikabhbhyāyatana-prāptih (TD 26, p. 694a19).

Prakaranapāda (p. 694a14): What is prāpti? Prāpti of the dharmas. What is asaṃjñāsamāpatti? The cessation of the mind and mental states having for its antecedent the idea of departure attached to the abandoning of the defilement of the Subhakṛṣṭanas but not to the abandoning of higher defilements. What is nirodhasamāpatti? The cessation of the mind and mental states having for its antecedent the idea of calm attached to the abandoning of the defilement of ākriṃcanyāyatana. What is āsāṃjñāka? The cessation of the mind and mental states of those who are born among the Asaṃjñāsattva gods. What is ājīvītendriya? Āyus of the Three Dhātus. What is nīkāyasabbhaṅga? The resemblance of beings.

181. See i.38c-d, i.59b.

The terms lābha and saṃanvāgama do not have the same meanings in the Abhidharma and
in the Kathāvatthu, ix.12. For the Theravādins, labha signifies "possession," for example the power that the Saints possess to realize at their will any given absorption; samanvāgama is understood as the actual realization. Elsewhere (iv.4) paṭilabbhasamanvāgama and samanvāgama, possessor of power (samanvāgama of the Abhidharma) versus its actual possession (sānīmukhibhāva of the Abhidharma) are distinguished. See also xix.4.

182. There is in me prāpti or aprāpti relative to my defilement, to my action . . . , that is to say, I possess or do not possess my future or past defilement . . . But there is no relation of possession or of non-possession between me and the defilement of another.

183. Hairs should be regarded as "belonging to a living being," for they are bound to the material organs.

184. A person "bound with all the bonds" (sakalabandhana) is one who has not obtained, by the worldly (laukika) path, the abandoning (=pratisamkhyaniruddha) of any of the nine categories of defilements of Kāmadhātu. An Āryan, at the first moment (ādikṣaṇa = duḥkhe dharma-jñānakṣaṇi) has not yet obtained the abandoning of the defilements abandoned through the Path (vi.77). A person who has obtained the abandoning of one category of defilement is called ekaprákatopakākṣita (vi.30a).

185. Dravyadharmah = dravyato dharmaḥ, or rather dravyam ca tad dharmaś ca sa dravyadharmaḥ, that is to say vidyāmanaśvalakṣaṇo dharmaḥ See below p. 211-212.

186. These ten dharmas are the eight parts of the Path, plus samyagyimukti and samyagjñāna (Āṅguttara, v.222); the five abandoned items are not the group of sattakṣyadrṣṭi, śīlavatapa,parāśāra, vīkṣita, kāmacchanda, and vyāpāda, for this group has been abandoned with the acquisition of the result of Ānāgāmin; rather, it is a group relative to the higher spheres, rūparūpa, ārūpyarūpa, auddhāya, māṇa, and avidyā.


188. According to Scripture, things (vastu) are either dravyasat or prajñaptisat, "really existant," or "existing as designation."

189. The cause of arising of a thought of greed is the "possession" of this future thought of greed.

190. The pure dharmas, duḥkhe dharma-jñānakṣaṇi, etc.

191. The undefiled and defiled dharmas of Kāmadhātu respectively.

192. These definitions answer the questions of the Vaibhāṣikas: "Is the seed a thing (dravya) different from the mind, or not different from the mind?" "Is this series a permanent (anasthitata) thing within which different dharmas successively arise?" "Should parināma be included as is the parināma of the Sāṅkhya?"

See ii.54c-d. The doctrine of the evolution of the series is presented again iv.3c.

193. Tibetan and Paramārtha. Hsüan-tsang: "The two paths (the doctrine of the Sautrāntikas and the doctrine of the Vaibhāṣikas) are good. How is this? The first is not in contradiction with reason; and the second is our system."


194. The prāpti of past dharmas is (1) either past, that is: "which has arisen and which has perished:" it was either earlier (agraja), or later (paścamakāla), or simultaneous (sahaja) to these dharmas; (2) or it is future, that is: "that which has not arisen:" it will be later than these dharmas; (3) or present, that is: "that which has arisen and which has not perished:" it is later than these dharmas. And thus following.
No dharma is susceptible of this threefold prāpti. For example, the prāpti of the dharmanas "of retribution" is solely simultaneous to these dharmanas (ii.38c). One does not "possess" these dharmanas before they have arisen, nor after they have perished.

195. The impure dharmanas belong to the planes of existence, dhātvāpta, dhātupatita.

196. These are the aparāiyāpānṇas of the Abhidhamma.

197. Pratisamkhyānirodha or "disjunction of defilement" (visarṇyoga, i.6a-b, ii.57d) can be obtained by a Prthagjana or by an Āryan. In the first case, the prāpti is of Rūpadhātu or Ārūpyadhātu depending on whether the nirodha is obtained by a (worldly) path of Rūpadhātu or Ārūpyadhātu. In the second case, it is of Rūpadhātu and pure, when the nirodha is obtained by a Rūpadhātu (or worldly) path; of Ārūpyadhātu and pure, when the nirodha is obtained by a path of Ārūpyadhātu; and pure, when the nirodha is obtained by the pure Path (according to the principle formulated vi.46).

198. The Śaikṣa dharmanas are the pure dharmanas of the Śaikṣa, of the saint who is not an Arhat; the dharmanas of an Āsāikṣa are the pure dharmanas of the Arhat.

199. Paramārtha: "The same way as the prāpti, obtained by a non-Āryan, of apratisamkhyānirodha and pratisamkhyānirodha.\) Hsūn-tsang: "... the prāpti of pratisamkhyānirodha obtained through a non-Āryan path."

200. One case is not envisioned: the prāpti of pratisamkhyānirodha, by means of a worldly path, by an Āryan. This prāpti is at one an the same time pure and impure, as we shall see vi.46.

201. Durbalatvāt: anabhisamkaravatvāt, because it is not the result of an effort.

202. Vyākhyā: The Vaibhāṣikas. For example, Viśvakarman, the heavenly artisan, possessess past, present, and future saUapasthānikas; the Sthavira Asvajit possesses the aiyāpathikas.

203. The non-possession of the defilements is not defiled, for, in this hypothesis, it would be lacking in a person liberated from the defilements: but it is not good, for it is lacking in the person who has cut off the roots of good (Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 799a21).

204. If an aprāpti can be pure, this would be the aprāpti of the pure dharmanas; now the definition of a Prthagjana proves that the aprāpti of the pure dharmanas is not pure.

On the prthagjana, see i.40, 41a, ii.9b-d, iii.41c-d, 95a, vi.26a, 28d, 45b.

205. Second masters of the Vibhāṣā.

206. Compare Kathāvatthu, iv.4.

207. Aprāpti or alābha belongs to the sphere of existence (dhātu) to which the person belongs who is endowed with it (ii.40a). Thus a being in Kāmadhātu is solely endowed with the quality of Prthagjana (which is aprāpti, ii.40b-c) of the sphere of Kāmadhātu. Thus one cannot say that, by the acquisition of the Path, this being loses the quality of Prthagjana of the sphere of the three realms of existence. Nevertheless, by the acquisition of the Path, any quality of Prthagjana, of whatever sphere, becomes impossible. One can thus say that this quality, under its triple form (of Kāmadhātu, etc.), is abandoned, even though a given being is endowed with it under but one form.

Two aspects of its abandoning are distinguished, vibhāni and prabhāna.

208. A Prthagjana, detaching himself from Kāmadhātu, passes into the First Dhyāna: he loses the quality of Prthagjana of the sphere of Kāmadhātu, but he does not become, by this fact, an Āryan: for another quality of Prthagjana, of the sphere of the First Dhyāna, appears. The same way for the other stages, whether one ascends or descends.
209. By taking possession of the good dharma of hearing and reflection of Kāmādhātu, one loses the aprāpti of these dharmas; by taking possession of the innate good dharmas (ii.71b), one loses the aprāpti of the roots of good which have been cut off (samucchinnakāsā). When, dying in Kāmādhātu, one is reborn in the First Dhyāna, one loses the aprāpti of the dharmas of the First Dhyāna . . . This theory raises some delicate problems which the Vyākhyā summarily examines.

210. Compare ii.45c-d: the play of birth (jāti) and the arising of birth (jāti-jāti).

211. The case of the neutral (avyākṛta) dharma is not examined here, because this dharma is possessed solely at the moment when it exists (sasya sabājaiva prāptih): the numbers differ.

212. The Japanese editor observes that one should add four lakṣānas and four anulakṣānas (ii.45c-d) for each of these three dharmas; we thus have twenty-seven dharmas of the first moment.

213. At the fourth moment one possesses twenty-seven prāptis, namely the prāptis of the dharmas produced at the three preceding moments, three, six, and eighteen, plus twenty-seven anuprāptis, or forty-four dharmas. At the fifth moment, eighty-one prāptis and as many anuprāptis.

214. Prakāraṇa, TD 26, p. 694a23: "What is nikāyasabhāga? The commonness of nature (t'ung-lei hsing) of living beings."

215. Each living being possesses his own sattvasabhāgata. Nevertheless sattvasabhāgata is said to be general because it is not differentiated. To conceive of it as unique and eternal is an error of the Vaiśāsikas.

216. By et cetera one should understand: upāśikā, bhikṣuṇī, the naivaśaṅkṣaṇāśāṅka, etc.

217. "It is by reason of their dharmanasabhāgata that the dhātus are of Kāmādhātu . . ."

218. Compare Āṅguttara, iv.247, etc. The Daśabhūmaka replaces the formula sa ced . . . with aha cet punar manusyeṣūpapadāyate.

219. Hsüan-tsang translates: "This is not admissible, for it is in contradiction with our system;" he omits the formula "The Vaibhāsikas say" (The Vaibhāsikas say: "This is not admissible . . ."

220. Prakāraṇa, TD 26, p. 694a19. Diṅga, iii.263: sant'āvuso sattā asaṅñino appatisanvedino seyyassati devā asaṅñasattā. i.28, iii.33 . . . sannappddā ca pana te devā tambā kāya cavanti. One of the nine sattvavāsas, Āṅguttara, iv.401; Kośa, iii.6c.

221. Viśāṣa, TD 27, p. 615a5, five opinions.

222. But the foreigners pretend that there are nine divisions in the heaven of the Fourth Dhyāna. On the Viśhatphalas (Vehapphalas), see Burnouf, Introduction, p. 614.


224. On the meaning of the word samāpatti, see p. 232.

225. The complete name is samīnāveditanairosadhisamāpatti, see p. 230.

Prakāraṇa, TD 26, p. 694a19: Asanījñīsamāpatti is an arresting of the mind and mental states which has for its antecedents the idea of deliverence (niḥsaranamānasikārāpārvaka) and which is obtained by a person free from defilements of the Subhadṛṣṇas, but not from higher defilements. Nirodhasamāpatti is an arresting of the mind and mental states which has for its antecedents the
idea of calmness, and which is obtained by a person free from the defilements of ākīncañāyatana. Vasubandhu, in his Pañcaśāndhaṅka, draws his inspiration from these definitions.

226. One obtains apratisamkhyānirūdha or the definitive disappearance of bad realms of rebirth, āsarvajñika, birth among the Mahābrāhmās and the Kūras, and an eighth rebirth by entry into niyāma.

227. Whoever enters into the Fourth Dhyāna obtains in the same body the prāpti of all the four Dhyānas which he has cultivated or will cultivate in the course of his transmigration.

228. The future good mind is the object of a former prāpti.

229. On nirodhasamāppati, saṃjñāveditanirodhasamāppati (see below p. 230, see vi.43c-d, viii.33a (vimokṣa), Kathāvastu, vi.5, xv.7. In the Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 777a14 numerous opinions on this absorption: for some, it is only one thing (ārava), nirodhasākṣatkāra; for others, eleven things: the ten mahābhūmikas and cītanirodha; for others, twenty-one things: the mahābhūmikas, the kuśalamahābhūmikas and cītanirodha . . .

230. Vibhāṣā = samābhivīteṣa.

231. It is "retributed later:" when an existence in Rūpadhātu in interposed between an existence in Kamadhatu in the course of which one produces it, and an existence in Bhavāgra which is its result.

232. This absorption takes place in Bhavāgra, from whence matter (rūpa) is absent. Prthagjanas fear that the arresting of the mind and mental states is, under these conditions, annihilation. They do not have the same fear with respect to asamjñāsamāppati, which takes place in the Fourth Dhyāna, where matter persists. By this fact, there remains, within nirodhasamāppati, nīkāya-sāhāga, jīvitendriya and other samskāras disassociated from the mind; but Prthagjanas do not see them.

233. According to one variant, followed by the Chinese translaters, deśpadhārmanirvāṇasya . . . That is, "The Āryan hopes to obtain, aims to obtain Nirvāṇa-at-death by means of this absorption, within this absorption."

234. The Vyākhyā quotes a stanza of the Stotakāra, i.e., Maṭṛceta (Varnanāravarnana, 118: F. W. Thomas, Indian Antiquary, 1905, p. 159): na te prdyogikám kimcit kuśalam kusalānuga /

235. The Japanese editor quotes different opinions of old commentaries on the Kośa: the Westerners are the Sarvāstivādins of Gandhāra, or the Sautrāntikas, or the masters of the land of Indhu. They are called "Westeners"because they are to the west of Kāsmīr, and "foreigners" (bahīrdeṣaka) because they are outside of Kasmīr. See below note 237.

236. See iv.24c-d. Compare Kathāvastu, i.5, xviii.5.

237. The Masters of the land of Indhu, of the same opinion as the Westerners.

238. Vyutthānāsaya = vyutthānābhīṣprāya: "having a resolution susceptible of giving up, of surrendering." According to another interpretation, āsaya = kuśala = kuśalamūla; thus: "having roots of good susceptible of giving up, of being interrupted." Now the roots of good of the Bodhisattvas are such that, once they have begun to be actualized, they do not cease before Bodhi is obtained. Vyutthāna also signifies "departure from absorption" (Samyutta, iii.265, etc.).

239. See Vibhāṣā TD 27, p. 204b3-c4: All the attitudes are good. Why does the Bodhisattva take up the sitting attitude? . . .

240. Hsian-tsang adds: "The first doctrine is the best, because it is our system."
241. *Vibhāṣa*, TD 27, p. 773bll. Three opinions: solely in Kāmadhātu; also in the three lower Dhyanas; and also in the Fourth Dhyāna.

According to the *Vibhāṣa*, *nirōdhaśamāpatti* cannot be prolonged beyond seven days-and-nights.

242. The *Jñānaprabhāśa*, TD 26, p. 1024a8, posits a fourfold question: Is there an existence in Rūpadhātu which does not include the five *skandhas*? Is there an existence including the five *skandhas* and which is not Rūpadhātu? Is there an existence in Rūpadhātu which includes the five *skandhas*? Is there an existence which is neither in Rūpadhātu and which does not include the five *skandhas*?

243. The *Jñānaprabhāśa* and the *Kośa* do not emply the word *skandha* but a synonym, a word that the MSS of the *Vyākhya* transcribe as both *vyabhāra* and *vyavācāra*. Hsūn-tsang translates this is *bsing* 行, the equivalent of *saṁskāra*, *vibarāpa*, etc.; Paramārtha translates this as *p'an 判*, the equivalent of *niti*, *naya*, “to judge,” “to decide.” The reading *vyavākāra* appears certain according to Pali sources.

a. Pali sources. *Vokāra = khandha* (Childers); *Vibhaṅga*, 137: *saṁsaṁbhavo asaṁsaṁbhavo nevasaṁsaṁbhavo ekāvokārabhavo catuśvokārabhavo*; *Yamaka*, according to *Kathavatthu*, trans. p. 38; *Kathavatthu*, iii.11: if non-conscious beings possess an existence including *vokāra* or five *vokāras*. (Buddhaghosa explains: *vividhenā visuṁ visuṁ karīyati*).

b. *Vyākhya*. *Vyavākāra* is the name that the Buddha Kasyapa gives to the *skandhas*. *Vyavākāra (viśeṣanāvākāra)* signifies *savyavākāra* according to Panini, v.27.127; thus, “that which deceives, that which contradicts (*visamvādam*) by its impermanence,” a definition which applies to the *skandhas* according to the stanza “Rūpa is like foam . . .” (*Sahityotta*, iii.142).

c. *Vibhāṣa*, TD 27, p. 959bll. The former Tathāgatas Śamyaksaṁbuddhas called the *skandhas* *vyavākāras*; but the Tathāgata Śamyaksambuddha Śakyamuni calls the *vyavākāras* *skandhas*. The former Buddhas spoke of five *vyavākāras*, Śakyamuni speaks of five *upādānaskandhas*. Here, in the Abhidharma, one speaks of existence “having five *vyavākāras*,” (*pañca-*) in order to show that the five *skandhas* of which Śakyamuni speaks are the five *vyavākāras* of which the former Buddhas spoke. Why did the former Buddhas use the term *vyavākāra*, whereas the present Buddha uses the word *skandha*? Because the Buddhas see that this is suitable to say to their followers . . . Why this expression *vyavākāra*? By reason of *pravṛtti* (*saṁcāra*, *liu-ch'uan* 流轉 the *skandhas* which have formerly arisen develop by reason of the later *skandhas*, or rather the *skandhas* which have arisen later develop by reason of former *skandhas* . . .

244. When these beings, conscious by nature, become non-conscious in one of the two absorption, they are *visabhāgacitte sthita*, “placed in a mind contrary to their nature.”

245. This Sūtra was preached by Śāriputra: it bears the name of Udāyin, because the adversary of Śāriputra is Udāyin. The Sanskrit redaction is very close to the Pāli text. *Madhyamagama* TD 1, p. 449c7 and *Anguttara*, iii.192. *śrāvastiyāṃ nīdānam /tatāryuṣmān śāriputro bhikkhun āmantryate sma / śāyusmanto bhikkhub śalasarāppana ca bhavati samādhīsaranāppana ca prajñāsaranāppana ca / sōbbhikkānaṃ samāṭṭhivadantimārđhan samāpadyate ca vyutṣitphate ca /asti caut bhānaṃ iti yathābhūtāṃ prajñāni /sa nevaiva ḍhyāna eva dharma pratiṣṭhayaṇāhitam ārāgayaṇā nāpi mamaratamaṃ bhedac ca kāyasyātikramya devan kavādikarabbhaksan anyatamasmin divyena manomaya kāya utpapadyate /sa tāropanno . . .

*Vyākhya*: *pratiṣṭhayaṇa = pūrvam eva.*

This Sūtra is discussed viii.3c (the thesis of the existence of *rūpa* in Ārūpyadhātu). Compare *Diğga*, i.195.

246. *Ājīvam ārāgaya*, as in *Mahāvastu*, iii.53.9. Paramārtha: “He does not obtain *ajñātvindriya*.” Hsūn-tsang: “He does not apply himself in the manner to obtain the quality of Arhat . . .”
247. It is termed manomaya or mental, because it arises independently of the elements of generation; but this does not mean that it is a body created from ideas, samjñāmaya (Dīgha, i.195), and belonging to Arūpyadhātu, as Udāyin thinks.

On the "mental bodies" of the Bodhisattva in the Mahāvastu, see Opinions sur l'histoire de la dogmatique, p. 258.

248. Note of the Japanese editor: i. The mental body gods of which the Sūtra speaks are (a) of Rūpadhātu, for the Sarvāstivādins (same opinion, Dīgha, i.195); (b) of Rūpadhātu and Arūpyadhātu, for the Sautrāntikas; or (c) the Asamjñāsattvas, for Udāyin. ii. According to the Sarvāstivādins there is falling from the absorption of extinction; but there is no falling, according to the Sautrāntikas and Udāyin.

But, according to the Vyākhyā, the Sautrāntikas admit a falling from absorption; they nevertheless deny that a Saint falls out of Aryamārga (contra the Sarvāstivādins), from whence the difficulties that the Vyākhyā resolves.

249. The Mahāsāṃghikas, etc., according to P'u-kuang, TD 41, p. 99c15.

250. Dīgha, TD 1, p. 110a24; Dīgha, iii.266; Mahāvyutpattī, 68.7: navānupūrvasamāpattayas: the four dhyānas, the four ārūpyas and the absorption of extinction.

251. Prāthamakalpikaḥ = āditaḥ samāpattividhāyakab.

252. One prepares himself for asamjñāsamāpatti by thinking: "Samjñā is a sickness, a thorn, an abscess; the cessation of samjñā is tranquil, excellent."

253. The preparation includes the resolution "I shall know the mind of another."

254. The philosphical systems (siddhānta) are in disagreement. The Vaibhāṣikas, etc., hold that the absorptions and asamjñās are lacking mind (acittakārya eva . . .): the Sthavira Vasumitra, etc., hold that they are endowed with mind (acittakārya) from the fact of a non-manifested mental consciousness (aparisphutamānāvijñāna); and the Yogācārins hold that they have mind from the fact of the ālayavijñāna (Vyākhyā).

255. This question is posed by the Sautrāntikas. For them, the mind which has just perished, and the mind which perished a long time ago, are equally non-existent: however the mind which has just perished is the cause of the mind which immediately follows it: compare the movement of the beam of a balance (tulādāndonāmāvānāmavat, comp. Sālistamba in the Bodhicaryāvatāra, 483.3).

256. The author indicates the name of the treatise because Vasumitra (called either the Sthavira or Bhadanta) wrote other books, the Pañcavastu, etc. (Vyākhyā). There is a commentary on the Pañcavastu by Dharmatrāta, TD 28, number 1555.

The Japanese editor remarks that this does not refer to the Vasumitra of the Vibhāṣa, but to a Sautrāntika. (See P'u-kuang, TD 41, p. 100b12.)

257. Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 774a14: "The Dārśāntikas and the Vibhajyavādins maintain that there is a subtle mind which is not interrupted in the absorption of extinction. They say, 'There are no beings who are at one and the same time without mind and without rūpa; there is no absorption which is without mind. If an absorption were without mind, then the vital organ would be cut off; one would not term this established in absorption, but rather "dead."'"

258. Saṁyuktāgama, TD 2, p. 74b20 and following; compare Saṁyutta, ii.72 and sources quoted as Kośa, iii.30b.

259. Saṁyuktāgama, TD 2, p. 83a2; Saṁyutta, iii.96.

260. This formula occurs in the Mahāvyutpattī, 68.9.
Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 782a22: One who is in nirodhasamāpatti cannot be burned by fire, drowned by water, wounded by the sword, or killed by another (Compare the legends of Sarhjiva, Khāṇu-Koṇḍañña, in the Visuddhi, xii. JTPS, 1891, 112). Why does he possess this quality? Vasumitra says because this samāpatti cannot be damaged; thus he who is in it cannot be damaged. Moreover samāpatti produces equality of the mind. Here, there is not mind, so how can one speak of samāpatti? Samāpatti is of two types: that which produces equality of mind, and that which produces equality of the primary elements. Even though the two samāpattis cut off the equality of the mind since they interrupt the mind, they bring about the equality of the primary elements.

261. Āśraya has been defined ii.5-6; see also p. 209.

262. Hsüan-tsang translates: "This theory is not good, for it is in contradiction with our system." Let us add: "So say the Vaibhasikas." See above note 218.

263. Buddhaghosa attributes to the Pubbaseliyas and to the Sammitiyas the Abhidharma doctrine that the jīvendriya is a cittacippayutta arūpadhamma. See Kathāvatthu, viii.10, Compendium, p. 156; Vibhanga, p. 123, Dhammasaṅgani, 19, 635, Atthasālini, 644.


265. Samyukta, TD 2, p. 150b9, Madhyama, TD 1, p. 789al, Samyutta, iii.143 (variants); compare Majjhima, i.296. Quoted below ad iv.73a-b.

266. Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 771a7: This Sūtra is quoted by the Vibhājayādins in order to prove that these three dharmas,—life, heat, and consciousness,—are always united and not separated. But Vasumitra observes that the Sūtra refers to the series of a certain āśraya ... Life (āyus) forms part of the saṁskāraskandha, the dharmaṭhātu, and the dharmaṭatana; heat, of the rūpaskandha and the sprastavyatana; and consciousness, of the vijñānakandha, the seven dhātus and the manāyatana: thus one should not take the Sūtra literally. Furthermore, if these three dharmas always go together, there would be heat in Ārūpadyadhātu, life and consciousness among non-living beings, and consciousness in the non-conscious absorption.

267. Hsüan-tsang: "In addition to that we have said. What have you said? In order to avoid this consequence ..."

268. Vaiśeṣikadārśana, v.1.16; H. Ui, Vaiśeṣika philosophy, p. 163. The example of the arrow has no real value for the Vaiśeṣikas who hold that vega is a thing in and of itself. Thus the author here refutes the theory of the Vaiśeṣikas.

269. Hsüan-tsang: "There is a thing in and of itself, the support of heat and consciousness, called āyus: this is the best doctrine." Note of the Japanese editor: The author adopts the opinion of the Sarvāstivādins. But we may suppose that Hsüan-tsang has omitted the words "The Vaibhasikas say: ...," for in his Pañcakṣandha, Vasubandhu adopts the Sautrāntika thesis.

270. Karmaprajñāptisāstra, Chap. xi (Mdo 72, fol. 240b).

271. On the different results of action, iv.85 and following. On bhoga, Yogasūtra, ii.13.


273. This is an explanation of the Foreigners (Bahirdeśaka). The explanation of the Kaśmīreans differs only in its words. Or rather these latter understand that the āyus of the first category is "bound to its own series (svasamitatyupanibaddha), but susceptible of being hindered."

274. According to Kathāvatthu, xvii.2, the Rajagirikas and the Siddharthikas deny the premature death of an Arhat (Kośa, ii.10). According to Rockhill (Life of Buddha, p. 189) and Wassilieff, p.
244, the Prajñāaptivādins deny premature death. The Bodhicaryāvatāra (ii.55) admits a "natural" (kāla) death and one hundred premature deaths, due to each of the humors (vāta, pitta, ślesman) and to the humors joined together, for a total of four hundred and four deaths.

Further (1) samucchedamarana, the death of an Arhat; (2) khaṇikamarana, the constant disappearance of the dharmas eaten up by impermanence; (3) sammutimarana, the death that one attributes to a tree, etc. The Abhidhamma distinguishes (1) kālamarana (natural death) (a) by exhaustion of merit (punā), (b) by exhaustion of the span of life (āyu), and (c) by exhaustion of the two; (2) akālamarana (premature death) by reason of an action which cuts off existence (upacchedakammanā), in the case of Dūśi Māra, Kalabhū, etc., and in the case of persons assassinated in retribution of a previous action (Visuddhimagga, viii. apud Warren, p. 252; Commentary on the Anguttara, P.T.S., p. 111; Nettipakaraṇa, p. 29; Milinda, p. 301. Abhidhammasaṅgahā, Compendium, p. 149.

Jain doctrine, Umasvāti, Tattvārthdīdgamasūtra, ii.52: dvividhīn śāyūmsi . . .

275. Literally: taking possession of existence, ātmaḥavapatilambha. Majjhima, iii.53 distinguishes two types, savyāpajjha and avyāpajjha.


277. Dīgha, i.19, iii.31. Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 997b9. There is no agreement as to whether this refers to the Four Kings and the heaven of the Thirty-three Gods, or to other categories of gods in Kāmadhātu.

278. For example a certain Śuka was sent by the Blessed One to Āryapāli; the Licchavis were engaged in military exercises (yogya), and seeing him they covered him with a rain of arrows. But the messenger of the Buddha cannot be killed before he has completed his mission.

279. Perhaps we should understand: "the persons to whom the Buddha gives an order know that they will live yet that much more time." The notes of J. Przyluski on Yaśas and Jīvaka make this version plausible enough:

"In Mahāvagga, i.7, Para. 4 is almost incomprehensible. Yaśas cries out 'What a danger!' and we do not know to what danger he is alluding. In the corresponding passage of the Vinaya of the Sarvāstivādins everything is explained: 'Then Yaśas, having passed beyond the gate of the village, arrived at the river of Vārānasī. Then the Blessed One was walking on the bank of this river. Yaśas, seeing the water, gave forth a cry as he had formerly done. The Buddha, hearing this cry, said to the young man: 'This place has nothing to cause fear. Cross the current and come'"" (Tōk. xvii., 3.26a).

"The wife of Subhadra (comp. Divyāvadāna, 262-270) died before having given birth; the body was cremated but the infant was not burned. The Buddha told Jīvaka to go and take the infant from out of the midst of the flames: Jīvaka obeyed and returned without having had any ill effect (xvii.1.6a)."

280. Tibetan: gaṅ ga len. The Chinese transcriptions give Gaṅjila; see the unsuccessful suicide attempts of Gaṅgika, Avadānasataka, 98.

281. The fact that the word tadyathā is lacking in the response of the Blessed One does not prove that this response should be understood literally.

282. Paramārtha: "Further, there are the lakṣāṇas of the saṁskṛtas . . ."

Hsiian-tsang: "The lakṣāṇas, are namely the arising, duration, change, and destruction of the saṁskṛtas."

Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 198a8 and following; Dharmottara's Abhidharmabṛdaya, TD 28, p.
A provisional definition of *samskṛta* has been given i.7a-b.

283. But cannot one say that duration is a characteristic of an unconditioned thing? No. Characteristics are things in and of themselves (*dravyāntararūpa*) distinct from the *dharma* characterized, which causes arising, duration, decline and the perishing of this same *dharma*. An unconditioned thing lasts but does not possess the characteristic "duration," see below p. 239 line 11.

284. This is *Trilaksanasūtra* (see below p. 242 line 9). *Sāṃyuktāgama*, TD 2, p. 85b10; *Anguttara*, i.152: *tīn'īmāni bhikkhave sāṁkhata sāṁkhata lakkhaṇāni / kamāmīni tīni / utpādo pāññāyati vayo pāññāyati bhūtassa aṅgābhāttaṃ pāññāyati*. The Sanskrit redaction has: *sthityanyathāva* (*Madhyamakavṛtti*, p. 145); *Kathāvatthu*, trans. p. 55: *tītānam aṅgābhātta*.


285. The same comparison, with a different moral, *Atthasālini*, 655.


287. The theory of the *laksanas* and *anulaksanas* is refuted by Nāgārjuna, *Madhyamaka*, vii.1 and following. See *Madhyamakavṛtti*, p. 148, on the theory of the Sāṃmītpiyas who admit seven *laksanas* and seven *anulaksanas*: *uttāda, uttādottāda*, etc.

288. Space is a pure negative, a pure absence of any matter susceptible of resistance. It cannot be analyzed (*vipapyate, vibhidyate*).

289. See note 293.

290. See the sources quoted in *Madhyamakavṛtti*, 268, 598.

291. *Sāṃyukta*, TD 2, p. 73b23: *pravāhagatā hi vedanās tasya viditā evotpadyante / viditā avatiśṭhante / viditā astamī pariśkramyāṃ paryādānam gacchanti / na kṣaṇagatāḥ kṣaṇasya durava-dhārayat (Vyākyā)*.

Tibetan: The *kula-putra* Nanda (Comp. *Anguttara*, iv.166).

Compare *Sāṃyutta*, vi.180; *Majjhima*, iii.25 (where the Blessed One says to Śāriputra what he says here to Nanda): *dhammā viditā uppañjanti viditā upaṭṭhabanti viditā abbatthiṃ gacchanti*.

292. *Majjhima*, iii.25 contains the formula *evaṃ kila me dhammā abhūtā sambhonti* which becomes the thesis of the Sautrantikas: *abhūtā bhāva utpāda* (p. 243 line 17), which we read in *Milinda*, p. 51: *abhūtā sambhosi*, and which is contradicted by the Sarvāstivādins and by *Milinda*, p. 52: *na tathī keci sāṁkhārah ēye abhavantā jāyanti*. Nāgasena is a Vibhajyavādin, p. 50.

293. If one says, "It is by reason of its duration (*sthitisadbhāvat*) that a *dharma*, once arisen, does not perish for a moment; lacking duration, even this moment itself would not exist," such is not the case, for the moment exists by reason of the cause which produces it. If one says, "It is duration which causes, which embraces (*upagrhṇāti*) a *dharma* engendered by causes," we would ask, "If duration does not accomplish this task, what will happen?" "The *dharma* would not exist (*ātmasatta dharmasya na bhavet*)." "Then say that duration engenders, not that it cause something to endure." If one says, "Duration causes the series to continue (*avastthāpayati*)," then the name of duration should be reserved for its causes.

294. Smoke is momentary; when it "reproduces itself" in a place higher than that which it first
occupied, persons say that it rises (ौऽह्वगमनाः अक्षयम् लभते) and they conceive of the rising (ौऽह्वगमनात्म) as distinct from the smoke (see iv.2b).

295. If, grasping the unique self nature of a visible thing, I were to grasp it as being conditioned (सामस्कृतं इति) before knowing of its former non-existence, one could say that “conditioned” is a mark of a conditioned thing, that a conditioned thing is characterized by a conditioned thing (तेनावेति तलाक्षितम् स्यात्). But such is not the case.

296. The Vaibhāṣikas are “followers of momentariness” (क्षानिकवादिन्): dharmaṃ last only a moment and perish of themselves. See iv.2b; Wassilief, p. 325. But the difficulty is: what does क्षण mean?

297. Some other definitions, iii.86a.

298. The Sarīṇītiyas (see iv.2c).

299. In the Introduction we have studied the different theories relative to impermanence (अनित्यत्व) and momentariness (क्षणिकत्व).

300. See above p. 245. A conditioned dharmaḥ is engendered by its characteristic “arising.” “Arising” arises at the same time as the dharmaḥ which it engenders; being “future” it engenders it before arising itself.

301. Causes (हेतु) and conditions (प्रत्यय) are defined ii.49, 61c.

302. The Vyākhyaḥ quotes the response made by the Bhadanta Anantavarman to this objection: “The eye does not produce the visible consciousness without the coming together of clearness, etc.; it is no less a cause of the visual consciousness.” Response: “We state that the blind do not see, that the non-blind do see: thus we state the efficacy of the eye. The same does not hold for arising.”

Anantavarman is quoted in the Vyākhyaḥ ad ii.71b-72, iii.35d and vii.32.

303. The nature of the mental states, sparśa, etc. is subtle and difficult to distinguish. Without doubt, reply the Sautrāntikas, but the Blessed One explained the efficacy of sparśa, etc.: “All that which is vedanā, samjñā, and samskāras, exists by reason of sparśa . . . ;” but he did not explain the efficacy of “arising.”

304. The idea of “color” has for its object specific characteristics (स्वालक्षण) of the “color.” But the idea of “arisen,” as “the color has arisen,” does not bear on the color, since I have the same idea of arising when it refers to sensation: “sensation has arisen.” Thus the idea of “arisen” bears on the action produced by a certain dharmaḥ, independent of its color, its sensation, and its “arising.”

305. The Buddhists (बौद्धसिद्धांतं) believe that sandalwood is only a certain collection of odors, etc. (गण्डादिसामृहा). The Vaibhāṣikas believe that sandalwood exists in and of itself; this is why the author gives the example of the bust, an example admitted by the Vaibhāṣikas. See Madhyamakavṛttī, p. 66; Sāṁkhya-pravacanabhāṣya, p. 84, 148, etc.

306. Viśhāṣa, TD 27, p. 198a15: Some maintain that the saṁskṛtalakṣaṇas are not real things, namely the Dārṣṭāntikas who say: “The saṁskṛtalakṣaṇas are included within the viprayuktasamāskāraskandha; the viprayuktasamāskāraskandha is not real; thus the saṁskṛtalakṣaṇas are not real.” In order to refute their opinion . . .

307. Hsüan-tsang: “This theory is best. Why?”

308. Namely the Abhidharmaśāstras.

309. We have four proverbs which have the same meaning, that is, one should not renounce a
thing in and of itself because of the defects that it presents, or because of the risks that it entails.

a. Na hi bhikkukha sanittii sthalyo nadhiisriyante.

b. Na ca mrgah sanittii yavav (var. slyayo) nopyante.

These two proverbs, which often go together, have been studied by Col. Jacob, in his Second Handful of Popular Maxims (Bombay, Nirnayasagar, 1909, p. 42, index sub voc. na hi bhikkukha), with the references which follow: Mahabhasya, i.99, ii.194, iii.23 (Kielhorn), in the same context (na hi doShah sanittii praisbhaya na kartavya laksana/va na praneyam na hi bhikkukha . . . ); Vacaspatimisra, Nyayavraksakataparyasyika, pp. 62, 441; Bhama, p. 54; Sarvadarsanasamgraha, p. 3 of Cowell's translation. We should add the Kamastha (see Cat. Oxford, 216b), where the two proverbs are attributed to Vatsyayana (mentioned by Weber, Indische Studien, XIII, p. 326).

c. Ato'jrnabhayan nabharauparitya bhikkukabhayan na sthalya anadhiisrayanam doShu pratividbataym uit nyayah.

Col. Jacob quotes, for this third proverb, Paalapadika, p. 63 (of which the final doShu pratividbataym is found in Vasubandhu), Jivamuktiniveka, p. 8 (which attributes the proverb to Anandabodhaarya), and Hitopadesa, ii.50, dosaphiter andrambhah . . .

d. Na maksikha patantiti modakha na bhaksyante.

A proverb for which we do not have any other references than Vasubandhu. It appears that the Buddhists, being bhikkus, have substituted mendicant (bhikkuka) and sthali in the proverb, making it a proverb less biting than one containing flies and cakes.

310. Surendranath Dasgupta, in his Study of Patanjali (Calcutta, 1920), give in brief (p. 192-201) the various theories concerning sphota.

311. The word samyakkarana belongs to popular language (lokabhdsa); it is the equivalent of namsadheya, name or appellation, for one says "'Devadatta' is a samyakkarana sound." But here it means "That which makes an idea arise." In fact samijna is a mental dharma, "idea," "notion," or "concept" (i.14c-d); nman is what "creates" or engenders this dharma.

312. This does not refer to pada as a declined or conjugated form (Panhini, i.4.14).

313. One should consider the entire stanza as a pada:

\[
\text{anitya vata samikara utpadavyayadharmanah} / \\
\text{utpadya bi nirudhyante tesam vyupasama shrihi} //
\]

that can be explained in different ways:

a. Thesis (pratijna): "The samikaras are impermanent." Argument (hetu): "because their nature is to arise and to perish." Example (drittanta): "those things which, born, then die, are impermanent."

b. The argument: "Their nature is to arise and to perish," is proven by the remark: "In fact, being born, they die."

c. "The samikaras are impermanent, in other words, their nature is to be born and to perish;" "because, being born, they perish" "being impermanent, they are suffering, thus the arresting of them is happiness:" this is what the Buddha intended to teach to his followers.

This is the stanza that Sakra uttered at the death of the Blessed One, Digha, TD 1, p.26c21; Samyutta, i.158; Dialogues, ii.176; Jataka, 94; Madhyamakavrtti, p. 39; Manuscript Dutreuil de Rhins, J. Ar. 1898, ii.300 (quoted in part, p. 108); Udanavarga, i.1; Mdo, 26, Anityatasutra; J. Przyluski, Funerailles, p. 9.

314. A type of "nominal phrase."

315. Nman manifests (dyotsaka) unique self characteristics (svvalaksana); pada manifests the diverse relationships in which the thing whose self characteristic is known is to be found.


317. That is to say: "given a voice, a word—a dharma disassociated from the mind—arises" (vaci
318. This means that "a word—a dharma disassociated from the mind—arises with its vocal sound in the process of arising: the vocal sound manifests it with a view to designating an object" (ghosanotpadyamānena sa cittaviprayukto dharma utpadyate / sa tāṁ prakāśayaty arthadyotanāya).

319. Samyuktāgama, TD 2, p. 266b9. Samyutta, i.38: nāmasamniśrītā gāthā. Gāthā is a "phrase" (vākyā); it depends on words, since it exists when sounds have arisen. Consequently, word and phrase exist in and of themselves.

320. Mahāvyutpatti, 245.319, has the word kṛtāvadhī.

321. Pañktivat, "like a line of ants;" but the different ants which form the line exist at the same time; we shall give a new example, cittanupāryayavat, "like a succession of thoughts."

322. The dharmas which are of the sphere of consciousness of the Tathāgatas (tathāgata-jñānāgocarapatita) are tarkagamyā.


324. Phonemes, etc. are not "voice" by their nature. Nothing prevents their existing in Ārūpyadhatu, but, as the voice is missing in this sphere of existence, they cannot be pronounced there. The Vaibhāṣikas: But how can you say that they exist where they are not pronounced?

325. The words that designate good dharmas are not themselves good, for when a person who has cut off the roots of good speaks of the good dharmas, he then possesses (prāpti) the words which designate these dharmas.

326. Hsüan-tsang corrects: The prāptis are of three types, kṣaṇika (i.38), outflowing, and retribution.

327. The Vākyāyu makes the following remarks: a. There is no difference between hetu and pratyaya, for the Blessed One said: dvau hetā dvau pratyaya samyagdrśter utpādya / katamau dvau / parataś ca ghoṣo’dhyātamanā ca yoniso manasikāraḥ. (Anguttara, i.87: dvē’me bhikkhave pacchayā sammadīśthita upādāya . . . parato ca ghoṣo yoniso ca manasikāro).

b. Heto, pratyaya, niḍāṇa, kāraṇa, nimitta, linga, and upaniṣad are synonyms.

c. Why is a separate exposition of the hetus and the pratyayas given? Because the exposition of the hetus includes an examination of its cause as "non-obstructing cause," "mutual cause," "parallel cause," etc. (ii.49); an exposition of the pratyayas includes an examination of its cause as hetu, immediately antecedent cause, etc. (ii.62).

328. See Abhidharmabhārdaya, TD 28, p. 811c17.

329. In what Sūtra are the six types of hetu taught? In fact the Abhidharma only explains, appreciates, and comments on the Sūtra (sarvo hy abhidharmah sūrārthah sūtranikasah sūtravyākhyānam).

The Vaibhāṣikas say that the Sūtra which treats of this point has disappeared (antarhita). The Ekottarāgama enumerates the dharmas up to the categories of one hundred dharmas; it does not contain any more than ten categories up to ten (ādātaṁ) (See Introduction).

But there are some Sūtras which characterize each type of hetu, and the Vākyāyu furnishes some examples borrowed, it would appear, from Saṁghabhadra (TD, 29, p. 79b16).

(a) kāraṇabetau: "The visual consciousness arises by reason of the organ of the eye and visible things" (Samyutta, iv.87, etc.).

(b) sababbhūbetu: "These three parts of the path accompany (anuvaṁ) Right Views." "Contact is the coming together of the three; then there arises together sensation, ideas, and volition."
(c) *sabhāgahetu*: "This person (pudgala) is endowed with good dharmas, and with bad dharmas; his good dharmas may perish, his bad dharmas may develop, but an anusahagata root of good is not cut off (asti cāsāyānasubhagatam kuśalamūlam asamucchinnam), from whence there arises another root of good: this person, in the future, will become pure" (*visuddhidharma bhavivuta*, cp. *Anguttara*, iii.315).

In a similar context, *Samyutta*, iii.131 (compare *Kathavatthu*, p. 215) has anusahagata which Sarghhabhadra here translates exactly (*sui chū hsing* 微俱行); this refers to a strong root of good, indentified (Sarghhabhadra, TD 29, p. 99b19) with the *purāṇa-anu-dhātu* (?) (*chiu sui chieh* 久隨界) of the school of the Sthaviras.

But the MSS of the *Vyākhyā* have anusahagata and we see that, in the *Bhāṣyam* of iv.79d, the Chinese translation of the *Jāntraprasthāna* gives the exact equivalent: *wei chū hsing* 微俱行. In this passage anusahagata is the equivalent of *mrū-mrū*: "What are the roots of good termed anusahagata? Those which are abandoned last of all when the roots of good have been broken; those through the absence of which the roots of good are said to have been broken. (We have seen above, p. 210, that, properly speaking, the roots of good are never broken off.)

(d) *samprayuktakahetu*: "Faith (sraddha) has Seeing (dariana) for its root, and is associated with *avetyajñāna* (vi.74): what this person knows (*vijñānāt*), he penetrates to through *prajñā* (prajñāntā)."

(e) *sarvatragahetu*: "The bodily actions, the vocal actions, the volition, the resolution, and the *samskāras* which follow the actions of a person who has false views (*mithyādṛṣṭī*, v.7), etc.,—all these dharmas have for their consequence unhappiness and hideousness. Why? Because he has a transgressed (*pāpikā*) view, namely false views." (*Anguttara*, v.212).

(f) *vipūkahetu*: "He shall savor the retribution of action done here . . ."

330. Since the consciousness of the Truths has taken place, the causes of the defilements are not completed, because the *prāpti* of the defilements is cut off by this consciousness.

331. Montaigne, iii.9: The princes give me much, if they show me nothing; and it is good enough for me if they do not do me ill.


333. All cause should be an effect: *kāreṇe sati kāreṇa bhavitavyam*.

334. The suffix *vat* in the sense of *tadyathā*.

335. One does not say that all the coexistent (*sahabhā)* dharmas are *sahabhūbetu*. For example, derived (*bhautika*) *rūpa*, blue, etc., coexist with the primary elements: but it is not *sahabhūbetu* with them. (See p. 259-260).

336. See i.24, ii.22, 65.

337. A conditioned *dharma* and its characteristics are *sahabhūbetu* among themselves; a *dharma* is not *sahabhūbetu* with the characteristics of another *dharma*.

338. *Vyākhyā*: *Upasamīkhyānacakaraṇam ca mahāsāstratāpadarśananārtham sopasaṃkhyānānām hi vyākaraṇādi mahāsāstram dṛṣṭyate.*

339. The first part of this paragraph is based on the *Vyākhyā*.

340. The ten reasons are not always joined together. For example, in the case of the neutral mind not destined to arise, its companions are companions for four reasons: (1) same time period, (2) same result (*puruṣakāra*), (3) same *nisyanda*, and (4) same quality of being neutral.

341. Namely the undefiled-neutral (*anivrūtyākṛta*) mind after the second *dhyāna*; *vitarka*, *vicāra*, the *kusalamahābhūmikas* are missing from it.
342. The mind reigns (राजयते) over its अनुलक्षणस: these have no action (व्यापारः) over the mind, as we have seen ii.46.

343. The Japanese editor refers to the Prakarana, TD 26, p. 745a25. See below p. 265 and p. 273 where the same text is referred to.

The Prakarana examines the relationship between the Four Truths and the belief in a self (सत्याद्रिष्टि). The Vyākhyā gives the following extract:

A. There are Four Truths. Among the Truths, how many have satyādṛṣṭi for their cause without being a cause of satyādṛṣṭi; how many are a cause of satyādṛṣṭi without having satyādṛṣṭi for their cause; how many have satyādṛṣṭi for their cause and are at the same time a cause of satyādṛṣṭi; and how many do not have satyādṛṣṭi for their cause and are not a cause of satyādṛṣṭि? Answer: Two Truths do not have satyādṛṣṭि for their cause and are not a cause of satyādṛṣṭि, namely the Truth of Extinction and the Truth of the Path; one must distinguish the two other Truths.

B. The Truth of Suffering can (1) have satyādṛṣṭि for its cause without in turn being a cause of satyādṛṣṭि; (2) have satyādṛṣṭि for its cause and not be a cause of satyādṛष्टि; and (3) not have satyādṛṣ्टि for its cause and not be a cause of satyādṛṣ्टि: there are only three alternatives; the second (to be a cause of satyādṛṣ्टि without having satyādṛष्टि for its cause) is missing.

1. To have satyādṛṣ्टि for its cause without being a cause of satyādṛष्टि are all the Truths of defiled Suffering (that is to say, all the धर्मस which are suffering and which are kliṣ्टा) with the exception of (a) the past and present defilements (anusāya) which can be abandoned by the Seeing of Suffering, and by the Truth of Suffering associated with these defilements (for example the sensation associated with satyādṛष्टि which is abandoned by the Seeing of Suffering); (b) the future Truths of Suffering which are associated with satyādṛṣ्टि (see p. 265 line 22); and (c) the arising-old age-duration-impermanence of satyādṛṣ्टि and of the धर्मस associated with this belief (tattamprayuktanāṁ ca dharmāṇāṁ: these last words are omitted in certain recensions).

2. The Truth of Suffering which has been excluded in the preceeding paragraph has satyādṛष्टि for its cause and is a cause of satyādṛष्टि.

3. The Truth of undefiled Suffering, (that is, the धर्मस which are suffering but which are good) do not have satyādṛष्टि for their cause and are not a cause of satyādṛष्टि.

The Chinese versions, TD 26, number 1541 (p. 673b20) and TD 26, number 1542 (p. 745a), correspond to the preceeding texts. Some omissions (the phrases: "To this question, it answers," iti prāṣṇe visarjanam karoti, and "There are only three alternatives; the second is missing," trīkoṣṭkam, dvītiyā kośīr nāsti are missing). There are some sensible enough variations in the definition of the धर्मस which have satyādṛष्टि for their cause and which are a cause of satyādṛष्टि: (a) past and present defilements which can be abandoned by the Seeing of Suffering, and the Truth of the Suffering associated with these defilements (TD 26, number 1542: and the Truth of Suffering associated, coexistent, etc., with these defilements), (b) past and present universal (sarvatraga) defilements which can be abandoned by the Seeing of Arising, and the Truth of Suffering which is associated with it (TD 27, number 1542: associated causes, mutually coexistent causes, etc.), and (c) future Truth of Suffering which is associated with satyādṛष्टि and of the धर्मस associated with it.

344. Where a महाभृत्त is found, the other महाभृत्तस are found also, etc.

245. I understand: "One moment (क्षण) of the caksurindriya is a cause of simultaneous visual consciousness."

346. See ii.59.

347. According to the samavīśṭayoh rule, ii.52d. The four non-material skandhas are "best" or viśiṣṭa, whereas rūpa is "less good," nyūna.

349. According to the opponent of the Vaibhāṣikas, the Prakāraṇa teaches that future satkāyadrṣṭi and the dharmas which are associated with it are at one and the same time the effect and the cause of satkāyadrṣṭi. Now future satkāyadrṣṭi is neither a mutually coexistent cause (sahabhu), nor an associated cause (samprayuktaka), nor retribution (vipāka); the rest, excluding kāraṇahetu, are similar (sabhāga) and universal (sarvaga) causes.

For the Vaibhāṣikas, the Prakāraṇa speaks here, not of future satkāyadrṣṭi, but of the dharmas (sensation, etc.) associated with this satkāyadrṣṭi as coexistent and associated cause, and the effect of satkāyadrṣṭi is considered as coexistent and associated causes.

We have three readings; in addition to the two readings quoted here, there is also the text:

\[\text{anāgatam ca satkāyadrṣṭi samprayuktam duḥkhasatyam sāhāpyitvā:} \]

“with the exception, furthermore, of the Truth of future Suffering and which is associated with satkāyadrṣṭi.” (See note 343, section B.1.b).

350. See below note 365.

351. This means: “The dharma which is the cause of a certain dharma is never the non-cause of this same dharma; the dharma which is the result of a certain dharma . . . ; the dharma (organ of sight, etc.) which is the support of a certain dharma (visual consciousness, etc.) . . . ; the dharma (color, etc.) which is the object of a certain dharma (visual consciousness) is never the non-object of this same dharma.

352. According to Hsuan-tsang: “Cause refers to kāraṇa, sabbahā, samprayuktaka and vipākabetus; result, the adhipati, purusakāra and vipākaphalas.” Paramārtha: “Cause refers to the samprayuktakabetu; result, the adhipati and purusakāraphalas.

353. The paths of śraddhānusārin, śraddhābhādhibhuma and samayavimukta are the paths of darśana, bhāvanā (=Śaikṣa) and Asaikṣa of the ascetics of weak faculties; the paths of dharmānusārin, drṣṭiprāpta and asamayavimukta are respectively the same path of the ascetics of strong faculties.

354. The second of the first fifteen moments (darśanāmārga, vi.27), produced in a lower stage, is superior to the first moment in a higher stage, because it has for its causes (1) the cause of the first moment, and (2) its own cause, and thus following; bhāvanāmārga has for its causes (1) the causes of darśanāmārga, and (2) its own causes; and the asaikṣamārga has for its cause (1) the causes of darśana and bhāvanāmārga, and (2) its own causes.

Furthermore, in bhāvanāmārga and asaikṣamārga, the path destroys nine categories of defilements, strong-strong, strong-mediocre, etc. Now the weak-mediocre path has for its causes (1) the cause of the weak-weak path, and (2) its own causes.

355. One can say that the path of śraddhānusārin is the sabbāgahetu of six paths. This thesis gives rise to a discussion in which the master Vasumitra wrongly maintains that a śraddhānusārin is capable of making his faculties strong. (Vyākhyā).


357. Vyākhyā: tuśabdo'vadhāraṇe bhinnakramas ca.


358. Sama can be understood as tulya, parallel; this is why the author states it precisely.

359. Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 81b9, mentions six opinions on this point.

360. The defilements susceptible of being abandoned by the Seeing of Arising, Extinction and the
Path, and by Meditation, proceed from the universal causes susceptible of being abandoned by the Seeing of Suffering. The defilements susceptible of being abandoned by the Seeing of Suffering, Extinction and the Path, and by Meditation, proceed from the universal causes susceptible of being abandoned by the Seeing of Arising.

361. They are called "universals" (sarvaga), because they go towards (gacchanti), "occupy" (bhajante), and have for their object (alambante) all categories of defilement; or because they are the cause (hetubhāvanī gacchanti) of all categories of defilement.

362. See above p. 259.

363. Since the text has "the defiled dharmas," without specifying otherwise, this refers to the defiled dharmas of the Prthagjanas and the Āryans.

364. This refers to the neutral saniskṛtas, nirvṛtyākṛta and anivrṛtyākṛta, not to the two neutral asamiskṛtas, space and apratisamkhyaṇirodha.

365. The word "future" is missing in Paramartha. See above p. 259.

366. Hsuan-tsang translates: "How should one explain the Praṇjñaptipādaśāstra," for "this Bhāṣya of the Praṇjñapti" signifies "this explanation that one reads in the Praṇjñapti." See the Tibetan version of the Karmaprajñapti, Chap. ix. (Mdo. 63, fol. 229b-236a): Para. 1. Does there exist a past volition which arises from a past cause, but not from a future cause, nor from a present cause? . . . Para. 2: Do there exist good dharmas which arise from good causes? . . . Do there exist neutral dharmas which arise from bad causes? Yes: (1) the dharmas which are the retribution of bad action; (2) the dharmas of Kāmadhātu associated with satkāyadrśī and antagrābhadṛśī. Para. 3. Do there exist good dharmas which arise solely from good causes? Yes: the volition associated with the parts of Bodhi. . . Do there exist bad dharmas which arise solely from bad causes? . . ."

We know through J. Takakusu (JPTS. 1905, p. 77) that the Karmaprajñapti no longer exists in Chinese. TD 26, number 1538 is the Kāraṇaprajñapti; TD 32, number 1644 is a treatise analogous to the Lokaprajñapti: one will find a summary of these two Praṇjñaptis in Cosmologie bouddhique, p. 295-350.

367. "At the moment when he falls from detachment, the bad volition of the Āryan has solely bad dharmas for its cause, causes in the quality of sahābhū and sampratyaṅkabhetu; it does not have neutral dharmas for its cause since the Āryan has abandoned satkāyadrśī and antagrābhadṛśī." such is the interpretation of the objector.

368. Self power (svafaktī) is lacking in neutral dharmas, and a co-factor (sahakārikāraṇa) is lacking in pure dharmas. See iii.36b.


370. Here Hsian-tsang has some remarks missing in Paramārtha:

According to the Vaibhāṣikas, the prefix vi indicates difference: vipāka signifies "a different pāka" (Mahāvyutpatti, 245.182). That is to say only the vipākabhetu gives forth a pāka or result not similar to itself. Sahabhū, sampratyaṅkaka, sahāga, and sarvatragabhetu give forth results similar to themselves (good, bad, neutral); kāraṇabhetu gives forth a dissimilar result: vipākabhetu is never neutral but its result is always neutral.

(According to the Sautrantikas,) a result receives the name of vipāka under two conditions: it should be produced by the last state of the evolution of a series (samtanāparināmanaviseṣa; see above p. 211); and it should more or less last a long time by reason of the more or less great force of its cause. Now, the results that have issued from sahabhū and sampratyaṅkabhetu do not present the first characteristic, for these causes project and realize their result at the same time as
they (ii.59); and the results that have issued from the three causes, kāraṇa, sabbhāga, and sarvatragahetu, do not present the second characteristic; for there is no limit to the arising repeated by these results during the length of their transmigration. Consequently the sole explanation of vipāka is "transformation (viparītā? and maturation."

371. Vibhāṣa, TD 27, p. 97c7. (Hsüan-tsang: "the action which produces the vital organ, etc." Et cetera refers to either nikāyasabbhāga or its characteristics).

The Ācārya Vasumitra does not admit this proposition. The vital organ of life (jīvittendriya) is the result of an action which projects an existence (ākṣepakakarman, iv.95). If the retribution which constitutes this organ matures (vipacayate) in Kāmadhātu, one necessarily has kāya-indriya and jīvita-indriya in the first stages of his embryonic life; in the last stages five other organs (indriya) are added. If the vital organ matures in Rūpadhātu, one has seven āyatanas; in Ārūpyadhātu, one has manāyatanā and dharmāyatanā. Yasomitra discusses these remarks and quotes Saṁghabhadra. The propositions combatted by Vasumitra refers to Ārūpyadhātu: at a certain moment, there is no mind (manaāyatanā) which is retribution for a being born in this sphere.

372. Never twelve, for the sābdāyatana is never retribution (i.3/7b-c).

373. The retribution of a former action can have begun, can continue in the present moment, and can prolong itself in the future.

374. The Japanese editor gives the heroic career of the Bodhisattva as an example of a prolonged action.

375. Compare ii.59.

376. Disconnection (visāmyoga) or visāmyogaphala (ii.57d, vi.46), is pratisamkhyānirodha or Nirvāṇa (i.6), one of the unconditioned things (asamskṛta). It does not have a cause, and it is not a result; but it is a cause (kāraṇabhetu, ii.50a) and it is a result (ii.57d).

377. Prakarana, TD 26, p. 716b9, which can be reconstructed: phaladharmāḥ katame / sarve saṁskṛtāḥ pratisamkhyānirodhaḥ ca / na phaladharmāḥ katame / ākāśam apratisamkhyānirodhah / saphaladharmāḥ katame / sarve saṁskṛtāḥ / aphaladharmāḥ katame / sarve saṁskṛtāḥ: "What dharmas are result? All conditioned things and pratisamkhyānirodha. What dharmas are not result? Space and apratisamkhyānirodha. What dharmas have a result? All conditioned things. What dharmas do not have a result? All unconditioned things." See also Jñānaprasthāna, TD 26, p. 941bll.


379. Ānātryamārga cuts off defilements and is followed by vimuktimārga, "the path in which the defilement is already cut off," within which the ascetic takes possession (prāpti) of disconnection, vi.28.

380. Certain masters maintain that there are five types of causes: (1) kāraṇa, efficient cause, the seed of the bud; (2) jñāpaka, indicating cause, the smoke of the fire; (3) vyanjaka, revealing cause, the lamp on the pot; (4) dhvamsaka, destructive cause, the hammer on the pot; and (5) prapaka, the adducent cause.


382. In the pages which follow, Vasubandhu does not do full justice to the arguments of the Sarvāstivādins-Vaibhāṣikas; he does not mention the texts, for example Udāna, viii.3 (Sivuttaka, 43, Udānavarga, xxvi.21), which at least renders the reality of Nirvāṇa likely. Saṁghabhadra refutes Vasubandhu and the other masters who deny unconditioned things (Nyāyānusāra, TD 29,
Chapter Two

His exposition is too long to include here: we have given a partial translation of it in the Introduction.

383. a. The extinction of anusaya is the Extinction of the Arising of Suffering (samsudaya-satyanirodha, Extinction of what is, in truth, the Arising of Suffering): sopadhiśeśanirvāṇa.

The Extinction of Arising or existence (janman) is the Extinction of Suffering (duḥkha-satyanirodha, Extinction of what is, in truth, Suffering): nirupadhisesanirvāṇa.

b. Anusaya means the traces (vāsanā) of the ninety-eight anusayas described in Chapter V.

384. According to the Japanese editor, the Sthaviras.

385. According to the Japanese editor, the Mahāsāṃghikas.

386. Svarasanirrodbhāt, not by the force of praṇā, as is the case for pratisarhṇam.

387. Compare Kathavatthu, xix.1.

388. That is, chanda (future desire: anāgata prārthana) and rāga (attachment to what one possesses: prāpte'rthe'dhyavasānam)

389. The prabhāna of rūpa is to be understood as ānantaryamārga, and pariṇā is to be understood as vimuktimārga (vi.30). (Gloss of the Japanese editor).


"Detachment" or virāga is rāgakṣaya, pratisarhṇam, nirvāṇa. Nirvāṇa is better than apratisamkhyāṇam and space (iv.127d).

391. Hsüan-tsang differs: One can not say from its non-existence that it exists. The value of the verb "to be" is thus proven ("this verb does not signify "to exist"). It is thus that Scripture states that they are unconditioned things.


393. Drṣṭadharmanirvāṇapraṇāta, that is "which is to be found in Nirvāṇa with residue" (sopadhiśeśanirvāṇastha).


We have Anguttara i.100: parikkhaya pābāna khaya vaya virāga nirodha ca ga paśinissagga; v.421: asaṣavirāga nirodha ca ga paśinissagga mutti anālaya; Samyutta, i.36: sabbasaṃkhārāsmaṭha . . . ; Itivuttaka, 51: upadhīṇaḥpāśinissagga. See also the Sanskrit versions of Majjhima, i.497 in Pischel, Fragments of Indikutsari, p. 8 (vyantibhāvā) and Avadānasātaka, ii.187 (vāntibhāvā).

395. In other words, aprādurbhava = nāsmin prādurbhavāḥ. This is an adhikāraṇasādhana etymology. The Sautrāntikas understand aprādurbhava as aprādurbhūti (an ābhāvasādhana etymology).

The explanation of the Sarvāstivādins is reproduced in Madhyamakavṛtti, p. 525, and attributed to the philosophy which considers Nirvāṇa as a bhāva, a padārthā similar to a dike which arrests the process of the defilements, action and arising.

396. In fact the Path destroys the Arising of Suffering, duḥkhasamudaya. Who could imagine a thing in and of itself called nirodha with respect to the Path?
397. Dīgha, ii.157; Sāriyutta, i.159; Theragāthā, 906:

   pañjotasseva nībbānam vimokho cetuso abhū.


   pradyotasseva nirvāṇāṃ vimokṣas tasya cetasaḥ.

   This happens at the moment of Nirvāṇa-without-residue. The definition bhavanirodha nībbānam, Anūtta, v.9, Sāriyutta, ii.116, etc.

398. See Vibhaṣa, TD 27, p. 161a10. We read in Prakaraṇa, TD 26, p. 716a3, a definition that can be reconstructed: avastukā apratayā dharmāḥ katame? asamākṛtā dharmāḥ (see i.7).

399. This is the text quoted ad i.7.

400. The Vīyākyād i.7 (Petrograd edition, p. 22) reproduces all these explanations.


   There are five types of results: 1. nīsyandaphala, 2. vipākaphala, 3. visamyoṣgaphala, 4. puruṣakārāphala, 5. adhīpatisphala.

   a. nīsyandaphala: good produced by good, bad produced by bad, and neutral produced by neutral.

   b. vipākaphala: vipāka is produced by bad or good-impure dharmas; if the cause is good or bad, the result is always neutral. As this result is different from its cause and has "matured" (pāka), it is called vipāka (visadṛṣṭa pāka).

   c. visamyoṣgaphala: The ānantaryamārgas cut off the defilements; they have the cutting off of the defilements for their visamyoṣgaphala and puruṣakārāphala; they have the vimuktimārga for their nīsyandaphala and puruṣakārāphala; and they have all the former paths, equal or higher than their types, for their nīsyandaphala.

   See also the Abhidharmāvatāraśāstra (TD 28, p. 988b12) ii.14, where the names of the results are explained.

402. iv.85a-b, 110a.

403. The "receptacle" or physical world (bhājanaloka, iii.45, iv.1) is produced by the good and bad actions of the totality of living beings: it is neutral; however it is not retribution vipāka), because retribution is a dharma "belonging to living beings" (p. 289); consequently, it is the adhīpatisphala of actions considered as kāraṇabetau.

404. Missing in Paramārtha.

405. The prefix ud in udbhava signifies "later" (uttarākāra). Absorption (samādhi) produces an increase of the primary elements of the body: these primary elements are called "of increase" (aupacayika) because they arise either at the same time as the absorption, or immediately after; they are not retribution. In this way a mind that can create fictive beings (nīmaṇcicitta, i.37, vii.48) is neutral, belonging to a living being, created by a definite action (i.e., an absorption); but, arising immediately after the absorption, it is not retribution. Furthermore, the result of retribution always belongs to the same stage as the action from whence it proceeds.

406. Good dharmas are not the sabhāgabetu of defiled dharmas, etc.

407. The mind at death (maranacicitta) of a being who dies in Kāmadhātu can have for its virile result the first moment of an intermediary being of Rūpadhātu. These examples show the difference between the puruṣakārāphala and the outflowing result (nīsyandaphala). Four cases: 1. puruṣakārāphala which is not nīsyandaphala: examples as above; 2. nīsyandaphala, the result of sabhāga and sarvatraga causes which do not immediately follow; 3. nīsyanda and puruṣakārāphala, parallel result, of the same stage, but immediate; 4. neither of the two: fruit of retribution.
408. See ii.56b and iv.85.

409. Compare ii.55a-b.

410. These definitions are given later (vi.22a7) in the original. De La Vallée Poussin placed them here for the convenience of the reader.

411. The dharma always exists, whether it is in the past, the present or the future. We say that it takes or projects a result at the moment when, becoming present, it becomes the cause or seed of a result. The Vyākyā observes that the comparison of the seed is a Sautrāntika theory. Also "this reading does not exist in certain manuscripts" (kvacit pustake nasty esa pāthab). Moreover the Vyākyā explains: pratigrhṇantyā ākṣiptanti betubhāveno patiṣṭhanta ity arthaḥ.

412. On this subtle point, see Sarṅghabhadra, Nyāyāvatāra, TD 29, 98a3.

413. According to the Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 89b13.

414. The last praṇāḍis of good that one cuts off, namely the praṇāḍis of the roots of good which are weak-weak (mrādumrūd) project their result (phalaparigraham kurvanti), but they do not give forth their result (nisyandaphala), since the "good" moment in which they should give forth or engender (janya) it is lacking.

415. Vasubandhu criticizes the doctrines of the Vaibhāṣikas. In fact, this paragraph is poorly worded (śāvyāya): when a person again takes up the roots of good, he acquires, tri-temporally, the praṇāḍis of the roots of good: the past praṇāḍi acquired at this moment give forth their result, but they do not grasp it: for they have already grasped it; but how can one say that present praṇāḍi do not grasp their result? Thus the proposed definition is lacking precision. Sarṅghabhadra defends the reading of the Vibhāṣā.


417. Vibhāṣā, TD 27, p. 79a26: "It is true that these six causes (hetu) are not mentioned in the Sūtras; the Sūtra only says that there are four pratyayas:"

The Japanese editor quotes Mahāyāna sources, TD 16 number 716 (trans. by Dharmagupta), the Ghanavyāha, TD 16 number 717 (trans. by Hsüan-tsang), and the Madhyamaka-kārikā (see Madhyamakavṛtti, p. 76).

With respect to the relation of the hetus and the pratyayas, the first master of the Vibhāṣā says that (1) the betupratisya includes five hetus, with the exception of kāraṇabetu, and (2) kāraṇabetu includes the other three pratyayas. The second master of the Vibhāṣā says that (1) betupratisya includes five hetus, and (2) kāraṇabetu is only adhipatipratisya: this is the system adopted by Vasubandhu. In the Mahāyāna, sabbāgaṇebetu is at one and the same time betupratisya and adhipatipratisya, whereas the other five hetus are adhipatipratisya.

The Prakaraṇa, TD 26, p. 712b12, enumerates four pratyayas. The Vijñānakāya, TD 26, p. 547b22, defines them as functions of the viññāna: "What is the betupratisya of a visual consciousness? The coexistent (sabhabā) and associated (samprayuktā) dharmas. What is its samanantarapratisya? The mind and its mental states to which it is equal and immediate, the visual consciousness arisen and arising. What is its ālambanapratisya? Visible things. What is its adhipatipratisya? All the dharmas, with the exception of itself... Of what is the visual consciousness the betupratisya? Of the coexistent and associated dharmas. Of what is it the samanantarapratisya? Of the minds and mental states, arisen or arising, equal and immediate to this visual consciousness. Of what is it the ālambanapratisya? Of the minds and mental states which grasp it for an object. Of what is it the adhipatipratisya? Of all the dharmas with the exception of itself."

The four pratyayas are defined in the Abhidharmahṛdaya, ii.16, as in our book: the betupratisya includes the five hetus; and adhipatipratisya corresponds to kāraṇabetu.
For the *paccayas* of the Abhidhamma, the *Dukapapphana* appears to be the capital authority. Its points of contact with the Abhidharma are numerous, but the nomenclature differs; for example, the *sahajatādhipatipaccaya* is our *sababhahetu*. See also *Kathāvatthu*, xv.1-2.

418. Namely *pratayapatrakāra*, as one says gotā, a type of cow (*Vyākhya*).

419. *Vibbāsa*, TD 27, p. 52a8 and following, the second masters.

420. This refers to *avijñaptirūpa*. When, after having undertaken the Prātimokṣasārīvara (an *avijñaptirūpa* in Kāmadhātu), a person enters into impure (*sāvṛava*) *dhyāna*, he produces the *sāvṛvara* of *dhyāna* (an *avijñaptirūpa* in Rūpadhātu), whereas the *avijñaptirūpa* in Kāmadhātu continues to reproduce itself (see iv.17b-c).

421. In the case where, having undertaken the Prātimokṣasārīvara, a person enters into pure *dhyāna*.

422. This is the second opinion presented in the *Vibbāsa*. When, after having eaten, a person falls asleep or enters into absorption, there arises at the same time a *rūpa* of increase produced by sleep or absorption (see i.37).

423. On the Bhadanta, the Sautrāntika Sthavira (*Vyākhya*), see note 93. Fourth opinion of the *Vibbāsa*.

424. *Vibbāsa*, TD 27, p. 52a21, gives two opinions. Vasubandhu presents the second.

425. Simultaneous *dharmas*, presenting neither anteriority nor posteriority, cannot be in and of themselves *samanantarapratyaya*.

426. The first masters of the *Vibbāsa*, TD 27, p. 51b15. Hsüan-tsang: "He infers from the past and from the present, but sees in a direct manner."


428. Hsüan-tsang: The Blessed One sees that such a result arises from such a past action: such a *dharma* immediately arises from such a *dharma*; that, from such a past action, there arises such a result: from such a *dharma* there immediately arises such a *dharma*. Having seen in this manner, he is capable of knowing, with regard to future confused *dharmas* that such a *dharma* will immediately arise after such a *dharma*. Although he knows in this manner, this is not a knowledge from induction, for the Blessed One, inferring according to the sequence of the arising of the causes and effects of the past and the present, knows then by a direct seeing the confused *dharmas* of the future and, "In the future, such a being will accomplish such an action, and shall receive such a retribution." This is *pranidhijñāna*, not *anumānajñāna*.

429. Second opinion of the *Vibbāsa*, TD 27, p. 897b26; the third opinion presented in the *Nyāyāvatāra*, TD 29, p. 444b23.

Paramārtha (TD 29, p. 194b10) differs: "There is, in the series of beings, a certain conditioned *dharma* associated with the mind which is an indication of the future result."

*Nyāyāvatāra*: "There is presently, within beings, an indication of the causes and results of the future, similar to a prognostic sign (*yin-hsiang* 印相, *chāyā nimitta*), or rather a *rūpa*, or a *samskāra* disassociated from the mind."

Paramārtha and the *Nyāyāvatāra*: *hsien-hsiang* 先相; Hsüan-tsang: *hsien-chao* 先兆, presage or omen.


431. Hsüan-tsang: If it were thus, the Buddha would know the future by reason of indications (*chen-hsiang* 占相) . . .
432. According to *Vibhāṣa*, TD 27, p. 52c12; compare *Prakaraṇa*, TD 26, p. 764a28 and following.


434. The first two opinions of the *Vibhāṣa*, TD 27, p. 57a14. Third opinion: the mind is bound to its support in the past, the present, and the future.

435. According to *Vibhāṣa*, TD 27, p. 703a3 and following.

436. Hsüan-tsang: "because they cause a result arisen at the same time as they have to possess operation."


438. *Vyākhyā*: Īśvara, Puruṣa, Pradhāna, time (kāla), unique or self nature (svabhāva), atoms, etc.

439. Compare *Bodhicaryāvatāra*, ix. 119; *Śaṭḍārśanaśāstra*, p. 11; the *Subhūteka* (JPTS, 1886), 50, etc.


441. *Vipāka* and *puruṣākārāphala*.

442. Addition of Hsüan-tsang.

443. On the *bhūtas*, i.12, ii.22.

444. Hsüan-tsang adds that these five causes are all varieties of kāranaḥetu.

   See *Vyākhyā*, i.11, where the causal relationship between the *bhūtas* which form part of the person (āśraya), and that type of bhautika which is avijñapti, is explained.

445. These definitions according to *Vibhāṣa*, TD 27, p. 663a28. Saṅghabhadra, TD 29, p. 452a19 and following, presents other explanations, and gives other examples.

446. See above ad 59d. First *pratisthāphala*.

447. The doctrine of the twelve minds is presented in *Vijñānakāya* TD 26, p. 593b7 and in the work of Dharmatrāta, TD 28, p. 954b12 and following: "In Kāmadhātu, four; in Rūpadhātu and Ārūpyadhātu, three each, also Śāśika and Āśāśika engender nine and it is produced by eight... "There follows (*kārikā* 35-46) the doctrine of twenty minds (*Kota*, ii.71b-72) which includes the exposition, in *kārikā*, of the rules of succession of the minds. Vasubandhu contents himself, as we shall see, with giving a *bhāṣya*; but Yaśomitra, under the name of *samgrabhaślokas*, furnishes us with a versified redaction of them which perhaps preserves for us a fragment of the original text of the Dharmatrāta.

448. Compare *Kathāvatthu*, xiv.1. where the Theravādins maintain, against the Mahāsāṃghikas, that good is not followed by bad, etc.

449. The four estrangements are āśraya, ākāra, ālambana, and pratipaksadārata:

   a. Persons (āśraya) of Ārūpyadhātu cannot "manifest" (sanyukhikar), or assimilate to themselves, any dharma of Kāmadhātu, whereas beings in Rūpadhātu manifest, or assimilate to themselves a mind capable of creating fictive beings (nirmdncitta) of Kāmadhātu (ii.53b).

   b. The mind of the sphere of Ārūpyadhātu does not apply to Kāmadhātu the categories (ākāra) of "grosser," etc. (vi.49) as does a mind of the sphere of Rūpadhātu.

   c. And in the same way, it does not grasp Kāmadhātu as an object (ālambana).

   d. And in the same way it does not oppose the defilements of Kāmadhātu as do the Dhyānas. On four other estrangements, vi.62.
450. That is to say 1. *srutamaya*, 2. *cintamaya*, 3. *bbavamaya*, produced by hearing or study, by reflection, and by absorption. One and two exist in Kamadhatu, one and three in Rupadhatu, and three in Arupyadhatu, as we have seen above p. 269-270 and following; compare p. 322.

451. This is the *kusala* of which a being, who is reborn in Kāmadhatu or Rūpadhatu, obtains possession (*prāpti*) at the moment of the arising of *antarābhava* (*antarābhavaprastismahābhikṣane*); at the moment of arising for a being who is reborn in Ārūpyadhatu.

452. A list of the *silpatmaka karmansthānas* (*Mahāvyutpatti*, 76.5) is quoted in the *Divyavadāna*, p. 58, 100: the art of riding on the head of an elephant, on the back of a horse, the art of archery, etc.

453. The visible things, etc. (1) of the bed and the body, etc. (2) of instruments (bow, arrow, etc.), and (3) of the thing that one wants to create.

454. Because one learns the arts by listening to instruction. *Vipākaja* is not mentioned here; thus it has the five *bhautikas*, visible things, etc., for its object.

455. In fact the mind relative to walking, etc., takes place after one has seen, felt, etc. Hsüan-tsang corrects the Bhāṣya: "Four or five sense consciousnesses are preparatory to *airyāpattika* and to *sailpasthānika* respectively." One should understand that the auditory consciousness is lacking for *airyāpattika*.

456. *Vibhāṣā*, TD 27, p. 661a16. The Bhadanta Anantavarman (*Vyākyā ad ii.46c-d*), in his *Explanation of the Vibhāṣā* (*Vibhāṣāvyākhyāna*), presents the opinion according to which one should admit the *aniṃrtāvyākṛtas* not included within the four abovementioned *avyākṛtas*, namely the *aniṃrtāvyākṛtas* defined vii.51.

457. Hsüan-tsang: "through *airyāpattika* and *sailpasthānika*.”

458. First mind of the intermediary existence (*antarābhava*) of Rūpadhatu.

459. By an effort of imagination, by virtue of a decision, the ascetic sees the body as the body really is not, namely as being made up only of rotten bones, etc.: this is the meditation on the repulsive, *aśubha*. In the same way, in the *rddhis* (vii.48), the ascetic imagines that the earth element is small, and that the water element is great (compare *Dīgha*, ii.108).

460. *Samyuktāgama*, TD 2, p. 197b3: *aśubhāsahagatarah smṛtisambodhyantāḥ bhāvayati*. "Mindfulness" forms part of the Path; *sahagata* signifies "immediately following."

461. The *Vibhāṣā* discusses whether the *kusala* mind of which one thus takes possession is solely *upapattiṃriṣṭilabbhika* (acquired through birth), or also *prayogika* (acquired through effort).

462. This is a *kārikā* from the hand of Dharmatrāta, *TD* 28, p. 944bl12: "If one obtains nine types of *dharmas*, be should know that this is with a *kliśṭa* mind; the *kusala* mind obtains six types; the *avyākṛta* mind, *avyākṛta*" (Trans. of Sarthghavarman). Paramārtha: "When the *kliśṭa* mind is produced, one obtains, it is said, nine types of mind; with the *kusala* mind ..." (*TD* 28, p. 198a6).